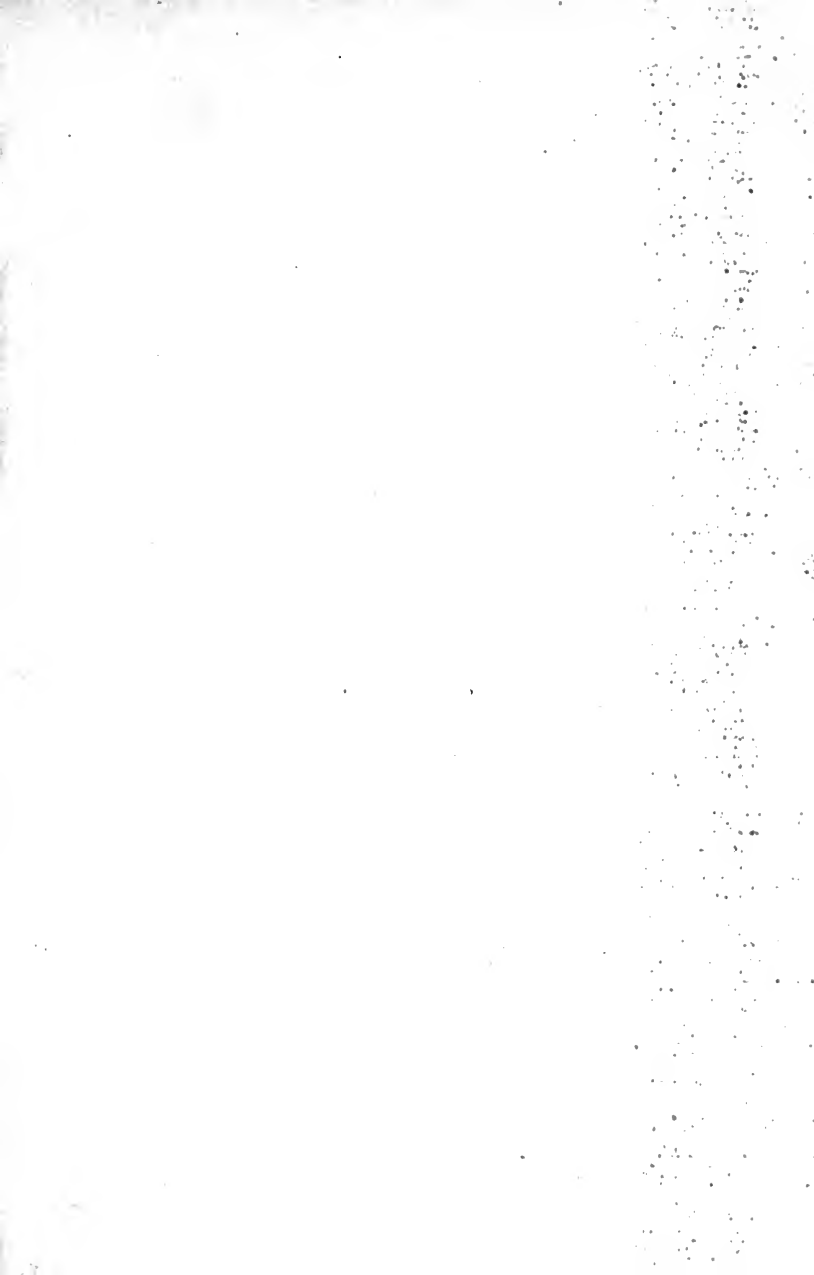


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01190142 8



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

A
HANDBOOK
OF
COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE

BY
BASIL HALL CHAMBERLAIN
*EMERITUS PROFESSOR OF JAPANESE AND PHILOLOGY IN THE
IMPERIAL UNIVERSITY OF TŌKYŌ*

Third Edition

LONDON: SAMPSON LOW, MARSTON, & Co., LD.

TŌKYŌ: THE SHŪYEISHA, ICHIGAYA.

KELLY & WALSH, LD.
YŌKOHAMA, SHANGHAI, HONGKONG, SINGAPORE.

1898

[All rights reserved]



PL
535
C55
1898

PREFACE

TO THE

THIRD EDITION.

THIS edition, though revised with great care, practically reproduces its forerunners of 1888 and 1889. A small quantity of new matter added to the "Theoretical Part," or Grammar proper, for completeness' sake, has been absorbed into the old paragraphs without disturbing their order. Thus, references to the *Colloquial Handbook* in a manual of Japanese writing which the author has in view, will be equally intelligible to students, whichever edition they may happen to possess. In the "Practical Part," or Reader, one or two pieces that had lost their interest have been dropped, and a new piece—an extract from the debates in the Imperial Diet—has been substituted.

Thanks are due to many correspondents—some of them personally unknown to the author—for corrections and suggestions. Similar criticism will always be gratefully received in the future; for in the case of a language so exceptionally difficult as Japanese, the utmost that any grammarian, however painstaking, can hope to produce necessarily falls far short of the ideal, and here, if anywhere, the saying holds good that in multitude of counsellors there is safety.

Such students as desire to pass beyond modern colloquial practice into the field of philological research are recommended to peruse Mr. Aston's *Grammar of the Japanese Written Language*,—an admirably lucid work embodying all the best results obtained by the native school of grammarians,—and the present writer's *Essay in Aid of a Grammar and Dictionary of the Luchuan Language* ("Trans. Asiat. Soc. of Japan," Vol. XXIII. Suppl.), wherein an attempt has been made to attack some of the problems of Japanese philology from the outside.

Tōkyō, December, 1897.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

(THEORETICAL PART,

OR

GRAMMAR.)

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

¶ 1, Method of using this Handbook.—¶ 2, Necessity for much Learning by Heart.—¶ 3, Relationship of Japanese to Other Languages.—¶ 4, Differences between Ancient and Modern Japanese, Introduction of Chinese.—¶ 5, Pronunciation of Chinese.—¶ 6, Preference for Chinese Words.—¶ 7, Japanese Writing, the *Kana* Syllabaries.—¶ 8, Colloquial Literature.—¶ 9, Parts of Speech.—¶ 10, Errors into which European Speakers are Apt to Fall PAGE I—11.

CHAPTER II.

PRONUNCIATION AND LETTER-CHANGES.

¶ 11, Letters.—¶ 12—13, Vowels, Short and Long.—¶ 14—19, Vowel Peculiarities, Quiescent Vowels.—¶ 20—22, Diphthongs.—¶ 23—25, Consonants, Simple and Double.—¶ 26, Final Letters.—¶ 27, Accent.—¶ 28—32, Letter-Changes, the *Nigori*, Reduplication of Consonants.—¶ 33, Change of *e* to *a* in certain Compounds.—¶ 34, Japanese Inability to Pronounce certain Combinations of Letters, Changes hence Resulting in Imported European Words.—¶ 35, Euphonic Contractions PAGE 12—26

CHAPTER III.

THE NOUN.

- ¶ 36—44, Number and Gender.—¶ 45—49, Compound Nouns, Synthesis of Contradictories, Difference between Native and Chinese Compounds, Hyphens.—¶ 50, Word-building, Proper Names.—¶ 51, Honorifics in Word-building.—¶ 52, Nouns in *sa* and *mi*.—¶ 53—54, *Koto* and *Mono*.—¶ 55, Names of Shops.—¶ 56, Names of Trees, Rivers, Islands, and Mountains.—¶ 57, *Aida*, *Hazu*, *Toki*.—¶ 58, *Tokoro*, *Dokoro*.—¶ 59, Verbs used as Nouns.—¶ 60—63, Nouns used as Adjectives.—¶ 64, Nouns used as Adverbs PAGE 27—45.

CHAPTER IV.

THE PRONOUN.

- ¶ 65—71, Personal Pronouns.—¶ 72, Reflective Pronouns.—¶ 73—79, Demonstrative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns and Adverbs (¶ 74, Table of Pronouns and Adverbs).—¶ 80—86, Relative Pronouns, *Tokoro no*... .. PAGE 46—61.

CHAPTER V.

THE POSTPOSITION.

- ¶ 87, Postpositions Proper (including ¶ 88—90, *De*.—¶ 91—94, *Ga*.—¶ 95—98, *Ka*.—¶ 99—100, *Kara*.—¶ 101, *Made*.—¶ 102, *Mo*.—¶ 103, *Motte*.—¶ 104—109, *Ni*.—¶ 110—114, *No*.—¶ 115, *Dano*.—¶ 116, *Shi*.—¶ 117—121, *To*, *Tote*.—¶ 122—125, *Wa*.—¶ 126—128, Difference between *Wa* and *Ga*.—¶ 129—132, *Wo*.—¶ 133, *Ya*.—¶ 134, *Ye*.—¶ 135, *Yori*).—¶ 136—140, Postpositions Combined, *No ni*, *Woba*, *To wa*.—¶ 141—145, Quasi-Postpositions PAGE 62—100.

CHAPTER VI.

THE NUMERAL.

- ¶ 146, Cardinal Numbers (including ¶ 147—151, Native Numerals.—¶ 152, Chinese Numerals.—¶ 153, Letter-Changes of Chinese

Numerals.—¶ 154—156, Sundry Peculiarities of Numerals).—
 ¶ 157—160, Chinese Auxiliary Numerals.—¶ 161, Native
 Auxiliary Numerals.—¶ 162, Counting of Human Beings.—
 ¶ 163—165, Interrogative Numeral Words.—¶ 166, Ordinal and
 Fractional Numbers.—¶ 167—172, Counting of Time.—¶ 173—
 174, Miscellaneous Numeral Locutions PAGE 101—119.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ADJECTIVE.

¶ 175—185, Primary Inflections in *ki*, *shi*, *ku* (*i*, *ō*, *ū*), Adjective
 Stems, Table of Primary Inflections.—¶ 186—187, Secondary or
 Tense and Mood Inflections, Tables of ditto.—¶ 188, Negative Adjective
Nai.—¶ 189, Negative Conjugation of Adjectives.—¶ 190, Ex-
 amples of Tense and Mood Inflections. ¶ 191, Compound Adjective
 stems.—¶ 192, *Beki*.—¶ 193, Desiderative Adjective in *Tai*.—¶ 194,
Rashii, Reduplicated Stems.—¶ 195, *Garu* and *Tagaru*, Verbs
 Derived from Adjectives.—¶ 196—210, Quasi-Adjectives (including
 ¶ 197, *Ō*, *Na*, *Na no*, and Emphatic *Nan*.—¶ 198, *Sō na*.—¶ 205
 —207, Verbs used as Adjectives.—¶ 208—209, Common Errors of
 Foreigners.—¶ 210, Diminutives in *ko*, Augmentatives in *ō*, and
 Honorifics *o*, *go*, etc.).—¶ 211—214, Comparison of Adjectives.—
 ¶ 215—219, Miscellaneous Items PAGE 120—148.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE VERB.

¶ 220, Fundamental Differences between Japanese and European
 Verbs.—¶ 221—222, Analysis of Verbal Forms into Root, Stem,
 Base, and Agglutinated Suffix.—¶ 223, Roots.—¶ 224—225,
 Bases.—¶ 226, Verbs how Named.—¶ 227, Introductory Remarks
 on the Paradigms.—¶ 228—230, Paradigms of the Three Regular
 Conjugations.—¶ 231—233, Paradigms of the Irregular Verbs
Kuru, *Suru*, and *Masū*.—¶ 234, Verbs for Practice.—¶ 235—237,
 Peculiarities of First Conjugation (with Table).—¶ 238, Kyōto
 Peculiarities.—¶ 239, Rationale of Phonetic Changes in Stems
 ending in *s*, *t*, or a Vowel.—¶ 240—267, Analysis of the Formation
 of the Moods and Tenses.—¶ 268—272, Irregular Verbs, viz.,

Aru, Gozaru, Irassharu, Kudasaru, Nasaru, Ossharu, Iku, and Shimuru.—¶ 273—291, Remarks on the Use of the Moods and Tenses (including ¶ 273—276, Present, Past, and Future.—¶ 277, Infinitive.—¶ 278—279, Indefinite Form and Negative Gerund.—¶ 280—282, Gerund.—¶ 283, Gerund of Adjectives.—¶ 284, Emphasised Gerund.—¶ 285, Desiderative Adjective and Adjective of Probability.—¶ 286, Form in *sō*.—¶ 287, Conditional Mood, Old Hypothetical Mood, *Naraba*, Elliptical Idioms Corresponding to English Would, Should, Could, etc.—¶ 288—289, Concessive Mood and Idioms.—¶ 290, Frequentative Form.—¶ 291, Imperative Mood).—¶ 292—302, Auxiliary Verbs (including ¶ 292, Stems Built up by means of Auxiliaries.—¶ 293, *Aru*.—¶ 294, *Iru* and *Oru*.—¶ 295, *Kuru*, Illative Tenses.—¶ 296, *Miru*.—¶ 297, *Naraba*.—¶ 298, *Oku*.—¶ 299, *Shimau*.—¶ 300, *Suru, Iyasu*.—¶ 301, *Yaru*.—¶ 302, Auxiliaries make the Sentence Lifelike and Picturesque) PAGE 149—197.

CHAPTER IX.

THE VERB (CONCLUDED).

¶ 303, Passive Voice.—¶ 304, Origin of Passive explains Peculiarities of its Use.—¶ 305—308, Curious Examples, *Wo* in Passive Constructions, *Aru*.—¶ 309, Passive passes into Potential.—¶ 310, *Dekiru*.—¶ 311, *Kaneru*.—¶ 312, *Morau, Itadaku*.—¶ 313, English Passives expressed by Japanese Intransitives.—¶ 314, Aversion of the Japanese Language to the Use of the Passive.—¶ 315—316, Intransitives in *eru*.—¶ 317—318, Difference between Intransitives in *eru*, Potentials in *areru* or *rareru*, and Passives in *areru* or *rareru*.—¶ 319, Second and Third Conjugations how Treated.—¶ 320, Examples of Intransitives.—¶ 321—323, Transitive and Intransitive Pairs of Verbs.—¶ 324, Absence of Reflective Verbs.—¶ 325—333, Causative Verbs.—¶ 334—340, Compound Verbs.—¶ 341—349, Equivalents of the Verb "to Be," *Aru, Gozaru, Da, Desū, Iru, Oru, Irassharu, O ide nasaru, Ja, Naru, Suru*.—¶ 350—358, *Suru* (¶ 353, *Zuru, Furu*).—¶ 359—361, Verbs Liable to be Mistaken for Each Other. (¶ 361, Paradigm of *Iru, Ireru, and Iru*).—¶ 362—365, Verbs used as Other Parts of Speech (¶ 364, Reduplication of Present Tense) PAGE 198—230.

CHAPTER X.

THE ADVERB, INTERJECTION, AND CONJUNCTION.
SPECIAL PHRASEOLOGY.

- ¶ 366, Absence of True Adverbs.—¶ 367, Adjective Forms in *ku* used Adverbially.—¶ 368—370, Nouns used as Adverbs.—
 ¶ 371, Phonetic Decay.—¶ 372, Gerunds used as Adverbs.—
 ¶ 373, List of Adverbs.—¶ 374—376, "Yes" and "No."—¶ 377, Adverbial Phrases.—¶ 378, Onomatopoeic Adverbs.—¶ 379—384, Interjections (¶ 382, *Naruhodo*.—¶ 383, *Ne*).—¶ 385, Bad Language.—¶ 386, Baby Language.—¶ 387, Women's Language.—¶ 388, Court Language.—¶ 389—391, Conjunctions PAGE 231—243.

CHAPTER XI.

HONORIFICS.

- ¶ 392—393, General Considerations.—¶ 394, Honorifics only Partially Replace the Pronouns of other Languages.—¶ 395—396, *O* and *Go*.—¶ 397, *Sama* applied to Things or Acts.—
 ¶ 398, Honorifics used Objectively.—¶ 399, *O Saki*.—¶ 400, Meaningless Use of Honorifics.—¶ 401, *On*, *Mi*.—¶ 402—404, Honorific Periphrases for Verbs.—¶ 405—406, Special Honorific and Humble Verbs.—¶ 407—410, Honorific Imperatives.—
 ¶ 411, "Please" and "Thank You."—¶ 412—413, Special Honorific and Humble Nouns, Names of Relationship.—¶ 414, Written Language Forms.—¶ 415, Scantiness of Self-Depreciatory Forms.—¶ 416, Sir, Madam, Mr.—¶ 417, Mrs, Miss.—¶ 418, Women's Names.—¶ 419, Use of the Word "Mr." ... PAGE 244—259.

CHAPTER XII.

SYNTAX.

- ¶ 420, The Fundamental Rule is that Qualifying Words precede the Words they Qualify.—¶ 421, Postpositions only an Apparent

Exception.—¶ 422, Correlation of Sentences.—¶ 423, Subject of Sentence.—¶ 424, Examples of Construction.—¶ 425—426, Examples of the Correlation of Clauses by the Indefinite Form and the Gerund.—¶ 427, General Subjectlessness of Sentences.—¶ 428, Order of the Direct and Indirect Objects of the Verb.—¶ 429, Ellipsis, Final Verb often Omitted.—¶ 430, Syntax of Postpositions.—¶ 431, Inversion.—¶ 432, Negatives mutually Destructive.—¶ 433—434, Peculiarity of Japanese Negatives owing to the Absence of Negative Pronouns, Adverbs, and Conjunctions.—¶ 435—436, Quotation generally Direct. ¶ 437, How to Avoid Quotations within Quotations, Peculiar Pleonastic Idiom.—¶ 438, Interrogation.—¶ 439, Passives.—¶ 440—441, Absence of Personification.—¶ 442—444, Extreme Tendency to Synthesis as shown in the Integration of Sentences PAGE 260—282.

(PRACTICAL PART,

OR

READER).

¶ 445. SHORT PHASES IN CONSTANT USE	PAGE 285—299.
¶ 446. ADDITIONAL USEFUL PHRASES	„ 300—306.
¶ 447. EASY QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS	„ 307—309.
¶ 448. PROVERBS	„ 310—315.
¶ 449. FRAGMENTS OF CONVERSATION, including: 1, The Post; 2, An Exhibition; 3, A Request; 4, Engaging a Teacher; 5, What Salary? 6, Meal Hours; 7, An Enquiry; 8, Another Enquiry; 9, Talking to a Child; 10, Talking to a Father; 11, The Telegraph; 12, Speaking Japanese Well; 13, No Thoroughfare; 14, Compliments on Meeting a Friend; 15, A Message; 16, Feeling Unwell; 17, On Board Ship; 18, A Picnic; 19, A Visitor; 20, Asking the Way; 21, Compliments on First Meeting; 22, Taking Leave of a	

- Friend ; 23, Thanks for Assistance Received ; 24, New Year Congratulations ; 25, An Earthquake ; 26, Hiring a Jinrikisha ; 27, Letters for the Mail ; 28, Nearing Yokohama ; 29, A Christian Church ; 30, A Fire ; 31, The Theatre ; 32, Early to Bed ; 33, Difficulty of the Japanese Language ; 34, Asking the Way ; 35, The Way to the British Legation ; 36, A Toast ; 37, Keeping a Visitor Waiting ; 38, Looking in on an Intimate Friend ; 39, Arriving at a Tea-house ; 40, A Meeting Dispersed ; 41, Shopping at Miyanoshita ... PAGE 316—343.
- ¶ 450—7. ANECDOTES, including : ¶ 450, True Economy ; ¶ 451, Thankful Kichibei ; ¶ 452, If they Wait, their Ages will Come Right ; ¶ 453, An Illiterate Dog ; ¶ 454, A Dream of Liquor ; ¶ 455, The Pursuit of Fashion ; ¶ 456, Radishes ; ¶ 457, An Eye on the Top of the Head PAGE 344—365.
- ¶ 458—9. TWO CHAPTERS from the “BOTAN-DŌRŌ,” a Novel by Enchō PAGE 366—403.
- ¶ 460. A NEWSPAPER ARTICLE, entitled “WHY ?” 404—413.
- ¶ 461—2. LECTURES including : ¶ 461, A Talk about Investigation ; ¶ 462, A Point of Moral Culture PAGE 414—427.
- ¶ 463. EXTRACT FROM A SERMON „ 428—433.
- ¶ 464. A SCENE IN THE DIET „ 434—447.
- ¶ 465—473. A WORD ABOUT POETRY „ 448—452.
- ¶ 474. ANGLO-JAPANESE Vocabulary of over 1,700 Useful Words „ 453—473.
- ¶ 475. VOCABULARY of all the Japanese Words occurring in this Work PAGE 474—557.
- ¶ 476. INDEX OF SUBJECTS „ 559—567.
- ¶ 477. ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS „ 568—569.



THEORETICAL
PART.

HANDBOOK
OF
COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE.

~~~~~  
CHAPTER I.

*Introductory Remarks.*

---

¶ 1. "How can I learn to speak Japanese?"—This question has been so often addressed to the present writer that he has resolved to put his answer into a permanent shape. He is persuaded that no language was ever learnt solely from a grammar,—least of all a language like Japanese, whose structure and idioms are so alien from all that we are accustomed to in Europe. The student is therefore recommended only to glance through the Theoretical Part at first, in order to obtain a general idea of the territory he has to conquer. He can pick up by the way such of the examples as strike him, committing them to memory and seeking opportunities for using them to his servants and his native teacher. He should then go on to the Practical Part, and attack the "Fragments of Conversation" and the "Anecdotes" as soon as possible, however baffling it may seem to be confronted with such long sentences. After all, as Japanese consists chiefly of long sentences, one cannot too early decide to face them. A little practice will rob them of much of their terror. Every now and then the Theoretical Part should be consulted on

difficult points. It should be read through carefully, a little at a time, after a diligent study of the Practical Part and a committal of a few pages of the latter to memory shall have caused the student to make some way in the mastery of the language.

¶ 2. The necessity for memorising cannot be too strongly insisted upon. It is the sole means of escape from the pernicious habit of thinking in English, translating every sentence literally from a whispered English original, and therefore beginning and ending by speaking English Japanese instead of Japanese Japanese. It is not only that the words and idioms of Japanese differ from our English words and idioms, but that the same set of circumstances does not always draw from Japanese speakers remarks similar to those which it would draw from European speakers. Japanese thoughts do not run in quite the same channels as ours. To take a very simple instance. If an Englishman wishes to make a polite remark to a friend about the latter's sick father, he will probably say, "I hope your father is better to-day." In French, German, Italian, etc., the phrase would be pretty nearly the same. In each of these languages the same kindly hope would be expressed. In Japanese it is different. The phrase must run thus :

|                              |                |              |           |                       |
|------------------------------|----------------|--------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| <i>Olottsān</i>              | <i>wa,</i>     | <i>dō</i>    | <i>de</i> | <i>gozaimasū ?</i>    |
| <i>Honourable-father-Mr.</i> | <i>as-for,</i> | <i>how</i>   |           | <i>is ?</i>           |
| or, more politely,           |                |              |           |                       |
| <i>Go shimpu</i>             | <i>wa,</i>     | <i>ikaga</i> | <i>de</i> | <i>irasshaimasū ?</i> |
| <i>August real-father</i>    | <i>as-for,</i> | <i>how</i>   |           | <i>deigns-to-be ?</i> |

The idea of hoping or fearing, which to us is so familiar, does not present itself with the same vividness and frequency to the less anxious, less high-strung Far-Eastern





itself in a tendency to uniformity in the vowels of successive syllables, as *ototoshi*, "the year before last," for *ato toshi*. Similarly in several of the words recently adopted from English, such as *mishin*, "a (sewing-) machine;" *Gotto*, "(the Christian) God;" *bukku*, "a (European)book."

¶ 4. The earliest Japanese literature that has come down to us dates, in its present form, from the beginning of the eighth century after Christ. The general structure of the language at that time was nearly the same as it is now; but the changes of detail have been so numerous that a page of eighth century Japanese is unintelligible to a modern native of Tōkyō without special study. One of the chief factors in the alteration of the language has been the gradual infiltration of Chinese words and phrases, which naturally accompanied the borrowing of Buddhism, Confucianism, and the various arts and sciences of China. Chinese established itself, so to speak, as the Latin and Greek of Japan. It retains this position even at the present day, supplying names for almost all the new implements, sciences, and ideas, which are being introduced from Europe and America. In this manner, one very curious and quite unexpected result of the Europeanisation of Japan has been the flooding of the language with Chinese terms at a rate never known before. Thus we have:

|                      |      |                         |                    |
|----------------------|------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>jō-kī-sen</i> ,   | lit. | "steam-vapour-ship,"    | "a steamer."       |
| <i>jō-kī-sha</i> ,   | ,,   | "steam-vapour-vehicle," | "a railway train." |
| <i>min-ken</i> ,     | ,,   | "people-authority,"     | "democracy."       |
| <i>sha-shin</i> ,    | ,,   | "copy-truth,"           | "photograph."      |
| <i>ron-ri-gaku</i> , | ,,   | "argue-reason-science," | "logic."           |
| <i>letsu-dō</i> ,    | ,,   | "iron-road,"            | "a railway."       |
| <i>ban-koku kō-</i>  | ,,   | "myriad-countries       | "international     |
| <i>hō</i> ,          |      | public-law,"            | law."              |

|                         |                                             |                                         |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>jō-yaku kai-sei,</i> | lit. { “treaty amend-<br>ment,” }           | } “treaty revision.”                    |
| <i>rik-ken sei-ji,</i>  | ,, { “set-up-law gov-<br>ernment,” }        | } { “constitutional<br>government.” }   |
| <i>yū-shō rep-pai,</i>  | ,, { “superior-conquer<br>inferior-lose,” } | } { “the survival of<br>the fittest.” } |

¶ 5. The Japanese do not pronounce Chinese in a manner that would be intelligible to any Chinaman. They have two standards of pronunciation, both of which are corruptions of the Chinese pronunciation of over a thousand years ago. One of these is called the *Go-on*, the other the *Kan-on*, from the names of certain ancient Chinese kingdoms. Usage decrees that the same word shall be pronounced according to the *Go-on* in some contexts, and according to the *Kan-on* in others. Thus the *myō* of *dai-myō*, “a feudal noble” (lit. “a great name”), is the same as the *mei* of *mei-butsu*, “the chief production of a locality” (lit. “a name-thing,” *i.e.* “a famous thing”). In this case *myō* is the *Go-on*, and *mei* the *Kan-on*, of the same Chinese character 名, which in China itself is pronounced *ming*. The practical student will do best to learn words by rote, without troubling himself as to whether each term, if Chinese, be in the *Go-on* or in the *Kan-on*.

¶ 6. The effect of the steady influx of Chinese words during more than a millennium has been to discredit the native Japanese equivalents even when they exist. A foreigner who wishes to be considered an elegant speaker should, therefore, gradually accustom himself to employ Chinese words very freely, except when addressing uneducated persons. He should, for instance, prefer

## CHINESE

## JAPANESE

*jīn-ryoku(suru)*, “to endeavour,” to *chikara wo tsūkusū*,  
*myō-chō*, “to-morrow morning,” to *ashita no asa*.

*sak-kon*, "yesterday and to-day," to *kinō to kyō to*.

*tai-boku*, "a large tree," to *ōki na ki*.

*Wa-sei*, "Japanese make," to *Nihon-deki*.

Some thoughtful persons, both Japanese and foreign, regret the fashionable preference for Chinese words. But the fashion exists, and to follow it is considered a mark of refinement; neither is it possible, even were it desirable, for an outsider to set up a standard of his own, different from that acknowledged by the people themselves. The copiousness of the Chinese tongue, and the marvellous terseness which generally enables it to express in two or three syllables ideas which would require five or six in Japanese and indeed in almost any other language, form an argument in favour of this species of Japanese Johnsonianism. On the other hand, much confusion is caused by the fact that numbers of Chinese words are pronounced alike. The consequence of this is that it is often impossible to know what a term means, without reference to the Chinese characters with which it is written. In any case, whether he speak simply or learnedly, the student should at least avoid speaking vulgarly. Japanese resembles English in being full of slang and vulgarisms of every sort. But what should we say to a young Japanese, who, having been sent to London to learn our language, should return home with the *haccent* of 'Ighgate and the diction of the street Arab? Japanese has also many provincial dialects, some of which remain more faithful in certain respects to the traditions of the Classical language than does the dialect of Tōkyō. But the dialect of Tōkyō (itself a slightly modified form of the Kyōto dialect, which was formerly considered the standard Colloquial) has on its side an ever-increasing importance and preponderance, as the general medium of polite intercourse throughout the

country. Practical students are strongly advised to devote themselves to it alone. If they speak it well, they will be as generally understood as a man who speaks standard English is generally understood in England, that is to say, they will be understood everywhere by all but the peasantry, and in most provinces even by the peasantry.

¶ 7. Japanese writing consists of the Chinese characters,—ideographs, as they are sometimes styled because representing sense not sound, whole words not individual letters,—mixed with a syllabic writing called the *Kana*. Speaking generally, the Chinese characters serve to figure all the principal words of the sentence, such as nouns, adjectives, and verbs, while the function of the *Kana* syllables interspersed throughout the text is to transcribe phonetically such lesser elements as particles and grammatical terminations. We cannot here treat any further of this important subject,—important because Japanese, like every language boasting a long history and extensive literature, may be said to live and move and have its being in its written system. Students desirous of pursuing it can avail themselves either of our work mentioned in the preface, or of one of the “Readers” compiled for use in the primary schools, for instance, the “*Shin-tai Toku-hon*,” published by the Kinkōdō at Tōkyō. The characters may advantageously be attacked very soon after the Colloquial, say, as soon as oral communication between the student and his native teacher has become established in however lame a way.

¶ 8. A peculiarly intricate system of writing is not the only barrier that divides the Colloquial from the language of books. The Japanese still remain at the stage in which we were during the Middle Ages. They do not write as they speak, but use an antiquated and indeed partly artificial dialect

whenever they put pen to paper. This is the so-called "Written Language."<sup>9</sup> Of the few books published in the Colloquial, the best are the novels of a living author named Enchō. The student who does not wish to trouble about the characters, cannot do better than write out one of these books from his teacher's dictation. It should be added that they contain not a few passages to which lady students would take just exception. This is the case with all Japanese fiction. It is not that the Japanese novelists love to wallow, Zola-like, in vice. On the contrary, their sentiments mostly leave nothing to be desired. But they have a startlingly realistic way of calling a spade a spade. The titles of Enchō's two best works are :—

“*Botan-Dōrō*,” the story of a last century vendetta.

“*Ezo-Nishiki Kōkyō no Jezu*,” an adaptation to modern Japanese social conditions of Wilkie Collins' "New Magdalen."

There is a periodical entitled “*Hyak-kwa-en*,” which prints Enshi's and other popular story-tellers' pieces verbatim. Occasionally, too, the newspapers and the “Transactions” of the Educational, Geographical, and other learned Societies reproduce a lecture exactly as taken down by the short-hand writer from the mouth of the lecturer, and the reports of the debates in the Imperial Diet are given verbatim in the “Official Gazette” (*Kwampō*). The more usual practice, however, is to dress everything up in the Written Style before it is allowed to appear in print.

¶ 9. A word as to the parts of speech in Japanese. Strictly speaking, there are but two, the verb and the noun. The particles, or “postpositions” and suffixes, which take the place of our prepositions, conjunctions, and conjugational terminations, were themselves originally fragments of nouns

and verbs. The pronoun and numeral are simply nouns. The true adjective (including the adverb) is a sort of neuter verb. But many words answering to our adjectives and adverbs are nouns in Japanese. There is no article. Altogether our grammatical categories do not fit the Japanese language well. They have only been adhered to in this work in so far as they may serve as familiar landmarks.

¶ 10. In conclusion, the following warnings concerning errors into which European speakers of Japanese are apt to fall, may be found useful :—

Do not confound long and short vowels. (See ¶ 13.)

Do not use personal pronouns too freely. (See ¶ 71.)

Do not insert the postposition *no* between a true adjective and the noun to which it belongs. (See ¶ 208.)

Do not apply honorifics to yourself. For me to ask any one, for instance, to *shinjō* something to myself, or to *haiken* something belonging to myself, would be as if I should say : “ Have the honour to give it to me,” or “ Have the honour to look at this thing belonging to me.” As explained in Chap. XI, honorifics can only be applied to other people, while contrariwise humble terms must be used in speaking of oneself. I *shinjō* (lit. “ respectfully lift up ”) something to you ; but I ask you to *kudasai* (lit. “ condescend ”) something to me. I *haiken* (lit. “ adoringly look at ”) something belonging to you ; but I ask you to *goran nasai* (lit. “ august-glance deign ”) something belonging to me. (See ¶ 405.) If you hear beggars in the street shouting after you to *shinjō* a copper to them, it is only because, having learnt from experience that foreigners constantly misuse the honorifics, they think to ingratiate themselves and to be more easily understood by doing likewise. Were they addressing a Japanese, they would never dream of saying anything so rude and so absurd.

## CHAPTER II.

### *Pronunciation and Letter-Changes.*

---

#### PRONUNCIATION.

¶ 11. Japanese, when written phonetically with the Roman alphabet, according to the phonetic spelling sanctioned by Hepburn's and Brinkley's dictionaries, requires the same letters as English, with the exception of *l*, *q*, *v*, and *x*. The letter *c* occurs only in the combination *ch*, which is sounded nearly like English *ch* in "church," but a little more softly, as *cha*, "tea;" *chichi*, "milk."

*N. B.* Dr. Hepburn's system, which practically coincides with that recommended by the Royal Geographical Society for the transcription of hitherto unromanised languages generally, has established itself in [almost universal local use by reason of its simplicity. Not a few authors have, it is true, deviated on minor points, either from inadvertence or in order to satisfy their individual notions of phonetic perfection. Probably no language admits of being written phonetically with absolute precision; and the present writer, for one, gladly sacrifices some minute personal preferences for the sake of what is far more important in such a case,—unity of usage.

¶ 12. The vowels are sounded as in Spanish and Italian, but are always short, unless marked with the sign of long quantity. It is impossible to express the values of the Japanese vowels correctly in English; but, speaking approximately, we may say that



|          |                           |               |                                   |
|----------|---------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>ä</i> | resembles the <i>a</i> in | “father,”     | but is shorter.                   |
| <i>e</i> | „                         | „ <i>e</i> „  | “men.”                            |
| <i>i</i> | „                         | „ <i>i</i> „  | “machine,” but is shorter.        |
| <i>o</i> | „                         | „ <i>o</i> „  | “for” (not “four”).               |
| <i>u</i> | „                         | „ <i>u</i> „  | “bush.”                           |
| <i>ō</i> | „                         | „ <i>o</i> „  | “bone,” but is a purer <i>o</i> . |
| <i>ū</i> | „                         | „ <i>oo</i> „ | “food.”                           |

¶ 13. Very great care must be taken to distinguish the short from the long vowels; for there are many words totally distinct in meaning, but differing, so far as pronunciation is concerned, merely in the quantity of their vowels, thus:

|                                         |                                  |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>dozō</i> , “a mud godown;”*          | <i>dōzo</i> , “please.”          |
| <i>koko</i> , “here;”                   | <i>kōkō</i> , “filial piety.”    |
| <i>sato</i> , “a village;”              | <i>satō</i> , “sugar.”           |
| <i>toru</i> , “to take;”                | <i>tōru</i> , “to pass through.” |
| <i>tsuji</i> , “a cross-road;”          | <i>tsūji</i> , “an interpreter.” |
| <i>zutsu</i> , “[one, etc.] at a time;” | <i>zutsū</i> , “a headache.”     |

The only long vowels of common occurrence are *ō* and *ū*. Long *ā* hardly occurs, excepting in the interjections *ā!* *mā!* *nā!* and *sā!* and in the words *obāsan*, “an old lady,” “grandmamma,” and *okkāsan* (but also *okkasan*), “mamma.” Long *ē* hardly occurs, excepting in the interjection *nē*. Long *ī* does not occur, its place being taken by double *ii*, as in *yoroshii*, “good,” as it is considered that careful speakers sound the two *i*'s separately.

¶ 14. When preceded by another vowel or by *n*, the vowels *e*, *i*, and *o* are pronounced *ye*, *yi*, and *wo* respectively. Thus *ue*, “above;” *kon-in*, “marriage;” and *shio*, “salt,” are pronounced (and by some transliterators written) *uye*, *konyin*, *shīwo*.

\* “Godown” is Far-Eastern English for a store-house or warehouse. It comes from the Malay word *gâdong*, “a warehouse.”

¶ 15. *I* and *u* are often inaudible, or nearly so in the mouths of natives of Tōkyō after *f*, *h*, *k*, *s*, *sh*, and *ts*, as

|                    |                 |            |                                        |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>futatsu</i> ,   | “two,”          | pronounced | { <i>flatsu</i> , or<br><i>flats</i> . |
| <i>hito</i> ,      | “person,”       | „          | <i>hlo</i> .*                          |
| <i>watakushi</i> , | “I,”            | „          | <i>watakshi</i> .                      |
| <i>takusan</i> ,   | “much,” “many,” | „          | <i>taxan</i> .                         |
| <i>gozaimasu</i> , | “there is,”     | „          | <i>gozaimas</i> .                      |
| <i>shita</i> ,     | “below,”        | „          | <i>shla</i> .                          |
| <i>tsuki</i> ,     | “the moon,”     | „          | <i>tski</i> .                          |

¶ 16. Initial *u* is silent, and the following *m* doubled in the pronunciation of the four words

|                  |                |            |                  |
|------------------|----------------|------------|------------------|
| <i>uma</i> ,     | “a horse,”     | pronounced | <i>mma</i> .     |
| <i>umai</i> ,    | “nice,”        | „          | <i>mmai</i> .    |
| <i>umareru</i> , | “to be born,”  | „          | <i>mmareru</i> . |
| <i>ume</i> ,     | “a plum-tree,” | „          | <i>mme</i> .     |

¶ 17. The quiescent vowels are distinguished in this work by the sign of short quantity, as *hŭto*, *shŭta*, *takŭsan*, *ŭma*. But it should be noted that the Japanese themselves are not conscious of failing to pronounce the *i*'s and *u*'s in question, and that these letters often recover their proper power for the sake of clearness or emphasis. They count in prosody, and are always sounded even in ordinary conversation by the natives of many provinces. That is why they are allowed to remain in the transliteration, most persons writing them without any diacritical mark.

¶ 18. The vowel *u*, when following *sh* or *j*, is often mispronounced as *i* by the Tōkyō people, thus :

*teishi*, for *teishu*, “a husband.”

---

\* The *h* here has the sound of German *ch* in *ich*.

They are also apt to mispronounce *yu* as *i*, thus :

*iki*, for *yuki*, "snow;" but this is distinctly vulgar.

¶ 19. Be very careful to discriminate final *e* from final *i*. Englishmen are often unintelligible owing to their confounding such words as

*sake*, "rice-beer," and *saki*, "front," "before."

*take*, "a bamboo;" ,, *taki*, "a waterfall."

*yume*, "a dream;" ,, *yumi*, "a bow."

¶ 20. The diphthongs *ae*, *ai*, *ao*, *au*, *ei*, *oi*, *ui*, call for no remark, each vowel retaining its own proper sound, as in Spanish or Italian. Englishmen and Germans must beware of mispronouncing *ei* as in "eiderdown" or German "klein." Japanese *ei* being simply *e+i*, the second syllable of such a word as *kirei*, "pretty," sounds nearly like the English word "ray" or the German "Reh," not at all like "rye." Be equally careful not to give to *au* (*a+u*) the peculiarly English sound of "awe;" but pronounce, for instance, *kau*, "to buy," very nearly like English "cow." In the case of verbs, however, ending in *au*, such as *kau*, "to buy;" *morau*, "to receive;" *shūgau*, "to follow," it is optional to pronounce the letter *au* like a long *ō*. But this is more characteristic of western Japanese than of Tōkyō usage.

¶ 21. The vulgar in Tōkyō say *ai* for *ae*, and *oi* for *oe*; thus *mai*, instead of *mae*, "before;" *koi* (which means "love"), instead of *koe*, "voice." They also often contract *ai* into a long *ē*, as *naranē* for *naranai*, "it won't do." But this is as bad as the dropping of the letter *h* by cockneys.

¶ 22. It is usual to write *iu* (rather than *yū*) in the case of the verb meaning "to say."

*N. B.* This is a concession to etymology, the other tenses being *itte*, *itta*, etc., with initial *i*.

It is usual to write *ou* rather than *ō* in the case of verbs like *omou*, "to think;" *sorou*, "to be in order."

*N. B.* This is done in order to show the original and theoretical conformity of these verbs to the general rule whereby the present tense [must always end in *u*.

¶ 23. The consonants are pronounced approximately as in English, subject to the following remarks:—

*P* is a true labial, not the English labio-dental; that is to say, it is formed by means of the lips alone, not, as our *f* is, by placing the upper teeth on the lower lip.

*G* never has the sound of *j*. At the beginning of a word it is pronounced hard, like the *g* in "give." In the middle of a word it has the sound of English *ng* in "slangy." Thus *Kiga*, the name of a place near Miyanoshita, rhymes almost exactly with "singer." (Not with "finger," where the *ng* does double duty, first to render the sound of *ng*, and then the sound of *g* alone. This double sound is represented in Japanese by the combination *ng*, as *kin-gin*, "gold and silver," pronounced *kin-ghin*). Foreigners constantly err in pronouncing such words as *Kiga* like *Kinner* or else *Kigger*, instead of uttering the nasal sound of "slangy," "singer," "Bingham," etc.

*N. B.* In western Japan, *g* retains its hard pronunciation in all situations.

*H* is pronounced as in English, except before the vowel *i*, when it assumes nearly the sound of the German *ch* in *ich*. The syllable *hi* has, moreover, a tendency to pass into *shi* and even into simple *sh*, especially in the mouths of the vulgar of Tōkyō, who pronounce, for instance, the word *hige*, "beard," as *shige*, and *hito*, "person," as *shito*. Careful Japanese speakers attempt (not always successfully) to avoid this error.

*N* final is pronounced half-way between a true *n* and the French nasal *n*. When (as happens chiefly in Chinese compounds) a syllable ending in *n* is followed by *a* or *u* in the next syllable, the *n* sounds very nearly like English *ng*, and a distinct hiatus is made before the vowel. Thus *gen-an* (almost *geng an*), "the draft of a document,"—quite different from *ge-nan*, which may equally well be written *genan*, "a man-servant." When the vowel next to *n* final is *e*, *i*, or *o*, a different method is resorted to (see ¶ 14).

*R* is the very softest of English *r*'s, and is never rolled or gargled as in French and German. Some speakers pronounce it almost as if it were a dental *d*, especially before the vowel *i*.

*S* is always sharp as in "past," never assuming the soft or *z* sound heard in "misery."

¶ 24. *W* (pronounced exactly as in English) shows so strong a tendency to become obsolete after *k* and *g*, not only in Tōkyō, but in most parts of the country excepting the west, that it is optional to write, for instance, *kwa-shi* or *kashi*, "cake;" *Gwaimushō* or *Gaimushō*, "the Foreign Office." Even between two vowels, as in *omo-(w)anai*, "I do not think;" *kama(w)anai*, "it does not matter," many natives of Tōkyō drop it. In the present work the *w* has been retained in all such cases, in order to conform to the usage of the dictionaries. Frenchmen, Germans, and other Continentals are apt to sound a *v* instead of a *w*. This bad habit should be carefully guarded against.

*Y* is always a consonant. Thus the syllable *mya* in *myaku*, "the pulse," is pronounced as one syllable, like *mia* in the English word "amiable." Care must be taken

not to confound the monosyllable *mya* with the dissyllable *miya* in such words as *miyako* (*mi-ya-ko*), "a capital city."

*Z*, when preceding the vowel *u*, has the sound of *dz*, and is accordingly so written by many transliterators, as *midzu*, for *mizu*, "water." We write *z* in this work, rather than *dz*, somewhat against our personal preference, and merely in order to conform to the usage of the dictionaries. (Conf. second foot-note to p. 21.)

¶ 25. Double consonants must, as in Italian, be sharply distinguished from single ones, thus :

|                          |                                      |              |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>ana</i> , "a hole ;"  | <i>anna</i> ,                        | "such."      |
| <i>ichi</i> , "one ;"    | <i>itchi</i> (for <i>ichi-chi</i> ), | "union."     |
| <i>oto</i> , "a sound ;" | <i>otto</i> ,                        | "a husband." |

*N. B.* Though plenty of consonants are written double in English, few are pronounced so. Such words, however, as "bookkeeping," "unneighbourly," misrent, will serve to exemplify the peculiar insistence on the consonantal sound that is here spoken of.

Where, however, no confusion is liable to ensue, the natives of Tōkyō often pronounce as double a consonant which is properly single, thus :

|                  |     |                 |             |
|------------------|-----|-----------------|-------------|
| <i>ammari</i> ,  | for | <i>amari</i> ,  | "too much." |
| <i>minna</i> ,   | ,,  | <i>mina</i> ,   | "all."      |
| <i>tokkuri</i> , | ,,  | <i>tokuri</i> , | "a bottle." |

This peculiarity, which seems to have originated in a desire for emphasis, is slightly vulgar.

*N. B.* Only the following consonants are liable to reduplication : *ch* (*tch*), *k*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *s*, *sh* (*ssh*), and *ts* (*tts*).

¶ 26. All Japanese words theoretically end either in a vowel or in the consonant *n*. But the fact of the occasional quiescence of *ĩ* and *ũ* produces the impression that there are words ending in other consonants. Thus, the polite

termination *masŭ* (e.g. in *arimasŭ*, "there is") mostly sounds like *mas*, excepting in the mouths of unusually careful or old-fashioned speakers. In no other case is the clipping of final vowels to be recommended.

## ACCENT.

¶ 27. Generally speaking, the Japanese pronunciation both of vowels and of consonants is less broad and heavy than that current in most European languages, and especially in English. Particularly noticeable is the manner in which *ch*, *j*, *sh*, and *ts* are minced. Tones, such as those of the Chinese, are entirely absent. There is little or no tonic accent, and only a very slight rhetorical accent; that is to say that all the syllables of a word and all the words of a sentence are pronounced equally, or nearly so. Students must beware of importing into Japanese the strong and constantly recurring stress by which, in English and in most European languages, one syllable in every polysyllabic word, and the chief words in every sentence, are singled out for special notice. Thus, to quote the names of places familiar to every traveller in Japan, you must articulate *Hakone*, *Miyanoshita*, *Ashinoyu*, with every syllable equal (excepting the *i* of *Miyanoshita*, which quiesces), thus: *Ha-ko-ne*, *Mi-ya-no-shita*, *A-shi-no-yu*, all short and all without emphasis. Europeans excruciate Japanese ears when they say *Hakone*, *Miyanoshita*, and *Ashinoyu*. Only occasionally, among the lower classes, does the desire for exceptional emphasis cause a word or syllable to be accented in a peculiarly declamatory manner, which Europeans find difficulty in imitating. The strength of the entire body seems to be concentrated on the production, on the laborious squeezing out, of the word in question.

*N. B.* The statement made in the above paragraph concerning the absence of accent in Japanese is intended rather for purposes of practical instruction than of scientific accuracy. There *is* a slight tonic accent in Japanese. But so extremely slight is it that it has never been marked in any dictionary whether native or foreign, it has no influence on prosody, it varies from province to province, and inhabitants of the same province contradict, not only each other, but themselves in their usage and in the explanations which they give concerning it. Most of the Tōkyō people distinguish by a faint difference of stress such pairs of words as

|                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>ame</i> , "rain ;"             | <i>amé</i> , "a kind of sweetmeat." |
| <i>hashi</i> , "chopsticks ;"     | <i>hashí</i> , "a bridge."          |
| <i>káki</i> , "an oyster ;"       | <i>kakí</i> , "a persimmon."        |
| <i>kóto</i> , "a sort of harp ;"  | <i>kotó</i> , "a thing."            |
| <i>kúmo</i> , "a spider ;"        | <i>kumó</i> , "a cloud."            |
| <i>táke</i> , "a mountain-peak ;" | <i>také</i> , "a bamboo."           |

The difference between such words may be compared—not in kind, but in degree—with that made by careful English speakers between "morning" and "mourning," or between the verb "to advocate" and the substantive "an advocate," the verb "to elaborate" and the adjective "elaborate," or again between two such phrases as "re-covering an old umbrella" and "recovering a stolen one." The interest of the question is rather for the theoretical than for the practical student. The tendency of Englishmen, and indeed of all Europeans excepting Frenchmen, is always to accentuate Japanese much too strongly. New-comers cannot do better, at least for the first few years, than endeavour not to accentuate it at all.

#### LETTER-CHANGES.

¶ 28. *Nigori*, lit. "muddling," is the name given by the Japanese to the substitution of sonant consonants for surds.

*N. B.* In contradistinction to the sonant letters (*d, g, z*, etc.), the surd letters (*t, k, s*, etc.) are said to be *sumi*, i.e. "clear." The two categories together are termed *sei-daku* by the native grammarians, *sei* being the Chinese word for "clear," and *daku* for "muddled."

The consonants affected change as follows :—



| <i>Surds.</i>                                           |      | <i>Sonants.</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------|
| <i>ch</i> }<br><i>sh</i> }                              | into | <i>j</i> .*     |
| <i>f</i> } (anciently<br><i>h</i> } probably <i>ʃ</i> ) | „    | <i>b</i> .      |
| <i>k</i>                                                | „    | <i>g</i> .      |
| <i>s</i> }<br><i>ts</i> }                               | „    | <i>z</i> . †    |
| <i>t</i>                                                | „    | <i>d</i> .      |

The broad law governing the use of the *nigori* is that the initial surd (*ch*, *sh*, *f*, *h*, *k*, *s*, *ts*, or *t*) of an independent word—especially of a noun—changes into the corresponding sonant (*j*, *b*, *g*, *z*, or *d*) when the word is used as the second member of a compound. The law affects, not native words only, but likewise those borrowed from the Chinese. Thus :

From *ryōri*, “cookery,” and **chaya**, “a tea-house,” is formed *ryōri-jaya*, “an eating-house.”

From **shima**, “an island,” repeated, is formed *shima-jima*, “various islands.”

From *yane*, “a roof,” and **fune**, “a vessel,” is formed *yane-bune*, “a house-boat.”

\* In western Japan, where the rules and analogies of the ancient language have been more faithfully preserved than in the present capital, the *nigori* of *ch* is pronounced like English *j*, and the *nigori* of *sh* like the softer French *j*; thus *fuji*, “the wistaria” (hard), but *Fuji*, “Fusiyama” (soft). The Tōkyō pronunciation ignores this delicate distinction, and has English *j* (but just a trifle softer) for both alike.

† In the western provinces (following ancient usage), the *nigori* of *s* is *z*, while the *nigori* of *ts* is *dz*; thus *mizu*, “not seeing,” but *midzu*, “water.” In Tōkyō these two sounds are confounded, both being alike pronounced as *dz*. Conf. the end of ¶ 24, page 18.

From *hi*, "fire," and *hachi*, "a pot," is formed *hi-bachi*, "a brazier."

From the "indefinite forms" of the verbs *kiru*, "to wear," and *kaeru*, "to change," is formed *ki-gae*, "a change of clothes."

From *kaku*, "an angle," and *satō*, "sugar," is formed *kaku-zatō*, "loaf-sugar."

From *tsūki*, "moon," "month," and *sue*, "end," is formed *tsūki-zue*, "the end of the month."

From *kwan*, a Chinese word signifying a "jar" or "gallipot," but not used alone in Japanese,\* and the indefinite form of the verb *tsumeru*, "to pack," is formed *kwan-zume*, "tinned (provisions)," "canned things."

From *ōrai*, "a thoroughfare," and the indefinite form of the verb *tomeru*, "to stop" (trans.), is formed *ōrai-dome*, "no thoroughfare."

*N. B.* *Nigori*'d syllables are not limited to compounds. *Kaze*, "wind;" *abura*, "oil," and numerous others offer examples of the occurrence of the *nigori* in the middle of a simple word. The *nigori* is also found at the beginning of many simple words in modern Colloquial, but it may then almost always be traced to the action of phonetic decay. Thus *de*, "by," is from Classical *nite*; *dore?* "which?" is from Classical *id(z)ure*; and so on. Many other words with initial *nigori* come from the Chinese, such as *dozō*, "a godown;" *go*, "august;" *zashiki*, "a room," etc.

¶ 29. A rider to the above law is that *f* and *h* in Chinese compounds sometimes change, not into *b*, but into *p*. This is called the *han-nigori*, or "half-muddling." Thus, to take somewhat high-flown instances,

---

\* Sir Ernest Satow suggests that this word *kwan*, though fitted by Japanese ingenuity with a suitable Chinese ideograph (罐), may, after all, be nothing but the English word "can" itself, whose meaning it serves to convey.

From *jun*, "to accord," and *fū*, "wind," we have  
*jum-pū*, "a fair wind."

From *ten*, "heaven," and *hen*, "change," we have  
*tem-pen*, "a sign in the heavens."

*N. B.* The monosyllables *jun* and *fū* are scarcely ever used alone in Japanese in the senses here given. For the change of *n* to *m* in *jun* and *ten*, see ¶ 32.

¶ 30. In some words of native origin, the Tōkyō people, led by the same love of reduplication which makes them say *minna* for *mina*, "all;" *tokkuri* for *tokuri*, "a bottle," etc. (see ¶ 25), turn the letter *h*, which could not well be doubled, into what commends itself to them as the nearest approach to *hh*, viz. *pp*; thus:

*yappari*, for *yahari*, "also."

*yoppodo*, ,, *yohodo*, "a lot," "very."

*N. B.* Perhaps it might be more correct to view this phenomenon as a relic of the old pronunciation of *h* as *p*. Conf. ¶ 28, top of p. 21, small type in middle of column.

¶ 31. The law regulating the use of the *nigori* is by no means an absolute one, euphony and sometimes the varying caprice of individuals deciding in each case whether the change shall or shall not be made. Thus *ō*, "great," and *saka*, "a hill," compounded to form the name of a large town in Central Japan, may be pronounced either *Ōzaka* or *Ōsaka* (never *Osárkur*, as Englishmen are apt to say). *F* and *h*, however, always change either into *b* or into *p*, if the first member of the compound ends in a nasal consonant. Thus it would be inadmissible to say *jum-fū* for *jum-pū*.

It is considered harsh to have many *nigori*'ed letters in one word. For instance, as *kaze*, "wind," already has the *nigori*'ed letter *z*, it will, when combined with *kami*,

“above,” make *kaza-kami*, “windward,” not *kaza-gami*, which would sound awkward and thick. Observe, too, that no *nigori*ed letter is ever doubled.

¶ 32. As shown by the examples of *jum-pū* and *tem-pen*, *n* changes to *m* before a labial. To give another instance: “*tem-mon-gaku*,” “astrology,” “astronomy;” from *ten*, “heaven;” *mon*, “markings or letters” (not used alone); and *gaku*, “science.”—*N* or *m* is sometimes inserted corruptly by careless speakers, as *shamberi* for *shaberi*, “chattering;” *yon-jū* for *yo-jū* (better *shi-jū*), “forty.” They make up for this by dropping *n* where it should be retained, saying, for instance, *daiko* instead of *daikon*, “a radish.”

¶ 33. Less important than the *nigori* affecting initial consonants, is a change which affects the final vowels in certain native Japanese words of one syllable and two syllables. In this class of words, *e* final often changes to *a*, when the word is used as the first member of a compound,\* thus:

From *kaze*, “wind,” and *kami*, “above,” we have *kaza-kami*, “windward.”

From *sake*, “rice-beer,” and *ya*, “a house,” we have *saka-ya*, “a grog-shop.”

From *te*, “the hand,” and *motsu*, to hold,” we have *tamotsu*, “to keep.”

From *ue*, “top,” and the indefinite form of *kiru*, “to put on,” “to wear,” we have *uwa-gi*, “an over-coat.”

---

\* Strictly speaking, it is *a* which is weakened into *e*, a study of the older language showing that the forms in *a* are almost certainly the original ones. We state the rule as in the text simply for the sake of practical convenience.

As an irregular member of the same class may be mentioned *shira* for *shiro*, the stem of the adjective *shiroi*, "white," in such compounds as

*shira-giku*, "a white chrysanthemum." (*Kiku* = "chrysanthemum.")

*shira-ga*, "white hair." (*Ga* here stands for *ke*, "hair.")

The language offers no other instance of so anomalous a change.)

¶ 34. All the Japanese consonants do not admit of being sounded before all the five Japanese vowels. *F* only occurs before the vowel *u*, the other four vowels taking *h* instead. *S* is replaced by *sh*, and *z* by *j*, before the vowel *i*. *T* is replaced by *ch*, and *d* by *j*, before the vowel *i*; *t* is replaced by *ts*, and *d* by *z*, before the vowel *u*. *W* occurs only before the vowel *a*; *y* only before the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u*. The sole exceptions, according to the orthography adopted in this work, are those offered by the postpositions *wo* and *ye*. Compare, however, ¶ 14.

*N. B.* The phenomena mentioned in this paragraph seem to be of comparatively modern growth, though they can be traced back some three centuries. The archaic form of the language probably possessed *f* (or rather *p*), *s*, and *t*, but no *b*, *h*, *sh*, *j*, *ch*, *ts*, or *z*.

To the practical student the peculiarity above noted is interesting only in so far as it affects the conjugation of verbs. He is therefore referred to Chapter VIII, ¶ 235 *et seq.* It may, however, be worth while to instance in passing the strange alterations introduced into borrowed European words by this inability of the Japanese to pronounce certain consonants before certain vowels, by their further inability to pronounce combinations of consonants or any final consonant except *n*, and by the absence from their language of some of the commonest

European sounds, such as *l* and *v*. Hence such metamorphoses as the following:—

*chifusu*, from the German pronunciation of  
“typhus.”

*garasu*, from “glass.”

*hoko*, ,, “fork.”

*Igirisu*, ,, “English.”

*kame*, ,, “come here.”

(Dogs of European race are so styled, because their masters constantly call out “come here!” to them.)

*kara*, from “collar.”

*kasūteira*, from “Castilla.”

(Sponge-cake is so called, because introduced by the Spaniards.)

*koppu*, from the Dutch *kop*, “a cup,” but used to signify “a glass.”

*rampu*, from “lamp.”

*ramune*, ,, “lemonade.”

*shabon*, “soap,” from Spanish *jabon*.

*shatsu*, from “shirt.”

*wanishi*, ,, “varnish.”

There are also some quite anomalous cases, such as *penki*, from “paint,” where we should naturally have expected *peinto*.

*N. B.* Two or three of the above examples may serve incidentally to show the lingering trace of early intercourse with the Dutch and Spaniards. At the present day, English is drawn on far more extensively than all other foreign tongues together.

¶ 35. Finally certain contractions are brought about by euphony and the desire for speedy elocution. Such are *ip-tun* for *ichi fun*, “one minute;” *jis-sō*, for *jū sō*, “ten vessels.” For these the student is referred to the Chapter on Numerals, ¶ 153, as it is in the case of the numerals that these contractions most frequently occur, and that it is most necessary to commit them to memory.

## CHAPTER III.

### *The Noun.*

---

#### NUMBER AND GENDER.

¶ 36. The noun is indeclinable, distinctions of number and gender being left to be gathered from the context, and case relations being, as in English, indicated by separate words, which are, however, “postpositions,” not prepositions. Thus

*Ūma ni noru*  
*lit. horse in ride*

may mean, according to circumstances, to ride on one horse or on several horses, on one mare or on several mares.

*Hīto ga kimashīta*  
*lit. person (nominative particle) has-come*

may mean either that one person has come, or that several people have come. Similarly the word *yama* may designate one mountain or many mountains, it being properly rather a kind of collective noun, like the German “das Gebirg.”

¶ 37. In the extremely rare cases in which it is absolutely indispensable to mention the sex of an animal, this can be done by the use of the prefixes *o*, “male,” and *me*, “female,” the resulting compound being sometimes slightly modified by euphony. Thus :

*ushi*, “any bovine animal.”  
*o-ushi*, “a bull,” “an ox.”  
*me-ushi*, “a cow.”  
*ūma*, “any equine animal.”

|                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| <i>omma</i> ,    | “a horse.”          |
| <i>menma</i> ,   | “a mare.”           |
| <i>tori</i> ,    | “a bird,” “a fowl.” |
| <i>ondori</i> ,  | “a cock.”           |
| <i>mendori</i> , | “a hen.”            |

The words *otoko*, “man,” and *osu*, “male;” *onna*, “woman,” and *mesu*, “female,” subserve the same purpose, thus :

*ko*, “a child;” *otoko no ko*, “a boy;” *onna no ko*, “a girl.”  
man 's child                      woman 's child

*inu*, “any canine animal;”  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \textit{osu} \textit{ } \textit{inu}, \\ \textit{inu no osu}, \\ \textit{mesu no inu}, \\ \textit{inu no mesu}, \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{“a dog;”} \\ \text{“a bitch.”} \end{array}$

Such a phrase as

*Osu desū ka, mesu desū ka?* } “Is it a male or a  
Male is ? female is ? } female?”

may mean “Is it a horse or a mare?” “Is it a gander or a goose?” “Is it a he or a she-ass?” etc., etc., according to circumstances. The words *osu* and *mesu* are never applied to human beings, whereas the words *otoko* and *onna* are applied indifferently to human beings and to other living creatures.

¶ 38. In a very few cases, chiefly the names of the degrees of relationship, the sexes are distinguished by the use of different words, thus :

|                  |                     |                  |                |
|------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>chichi</i> ,  | “father;”           | <i>haha</i> ,    | “mother.”      |
| <i>ototsan</i> , | “papa;”             | <i>okkāsan</i> , | “mamma.”       |
| <i>ojiisan</i> , | “grandpapa,”        | <i>obāsan</i> ,  | “grandmamma,”  |
|                  | “an old gentleman;” |                  | “an old lady.” |
| <i>oji</i> ,     | “uncle;”            | <i>oba</i> ,     | “aunt.”        |



*ani*, "elder brother;"     *ane*, "elder sister."  
*otōto*, "younger brother;"     *imōto*, "younger sister."

¶ 39. What we call the singular number is occasionally indicated by the use of the word *hītotsu* or *ichi*, "one," thus :

*hako hītotsu*,                     "one box."  
*ichi-nen*,                             "one year."

¶ 40. The idea of plurality, universality, or variety is occasionally indicated by doubling the word, thus :

*hō-bō*, "everywhere;" from *hō*, "a side."  
*iro-iro*, "all sorts;" from *iro*, "a sort" (properly  
"a colour").

*kuni-guni*, "various countries;" from *kuni*, "a country."  
*tokoro-dokoro*, "many places," "here and there;"  
from *tokoro*, "a place."

As exemplified in these words, the second member of such compounds almost always takes the *nigori*, when it begins with a consonant capable of so doing.

¶ 41. Another method of expressing plurality is by agglutinating certain particles, viz. *gata*, *tachi*, *shu* (often pronounced *shi*), *domo*, and *ra*, to the end of the word, thus :

*okūsama-gata*, "ladies;" from *okūsama*, "a lady,"  
"my lady."

*shikwan-tachi*, "officials;"     ,, *shikwan*, "an official."

*onna-shu*, "women;"     ,, *onna*, "a woman."

*onna-domo*, "women;"     ,, *onna*, "a woman."

*kuruma-ya-ra*, "jinrikīsha-men;" from "kuruma-ya,"  
"a jinrikīsha-man."

The order in which the foregoing particles and examples are given is that of a gradually decreasing politeness. There is, indeed, no great difference between *gata* and

*tachi*, but both are certainly more polite than the three that follow them. *Onna-shu* may be used in speaking of the female attendants of another; *onna-domo* is better in speaking of the female attendants in one's own household. The suffix *ra* is decidedly familiar.

¶ 42. Numerous as are the above particles, the idea of plurality is not always very clearly expressed even by their help. Thus, whereas *ko* may mean "children" as well as "child," the ostensibly plural form *ko-domo* may mean "child" as well as "children." In this particular instance, but scarcely in any others, we may, in order to get an undoubted plural, superadd one suffix to another, and say *ko-domo-ra* or *ko-domo-shu*, "children."

¶ 43. We may also (chiefly in vocables borrowed from the Chinese) prefix certain words in order to obtain a sort of plural; thus:

*ban-koku*, "all countries," "international;" from *ban*, "ten thousand," and *koku*, "a country."

*sho-kun*, "gentlemen;" from *sho*, "all," and *kun*, "prince," "Mr."

*su-nen*, "many years;" from *sū*, "number," and *nen*, "a year."

*N. B.* None of the Chinese words here given—*ban*, *koku*, *sho*, etc.—can be used alone, but occur only in compounds. Observe the shortening of *sū* to *su*,—not obligatory, but usual.

¶ 44. But though the ways of indicating sex and number are thus various, it cannot be sufficiently borne in mind that they are all more or less exceptional, and are scarcely found except in a limited number of cases which usage has sanctioned. Distinctions of sex and even of number are not dwelt on at every moment by the Japanese, as they are by the European, mind.

## COMPOUND NOUNS.

¶ 45. Compound nouns are very numerous, and can be formed at will. They generally consist either of two nouns, or of a noun preceded or followed by the stem of an adjective (conf. ¶ 183), or by the "indefinite form" (see ¶ 221 and ¶ 241) of a verb. As the indefinite forms of verbs are themselves constantly used as nouns, two such forms may combine to constitute a compound noun. The following are specimens of the various sorts of compound nouns :—

*furo-ba*, "a bath-room," from *furo*, "a bath," and *ba* (used only in composition), "a place."

*te-bukuro*, "gloves;" from *te*, "the hand," and *fūkuro*, "a bag."

*tetsudō-basha*, "a street-car;" from *tetsudō*, "a railway," and *basha*, "a carriage."

*kuro-megane*, "black goggles;" from *kuroi*, "black," and *megane*, "spectacles." (*Megane* is itself a compound of *me*, "eye," and *kane*, "metal.")

*tō-megane*, "a telescope;" from *tōi*, "far," and *megane*, "spectacles."

*me-kura*, "a blind person," lit. "eye-dark;" from *me*, "the eye," and *kurai*, "dark."

*kai-mono*, "a purchase," "shopping;" from *kau*, "to buy," and *mono*, "a thing."

*kake-mono*, "a hanging scroll," from *kakeru*, "to hang" (trans.), and *mono*, "a thing."

*yake-do*, "a burn;" from *yakeru*, "to burn" (intrans.), and *to* (for *tokoro*), "a place."

*ki-chigai*, "a lunatic;" from *ki*, "spirit," and *chigau*, "to differ," "to be wrong."

*mono-oki*, "an out-house;" from *mono*, "a thing," and *oku*, "to put."

*te-nugui*, "a towel;" from *te*, "the hand," and *nuguu*, "to wipe."

*haki-dame*, "a dust heap;" from *haku*, "to sweep," and *tameru*, "to collect together" (trans.).

*hiki-dashi*, "a drawer;" from *hiku*, "to pull," and *dasu*, "to take out."

*make-oshimi*, "unwillingness to acknowledge oneself beaten" (e. g. the fox in the fable, who said that "the grapes were sour"); from *makeru*, "to be defeated," and *oshimu*, "to regret."

*N. B.* Observe the tendency of the second member of the compound to take the *nigori* (Conf. ¶ 28).

¶ 46. The forms indicating gender and some of those indicating number are really compounds, as may be seen by reference to ¶ 37 and ¶ 43. So are the augmentatives formed by prefixing *ō*, the root of *ōkū*, "big," and the diminutives formed by prefixing *ko*, "child" (very rarely *o*, "small"), thus:

|                 |            |                    |                           |
|-----------------|------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>baka</i> ,   | "a fool;"  | <i>ō-baka</i> ,    | "a great fool."           |
| <i>ishi</i> ,   | "a stone;" | <i>ko-ishi</i> ,   | "a pebble."               |
| <i>nezumi</i> , | "a rat;"   | <i>ō-nezumi</i> ,  | "a large rat;"            |
|                 |            | <i>ko-nezumi</i> , | "a small rat," "a mouse." |

*N. B.* The names of the young of animals are formed by means of *ko*, either by prefixing it as a particle, or by using it as a separate word, thus:

|             |                           |    |                        |              |
|-------------|---------------------------|----|------------------------|--------------|
| <i>lit.</i> | <i>inu no ko</i> ,        | or | <i>ko-inu</i> ,        | } "a puppy." |
|             | <i>dog 's child</i> ,     |    | <i>child-dog</i>       |              |
| <i>lit.</i> | <i>mukade no ko</i> ,     | }  | } "a young centipede." |              |
|             | <i>centipede 's child</i> |    |                        |              |

Usage evinces certain preferences in this matter. Thus, though *inu no ko* and *ko-inu* are indifferently employed to signify "puppy," one cannot call the young of the centipede *ko-mukade*. It is obligatory to say *mukade no ko*.

¶ 47. In all the examples of compounds hitherto quoted, one of the two members is subordinated to the other. Sometimes, however, the two members of the compound are co-ordinated, thus :

*tsūki-hi*, "months (and) days."

*sō-moku*, "herbs (and) trees." (This is a Chinese compound, the component parts of which are not used alone.)

But though they are closely joined in pronunciation, there would be no harm in considering these as separate words, and in so writing them, especially if they are native Japanese terms, thus :

*ani otōto*, "elder brother (and) younger brother," i.e., "brothers."

*ane imōto*, "elder sister (and) younger sister," i.e., "sisters."

*umi kawa*, "(the) sea (and) the rivers."

*tsūki hi hoshi*, "(the) moon, sun, (and) stars."

Co-ordinated compounds are sometimes obtained by abbreviation, after the manner of the following :

*Ei-Bei*, "England and America," from *Ei-koku*, "England," and *Bei-koku*, "America," by dropping the second half of each.

*sak-kon*, "yesterday and to-day," from *saku-jūsu*, "yesterday," and *kon-nichi*, "to-day."

This occurs only in words taken from the Chinese language, which esteems nothing so much as brevity.

*N. B.* The order of such compounds cannot be reversed. *Bei-Li* or *kon-saku* would not be understood.

¶ 48. Such co-ordination sometimes assumes a peculiar form, which has been aptly named "the synthesis of contradictories," because from two terms of opposite signification there results a third abstract term giving the mean of the two, thus :

|                  |                       |                             |
|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>en-kin</i> ,  | "far-near,"           | i. e., "distance."          |
| <i>kan-dan</i> , | "cold-heat,"          | i. e., "temperature."       |
| <i>nan-nyo</i> , | "man-woman,"          | i. e., "sex."               |
| <i>sei-sui</i> , | "prosperity-decline," | i. e., "the ups and downs," |
|                  | "the fortunes,"       | of a family, kingdom, &c.   |

The above are Chinese vocables. As pure Japanese examples, though not nouns, we may take

|                     |             |                                                      |
|---------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>aru-nashi</i> ,  | "is-isn't," | i. e., "(the question of) the existence of a thing." |
| <i>yoshi-ashi</i> , | "good-bad," | i. e., "degree of excellence,"                       |
|                     | "quality."  |                                                      |

The use of these convenient expressions, which is borrowed from Chinese grammar, is chiefly confined to persons of education.

¶ 49. The student should note the difference in construction between genuine native compounds and those derived from the Chinese, when one member of the compound is a verb governing the other. In genuine Japanese compounds the verb comes last, as in English, thus :

*hara-kiri*, lit. "belly-cutting," the old form of legalised suicide.

*kami-hasami*, "hair-cutting." (*hasamu* = "to cut with scissors," whereas *kiru* is "to cut" in general.)

In Chinese compounds, on the contrary, the verb comes first. Take, for instance, the elegant Chinese synonyms for *hara-kiri* and *kami-hasami*, which are preferred by cultured speakers, viz.

*sep-puku*, from *setsu*, "to cut," and *fūku*, "belly."

*zam-patsu*, ,, *zan*, "to cut," ,, *hatsu*, "hair."

*N. B.* Hyphens need not be used so freely as we, for etymological purposes, have here done. A hyphen is, however, indispensable between the two members of such compounds as *gen-an*, "the draft of a document," where a final *n* is followed by an initial vowel. (Conf. ¶ 23, p. 16, under the heading of *N.*)

Quite a number of compounds are hybrid, that is, partly native, partly Chinese, as *omote-mon*, "a front gate; *Nihon-bashi*, "Japan bridge" (the name of a bridge in Tōkyō), where *mon* and *Nihon* are Chinese, the other half of each Japanese.

#### COMPOSITION A GREAT FACTOR IN WORD-BUILDING.

¶ 50. The student interested in etymology will gradually discover that almost all long Japanese words and many short ones are really compounds, though their composite origin has often been forgotten even by the Japanese themselves. Thus *michi*, "a road," is from *mi*, an honorific prefix, and *chi*, the original word for "road." *Mikado*, "the Imperial Court," hence "the Emperor," is from the same *mi*, and *kado*, "a gate" (compare the "Sublime Porte" of Turkey).\* *Kagami*, "a mirror," is from *kage*,

---

\* Sir Ernest Satow prefers to derive *mikado* from the archaic *mika*, "great," and *to* (*nigori*'ed to *do*), "place."

“shadow,” “reflection,” and *miru*, “to see.”\* Place-names are almost always compounds which can be easily resolved into their constituent elements, as *Yoko-hama*, “cross strand;” *E-do* (Yedo), “inlet door;” *Ara-kawa*, “rough river;” *Ō-shima*, “big island;” *Fuji-san*, “Fuji mountain,” “Fusiyama” (the etymology of *Fuji* is obscure, but probably the name is of Aino origin); *Miya<sup>1</sup>-no<sup>2</sup>-shīta<sup>3</sup>*, “below<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> Shintō-shrine<sup>1</sup>,” i.e. “beneath the shrine;” *E<sup>1</sup>-no<sup>2</sup>-shīma<sup>3</sup>*, “island<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> inlet<sup>1</sup>.” Similarly in the case of surnames, most of which are of geographical origin, being borrowed from the names of the localities where the persons who first assumed them resided, thus *Ko-bayashi*, “small forest;” *I<sup>1</sup>-no<sup>2</sup>-ue<sup>3</sup>*, “above<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> (the) well<sup>1</sup>;” *Ta<sup>1</sup>-naka<sup>2</sup>*, “among<sup>2</sup> (the) rice-fields<sup>1</sup>;” *Yama-da*, “mountain rice-field,” etc. Men’s personal names, answering to our Christian names, are also nearly always compounds. Unfortunately few of these personal names can be translated, founded, as they are, on allusions to texts in the Chinese Classics, to feudal functions now obsolete, to cyclical signs, and to other recondite matters. Such names as *Ta-rō*, “big male,”

---

\* In previous editions the word *yane*, “roof,” was cited in this context as having been derived from *ya*, the original word for “house” (which we also find in *yashiki*, “a mansion;” *kutsu-ya*, “a shoemaker’s shop,” etc.), and *nune*, “the breast,” hence “the ridge of a roof.” This etymology, borrowed from the Japanese grammarians, seems disproved by the form of the parallel term in Luchuan,—*yā nu wī*, which corresponds, letter for letter, to Japanese *ya no ue*, lit. “top of house,” whence we may suppose *yane* to have resulted by contraction. This instance may serve to show how uncertain is the basis on which Japanese derivations often rest, in the absence of a tribe of related tongues to serve as a sufficiently broad standard of comparison. Native philologists of the old school—even such great men as Motoori and Hirata—too often permitted themselves to be guided by their “inner consciousness” alone, like our own Western philologists of former centuries.



i. e., "eldest son;" *Ji-rō*, "second (lit. next) son;" *Saburō* (for *San-rō*), "third son," etc., are sufficiently clear.

*N. B.* For women's personal names, see ¶ 418.

All Chinese words of more than one character are compounds, e. g. *chawan*, "a tea-cup," from *cha*, "tea," and *wan*, "a bowl;" *sendō*, "a boatman,"—properly "the master of a junk,"—from *sen*, "junk," "vessel," and *tō* (*nigori*'ed to *dō*), "head," "chief;" *Tōkyō* from *tō*, "east," and *kyō*, "capital city," etc., etc.

¶ 51. As shown in the foregoing examples of *michi*, "road," and *Mikado*, "Emperor," honorific prefixes sometimes enter into the actual formation of words. Generally, however, they are felt to be distinct entities, and are therefore written separately, as

|                    |                                |                               |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>o cha,</i>      | lit. "honourable tea,"         | i. e., "tea."                 |
| <i>go mottomo,</i> | lit. "augustly right,"         | i. e., "you are quite right." |
| <i>o mi ashi,</i>  | lit. "honourable august feet," | i. e., "your feet."           |

For more detailed information concerning the honorifics, which form so important and all-pervading an element of Japanese speech, see Chapter XI.

VARIOUS KINDS OF NOUNS.

¶ 52. Abstract nouns, expressing degree as well as quality, are often derived from adjective stems by agglutinating the syllable *sa*, thus :

|                                                             |  |                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>atsūsa</i> , "heat," "the degree of heat."               |  | <i>samusa</i> , "cold," "the degree of cold."            |
| <i>omoshirosa</i> , "fun," "interest," "the degree of fun." |  | <i>shirosa</i> , "whiteness," "the degree of whiteness." |

A tinge or *souppon* of a quality, hence sometimes the actual quality itself, and even the object possessing the quality, may be denoted by the termination *mi* agglutinated to an adjective stem, thus :

*akami*, "a tinge of red."

*omoshiromi*, "(a certain amount of) fun."

*shiro mi*, "a tinge of white," "the white of an egg."

*Amami ga usū* }  
Sweetness (nom.) thin } "It isn't quite sweet enough."  
*gozaimasū.*  
is.

¶ 53. These nouns in *sa* and *mi* must be distinguished from the periphrasis formed by means of an adjective or verb and the word *koto*, "(an abstract) thing," "a fact," "an act," "a state," as

*atsui koto*, "heat," "the fact of being hot."

*kitanai koto*, "dirtiness," "the fact that something is dirty."

*shiroi koto*, "whiteness," "the fact that something is white."

*machigatta koto*, {"a mistake," "the fact that some  
lit. mistook thing } one has made a mistake."

*shimpo suru koto*, {"progress" (the noun); also "to  
lit. progress makes thing } progress" (the verb).

*on wo shiranai koto*, } "ingratitude."  
lit. kindness (accus. particle) ignores thing }

In speaking of the blade of a fine sword, one might say :

*Sono kissaki no surudo i koto,*  
Its point 's sharp state,  
*sono yaki no uruwashii koto,*  
its annealing's beautiful state,  
*hīto-me mitc mo sugu samusa*  
one-eye seeing even, at-once coldness  
*wo oboeru kurai da.*  
(accus.) feel amount is.

"So sharp is its point,  
so fine its edge, that  
the merest glance at it  
gives you a shiver."

These periphrases in *koto* are often used exclamatorily, thus :

*Atsui koto!*      “Oh! how hot it is!”  
*Kūsai koto!*      “Oh! what a horrid smell!”

¶ 54. Parallel to the abstract nouns in *koto*, are concrete nouns in *mono*. While *koto* denotes “a thing of the mind,” “a fact,” “an act,” *mono* almost always denotes a tangible, material thing or person, thus :

*deki-mono,*      } “a bad place,” “an abscess.”  
*lit. coming-out thing* }  
*kūsai mono,*      “a smelly thing.”  
*shiroi mono,*      “a white thing.”  
*shōjiki-mono,*    “an honest fellow.”

This distinction between *koto*, “an abstract thing,” and *mono*, “a material thing,” must be clearly kept in mind, if the student would avoid constant misapprehension. Thus *onaji mono* means “the same thing,” “the identical article,” whereas *onaji koto* means “the same sort of thing,”—the quality, pattern, etc., being the same, but the actual article a different one. For *mono wo* at the end of a sentence, see ¶ 287.

*Mono no*, or *to wa iu mono no*, has a very curious use, whose origin is unknown, but which may most easily be parsed by assuming *no* to stand for *nagara*, “while,” “whereas:”—

*Rikutsu de wa kō iu mono* }  
**Theory by indeed, thus say thing** } “That is all very fine  
*no, jissai wa yohodo* } in theory, but it is mighty  
*whereas, practice as-for, very* } hard in practice.”  
*muzukashii.* }  
*difficult (is).* }

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |   |                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Baka da to wa iu mono</i><br/> <i>Fool is that indeed say thing</i><br/> <i>no, sūkoshi no yō ni</i><br/> <i>while, little 's business in</i><br/> <i>wa ma ni aimasū.</i><br/> <i>indeed, space to conforms.</i></p> | } | <p>“Fool as he is, he is<br/> capable of making him-<br/> self useful in minor<br/> matters.”</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ 55. The names of shops are denoted by the termination *ya*, “house,” as :

*hon-ya*, “a book-store ;” from *hon*, “a book.”

*niku-ya*, “a butcher’s shop ;” from *niku*, “flesh.”

*pan-ya*, “a bakery,” from *pan*, “bread.”

*Kame-ya*, lit. “tortoise house” (or, as we might say, “At the Sign of the Tortoise”), the name of a grocery in Tōkyō well-known to foreign residents.

Owing to the general Japanese habit of naming persons after places, such words as the above come to denote, not only the “book-store,” the “butcher’s shop,” and the “bakery,” but by extension the “bookseller,” the “butcher,” and the “baker” themselves. Sometimes indeed the person only, and not the place, is thus designated, as :

*kuruma-ya*, “a jinrikīsha-man”

*shimbun-ya*, “a newspaper man.”

¶ 56. Names of trees and plants often terminate in *ki*, “tree,” or in its *nigori*’ed form *gi*, thus :

*hagi*, “the lespedeza.”

*mugi*, “wheat, “bar-  
ley.”

*sugi*, “the crypto-  
meria.”

*susūki*, “the eulalia” (a  
kind of tall grass).

*tsubaki*, “the camellia-  
tree.”

*yanagi*, “the willow-  
tree.”

Names of rivers end in *kawa* (generally *nigori*’ed to *gawa*), “river ;” names of stretches of sea in *nada* : those

of islands in *shima* (often *nigori*'ed to *jima*); those of mountains in *yama* or *san* (*zan*), thus:

|                                                                                                                  |                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ōkawa</i> , lit. "Great River."                                                                               | to several islands off                                                                |
| <i>Sumida-gawa</i> , "the River Sumida."                                                                         | the Japanese coast.                                                                   |
| <i>Bungo-nada</i> , the stretch of sea near the province of Bungo, separating the islands of Kyūshū and Shikoku. | <i>Ogasawara-jima</i> , "the Bonin Islands;" named after their discoverer, Ogasawara. |
| <i>Kojima</i> , lit. "Small Island," a name common                                                               | <i>Asama-yama</i> , "Mount Asama."<br><i>Bandai-san</i> , "Mount Bandai."             |

¶ 57. The nouns *aida*, "interval;" *hazu*, "necessity;" *toki*, "time;" and *tokoro*, "place," often assume grammatical functions perplexing to the beginner. *Aida* comes to correspond to our conjunction "while," *hazu* to our verbs "ought" or "should," *toki* to our conjunction "when," thus:

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |   |                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sō suru aida.</i><br><i>So do interval.</i>                                                                                                                                                                      | } | "While we were doing so."                                           |
| <i>Mō kuru hazu da.</i><br><i>Already comes necessity is.</i>                                                                                                                                                       | } | "He ought to be here by this time."                                 |
| <i>Areba, jiki ni kiku</i><br><i>If-there-were, immediately hear</i><br><i>hazu da ga,—mada sō iu</i><br><i>necessity is although, still such</i><br><i>koto wo kikimasen.</i><br><i>fact (accus.) (I)hear not.</i> | } | "If anything of that kind had happened, I should have heard of it." |

*N. B.* Observe the suppressed negative which *hazu* almost always implies. Observe, too, that *hazu* is often strengthened by a preceding *beki*, "should," "ought," thus: *Areba, jiki ni kiku-beki hazu da ga*, etc. (Conf. ¶ 178 and ¶ 192.)

*Nochi ni, yō no nai toki,* } “I will tell you about  
*Afterwards, business's is-not time,* } it later, when I am at  
*hanashimashō.* } leisure.”  
*(I) will-probably-speak.*

*Toki ni* at the beginning of a sentence is a sort of expletive corresponding more or less to our “by the way.”

¶ 58. More difficult than any of the above are the uses of *tokoro*, which, from the original concrete sense of “place,” has come to be used in various abstract meanings. Sometimes, like *koto*, it assumes the signification of “a thing of the mind,” “a matter,” “a subject,” “a quality,” as in the following example :

*Kyūkin no tokoro wa, tsūki ni* } “Coming now to  
*Wage 's matter as-for, month in,* } the matter of wages,  
*jū-en tsukawashimashō.* } I may say that I will  
*ten-dollars (I) will-probably-give.* } give you ten dollars  
 a month.”

A good instance of *tokoro*, as equivalent to our suffix “...ness” used to form abstract substantives, occurs at the end of ¶ 280.

In the middle of a sentence, *tokoro*, especially when followed by *ye*, is apt to assume the force of some such conjunction as “while,” “whereupon,” “when,” “just as,” thus :

*Chōdo deru tokoro ye, kyaku* } “A visitor came just  
*Exactly go-out when, guest* } as I was on the point  
*ga mieta.* } of going out.”  
*(nom.) appeared.*

*Tokoro ga* implies opposition, thus :

*Ima-jibun irasshita tokoro ga,* } “Even if you do go  
*Now-time deigned-to-go even-if,* } now, you are not likely  
*o rusu deshō.* } to find him at home.”  
*honourably absent will-probably-be.*

Similarly at the beginning of a sentence, *tokoro de* means "thereupon" or "and so," while *tokoro ga* means "nevertheless," "still," "all the same," sometimes "it occurs to me that." Another grammatical use of *tokoro* is that in which it corresponds to some extent to the relative pronouns of European languages, as explained in ¶ 86.

*Tokoro* is often, in familiar talk, *nigori*'ed to *dokoro*, and then expresses an almost scornfully strong degree of affirmation. For instance, a male visitor hazards the remark that his hostess's baby is old enough to creep along the floor. The fond mother, indignant at having her offspring's powers rated so low, retorts :

|                                                                                               |   |                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hau dokoro ja nai; yoku</i><br>Creep place isn't; well<br><i>arukimasū.</i><br>(he) walks. | } | "It is no case of<br>creeping, I can assure<br>you. Why! he walks<br>beautifully." |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Similarly :

|                                                                                                              |   |                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Fomeru dokoro ka ? kōshaku</i><br>Able-to-read place ? lecture<br><i>mo dekimasū.</i><br>even forthcomes. | } | "Able to read, in-<br>deed! Why! he de-<br>livers lectures." |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ 59. Many nouns are simply the indefinite forms of verbs used substantively, somewhat like our English nouns in "...ing," such as "the beginning," which is properly a part of the verb "to begin." Here are a few examples :

|                              |      |                                      |
|------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>akinai</i> , "trade;"     | from | <i>akinau</i> , "to trade."          |
| <i>hori</i> , "a canal;"     | ,,   | <i>horu</i> , "to excavate."         |
| <i>tatami</i> , "a mat;"     | ,,   | <i>tatamu</i> , "to pile up."        |
| <i>tsure</i> , "companions;" | ,,   | <i>tsureru</i> , "to take with one." |
| <i>warai</i> , "laughter;"   | ,,   | <i>warau</i> , "to laugh."           |
| <i>yorokobi</i> , "joy;"     | ,,   | <i>yorokobu</i> , "to rejoice."      |

## NOUNS USED AS ADJECTIVES.

¶ 60. The Japanese parts of speech do not exactly coincide with ours (see ¶ 9), and nouns are much more extensively used in this language than in English. We shall see in the next chapter that the so-called pronouns are really nouns. True adjectives also are scarce, and are frequently replaced by nouns, just as in English we say “a *gold* chain,” “a *sugar-plum*,” “the *Paris* fashions,” “a thing *of beauty*.” The chief ways in which a noun may do duty for an adjective are :

¶ 61. I. As first member of a compound, thus :

*Amerika-jin*, lit. “America person,” i. e., “an American.”

*doro-ashi*, „ “mud feet,” „ “muddy feet.”

*Nihon-go*, „ “Japan words,” „ “the Japanese language.”

¶ 62. II. Followed by the postposition *no*, “of,”—the order of the words, it should be noted, being the reverse of that followed in English, thus :

*atari<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> keishoku<sup>3</sup>*, lit. “scenery<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> neighbourhood<sup>1</sup>, i. e., “the surrounding scenery.”

*kinjo no tōbutsu-ya*, lit. “Chinese-thing-shop of vicinity,” i. e., “a neighbouring general shop.”

*mukashi no hito*, lit. “people of antiquity,” i. e., “the ancients.”

¶ 63. III. Followed by the word *na* (see ¶ 197), thus :

*baka<sup>1</sup> na<sup>2</sup> yatsu<sup>3</sup>*, “a foolish<sup>1</sup> (being<sup>2</sup>) fellow<sup>3</sup>.”

*chōhō na kikai*, “a convenient machine.”

*heta na e-kaki*, “an unskilful painter.”

*jōzu na e-kaki*, “a skilful painter.”

*kirei na musūme*, “a pretty girl.”

*odayaka na nami*, “a calm sea” (lit. “calm waves”).



Some of these words—*kirei*, for instance,—are so constantly used as adjectives, that their proper sense as nouns tends to pass out of remembrance. In the cases where it is preserved, the word takes *no* after it when it is used as a noun, and *na* when it is used as an adjective, thus :

*heta<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> naga<sup>3</sup>-dangi<sup>4</sup>*, “the long<sup>3</sup> speech<sup>4</sup> of<sup>2</sup> an unskilful<sup>1</sup> (speaker),” a proverb signifying that bad speakers are apt to say more than the occasion requires.

*heta<sup>1</sup> na<sup>2</sup> isha<sup>3</sup> sama<sup>4</sup>*, lit. “unskilful<sup>1</sup> being<sup>2</sup> physician Mr<sup>4</sup>,” i. e. “an unskilful doctor.” (*Jōzu* 上手 corresponds almost literally to the English “a good hand at,” and *heta* 下手 to “a bad hand at.”)

*N. B.* Conf. also ¶ 197.

## NOUNS USED AS ADVERBS.

¶ 64. When followed by the postposition *ni*, “in,” or *de*, “by,” nouns such as those above instanced often correspond to European adverbs, thus :

*baka ni*, “foolishly.”

*gwaikoku ni* or *de*, “abroad.” (*gwaikoku* = “outer countries,” i. e., “foreign countries.”)

*jōzu ni*, “skilfully.”

Sometimes they are taken adverbially, even though no postposition be suffixed, thus :

*konnichi*, “this day,” or “to-day.”

*mukashi*, “antiquity,” ,, “anciently,” “formerly.”

For nouns used as postpositions, see ¶ 141 *et seq.*

## CHAPTER IV.

### *The Pronoun.*

---

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

- ¶ 65. The Japanese words corresponding to the personal pronouns of European languages are simply nouns whose original significations are quite clear, and which are indeed still often used with those significations. Except for the sake of convenience to foreign students, it would not be necessary to discuss them apart from nouns in general. They belong to the category of such descriptive expressions as "your humble servant," "your ladyship," "His Majesty." Self-depreciatory terms are naturally preferred in speaking of oneself (1st. person), and complimentary terms in speaking to other people (2nd. person), also sometimes in speaking *of* other people (3rd. person).
- ¶ 66. The most usual equivalent for "I" is *watakushi*, lit. "selfishness." The vulgar often contract it to *watashi* and *washi*. Other nouns now current in the same sense are *boku*, "servant," which is much affected by young men in familiarly addressing each other; *sessha*, "the awkward person;" *shōsei*, "junior." *Ore* is a very vulgar corruption of *ware*, which is the commonest word for "I" in the Written Language. *Orā*, which may often be heard from the mouths of coolies, stands for *ore wa*.
- ¶ 67. The following equivalents for "you" are all in common use:—*anata*, a contraction of *ano kata*, "that side," "beyond" (which meaning is still retained in poetry, as

*kumo no anata*, "beyond the clouds"). *Anata* is a polite expression ; with the addition of *sama*, "Mr.," "Mrs.," "Miss," "Lord," "Lady," it is supremely polite. *Omae*, lit. "honourably in front," was formerly polite, but is now only used in addressing inferiors, such as coolies, one's own servants, one's own children, etc. *Omae san* (*san* is short for *sama*) stands half-way between *anata* and *omae* in politeness. It is much used by women. *Sensei*, "senior," is used chiefly in addressing men or women of learning. *Danna san*, "Mr. Master," is used by a servant in addressing his master, and by inferiors generally. *Kimi*, "prince," is chiefly used by young men in addressing each other familiarly. Besides the above may be mentioned *Heika*, lit. "beneath the steps of the throne,"

*N. B.* Reverence naturally restrains loyal subjects from addressing the throne itself :—they raise their eyes no higher than the ground below the steps leading up to it.

i. e. "Your Majesty ;" *Kakka* "beneath the council-chamber," i. e. "Your Excellency ;" *sono hō*, "that side," the equivalent for "you" employed in the law-courts by legal officers ; *kisama*, an insulting term used in addressing an inferior with whom one is angry.

*N. B.* Etymologically *kī-sama* means "exalted Sir ;" but, like many other words, it has fallen from its former high estate.

The word *temae*, lit. "before the hand," is remarkable ; for it may be used either as a very humble and therefore polite equivalent for "I," or as an insulting equivalent for "you." In the sense of "you," it formerly had the honorific *o* prefixed. The rude use of it came in through the dropping of the honorific.

¶ 68. *Sensei*, *Danna san*, *Heika*, and *Kakka* are as appropriate for the third person ("he" or "she"), when speaking

politely, as for the second. *Anata* may also occasionally be heard in that sense. Much in use also for "he" and "she" are *ano hito*, "that person," more politely *ano o kata*, lit. "that honourable side;" *ano oloko*, "that man;" *ano onna*, "that woman;" *ano ojūsan*, "that old gentleman;" *ano obāsan*, "that old lady;" etc. *Mukō*, lit. "the opposite side," i.e., the other party," not infrequently represents "he," "she," or "they." *Are*, "that," is also sometimes used for "he" or "she," but it is not at all polite, and more often refers to things, i.e., it means "it." The vague English "you" or "one," which corresponds to French "on" and German "man," has no equivalent in Japanese. Thus, "to clap one's hands" is simply *te wo tataku*, lit. "hands (accus.) clap." "You can't tell" (meaning "one has no means of knowing") is simply *shiremasen*, which might equally well stand for "I can't tell."

*N. B.* The word *hito* has been adduced by some as an equivalent of the French impersonal "on." But it is not really so, as it always retains its proper sense of "person," "people," especially "other people."

¶ 69. Like other nouns—indeed more frequently than other nouns—the so-called personal pronouns may take the plural suffixes mentioned on page 29. The following forms are sanctioned by usage :

|                                               |           |                                |          |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|----------|
| <i>watakūshi-domo</i>                         | } "we."   | <i>anata-gata</i>              | } "you." |
| <i>boku-ra</i>                                |           | <i>omae-[san-]gata</i>         |          |
| <i>sessha-domo</i>                            |           | <i>omae-[san-]tachi</i>        |          |
| <i>sessha-ra</i>                              |           | <i>sensei-gata</i>             |          |
| <i>oira</i> (for <i>ore-ra</i> , very vulgar) |           | <i>danna-shu</i>               |          |
| <i>ano hito-tachi</i>                         | } "they." | <i>danna-gata</i>              | }        |
| <i>ano o kata-gata</i>                        |           | <i>kimi-tachi</i>              |          |
| <i>are-ra</i> (rude)                          |           | <i>kīsama-tachi</i>            |          |
|                                               |           | <i>temae-<i>l</i>(a)chi-ra</i> |          |



extremely rare use that is made of them. Except in cases of special emphasis or antithesis, the information concerning persons which is in European languages conveyed by means of pronouns, is left to be gathered from the context. Thus the single word *kaerimashita* will mean "I have come back," or "he, she or they have come back," according to the previous drift of the conversation.

*Kore kara furo wo tsūkaimashō,* } i.e., "Will now  
*This from, bath (accus.) will-use,* } take a bath."

naturally means "I will now take my bath;" for it is almost a matter of course that, in such personal things, each individual can speak only for himself. I can only eat my own dinner, probably love only my own country, and work only to support my own wife and children. To be, therefore, for ever reiterating and harping on the words "I," "me," "my," "you," "he," etc., seems to Japanese ears absurd and tedious tautology. A Japanese will often discourse for half-an-hour without using a single personal pronoun. The perpetual recurrence of *watakūshi* and *anata* is one of the surest signs of a clumsy foreign speaker, who translates his own idiom into Japanese, instead of thinking impersonally as the Japanese do. These remarks will lead the intelligent student to observe that most of the examples scattered throughout the present work are susceptible of being variously rendered. Where, for instance, we have put "I," it would often be equally correct to insert "he," "she," or "they," in its stead. The use of "you," that is of the second person, in English generally necessitates some change in the Japanese phrase, especially if an equal or superior be addressed. This point will be elucidated in the Chapter on Honorifics, ¶ 392 *et seq.*, a chapter which the student would do well to read through in connection

with what has here been said on the subject of personal pronouns.

## REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

¶ 72. The word "self" may be expressed by *jibun* (less often by *jishin*), commonly followed by the postposition *de*, thus :

|                                    |   |             |
|------------------------------------|---|-------------|
| <i>watakūshi jibun,</i>            | } | "myself."   |
| <i>watakūshi jishin,</i>           |   |             |
| <i>omae jibun</i> (not honorific), | } | "yourself." |
| <i>go jibun</i> (honorific),       |   |             |

*N. B.* The above occur only when the idea of "self" has to be emphasised. (Conf. ¶ 71, also ¶ 324.)

Another word for "self" is *onore*, which is also used as an insulting equivalent for "you."

*Waga*, a Classical form whose proper meaning is "my," may still sometimes be heard in the sense of "my own," "our own," "one's own," thus :

*waga kuni*, "my country," "one's country," "*la patrie*." But its use is chiefly confined to set speeches and lectures. So is that of the phrase *waga hai*, "we," more lit. "my fellows."

DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE  
PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

¶ 73. The demonstrative, interrogative, and indefinite pronouns, being marked by certain correspondences of sound and formation, may be best studied by means of the table which we give on the next page. The adverbs derived from the same roots are also given there, so that the learner may embrace all the kindred forms in one glance. He should note that Japanese, like Latin, distinguishes a nearer "that" (*sore*, Latin "iste") from a further "that"

| DEMONSTRATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>74.</p> <p><i>kore,</i><br/><i>kono,</i><br/><i>kō,</i><br/><i>konna,</i> }<br/><i>kō inu,</i> }<br/><i>koko,</i> }<br/><i>kochi(ya),</i> }<br/><i>kokoera,</i><br/><i>konata,</i></p> | <p>that (near).(Subst.)<br/>that (near).(Adj.)<br/>like that.<br/>{ that kind of,<br/>{ such as that.<br/>there.<br/>thereabouts.(near)<br/>you (rare).</p> | <p><i>are,</i><br/><i>ano,</i><br/><i>ā,</i><br/><i>anna,</i> }<br/><i>ā iu,</i> }<br/><i>asūko,</i> }<br/><i>achi(ya),</i> }<br/><i>asūkoera,</i><br/><i>anata,</i></p>                        | <p>that (far).(Subst.)<br/>that (far).(Adj.)<br/>like that.<br/>{ that kind of,<br/>{ such as that.<br/>there.<br/>thereabouts (far).<br/>you.</p>       |
| <p><i>dare ?</i><br/><i>nani ?</i></p>                                                                                                                                                    | <p>who ?<br/>what ?</p>                                                                                                                                     | <p><i>ikura ?</i> or<br/><i>ikani ?</i> " <i>ikaga ?</i><br/><i>ikutsu ?</i> " <i>ikunai ?</i> etc.</p>                                                                                         | <p>how much ?<br/>how ?<br/>how many ? (See ¶ 157 <i>et seq.</i>)</p>                                                                                    |
| INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                          |
| <p><i>dore-kā,</i><br/><i>dore mo,</i><br/><i>dore de mo,</i></p>                                                                                                                         | <p>{ one or other,<br/>{ some one (thing).<br/>any one (thing).<br/>either one, any<br/>one.</p>                                                            | <p><i>dare ka,</i> somebody (or<br/>other).<br/><i>dare mo,</i> everybody.<br/><i>dare de mo,</i> anybody, every<br/>body.</p>                                                                  | <p>(somehow (or<br/>other), would<br/>that! please.<br/>{ somehow (or<br/>other), really.<br/>anyhow.<br/>would that!<br/>please.</p>                    |
| <p><i>itsu ka,</i><br/><i>itsu mo,</i><br/><i>itsu de mo,</i></p>                                                                                                                         | <p>some time (or<br/>other).<br/>any time, always.<br/>any time what-<br/>ever, always.</p>                                                                 | <p>MORE POLITELY :<br/><i>donata ka,</i><br/><i>donata mo,</i><br/><i>donata de mo.</i></p>                                                                                                     | <p><i>dō de mo,</i><br/><i>dōzo,</i><br/><br/><i>doko ka,</i> somewhere (or other).<br/><i>doko mo,</i> everywhere.<br/><i>doko de mo,</i> anywhere.</p> |
| <p><i>ikura ka,</i><br/><i>ikura mo,</i><br/><i>ikura de mo,</i></p>                                                                                                                      | <p><i>ikutsu mo,</i> any number.<br/><i>ikura de mo,</i> any amount.<br/><i>ikura de mo,</i> any amount what-<br/>ever.</p>                                 | <p>Or<br/><i>dochi(va) ka.</i> } Also used for <i>dore ka,</i><br/><i>dore mo,</i><br/><i>dochi(va) mo.</i> } <i>dore de mo,</i> when only two are<br/><i>dochi(va) de mo.</i> } spoken of.</p> |                                                                                                                                                          |

N. B. *Are* and *ano* are sometimes replaced by their Classical equivalents *kare* and *kano*.



For *dōmo*? read *dono*?

(*are*, Latin “*ille*”), the former being used of things not very distant and of things connected with the person spoken to, while the latter is applied to things which are distant or have relation to the person spoken of. He must note furthermore that Japanese, like French, distinguishes substantive forms of these pronouns from adjective forms, e. g. *kore*, “*celui-ci*,” but *kono*, “*ce*.”

- ¶ 75. Here are a few examples of the use of the substantive forms *kore*, “*this*,” *sore*, “*that*” (near); *are*, “*that*” (far); *dore*? “*which?*” *dare*? or more politely *donata*? “*who?*”; *nani*? “*what?*”—

*Kore wa omoshiroi.* { i. e., “*As for this, it is amusing,*”  
*This us-for, amusing.* { or more briefly, “*This is fun.*”

*Sore wa, nan desū?* { “*What is that (which you have in*  
*That us-for, what?is(it)?* { your hand, etc.)?”

*Are wa, dare no uchi desū?* { “*Whose is that house*  
*That us-for, who of house is(it)?* { (over there)?”

*Dore ni shimashō?* { “*Which shall I take?*”  
*Which to shall-do?* }

*Nani wo suru?* { “*What are you doing?*”  
*What (accus.) do?* { (Said to an inferior. The polite equivalent  
 would be *Nani nasaru?*)

*Dare ga kimashita?* { “*Who has come?*”  
*Who (nom.) has-come?* { (*Donata ga mairaremashita?*  
 would be more polite.)

- ¶ 76. Here are some examples of the adjective forms *kono*, “*this*”; *sono*, “*that*” (near); *ano*, “*that*” (far); *dono*? “*which?*” and of the forms in *na* and *iu* :—

|                        |  |                                                 |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kono nedan.</i>     |  | “ <i>This price.</i> ”                          |
| <i>Konna nedan.</i>    |  | “ <i>This sort of price.</i> ”                  |
| <i>Sono mama.</i>      |  | “ <i>That way;</i> ” “ <i>as it is.</i> ”       |
| <i>Sonna koto.</i> }   |  | “ <i>That sort of thing.</i> ”                  |
| <i>Sō iu koto.</i> }   |  |                                                 |
| <i>Ano takai yama.</i> |  | { “ <i>That high mountain</i><br>(over there).” |

*Anna tohōmonai kake-ne.* { “Such an extravagant price  
*That-like outrageous overcharge.* } as that.”

(Said in speaking to a third party. In addressing the shopkeeper who was guilty of the overcharge, one would say *sonna*, not *anna*, because *sonna* corresponds to the second person, *anna* to the third.)

*Dono tsumori de ɾ* } “With what intention?”  
*What intention by?* }

*Dō iu tsumori de ɾ* } “With what kind of intention?”  
*How say intention by?* }

¶ 77. What we have here, for convenience' sake, termed adjective forms, are not adjectives properly so called. *Kono* was originally two words, viz. *ko*, “this” (substantive), and *no*, “of,” so that *kono* meant “of this.” Similarly in the case of *sono*, *ano*, and *dono ɾ*, which meant respectively “of that” (nearer) or “of him,” “of that” (further) or “of him,” and “of which?” They still preserve this their ancient sense in certain contexts, as :

*sono tame*, “(for the) sake of that.”

*sono oya*, “his (or her) parent.”

Similarly, *kono nedan*, translated above by “this price,” may also mean on an occasion “the price of this.”

*Konna*, “such,” is a contraction of *kono yō na*, lit. “this manner being,” i.e., “being in this way,” “being thus.” Similarly *sonna* is from *sono yō na*, *anna* from *ano yō na*, and *donna ɾ* from *dono yō na ɾ*. *Kō iu*, “such,” means literally “thus (they) say,” i.e. “people call it thus.” *Sō iu*, *ā iu*, and *dō iu ɾ* have a similar etymology.

¶ 78. Before words of Chinese origin, the adjective-pronouns “this” and “that” are often expressed by the syllable *tō* (當), a Chinese vocable properly signifying “the one in question,” “the actual one,” as :

*tō-nin*, “the person in question,” “this (or that) person.”

*tō-getsu no sue*, { “the end of the month.”  
*this-month of end*, }

Some of the adverbs given in the paradigm on page 52 will be found exemplified in Chapter X, ¶ 368.

¶ 79. The indefinite pronouns are formed from the interrogative pronouns by the addition of the interrogative particle *ka*, of the postpositions *mo* and *de mo*, “even,” and of the emphatic particle *zo*. Thus *dare<sup>1</sup> de<sup>2</sup> mo<sup>3</sup>*, “any body,” “every body,” is literally “even<sup>2</sup> by<sup>3</sup> whom?” Here are a few examples of the use of the indefinite pronouns :

*Omocha ya nani ka.* “Toys or something.”

(The words *nani ka* here have the same vague meaningless application that “or something” often has in Colloquial English.)

*Mata donata ka miemashita.* (Polite.) } “Somebody else  
 ,, *dare* ,, *mieta.* (Familiar.) } has come,” or  
*Again somebody has-appeared.* } “Other guests have arrived.”

*Nan de mo yoroshii kara,* } “Anything will do. Just  
*Anything (is)good because,* } give us something or other  
*nani ka te-garui mono wo* } which it will take no trouble  
*something-or-other easy thing (accus.)* } to get ready.”  
*dashite kudasai.* }  
*putting-forth condescend.* } (Said, for instance, by a hungry traveller arriving late at a hotel.)

*Dochira ga yoroshii gozaimashō?* } “Which (of the  
*Which (nom.) good will-probably-be?* } two) do you think  
 } will be best?”

*Sore wa, dochira de mo yoroshii.* } “Oh! (*sore wa*) either  
*That us-for, either (is)good.* } will do quite well.”

*Donata ka o ide ni* }  
*Somebody-or-other?honourable-exit to* } “Has some one arrived?”  
*nalle orimasu ka?* }  
*having-become is . ?*

*Ie, donata mo o ide ni natte* } “No, no one has  
*orimasen.* } arrived.”

(More lit. “Everybody has *un-arrived*”.—Conf. ¶ 433.)

*Nan<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> sewa<sup>3</sup> de<sup>4</sup> mo<sup>5</sup> shite<sup>6</sup>* } “He will help you in  
*kuremasū<sup>7</sup>, lit. Gives<sup>7</sup> doing<sup>6</sup>* } every way.”  
*help<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> everything.<sup>1,4,5</sup>*

*Dare<sup>1</sup> mo<sup>2</sup> sō<sup>3</sup> iimasū<sup>4</sup>.* } “Everybody<sup>1,2</sup> says<sup>4</sup> so<sup>3</sup>.”

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

¶ 80. The Japanese language has neither relative pronouns nor relative words of any sort. Their absence is generally made good by the use of a construction in which the verb is prefixed to the noun attributively, just as an adjective might be. Thus the Japanese not only say “a good man,” “a bad man,” etc. ; but they say “a comes man,” “a goes man,” “the went man,” instead of “a man who comes,” “a man who goes,” “the man who went.” This is illustrated in the following examples :—

|                        |  |                                                        |
|------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kuru hito.</i> }    |  | “The person who comes.”<br>(Or “The people who come.”) |
| <i>Comes person.</i> } |  |                                                        |
| <i>Kita hito.</i> }    |  | “The person who came.”<br>(Or “The people who came.”)  |
| <i>Came person.</i> }  |  |                                                        |

*Kimō kita hito.* } “The person (or persons) who came  
*Yesterday came person.* } yesterday.”

*Ano yama no zetshō* }  
*That mountain's summit* } “The large pine-tree which  
*ni haete iru ōki na* } grows on the top of that mountain  
*on, growing is large* } over there.”  
*matsu.*  
*pine.*

*Shinakūcha naran* } “It is a thing which it won't do  
*As-for-not-doing, is-not* } not to do, *i.e.*, “It is a thing  
*koto desū.* (Conf. ¶ 348.) } which must be done.”  
*thing (it)is.*

¶ 81. As shown in the foregoing examples, the English relative and verb are represented in Japanese by a verb alone which is used participially, or, as it is more usual to say in Japanese grammar, *attributively*, prefixed to the noun. In English this construction is allowable only in the case of participles, as “the *shipwrecked* sailors,” “the *shrieking* women and children.” In Japanese it is the actual tense-forms of the verb that are thus employed. Properly speaking, all the tenses of the indicative mood are capable of being thus used attributively in relative constructions. In the Book Language they are all constantly so used. But the Colloquial exhibits a strong tendency to limit this way of speaking to the “certain past” and the “certain present or future,” the merely “probable” tenses (e.g. *koyō*, *kilarō*) being rarely if ever now heard in such contexts, save in a few special idioms, such as :

*Narō koto nara.* } “If possible.” (Conf. ¶ 348.)  
*Will-probably-be fact if-it-is.* }

*Arō hazu wa nai.* } “There ought  
*(There-)will-probably-be necessity as-for, is-not.* } not to be.”

Observe that as the Japanese language, generally speaking, abhors the use of the passive, the verbs employed in relative sentences are almost always neuter or active ones, thus :

*Nansen ni aimashita<sup>u</sup> suifu-ra.* } “The shipwrecked  
*Shipwreck to, met sailors.* } sailors.”

*Haruka oki ni mieru fune.* } “The vessel that is to  
*Afar, offing in, appears vessel.* } be seen far away at sea.”

*Hepburn sensei no koshiraeta* } “The dictionary which  
*Hepburn sensei's (he)prepared* } was written by Dr.  
*jiten.* } Hepburn,” *i.e.*, “Dr.  
*dictionary.* } Hepburn's dictionary.”

*Otokichi to iu annai no mono.* } “The guide called Otokichi,” or “Otokichi the guide.”  
*Lit.* “the guide (*annai no mono*, i.e. person of guidance), of whom people say (*iu*) that (*to*) he is Otokichi.”

*Arashi to iu mono.* } “What is called a typhoon,”  
*Lit.* “the thing (*mono*) of which people say (*iu*) that (*to*) it is a typhoon (*arashi*).”  
*i.e. simply, “a typhoon.”*

*Amerika to iu kuni.* } “The country people call America,”  
*i.e. simply, “America.”*

*N. B.* This impersonal but active construction with *to iu* and other synonymous verbs, corresponding to the English passive, must be thoroughly mastered, as it is constantly in the mouths of the people. It is often used for making general assertions, such as

“Dogs are faithful creatures,” or | *Inu to iu mono wa, chūgi no aru*  
 “The dog is a faithful creature.” | *mono desū.*

*Lit.* As-for (*wa*) the thing (*mono*) of which people say (*iu*) that (*to*) it is a dog (*inu*), it is (*desū*) a thing (*mono*) which is (*aru*) of (*no*) faithfulness (*chūgi*). Here our single word “dog” or “dogs” is rendered by the five words *inu to iu mono wa*.

¶ 82. This use of the active where a European would expect the passive sometimes causes an appearance of ambiguity. Thus *shiranai hito* may signify either “a person who does not know” or “a person who is not known (to me),” i.e. “a person whom I do not know.” But as a rule the context sufficiently indicates which way the phrase should be taken. For instance, *yonde<sup>1</sup> shimatta<sup>2</sup> hon<sup>3</sup>* cannot possibly mean “the book which has finished reading,” as such a collocation of words would have no sense. It can only mean “the book<sup>3</sup> which (I, they, etc.) have finished<sup>2</sup> reading<sup>1</sup>.” *Sumau<sup>2</sup> tochi<sup>1</sup>* cannot mean “the locality<sup>2</sup> which resides<sup>1</sup>.” It must mean “the locality<sup>2</sup> in which (so-and-so) resides<sup>1</sup>.” The following are similar instances :

*Tōchaku shīta toki.* { “The time when (I, they,  
*Arrival did time.* { etc.) arrived.”

*Wakaranai koto.* { “Something which I don't  
*Understand-not thing.* { understand.”

*Te ni motteru mono.* { “That which he is holding  
*Hand in is-holding thing.* { in his hand.

¶ 83. The example just given of *sumau tochi*, signifying “the locality *in which* so and so resides,” exemplifies a remarkable Japanese idiom according to which the preposition that frequently accompanies an English relative pronoun is always omitted, thus :

*Toji no furuku natta hon.* { “A book *of which* the  
*Binding of old has-become book.* { binding has become  
old.”

*Sore<sup>1</sup> wa,<sup>2</sup> anata<sup>3</sup> ga<sup>4</sup> saku-nen<sup>5</sup> o<sup>8</sup>* } “Is<sup>10</sup> that<sup>1</sup> the hotel<sup>9</sup>  
*tomari<sup>7</sup> nashta<sup>8</sup> yadoya<sup>9</sup> desū<sup>10</sup> ka<sup>11</sup> ?* } *in which* you<sup>3</sup> staid<sup>6,7,8</sup>  
(lit. honourably *o*, deigned  
nashta, to stay *tomari*)  
last year<sup>6</sup> ?”

*Ie ; watakūshi wa tomarimaseu* } “No, I did not stay  
*No ; me as-for stay-not* } there ; but (*ga*) it is the  
*ga—, saku-nen tomodachi ga* } hotel *in which* a friend  
*whereas— last-year friend (nom.)* } of mine staid last year,  
*tomarimashite, taisō ni ki ni* } and *with which* he was  
*having-staid, greatly spirit to* } much pleased.”  
*irimashita yadoya desū.*  
*entered hotel is.*

*Dono yama kara kono* } “From which of  
*Which mountain from, this* } these mountains come  
*hen no meibutsu* } the crystals, *for which*  
*neighbourhood 's famous-production* } this locality is noted ?”  
*no suishō wa demasū ka ?*  
*'s crystals as-for, issue ?*

|                                                                                                                                                                        |   |                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Watakūshi ga Yokohama no<br/> I (nom.) Yokohama 's<br/> ni-jū ban ye tanomimashīlara,<br/> achira kara uke-alle<br/> yokoshimashīta boy desū.<br/> sent boy is.</p> | } | <p>“He is a servant<br/> whom I got by applying<br/> to the Grand Hotel at<br/> Yokohama, and for<br/> whose good behaviour<br/> the hotel-keeper is<br/> guarantee.”</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* The English word “boy” has been largely adopted by the Europeanised Japanese in the sense of “servant.” We have even heard *onna no boy* (!) used to signify a “maid-servant.”

Closely similar are such cases as *warui rikutsu*, signifying not “a bad reason,” but “the reason *why* (so-and-so) is bad.”

¶ 84. The terseness of the Japanese expression as compared with ours should not occasion any insuperable difficulty to the careful student. After all, we use a somewhat similar idiom in English when we speak of “a shaving-brush,” meaning “a brush *with which* a man helps himself to shave;” of “a smoking-room,” meaning “a room *in which* people smoke;” of “a stepping-stone,” meaning “a stone *on which* one may step,” &c., &c.

¶ 85. Several “who’s” or “which’s” are often attached in English to the same noun. In such cases the Japanese language uses the gerund (in set speeches the indefinite form) for the verbs of every clause, excepting that immediately preceding the noun qualified (see ¶ 278 *et seq.* and ¶ 422 *et seq.*). An instance of this construction is given in the example on the foregoing page, where *tomarimashīte* is a gerund and *irimashīta* a past tense, both qualifying the word *yadoya*. But this idiom—the referring of several relative clauses to a single noun—is not a favourite one in Colloquial Japanese. The example at the top of this page shows, in the case of the word *tanomimashīlara*, the



avoidance of such a construction. Indeed a great number of relative phrases—even single phrases—are turned in some other way. For instance :

*Mune<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> waruku<sup>3</sup> naru<sup>4</sup> hanashi<sup>5</sup>*, “A story *which* it makes one feel sick to listen to ;” lit. “chest<sup>1</sup> ’s<sup>2</sup> bad<sup>3</sup> becoming<sup>4</sup> story<sup>5</sup>.”

*Musūme<sup>1</sup> ga<sup>2</sup> hitori<sup>3</sup> atte<sup>4</sup>, O Haru<sup>5</sup> to<sup>6</sup> mōshimasū<sup>7</sup>*, “He has one daughter *whose* name is O Haru,” lit. “Daughter<sup>1</sup> one-person<sup>3</sup> being,<sup>4</sup> (people) say<sup>7</sup> that<sup>6</sup> (she is) O Haru<sup>5</sup>.”

*Kesa<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> yōsu<sup>3</sup> de<sup>4</sup> wa<sup>5</sup>, furu<sup>6</sup> ka<sup>7</sup> to<sup>8</sup> omottara<sup>9</sup>, sukkari<sup>10</sup> haremashita<sup>11</sup>*, i.e. “The weather, *which* looked like rain this morning, has cleared up beautifully ;” more lit. “By<sup>4</sup> appearance<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> this-morning<sup>1</sup>, when-(I) had-thought<sup>9</sup> that<sup>8</sup> “Will-(it) rain ?<sup>6,7</sup>,” quite<sup>10</sup> (it) has-cleared<sup>11</sup>.”

¶ 86. The words *tokoro no*, lit. “of place,” are sometimes used by the educated classes in relative phrases as a sort of substitute for the relative pronouns “who,” “which,” and “that.” But these words really add nothing to the sense, and only encumber the construction. They owe their origin to the slavish imitation of a Chinese idiom. Thus :

|                                  |     |                         |                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Kuru tokoro no hito,</i>      | for | <i>Kuru hito.</i>       | } For translation<br>see p. 56. |
| <i>Kinō kita tokoro no hito,</i> | ,,  | <i>Kino kita hito.</i>  |                                 |
| <i>Shinākūcha naran tokoro</i>   | ,,  | <i>Shinākūcha naran</i> |                                 |
| <i>no koto desū,</i>             |     | <i>koto desū.</i>       |                                 |

*N. B.* The student is recommended to compare the Japanese and English texts of any of the longer pieces given in Part II of this work. Such comparison, carefully carried out, will teach him better than anything else the manner in which Japanese thought moves under circumstances which, in our European idiom, demand the employment of relative pronouns or other relative words. The subject is important enough to reward any amount of trouble taken on its behalf.

## CHAPTER V.

### *The Postposition.*

---

#### THE POSTPOSITION PROPER.

¶ 87. Japanese postpositions correspond for the most part to English prepositions, serving like them to indicate those relations of words which Latin, German, and other Aryan languages of the older type denote by the use of case-inflections.

There are two kinds of postpositions, viz. postpositions proper and quasi-postpositions (¶ 141 *et seq.*).

The postpositions proper, with their most usual significations, are as follows :

#### *DE.*

¶ 88. *De* has two widely different uses. One is to render the sense of "by," whence also "with," "by means of," less often "in." This its first acceptance offers no difficulty. In its second acceptance, *de* seems at first sight to mean nothing at all, and thus puzzles the foreign student who is desirous of accounting for its presence in the sentence. *De* is here etymologically a corruption of *nite*, itself the gerund of an obsolete substantive verb. Its proper sense is therefore "being." But in most contexts this *de* has sunk so completely to the level of a mere grammatical particle as not to need translating into English. It is a moot point whether what was originally one word has branched out into these two significations, or whether two words

originally distinct have coalesced into a single particle. Here are a few examples of *de* meaning “by,” “with,” “in :”

*Nawa*<sup>1</sup> *de*<sup>2</sup> *shibaru*<sup>3</sup>. “To tie<sup>3</sup> by means of<sup>2</sup> a rope<sup>1</sup>.”

*Hasami*<sup>1</sup> *de*<sup>2</sup> *kiru*<sup>3</sup>. “To cut<sup>3</sup> with<sup>2</sup> scissors<sup>1</sup>.”

*Inu wo kūsari de*  
Dog (accus.), chain by,  
*tsunaide oke!*  
fastening put! } “Chain up the dog!”  
(Said to a coolie.)

*Kore de gaman nasai!* } “Please be contented with  
*This with, patience deign!* } this.”

*Kono kawa de, ai ga*  
This river in, trout(nom). } “Are there any trout to be  
*tsuremasū ka?*  
are-catchable? } caught in this stream?”

*Kono mono wa,*  
This thing as-for,  
*Nihon-go de nan to*  
Japan-language by, what that } “What is this called in  
*mōshimasū ka?*  
say? } Japanese?”  
(More lit. “As for this thing, in Japanese, what do people say that it is?”)

It will be gathered from these examples that *de* has its first signification (“by,” “with,” “in”) chiefly when construed with transitive verbs.

*De* has its second signification, i.e., it properly means “being,” in such cases as the following :—

*Ima no kuruma-ya wa,*  
Now 's jinrikisha-man as-for,  
*dajaku de yaku ni*  
indolent being, usefulness to } “My present jinrikisha-  
*latanai.*  
stands-not. } man is no good,—he is so  
indolent.”  
(More lit. “The present jinrikisha-man, being indolent, is of no use.”)

*Yoppodo beppin de*  
Very extra-quality being } “She is an uncommonly  
*aru.* (Said, e.g., of a singing-girl.) } pretty girl.”  
*is.* } (More lit. “She is being a very extra quality.”)

*San-ji han de gozaimasū.* } “It is (being) half-  
*Three-hours half being is.* } past three.”

The first of these phrases illustrates a construction with what are called “quasi-adjectives,” which will be touched on again in ¶ 200, and exemplified in ¶ 201 (examples 9 and 10). The second and third phrases are much more important, showing, as they do, the most usual manner of expressing our verb “to be,” viz, by means of *de aru*, *de arimasū*, *de gozaimasū* (see also ¶ 341 *et seq.*). *De aru* is commonly contracted to *da*, *de gozaimasū* to *desū*, less often and somewhat vulgarly to *de gozansū*, *de gesū*, or *de gasū*; similarly in the other tenses, for instance *datta* for *de atta*, *deshita* for *de gozaimashita*, and so on (see also ¶¶ 233, 270, 343, and 344). The foregoing examples would therefore generally become *Yoppodo beppin da*, *San-ji han desū*. The following is a very common phrase illustrating this idiom :

*Sayō de gozaimasū.* (Polite.) } “That is so,” *i.e.*, “Yes.”  
*Sō desū.* (Familiar.) }

¶ 89. It happens not infrequently that *de*, in both its acceptations, is strengthened by means of the postposition *wa*, especially in phrases expressing interrogation, negation, or something disagreeable. *De wa*, in familiar talk, is apt to be contracted into *ja*. Thus :

*Yoppodo beppin de* } “Isn’t she very pretty?”  
*Very extra-quality being* } (Or, *Yoppodo beppin ja nai*  
*wa nai ka ?* } *ka ?*)  
*is-not ?*

*Kore de wa, ōki ni* } “I am greatly bothered by  
*This by indeed greatly* } this.” (Or, *Kore ja ōki ni*  
*komarimasū.* } *komarimasū.*)  
*am-in-a-quandary.*

¶ 90. When the substantive verb has a qualifying word or phrase along with it after *de*, the noun followed by *de* often corresponds to an English nominative,—not that *de* has any nominative force properly so called, but because the word which we treat as a nominative is conceived of by the Japanese as the means whereby, or the place in which, the action or state denoted by the verb occurs, for instance,

|                                                                       |   |                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Mizu de takusan.</i><br><i>Cold-water by, (it will be) plenty.</i> | } | “Cold water will do perfectly well.” (i. e., “You need not trouble to bring hot water as well.”) |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* The Japanese sentence should, properly speaking, have *desū*, “it is,” stuck on to the end of it; but, as will be further illustrated in ¶ 429, the final verb is often omitted when no ambiguity is likely to ensue.

|                                                                                                                  |   |                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| <i>Hītotsu de yoroshii.</i><br><i>One by is-good.</i><br>(More politely, <i>Hītotsu de yoroshii gozaimasū.</i> ) | } | “One will be enough.” |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|

|                                                                                                                           |   |                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Seifu de o</i><br><i>Government by, honourable</i><br><i>kai-age ni narimashita.</i><br><i>purchase to has-become.</i> | } | “The Government has bought it,” or “It has been purchased by the Government.” |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## GA.

¶ 91. The original sense of *ga* is “of,” now only preserved in certain names of places and in a few locutions, such as *Hoshi-ga-oka*, “The Mound of the Stars” (the name of a part of Kamakura); . . . . . *ga sūki*, “fond of,” “liking;” . . . . . *ga kirai*, “not fond of,” “disliking;” . . . . . *ga hoshii*, “desirous of.”

|                                                                                                                |   |                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| <i>Watakushi wa, tabako</i><br><i>Me as-for, tobacco</i><br><i>dai-sūki (desū).</i><br><i>great-fond (am).</i> | } | “I am very fond of smoking.” |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|

*Sake ga kirai desū.* } “I am not fond of  
*Sake of hating am.* } *sake.*”

*Mizu ga hoshū gozaimasū.* } “I want some water.”  
*Water of, desirous am.* }

¶ 92. *Ga* is used as a sign of the nominative case, as :

*Kane ga nai.* } “There is no money;”  
*Money (nom.) isn't.* } hence “I have no money.”

*Ame ga futte kimashita.* } “It has come on to rain.”  
*Rain (nom.) falling has-come.* }

*Kono kuruma ga, furukūte* } “This jinrikisha won't  
*This jinrikisha (nom.) being-old* } do; it is too old.”  
*ikemasen.* }  
*is-no-go.*

*Isha ni mite morau ga* } “You had better con-  
*Physician by, seeing to-receive (nom.)* } sult the doctor about it.”  
*yokarō.* } (More lit. “It may be well to  
*will-probably-be-good.* } get (it) seen by the doctor.”)

*Sensei ga miemashita.* } “The teacher has ap-  
 } peared,” *i.e.*, has come.

Observe that the nominative use has developed out of the genitive. For instance, the etymological signification of *Kane ga nai* is “The not-being of money;” that of *Sensei ga miemashita* is “The having-appeared of the teacher.” Originally none of these sentences with *ga* were predicative. Modern usage alone has made them so, just as—to borrow an apt illustration from Mr. Aston—the incomplete sentences of an English telegram or advertisement convey a predicative sense to the mind of the reader. Observe too, from the example *Isha ni mite morau ga yokarō*, that postpositions may be suffixed to verbs as readily as to substantives, and that verbs, and indeed whole phrases, may form the subject or object of other verbs.

¶ 93. When found at the end of a clause, *ga* has an adversative force, of which “whereas” is the most literal English equivalent, but which is generally best rendered in practice by prefixing “yet” or “but” to the following clause. Sometimes the adversative force is softened down to a mere intimation of discontinuity between two successive states or actions, and then *ga* must be translated by “and so” or “and.”

*N. B.* The final *u* of *masū* revives pretty distinctly before *ga*, for which reason we write *masu* in all such examples.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Shina wa yoroshii gozaimasu</i><br/> <i>Article as-for, good is</i><br/> <i>ga,— nedan ga osoroshii takō</i><br/> <i>whereas, price (nom.) frightful high</i><br/> <i>gozaimasu.</i><br/> <i>is.</i></p> | } | <p>“The article is a good one, but the price is frightfully high.”</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* For such expressions as *osoroshii takai*, see the second *N. G* to ¶ 181.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |   |                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Yama-michi de hi wa</i><br/> <i>Mountain-road in, day as-for,</i><br/> <i>kuremashita ga,— tsure ga</i><br/> <i>darkened whereas, companions (nom.)</i><br/> <i>ōzei datta kara, ki-jōbu</i><br/> <i>crowd were because, spirit-sturdy</i><br/> <i>deshita.</i><br/> <i>(we) were.</i></p> | } | <p>“It got dark while we were on the mountain side; but, as we were several of us together, we felt no alarm.”</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |   |                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Watakushi wa kon-do de, Fuji</i><br/> <i>Me as-for, this time by, Fusiyama</i><br/> <i>ye to-san wa san-do-me desu ga,—</i><br/> <i>to ascent as-for, third-time is whereas,</i><br/> <i>shi-awase to itsu mo tenki-tsugō</i><br/> <i>luckily always weather-circumstances</i><br/> <i>ga yō gozaimasu.</i><br/> <i>(nom.) good are.</i></p> | } | <p>“This is the third time I have made the ascent of Fusiyama, and I have each time been lucky enough to have fine weather.”</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ 94. Sometimes *ga* with adversative force is repeated in two consecutive clauses, after the manner of “either . . . or :”

|                           |               |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------|---------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Bankoku-kōhō</i>       | <i>ga</i>     | <i>arō</i>       | } “ We may have inter-<br>national law, and we may<br>have all sorts of fine<br>things; <i>but</i> we are still<br>very far from having<br>arrived at a social state<br>in which right always<br>triumphs.” |
| <i>International-law</i>  | <i>(nom.)</i> | <i>may-exist</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>ga, nani</i>           | <i>ga</i>     | <i>arō</i>       |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>either, something</i>  | <i>(nom.)</i> | <i>may-exist</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>ga,—mada mada</i>      | <i>dōri</i>   | <i>bakari</i>    |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>or, still still</i>    | <i>right</i>  | <i>only</i>      |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>de wa katsu koto</i>   | <i>ga</i>     |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>by, conquer action</i> | <i>(nom.)</i> |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>dekimasen.</i>         |               |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>forthcomes-not.</i>    |               |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

|                            |                                    |               |                                                                                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ikō</i>                 | <i>ga,</i>                         | <i>ikumai</i> | } “ Whether I go,<br>or whether I don't<br>go, is no one's<br>business but my<br>own.” |
| <i>Perhaps-I-shall-go</i>  | <i>either, perhaps-I-shan't-go</i> |               |                                                                                        |
| <i>ga, watakūshi no</i>    | <i>katte da.</i>                   |               |                                                                                        |
| <i>or I of convenience</i> | <i>is.</i>                         |               |                                                                                        |

Sometimes *ga* occurs elliptically at the end of an unfinished sentence. See, for examples, those given about the middle of ¶ 287.

### KA.

¶ 95. *Ka* serves to ask a question, as :

*Arimasū.* “ There is.”

*Arimasū ka ?* “ Is there ?”

*Furo<sup>1</sup> wa<sup>2</sup> dekimashūta<sup>3</sup>.* { “ The bath is ready.”  
(*More lit.* “ As-for<sup>2</sup> the bath,<sup>1</sup> it-has-  
forthcome.<sup>3</sup>”)

*Furo wa dekimashūta ka ?* “ Is the bath ready ?”

If the sentence already contains some other interrogative word—an interrogative pronoun or adverb,—*ka* is often omitted, and it is generally best to omit it, thus :

*Nan-doki ni mairimashō ka ?* } “ At what o'clock shall  
*What-hour at shall-come ?* } I come ?”  
*or Nan-doki ni mairimashō ?*

*Itsu shinimashūta (ka) ?* } “ When did he die ?”  
*When died ?*



*Dō iu wake de konna* } “Why do you do such  
*What-sort-of reason by, such* } silly things as this?” (*Said*  
*baka na koto wo suru* } *to an inferior.*)  
*foolish things (accus.) do ?*

¶ 96. Sometimes *ka* expresses a merely rhetorical or ironical question, sometimes nothing beyond a mere shade of doubt. In the latter case it corresponds to such English words as “may,” “might,” “perhaps :”

*Aru mono ka ?* } “Who in his senses would ever  
*Exists thing ?* } believe that such a thing exists?”

*Mata yuki ga furimashō* } “I think it will  
*Again snow (nom.) will-probably-fall* } snow again.”  
*to omoimasū.*  
*that think.*

*Mata yuki ga furimashō* } “I am inclined to  
*Again snow (nom.) will-probably-fall* } think that it may  
*ka to omowaremasū.* } snow again.”  
*? that can-think.*

*Suzuki to iu hito.* } “A man called Suzuki.”  
*Suzuki that (they) call person.*

*Suzuki to ka iu hito.* } “A man called, if I  
*Suzuki that ? (they) call person.* } mistake not, Suzuki.”

¶ 97. *Ka . . . . . ka* means “or,” “either . . . . . or,” “whether . . . . . or :”

*Ii ka warui ka, shirimasen.* } “I can’t tell whether  
*Good ? bad ?, is-unknowable.* } it is good or bad.”

*Muku desū ka, mekki desū ka ?* } “Is it all gold or only  
*Unalloyed is ? plated is ?* } gilt?” (*Or, “Is it all*  
*silver or only plated ?”*)

*Ikō ka, dō shiyō ka to* } “I am considering  
*“Shall-go ? how shall-do ?” that* } whether to go or not.”  
*omotte imasū.*  
*thinking am.*

- ¶ 98. *Ka* helps to form certain indefinite pronouns and adverbs, such as “somebody,” “something,” “somewhere”. See the paradigm on page 52.

### KARA.

- ¶ 99. *Kara* means “from,” “since,” “because,” “after :”

|                                       |   |                                                             |
|---------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Koko kara tōge made wa,</i>        | } | “How far may it be<br>from here to the top of<br>the pass?” |
| <i>Here from, pass to indeed,</i>     |   |                                                             |
| <i>mō dono kurai arimashō?</i>        |   |                                                             |
| <i>still what amount probably-is?</i> |   |                                                             |

|                                            |   |                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ni-san-nen-zen kara hito</i>            | } | “For the last two or<br>three years people have<br>been saying that the times<br>are bad. Is this really<br>the case?” |
| <i>Two-three-year-before since, people</i> |   |                                                                                                                        |
| <i>ga fū-keiki da to imasu</i>             |   |                                                                                                                        |
| <i>(nom.) unprosperity is that say</i>     |   |                                                                                                                        |
| <i>ga,—hontō desū ka?</i>                  |   |                                                                                                                        |
| <i>whereas,—true is ?</i>                  |   |                                                                                                                        |

|                                         |   |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kūtabiremashita kara, chotto</i>     | } | “I am tired; (so) let<br>us rest a minute.” |
| <i>Have-got-tired because, a-little</i> |   |                                             |
| <i>yasumimashō.</i>                     |   |                                             |
| <i>will-probably-rest.</i>              |   |                                             |

*N. B.* Some speakers say *kara shite* (*shite* is the gerund of *suru*, “to do”) for *kara*; others say *kara ni*. The phrase *mono desū kara* or *mon’ desū kara*, lit. “because (it) is thing,” is another favourite circumlocution having the meaning of “because.” The noun *yue*, lit. “cause,” or *yue ni*, almost lit. “because,” is also in use, though perhaps sounding just a trifle old-fashioned and stiff.

- ¶ 100. *Kara* has the sense of “after” only when suffixed to the gerund in *te*, and in a few special locutions, as :

|                        |                 |                      |
|------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| <i>itte kara,</i>      | “after going,”  | “after having gone.” |
| <i>mimashite kara,</i> | “after seeing,” | “after having seen.” |
| <i>kore kara,</i>      | “after this,”   | “henceforward.”      |
| <i>sore kara,</i>      | “after that,”   | “and then,” “next.”  |

*N. B.* The past *ittu kara* means “because he has gone;” *mimashita kara* means “because I have seen.” Be very careful not to confuse these two locutions, which differ only by the use of the *gerund* in *e* when “after” is meant, and of the past tense in *a* when “because” is meant.

*N. B.* The Japanese often use “from” (*kara*, sometimes *yorì*), when “at” would come more naturally to English lips, as :

|                                                                                                                                             |   |                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Myōnichi no cuzetsu wa, nan-ji kara hajimarimasū?—Gogo kara desū.</i><br/> <i>from begins? Noon-after two-hours from (it) is.</i></p> | } | <p>“At what o'clock does the lecture begin to-morrow? — At two o'clock in the afternoon.”</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

The idea is that the lecture, beginning as it does at two o'clock, will last *from* two to some other hour not named.—Observe how the Japanese idiom retains the verb “it is” (*desū*) at the end of the sentence, while English dispenses with it. A similar instance of this occurs in the second example given just below under *made*.

## MADE.

¶ 101. *Made* means “till,” “as far as,” “down to,” “to :”

*Kore made.* “Thus far,” “hitherto,” “till now.”

|                                                                                                |   |                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Tetsudō wa, doko made dekite orimasū? — Mitajiri made is? Mitajiri as-far-as is?</i></p> | } | <p>“How far is the railway finished?—As far as Mitajiri.”</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                 |   |                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Watakushi no kuru made, matte ile kudasai.</i><br/> <i>Me of come till, waiting being condescend.</i></p> | } | <p>“Please wait till I come.”<br/> <i>(More lit. “till my coming.”)</i></p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Itsu<sup>1</sup> made<sup>2</sup> mo<sup>3</sup>.* { “Ever so long,” “forever.”  
 (Lit. even<sup>3</sup> till<sup>2</sup> when.<sup>1</sup>)

*Doko<sup>1</sup> made<sup>2</sup> mo<sup>3</sup>.* { “Ever so far,” “for any dis-  
 tance.” (Lit. even<sup>3</sup> till<sup>2</sup> where.<sup>1</sup>)

*N. B.* For *made ni* in the sense “by,” see *N. B.* at end of ¶ 136.

## MO.\*

¶ 102. *Mo* means “even,” “also,” “and,” “too.” When repeated, *mo . . . . . mo* means “both . . . . . and :”—

*Iisu made mo.* { lit. “Even till when,” *i.e.*,  
“forever.”

*Watakūshi mo mairimasū.* “I will go too.”

*Kore mo wasūrecha* { “And you mustn’t forget  
*This also, as-for-forgetting,* this either;” or “Nor must  
*ikemasen.* you forget this.”  
*is-no-go.*

*Kā mo nomi mo* { “It is a place where there  
*Mosquitoes also, fleas also,* are plenty both of mosquitoes  
*ōi tokoro desū.* and of fleas.”  
*numerous place is.*

*Nai koto mo gozaimasen.* { “It cannot be said that  
*Not-being fact also is-not.* there are none,” or simply  
“There are certainly some.”  
(This is a very common idiom.)

Construed with a negative verb, *mo . . . . . mo* means “neither . . . . . nor,” thus :

*Yoku mo waruku mo nai.* { “It is neither good nor  
*Good also, but also is-not.* bad.”

*Mo* is sometimes placed after *ka*, when the latter means “perhaps” (see ¶ 96). It retains in Japanese something of its proper force of “even,” but can hardly be represented in the English translation, thus :

*Mata rai-nen kuru ka* { “Perhaps I may come  
*Again coming-year come ?* again next year.”  
*mo shiremasen.*  
*even cannot-know.*

*N. B.* For *mo* serving to form expressions analogous to the concessive mood, see ¶ 289.

\* Not to be confounded with the adverb *mō*, for which see ¶ 373.

## MOTTE.

¶ 103. *Motte*, properly the gerund of the verb *motsu*, “to hold,” is in Written Japanese the usual word for “by,” “thereby.” In the Colloquial it survives only as a sort of emphatic particle, which is moreover little used except by old-fashioned speakers. Thus *hanahada motte* is the same as *hanahada*, “very,” but emphasised; *ima motte* may be rendered by “even now,” or by the help of some such word as “very,” thus :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                    |   |                                    |                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Mukashi kara ima motte,</i><br/>Ancient-time from, now indeed,<br/><i>ai-kazwarazu</i><br/><i>mutually-changing-not</i><br/><i>ureru mise desū.</i><br/><i>sells (intrans.) shop is.</i></p> | } | <p><i>yoku</i><br/><i>well</i></p> | <p>“It is a shop which has<br/>carried on a good trade<br/>from old times down to<br/>this very day.”</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* *Ai*, the equivalent of our word “mutually,” is often thus prefixed to verbs by pedantic speakers. It is a relic of the Book Language, and has little or no meaning now. This sentence is a good example of the apparent ambiguity of relative constructions in Japanese, which was pointed out in ¶ 82. The speaker of course means to say that *the things in the shop sell well*; but he seems to say that it is *the shop itself which sells well*.

When *de* is used in the sense of “by” or “with,” *motte* is often suffixed to it by all classes of speakers, thus :

|                                                                                                                    |                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Hōchō de (motte) kiru.</i> }<br/><i>Knife by to-cut.</i> }</p>                                               | <p>“To cut with a knife.”</p>                                        |
| <p><i>Nawa de (motte) shibaru.</i> }<br/><i>Rope by to-tie.</i> }</p>                                              | <p>“To tie with a rope.”</p>                                         |
| <p><i>Kaze de (motte) to ga</i><br/><i>Wind by, door (nom.)</i><br/><i>otte imasū.</i><br/><i>slamming is.</i></p> | <p>} “The door keeps slam-<br/>ming on account of the<br/>wind.”</p> |

For *NA* and *NAN*, see ¶ 197.

## NI.

¶ 104. The original sense of *ni* is “in,” “into,” “to” :

|                                                   |   |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kono hen ni kiji</i>                           | } | “Are there no pheasants in this neighbourhood?” |
| <i>This neighbourhood in, pheasants</i>           |   |                                                 |
| <i>wa imasen ka ?</i><br><i>us-for, are-not ?</i> |   |                                                 |

*N. B.* Compare this example with the fifth on p. 63, and note that *de* serves to indicate the place where something is done, *ni* the place where something merely is.

|                                                                |   |                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kono kamo wo ryōri-nin</i>                                  | } | “Please hand this wild-duck to the cook.” |
| <i>This wild-duck (accus.), cookery-person</i>                 |   |                                           |
| <i>ni watashite kudasai.</i><br><i>to, handing contescent.</i> |   |                                           |

|                                                      |   |                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hajimete o me</i>                                 | } | “This is the first time I have had the honour to meet you.”<br>(A phrase which it is considered polite to use when introduced to a new acquaintance.) |
| <i>Having-begun, honourable eyes</i>                 |   |                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>ni kakarimashita.</i><br><i>in (I) have-hung.</i> |   |                                                                                                                                                       |

¶ 105. *Ni* has many other idiomatic uses, of which the following are the chief, viz.

With a passive verb, *ni* corresponds to “by,” thus :

|                                                        |   |                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Osoroshiku domo ka</i>                              | } | “Oh! I have been frightfully stung by the mosquitoes.” |
| <i>Frightfully really, mosquitoes</i>                  |   |                                                        |
| <i>ni sasaremashita.</i><br><i>by have-been-stung.</i> |   |                                                        |

|                                     |   |                                |
|-------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>Ame ni furi-komeraremashita.</i> | } | “We were kept in by the rain.” |
| <i>Ruin by were-kept-in.</i>        |   |                                |

A kindred idiom is found in the *ni* corresponding to our “by” or “with,” in such phrases as :

|                                                 |   |                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Me ni miru mono, mimi</i>                    | } | “What one sees with one’s eyes, and hears with one’s ears.” |
| <i>Eyes by, see things; ears</i>                |   |                                                             |
| <i>ni kiku mono.</i><br><i>by, hear things.</i> |   |                                                             |

- ¶ 106. With a causative verb, *ni* denotes the person who is caused to perform the action, thus :

*Boy ni sagasasemashō.* } “ I will make the boy look  
for it.”

- ¶ 107. Suffixed to the indefinite form of a verb, *ni* means “ (in order) to,” thus :

*Ueno no sakura wo* } “ I want to go to see  
*Ueno 's cherry-blossoms (accus.)* } the cherry-blossoms at  
*mi ni ikilai.* } Ueno.”  
*see to want-to-go.*

*N. B.* It is only with the indefinite form of the verb that *ni* has this meaning. When, as often happens, it follows the present tense used as an infinitive, it preserves its original force, thus :

*Michi ga warukūte, aruku ni* } “ The roads are so  
*Roads (nom.) being-bad, walk in,* } bad, it is fearfully hard  
*hone ga oremasū.* } walking.”  
*bones (nom.) break (intrans).*

*Mada neru ni wa hayai.* } “ It is still too early to  
*Still to-sleep to us-for (it is) early.* } go to bed.”

- ¶ 108. *Ni* suffixed to nouns serves to form expressions corresponding to European adverbs, as :

*daiji*, “ importance,” “ care ;” *daiji ni*, “ carefully.”  
*heta*, “ a bad hand (at) ;” *heta ni*, “ unskilfully.”  
*ima*, “ the present moment,” *ima ni*, “ presently.”

“ now ;”

*jōzu*, “ a good hand (at) ;” *jōzu ni*, “ skilfully.”  
*rippa*, “ splendour ;” *rippa ni*, “ splendidly.”  
(See also ¶ 64.)

- ¶ 109. When several things are enumerated, *ni* often means “ besides the foregoing,” “ and :”

*Bīru<sup>1</sup> ni<sup>2</sup>, budō-shu<sup>3</sup> ni<sup>4</sup>,* { *Lit.* Besides<sup>2</sup> beer<sup>1</sup>, be-  
*teppō-mizu<sup>5</sup> wo<sup>6</sup> motte<sup>7</sup> iki-* } sides<sup>4</sup> wine<sup>3</sup>, we-will-go<sup>8</sup>  
*mashō<sup>8</sup>.* } carrying<sup>7</sup> gun-water<sup>5</sup>, *i.e.*  
“ We will take beer, claret,  
and soda-water.”

*Hana<sup>1</sup> wa<sup>2</sup> sakura<sup>3</sup> ni<sup>4</sup>,* { “The cherry is the king of  
*hito<sup>5</sup> wa<sup>6</sup> bushi<sup>7</sup>.* (A proverb.) { flowers, and the warrior the  
 king of men.”

*Lit.* As-for<sup>2</sup> flowers<sup>1</sup>, (the best is) the cherry-blossom<sup>3</sup> ;  
 and-to-the-foregoing-it-may-be-added-that<sup>4</sup>, as-foi<sup>6</sup> human-  
 beings<sup>5</sup>, (the best are) warriors<sup>7</sup>.

### NO.

¶ 110. *No* means “of,” or denotes the possessive case :

*Amerika<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> Daiōryō<sup>3</sup>.* { “The president<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> the  
 United States<sup>1</sup>.”

*Neko<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> tsume<sup>3</sup>.* “A cat<sup>1</sup>'s<sup>2</sup> claws<sup>3</sup>.”

*Ari<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> mama<sup>3</sup>.* (*Ari* is ) { “*Lit.* “Way of being,”  
 the indefinite form of the { *i.e.*, “Just as it is.”  
 verb *aru*, “to be.”)

*Katta bakari no shina.* { “Something I have only just  
*Bought only 's article.* { bought.” (*More lit.* “An article  
 of quite recent buying.”)

We have already noticed, when treating of the post-  
 position *ga*, the genitive origin of many apparently nomi-  
 native expressions in Japanese. The same tendency is  
 exemplified by *no*, though less frequently in the Colloquial  
 than in the Written Language, thus :

*Kisha no tsūkō suru toki, senro* { “It is dangerous to  
*Train 's passage does time, line* { cross the line when  
*wo yokogūcha abunai.* { the train is passing.”  
 (accus.) as-for-crossing, (is) dangerous. { (*More lit.* “at the time  
 (It would be more polite to say *abunō* { of the passing of the  
*gozaimasū.*) { train.”)

¶ 111. *No* is used in attributive phrases either in lieu of, or  
 suffixed to, the other postpositions, it being a rule that none  
 of the postpositions excepting *no* can connect two nouns in  
 such phrases. An example or two will make this clearer :



- (1) *Kono ura ni ike ga gozaimasū.* { “There is a pond  
*This back in, pond (nom.) is.* { at the back of this.”
- (2) *Kono ura no ike wa, asō gozaimasū.* { “The pond at the back  
 { of this is shallow.”
- (3) *Kuni kara dempō ga kimashita.* { “I have re-  
*Country from, telegram (nom.) has-come.* { ceived a telegram  
 { from home.”
- (4) *Kuni kara no dempō.* “A telegram from home.”

In the above predicative phrases (the first and the third), each English preposition is rendered by the Japanese postposition properly corresponding to it. But turn the phrase attributively (the second and fourth), and *no* either supplants, or is suffixed to, that postposition (*no* for *ni* in the second, *kara no* for *kara* in the fourth).

In this manner *no*, “of,” comes to express almost every idea of relation; or rather all the various ideas of relation come to be summed up by the Japanese mind under the one idea of “of;” thus :

|                                                      |                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Atami no onsen.</i>                               | “The hot springs <i>at</i> Atami.”                    |
| <i>Fuji no yuki.</i>                                 | “The snow <i>on</i> Fuji.”                            |
| “ <i>Nichi-Nichi</i> ” <i>no</i><br><i>shasetsu.</i> | { “A leading article <i>in</i> the<br>{ “Daily News.” |
| <i>Oya no mo.</i>                                    | “The mourning <i>for</i> a parent.”                   |
| <i>Waboku no dampan.</i>                             | “Deliberations <i>about</i> peace.”                   |
| <i>Korera-byō no yobō.</i>                           | “Precautions <i>against</i> cholera.”                 |

Even the idea of apposition finds its place under this heading, for instance :

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Kerai no Tōsūke.</i> | “His retainer ‘Tōsūke.’” |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|

Indeed apposition is often expressed in English itself by a similar idiom with “of,” as when we say

“The province of Yamato.” *Yamato no kuni.*

¶ 112. *No* is used substantively with the meaning of the English word "one" or "ones" (see also ¶ 137), thus :

*Warui no.* "A bad one."  
*Jōbu na no.* "A solid one."

*N. B.* For the *na* of *jōbu na*, see ¶ 197.

*Kore wa ii no da.* } "This is a good  
*This us-for, good one is.* } one."

*Iku tabi mo mita no desū.* } "It is a thing I have  
*How-many times even, saw one is.* } seen any number of  
 times."

Under this heading, note the following specimens of a curious idiom :

*Inshi<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> furui<sup>3</sup> no<sup>4</sup>*, as lit. as possible, "old<sup>3</sup> ones<sup>4</sup> of<sup>2</sup> stamps<sup>1</sup>," i.e. "stamps that are old," hence "some old stamps."

*Kwashi<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> shinki<sup>3</sup> ni<sup>4</sup> yaīta<sup>5</sup> no<sup>6</sup>*, as lit. as possible, "in<sup>4</sup> newness<sup>3</sup> have-burnt<sup>5</sup> one<sup>6</sup> of<sup>2</sup> cake<sup>1</sup>," i.e., "a cake that has been freshly baked," or more simply, "a freshly baked cake."

There is just the shadow of a shade of difference in intention between these circumlocutions and the simpler expressions

*Furui inshi.* "Old stamps."  
*Shinki ni yaīta kwashi.* "A freshly baked cake."

The circumlocutory form with the two *no*'s seems to contain a tacit reference to stamps that are *not* old and cakes that are *not* freshly baked,—a sort of emphatic dwelling on the ideas of oldness and of freshness respectively.

¶ 113. *No* often serves to form expressions corresponding to English adjectives, as *Nihon no*, "of Japan," i.e., "Japanese" (see ¶ 62, and ¶ 197 *et seq.*). Sometimes, in

quite familiar talk, it occurs as a final particle with a certain emphatic force, corresponding to that of the Colloquial English phrase "and so there!" or "and what do you think of *that!*" A good example of this occurs towards the end of this Handbook, in Chap. II of the "*Botan-dōrō*," in the conversation between O Yone and Shijō, where attention is drawn to it in a foot-note.

¶ 114. At other times,—and this is a very favourite idiom,—*no* is employed as a kind of equivalent for the word *koto* meaning "act," "fact." This construction is specially apt to occur in conjunction with the substantive verb *da* or *desū*, and is generally best rendered in English by the phrase "it is that," or "is it that?" For instance, a man has made an appointment, but a note comes from him about the time he is expected to arrive. One of the bystanders, observing this, says :

*Konai no darō.* { "I suppose it is that he  
*Will-not-come fact probably-is.* } isn't coming."

*N. B.* Though the sense is properly that of *koto*, may not *no*, after all, be here derived from the word *mono* by apocope of the first syllable? For notwithstanding what has been said in ¶ 54 concerning the distinction to be drawn between *koto* and *mono*, a certain amount of confusion in the use of the two words can scarcely be denied ; and as a matter of fact, one not infrequently hears such expressions as *konai mon[o] darō*.

In such contexts, the word *no* may be, and in familiar conversation generally is, clipped of its vowel, so that it sinks into the single letter *n'*. Thus the above example might equally well be *Konai n' darō*, or more politely *Konai n' deshō* (conf. ¶ 343-5).

*Nani wo suru n' desū ?* } "What is it that you are  
*What (accus.) do fact is ?* } doing?"

*Massugu ni iku n' desū ka ?* } “Am I to go straight  
*Straight-ly go act is ?* } on?” *more lit.* “Is it that  
 I am to go straight on?”

*Aru no ?* } “Is there?” “Do you mean to say  
*Is fact?* } that there is?”

*N. B.* As shown in this last example, *no* cannot be clipped of its vowel when standing at the very end of a sentence.

The exact force of *no* preceding the verb *da* or *desū* may be practically exemplified by comparing, say, *Nani wo shimasū ?* “What are you doing?” with *Nani wo suru n' desū ?* “What is it that you are doing?”

¶ 115. The verb *da*, “is,” and the postposition *no* combine to form the word *dano*, which serves for purposes of enumeration. *Dano* must, like the Latin *que*, be repeated after each of the items enumerated, thus :

*Shishi dano, tora dano, zō* } “Lions, tigers, elephants,  
*dano, rakuda dano.* } and camels.”

There is a difference between *dano* and *ni* (see ¶ 109) used enumeratively. *Ni* is simply copulative, *dano* conveys the idea of a multiplicity of objects. Thus, when a Japanese says *sake dano, sakana dano, kwashi dano*, he means to convey to his hearers the idea of a variously assorted feast, including possibly other good things besides the liquor, fish, and cakes enumerated. But when he says *sake ni, sakana ni, kwashi*, he speaks of just those three and no more. Observe, moreover, that the word *dano* is somewhat vulgar. The polite equivalent is *de gazaimasū no*, but this is less often used. *No* sometimes serves as an enumerative after other than the substantive verbs.  
 Thus :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |   |                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kimi ga warukatta no,</i><br><i>Mental-feelings (nom). were-bad and,</i><br><i>nan no to, osoroshii me ni</i><br><i>what and that, fearful eyes to</i><br><i>atte kila.</i><br><i>having-met (I) have-come. (FAMIL.)</i> | } | “Talk of feeling<br>frightened and so forth,<br>I have had a rough<br>time of it, I can tell<br>you.” |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* *No*, in its proper sense of “of,” is sometimes replaced in the higher style by the Chinese word *teki*, 的. Sometimes the two are used together, as *seiji-teki kakumei*, or *seiji-teki no kakumei*, lit. “a revolution of politics,” i.e., “a political revolution.”

## SHI.

¶ 116. *Shi*, a postposition which is not capable of translation into English, has a sort of enumerative force, and serves as a kind of pause, thus :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |   |                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kono nikai wa, Fuji mo</i><br><i>This second-storey as-for, Fujiyama also</i><br><i>mieru shi, umi mo mieru shi; makoto</i><br><i>is-visible, sea also is-visible: truth</i><br><i>ni ü keshiki desü.</i><br><i>in, good view is.</i> | } | “From the second<br>storey here you can<br>see Fujiyama and<br>you can see the sea,<br>—truly a beautiful<br>view.” |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Shi* is frequently appended to the verbal form in *mai* (the “improbable present or future”). Thus, when bandying words with a jinrikisha-man who should attempt to make an overcharge, one might say :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |   |                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hajimete kuruma wo</i><br><i>For-the-first-time vehicle (accus.)</i><br><i>tanomi ya shimai shi,</i><br><i>ask as-for, (I) probably-do-not;</i><br><i>taigai sōba</i><br><i>for-the-most-part market-price</i><br><i>mo shitte iru wa!</i><br><i>also knowing am (emph.)</i> | } | “You don’t imagine, do<br>you? that this is the first time<br>I have hired a jinrikisha, and<br>that I don’t know the proper<br>fare!” |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Occasionally *shi* seems to terminate a sentence; but this is only because the speaker, after finishing the first clause,

finds himself at a loss concerning the second, and so perforce leaves the sentence unfinished.

*N. B.* Do not confound the postposition *shi* with *shi* the "indefinite form" of the verb *suru*, "to do," which appears in such idioms as *mi mo shi, kiki mo suru*, "one both sees it and hears it."

### TO.

¶ 117. *To* originally had the sense of our demonstrative pronoun "that," but it now has the sense of our conjunction "that:"

*Uso da to iimasū.* } "He says that it is a lie."  
*Lie is that says.* }

*Hontō da to omoimasū.* } "I think that it is true."  
*Truth is that think.* }

*N. B.* Originally therefore the sense was: "It is a lie. He says that." "It is truth. I think that." The conversion of the demonstrative pronoun into the conjunction came about gradually in the case of *to*, as in the case of its English equivalent "that."

In the above, and in most similar phrases, English idiom generally prefers to omit the word "that;" but *to* cannot so be omitted in Japanese. The following are instances of *to* meaning literally "that," but not lending itself to expression in idiomatic English:

*Omae san no na wa,* } "What is your name?"  
*You Mr. 's name as-for,* } *more lit.* "As for the name of  
*nan to iu ka?* (Said to a com- } Mr. you, what [do people]  
*what that say ? mon person.)* } say that it is?"

"*Tōkyō Maru*" *to* } "A vessel called the 'Tōkyō  
 "*Tōkyō Maru*" *that* } *Maru,'* *more lit.* "A vessel [of  
*mōsu fune.* } which people] say that it is the  
*say vessel.* } 'Tōkyō Maru.'" (Conf. p. 58 for this important idiom.)

Similarly in the case of such onomatopoeic adverbs as *hallo, kullo, patallo*, etc., where the *to* (strengthened into *to*) is, properly speaking, a separate word, thus:

*Ha<sup>1</sup>to<sup>2</sup> omoimashita<sup>3</sup>.* { “I started,” *more lit.* “I thought<sup>3</sup> that<sup>2</sup> [it is] *ha<sup>1</sup>!*”

*Nochihodo<sup>1</sup> kitto<sup>2</sup> mairimasu<sup>3</sup>.* { “I will certainly<sup>2</sup> come<sup>3</sup> later-on<sup>1</sup>.”

*Pata<sup>1</sup>to<sup>2</sup> ochimashita<sup>3</sup>.* “It fell<sup>3</sup> flop<sup>1</sup>.”

Under this heading, too, comes the idiomatic use of *to* at the end of a sentence; for some verb must always be mentally supplied after it. Take, for instance, the common colloquial phrase *Nan to ?* “What did you (*or* he) say?” standing for *Nan to osshatta ?* (polite), or *Nan to itta ?*

¶ 118. *To itte*, “saying that;” *to omotte*, “thinking that;” *to kiite*, “asking (lit. hearing) whether,” and similar gerundial phrases, are often contracted to *tote* (vulgarly *tte*):

*O* *yu* *ni* *iku* } “He went out saying that  
*Honourable hot-water to, (I) go* } he was going to the bath.”  
*tote, demashita.*  
(saying) that, went-out.

*Tote* frequently has a sort of oppositive force, as in the following examples, where it may be best parsed as standing for *to itte mo*, “even saying that,” i. e., “even supposing that.” (Conf. also ¶ 289.)

*Ikura* *gakumon* *shita* } “However much a man  
*How-much study have-done* } may study (*more lit.*, saying  
*tote, okonai ga* } that a man may study how  
*even-saying-that, conduct (nom.)* } much), nothing will come of  
*warukereba, nanni mo* } it if he is badly behaved.”  
*if-is-bad, anything*  
*narimasen.*  
*becomes-not.*

*Zōhei-kyoku wa, muyami ni* } “You can not get  
*Mint as-for, recklessly* } shown over the Mint  
*itla kara tote,* } simply by going there and  
*went because even-saying-that,* } asking to see it.”  
*haiken wa dekimasen.*  
*adoring-look as-for, forthcomes-not.*

*N. B.* Women and the lower classes often end a sentence by *te*, when they should say *to iimasū* or *to imashita*.

¶ 119. *To* sometimes means “and.” When it has this sense, it is, like the Latin *que*, generally repeated after each noun. Even when not so repeated, it always belongs to the word immediately preceding it, not to the word following it. Europeans often make the mistake of commencing a clause with *to*, in imitation of the European idiom which introduces clauses by the conjunction “and.” But this sounds ludicrous in Japanese :

*Anata to, watakūshi to.* “You and I.”  
*Fūransu to, Doitsu to.* “France and Germany.”

Certain idiomatic uses of *to* may best be classed under this head, thus :

|                                      |   |                              |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| <i>Musūko to fūtari.</i>             | } | “Two counting my son.”       |
| <i>Son and two-persons.</i>          |   |                              |
| <i>Ano hito to ikimashita.</i>       | } | “I went with him.”           |
| <i>That person and (1) went.</i>     |   |                              |
| <i>Okiru to sugu ni.</i>             | } | “As soon as I got up.”       |
| <i>Rise and immediately.</i>         |   |                              |
| <i>Kore to wa chigaimasū.</i>        | } | “It is different from this.” |
| <i>This and as-for, (it)differs.</i> |   |                              |

Observe also such adverbial phrases as *shi-awase to*, “luckily.”

¶ 120. *To* sometimes comes to mean “if” or “when.” It has this sense only after the present tense of verbs and adjectives, thus :

|                                   |   |                                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sō suru to, shīkararemasū.</i> | } | “You will get scolded if you do that.”          |
| <i>So do if, get-scolded.</i>     |   |                                                 |
| <i>Sugu ikanai to,</i>            | } | “You will be too late if you don’t go at once.” |
| <i>Immediately go-not if,</i>     |   |                                                 |
| <i>okuremasū.</i>                 |   |                                                 |
| <i>are-tute.</i>                  |   |                                                 |



*Sō mōshimasū to, sugu ni* } “When I said so, he  
*So said when, immediately* } immediately gave me a  
*shīkararemashta.* } scolding.”  
*got-scolded.*

¶ 121. Observe the use of *to* in such phrases as the following, where it is not susceptible of any English rendering :

*Chiri tsumotte, yama to* } “Dust accumulating be-  
*Dust accumulating, mountain* } comes a mountain.”  
*naru.* } (A proverb used to inculcate the  
*becomes.* } importance of little things.)

*Mizu ga dete, niwa* } “The garden has become  
*Water (nom.) issuing, garden* } a perfect sea through the  
*ga umi to natte shimaima-* } overflowing” (of the neigh-  
*(nom.) sea has-become.* } bouring stream, etc.).  
*shita.*

Observe the strong affirmative force of *to* (generally followed by *mo*) at the end of an assertion, thus :

*Arimasū ka ?—Arimasū to* } “Are there any? — Of  
*mo!* } course there are!” or, “I  
 } should just think there  
 } were!”

*To wa* or *tote* sometimes replaces *to mo* in such strongly affirmative phrases.—For *to mo* and *to wa iedomo* in concessive phrases, see ¶ 288 and ¶ 289.

## WA.

¶ 122. *Wa* was originally a noun signifying “thing,” hence “that which,” “he, she, or they who”; but it is now used as a separative or isolating particle, corresponding in some measure to the French *quant à*, or, when repeated antithetically, to the Greek *μέν* and *δέ*. Perhaps the most perfect idea of the character of a Japanese word or phrase isolated by means of *wa* is given by such French constructions as “Lui, qu’est ce qu’il en dit?” “Ces gens qui viennent d’arriver, personne n’en sait rien,”—where the

words "lui" and "ces gens qui viennent d'arriver" are, as it were, lifted out of the regular current of the sentence and set in a place apart. "As for," "with regard to," "so far as.....is concerned," are the most explicit English equivalents of *wa*, which has accordingly been rendered by "as for" in most of the literal translations of the examples scattered throughout the present work. But in practice its force is generally sufficiently indicated in an English translation by an emphasis on the equivalent of the word to which *wa* is suffixed, or by placing that word at the beginning of the sentence or clause. A slight pause, which may sometimes be indicated by a comma, is usually made after *wa* :

|                  |           |                |                   |                                                                                                         |
|------------------|-----------|----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Budō-shu</i>  | <i>wa</i> | <i>sūkoshi</i> | <i>atatamete,</i> | } "Warm the claret<br>a little; but so far<br>as the beer is con-<br>cerned, that will do<br>as it is." |
| Wine             | (accus.)  | a-little       | warming,          |                                                                                                         |
| <i>biru</i>      | <i>wa</i> | <i>sono</i>    | <i>mama de</i>    |                                                                                                         |
| beer             | as-for,   | that           | condition in      |                                                                                                         |
| <i>yoroshii.</i> |           |                |                   |                                                                                                         |
| (is)good.        |           |                |                   |                                                                                                         |

|                 |                   |            |                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Konnichi</i> | <i>wa,</i>        | <i>yoi</i> | } "To-day it is fine weather."<br>(i.e., "Whatever it may have<br>been other days, to-day at least<br>it is fine.") |
| To-day          | as-for,           | good       |                                                                                                                     |
| <i>tenki de</i> | <i>gozaimasū.</i> |            |                                                                                                                     |
| weather         | (it) is.          |            |                                                                                                                     |
|                 |                   |            |                                                                                                                     |

|                              |                        |               |                   |                                                                                            |
|------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Oki</i>                   | <i>wa,</i>             | <i>yohodo</i> | <i>nami ga</i>    | } "Out at sea the waves<br>seem pretty rough; so<br>probably the vessel will<br>not sail." |
| Offing                       | as-for,                | plentifully   | waves(nom.)       |                                                                                            |
| <i>arai</i>                  | <i>yō</i>              | <i>desū</i>   | <i>kara, fune</i> |                                                                                            |
| rough appearance is because, |                        |               | vessel            |                                                                                            |
| <i>wa</i>                    | <i>demasūmai.</i>      |               |                   |                                                                                            |
| as-for,                      | probably-won't-go-out. |               |                   |                                                                                            |

|            |           |                |                      |                             |
|------------|-----------|----------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Ima</i> | <i>wa</i> | <i>te-sūki</i> | <i>de gozaimasū.</i> | } "Now I am at<br>leisure." |
| Now        | as-for,   | hand-empty     | am.                  |                             |

|              |              |            |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------|--------------|------------|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Koko</i>  | <i>no</i>    | <i>ido</i> | <i>wa,</i> | } "The water in this well comes<br>from the aqueduct."<br>(Not "The well here is an aqueduct" (!)<br>as the beginner might suppose, if he mis-<br>took <i>wa</i> for a sign of the nominative case.) |
| Here         | 's           | well       | as-for,    |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>suidō</i> | <i>desū.</i> |            |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| water-road   | is.          |            |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|              |              |            |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

*Kore de wa komarimasū.* } “ This being so, I am in a  
*This by am-hampered.* } quandary.” (The *de wa* may  
 be contracted into *ja*; see  
 ¶ 89.)

*Tabako wa nomimasen.* } “ I don't smoke.” (*More lit.*  
*Tobacco as-for, drink-not.* } “ As for tobacco, I don't  
 smoke it.”)

*Yoku wa zonjimasen.* } “ I don't know *well*.”  
*Well as-for, (I) know-not.* }

*Kore wa wasei, are* }  
*This as-for, Japan-make; that* } “ This (is) of native make,  
*wa hakurai (de gozaimasū).* } that is an imported article.”  
*as-for, importation (is).* }

*Nishi wa Fuji, kila* }  
*West as-for, Fujiyama; north* } “ To the west stands  
*wa Tsūkuba de gozaimasū.* } Fujiyama, to the north  
*as-for, Tsūkuba (it) is.* } Mount Tsūkuba.”

¶ 123. In an interrogative sentence, *wa* would sometimes seem to be the means of asking a question; but an ellipsis must always be supplied. For instance, *Inu wa?* pronounced in an interrogative tone of voice, practically signifies “Where is the dog?” But literally it is, “As for the dog, (where is he?)”

*Wa* also sometimes occurs at the end of a sentence with a certain interjectional, exclamatory, or emphatic force. This idiom is heard only in quite familiar talk, and especially from the lips of women; thus:

*Watashi wa, kono hō ga ii wa!* } “ I like this  
*Me as-for, this side (nom.)(is)good indeed!* } one, I do.”

¶ 124. The peculiar power of *wa* to separate or limit ideas is well-shown in some of the negative phrases given in the Chapter on Syntax, ¶ 433, and also in such favourite verbal idioms as the following:

*Aru ni wa arimasu ga, sūkunō* } “There are some,  
*Is in as-for, is whereas, scarce* } it is true, but they  
*gozaimasū. (or Aru koto wa, etc.)* } are scarce.”  
*is.*

*Ame wa, fulle imasū ka ?—Furu ni* } “Is it raining?  
*Rain as-for, falling is ? Falls in* } —Yes, it is rain-  
*wa fulle imasu ga, hidoi koto* } ing, but it is not  
*as-for, falling is whereas, intense fact* } raining hard.”  
*is-for, is-not.*

*Kotowatte okimashita.* } “I refused.”  
*Refusing (I) put.*

*Kotowatte wa oki-* { “I refused, but . . .” (the sentence  
*mashita ga . . .* { remaining unfinished.)

The former of these two phrases states the fact of the refusal, and nothing more. The latter emphasises it; but the emphasis is the emphasis of hesitation, as if one should say, “I did indeed refuse, but my refusal was tempered by politeness,” or “I left myself a loophole for taking back the refusal,” etc., etc.

*Tsūkai wa kila ga, tōnin* } “Oh! yes; a  
*Messenger as-for, came although, person-* } messenger came,  
*wa ki wa shinai.* } but the man him-  
*tu-question as-for, coming as-for, docs-not.* } self didn't.”

Very often we hear *ki wa shinai* (and similar constructions with other verbs), where simple *konai*, etc., would seem sufficiently clear according to European ideas. But the Japanese prefer the more emphatic form with *wa*, whenever any mental reservation or allusion implies the existence somewhere or other of contradiction or opposition to the idea which is actually expressed, as illustrated in the two foregoing examples.

*N. B.* When thus suffixed to the indefinite form of a verb (*ki* is the indefinite form of the irregular verb *kuru*, “to come”), *wa* is often pronounced *ya*; thus *ki ya shinai* for *ki wa shinai*.

¶ 125. A consideration of the foregoing examples, and indeed of those which any page of Japanese affords, will convince the student that *wa* is not, as some European writers have erroneously imagined, a sign of the nominative case. The following example, which is the last we shall quote, illustrates this fact almost to the point of absurdity. It is race-day, let us suppose. You meet a friend walking in the direction of the race-course, and you say to him :

*Anata wa, keiba desū ka ?*  
*You as-for, horse-race is ?*

i. e., if interpreted on the hypothesis of *wa* being a sign of the nominative case, "Are you a horse-race?" (!) The proper meaning of course is "As for you, is it the races (that you are going to)?" or more simply "Off to the races, eh?" The utmost that can be said with regard to the so-called nominative force of *wa* is that the word followed by *wa* must, in not a few instances, be rendered by a nominative in English, though it is never properly a nominative in the Japanese construction. The nearest approach made by the Colloquial Japanese Language to the possession of a nominative particle is in the particle *ga* (see p. 66). But even this, as has been there explained, originally meant "of," that is to say, was a sign of the genitive, not of the nominative.

¶ 126. Europeans often find it hard to decide whether to say *wa* or *ga*; and it is true that two Japanese phrases, one with *wa*, the other with *ga*, must often be rendered by the same English words. There is, however, a slight difference of intention. When (if we may so phrase it) a speaker has in his mind a predicate and gives it a subject, he uses *ga*; when the subject is uppermost in his mind and he gives it a predicate, he uses *wa*. As a general empirical

rule, seemingly but not really contradicting the above enunciation of principle, the use of *ga* necessitates emphasis on the subject in the *English translation*, whereas the use of *wa* necessitates emphasis on the predicate. The Japanese themselves, as stated in ¶ 27, are not much given to the use of such vocal emphasis. They prefer a change in the actual words.

To take an example :—if you are expecting your Japanese teacher, the servant will probably inform you of his arrival by saying *Sensei wa miemashita*, “The teacher has *come*” (*lit.* appeared). The etymological sense is, “As for the teacher, he has come.” That is to say, the teacher (subject) was in the servant’s thoughts as a daily visitant, and now here he is. But should the same personage arrive in the middle of the night or at some other unusual hour, the servant will say *Sensei ga miemashita* ; i.e., “The *teacher* has come,”—more properly and etymologically, “The coming of the teacher.” In the servant’s mind his coming at such an hour (predicate) is the curious and important thing. So too of an unexpected death one would say, for instance, *Hayashi san ga shinimashita*, “Mr. *Hayashi* is dead.” But if he had long been known to be past recovery, the phrase would be *Hayashi san wa shinimashita*, “Mr. *Hayashi* is *dead*.” Similarly *Kore ga ii* means “*This* is good ;” whereas *Kore wa ii* means “*This* is *good*.” The distinction flows naturally from the original force of the two particles, *Kore ga ii* being properly “the goodness of this,” while *Kore wa ii* is properly “as for this, it is good.”

In comparative sentences the rule is quite simple. The subject takes *ga*, while the word denoting the thing with which the subject is compared is generally separated off by means of *wa* : thus : *Kore yori wa, are ga ii*, “*That* is better than *this*.”

¶ 127. The student who has followed this explanation with due regard to the original genitive force of *ga*, will perceive that there is nothing specially emphatic about *ga* in the Japanese idiom, though an emphasis on the word preceding it is its nearest equivalent in English. On the other hand, *wa* is emphatic and separative in Japanese, though there will generally be no emphasis on the corresponding portion of the phrase in English, when the English noun is a nominative. *Wa*, however, corresponds to an emphasised word in English whenever that word is not a nominative, as shown by several of the examples given above.

¶ 128. It may be asked : what is the rule in the case of two nominatives in antithetical clauses? The answer is that either *ga* may be used in both, or else *wa* may be used in both. Thus the fourth example on p. 87, *Kore wa wasei, are wa hakurai*, "This is of native make, that is an imported article," might be altered to *Kore ga wasei, are ga hakurai*. The effect would be to throw the emphasis more strongly on the two subjects than on the two predicates.

*N. B.* Sometimes *wa*, occurring after an adjective in *ku*, must be rendered by "if," thus :

|                                    |                                         |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Yoroshiku wa, de-kakemashō.</i> | } "If you are all right, let us start." |
| <i>Is-good if, will-go-out.</i>    |                                         |

Elegant speakers sometimes prefer to say *yoroshikuba*, which is the form employed in the Book Language.

### WO.

¶ 129. *Wo* is the nearest Japanese equivalent to a sign of the accusative case, thus :

|                               |                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Tamago wo uderu.</i>       | } "To boil eggs." |
| <i>Eggs (accus.) to-boil.</i> |                   |





Here the first clause literally means "placing the ministers of state at the beginning." It is therefore not unnatural that the word *daijin-gata*, being what we should term an accusative, should take *wo*.

- ¶ 132. In the Written Language, *wo* is often used adversatively at the end of a clause. But this is rare in the Colloquial, which prefers to use *ga* for that purpose, as already explained in ¶ 93, p. 67.

## YA.

- ¶ 133. *Ya* is an interrogative and exclamatory particle of constant occurrence in the Written Language. In the Colloquial it is less used, excepting in such contexts as *Haru ya!* "I say, Haru!" said when calling a person by name. It also occurs corruptly for *wa* after the indefinite forms of verbs, as explained in the N. B. on p. 88. Sometimes it has the sense of "and" or "or," thus :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |   |                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Tonari no uchi de, inu ya</i><br/> <i>Next-door's house ut, dog and</i><br/> <i>neko ga sūki to miete,</i><br/> <i>cat of fond that seeming,</i><br/> <i>takusan ni katte orimasū.</i><br/> <i>quantity in rearing are.</i></p> | } | <p>"They would seem to be very fond of dogs and cats in the house next door; for they keep quite a number of them."</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                              |   |                                     |
|------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| <p>...<i>ya nani ka.</i></p> | } | <p>"... or something or other."</p> |
|------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|

## YE.\*

- ¶ 134. *Ye* means "to," "towards," hence sometimes "at:"

|                                                                                   |   |                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| <p><i>Gakkō ye o ide desū ka?</i><br/> <i>School to, honourable exit is ?</i></p> | } | <p>"Do you go to school?"</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|

\* Some good authorities prefer the orthography *E*. In Classical Japanese the word is spelt *へ* (*he*). We follow Hepburn's and Brinkley's dictionaries, as usual.

|                         |                     |                                                                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sūtensho ye</i>      | <i>iki-gake ni,</i> | } “I will just look in at<br>the telegraph office on my<br>way to the station.” |
| <i>Station towards</i>  | <i>going-while,</i> |                                                                                 |
| <i>denshin-kyoku</i>    | <i>ye chotto</i>    |                                                                                 |
| <i>telegraph-office</i> | <i>at, just</i>     |                                                                                 |
| <i>yorimasū.</i>        |                     |                                                                                 |
| <i>will-stop.</i>       |                     |                                                                                 |

|                                            |                                 |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Koko ye oite oite kudasai.</i>          | } “Please put it<br>down here.” |
| <i>Here to putting putting condescend.</i> |                                 |

*N. B.* The second *oite* is the same verb as the first, but has only the force of an auxiliary (see ¶ 298).

### YORI.

¶ 135. *Yori* means “from,” “since,” “than :”

|                       |                                           |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kamigata yori.</i> | } “From Kyōto” (or its<br>neighbourhood). |
|                       |                                           |

|                          |                                        |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Issakujitsu yori.</i> | } “Since the day before<br>yesterday.” |
|                          |                                        |

|                                           |                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nani yori kekkō na o</i>               | } “Thanks for your splen-<br>did present.” ( <i>More lit.</i><br>for your more-splendid-<br>than-anything present.) |
| <i>Anything than, splendid honourable</i> |                                                                                                                     |
| <i>shina wo, arigatō gozaimasū.</i>       |                                                                                                                     |
| <i>article (accus.) thankful am.</i>      |                                                                                                                     |

### POSTPOSITIONS COMBINED.

¶ 136. Postpositions may be combined in Japanese, much as in English we say “in at,” “in by,” “away from,” etc. Some instances have already occurred in the preceding portions of this chapter. Here are a few more :—

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Go shimpai ni wa</i>  | } “It is not worth your troubling<br>about.” ( <i>Ni wa</i> is more emphatic than <i>ni</i><br>alone would be. For a still more emphatic<br>construction with <i>ni wa</i> , see ¶ 124.) |
| <i>August anxiety to</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>oyobimasen.</i>       |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>reaches-not.</i>      |                                                                                                                                                                                          |

|                                           |                              |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Oshii koto ni wa . . . .</i>           | } “It is a pity that. . . .” |
| <i>Regrettable fact as indeed . . . .</i> |                              |

*N. B.* Phrases of this kind are idiomatic and in constant use.

*Jū-ni-ji yori mo osoku* } “It won’t do to  
*Twelve-hours than even, late* } be later than twelve  
*nalcha ikemasen.* } o’clock.”  
*as-for-becoming, is-no-go.*

*Ano hito to wa, goku* } “He is very intimate  
*That person with as-for, very* } with that man.”  
*kon-i de gozainasū.*  
*intimate is.*

*Ano hen mo, moto* } “That neighbourhood  
*That neighbourhood also, origin* } also is much improved  
*to wa yohodo hirakemashita.* } compared with what it  
*with as-for, very much has-opened-out.* } (used to be.)”

*Isogazu to mo yoroshii.* (Familiar.) } “You needn’t  
*Hurrying-not even, (is) good.* } hurry.”

*Kuru to ka imashita.* } “If I mistake not, he said  
*Comes that ? said.* } he would come.”

*Kao de mo o arai nasaru ka ?* } “Will you wash  
*Face even, honourably to-wash deign ?* } your face, Sir ?”

*N. B.* *De mo* is often thus used in a manner not needing translation into English, though retaining the force of “even” in Japanese.

*Konnichi made no* } “I will do the accounts  
*To-day till ’s* } down to to-day.” (*more lit.*  
*kanjō wo shimashō.* } the till-to-day’s accounts.)  
*accounts (accus.) will-do.*

*Sore made no koto ni* } “I will let it alone,” or  
*That till ’s thing to* } “Don’t let us think about it  
*itashimashō.* } any more.”  
*(I)will-make.*

*Kore made ni mita koto* } “I had never seen it till  
*This till in, saw act* } now.” (*Made ni* is stronger  
*ga nakatta.* } than *made* alone would be.)  
*(nom.) was-not.*

*N. B.* *Made ni* often corresponds to our word “by” in such phrases as *myōnichi made ni*, “by to-morrow ;” *hachi-ji made ni*, “by (i.e. not later than) eight o’clock.” The Japanese mind does not clearly apprehend the shade of difference which, with us, separates “by” from “till” in idioms of this class. Compare the *N. B.* to ¶ 100 for a case of a somewhat similar character.

¶ 137. *No* followed by other postpositions generally has the substantive force of the English word “one” or “ones,” already exemplified on p. 78, thus :

*Motto ii no wa arimasen ka ?* } “ Haven’t you any  
*More good ones as-for, are-not* ? { better ones ?”

*Mō chillo ii no wo* }  
*More a-little good ones (accus.)* } “ Please show me some  
*mīsete kudasai.* } rather better ones.”  
*showing condescend.*

*Ōkii no ga hoshii.* } “ I want a big one.”  
*Big one of (am) desirous.* }

*Kō iu no mo hayarimasū* }  
*Such ones also are-fashionable* } “ This kind too is  
*kara, goran nasai.* } fashionable. So please look  
*because, august-glance condescend.* } at them.”

*Motto yasui no ni shiyō.* } “ I think I will take  
*More cheap one to will-probably-do.* } a cheaper one.”

¶ 138. Though the *no* of *no ni* may, as in the last example, be used in the sense of “one” or “ones,” it more frequently signifies “whereas,” “while,” “when.” It may be known to have this acceptation by observing that a verb (or an adjective equivalent to a verb) precedes it, as in the following sentence :

*Moto no mama de yokatta* }  
*Origin 's manner by, was-good* } “ Why have you changed  
*no ni, naze jun wo* } their order, when it did quite  
*whereas, why order (accus.)* } well as it was ?”  
*naoshūa ?* } (Said, e.g., to a servant.)  
*have-amended ?*

As here exemplified, *no ni* occurs chiefly in phrases expressive of censure or regret. Conf. ¶ 287 for further details concerning this important idiom.

¶ 139. Observe that *wo* and *wa*, when combined, change by euphony into *woba*, which is used to denote a specially



|                   |                  |      |                                   |
|-------------------|------------------|------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>no naka,</i>   | “interior of,”   | i.e. | “inside, in.”                     |
| <i>no shita,</i>  | “lower part of,” | ,,   | “below.”                          |
| <i>no soto,</i>   | “exterior of,”   | ,,   | “outside,” “beyond.”              |
| <i>no tame,</i>   | “sake of,”       | ,,   | { “because of,”<br>“in order to.” |
| <i>no uchi,</i>   | “interior of,”   | ,,   | “inside, “in.”                    |
| <i>no ue,</i>     | “top of,”        | ,,   | “on, “upon.”                      |
| <i>no ushiro,</i> | “back of,”       | ,,   | “behind.”                         |
| <i>no waki,</i>   | “side of,”       | ,,   | “beside” (by the side).           |

We thus get such phrases as :

|                           |                                                                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ie no uchi,</i>        | “In(side) the house.”                                                 |
| <i>Hei no soto,</i>       | “Beyond the fence.”                                                   |
| <i>Kura no naka,</i>      | “In(side) the godown.”                                                |
| <i>Omoi no hoka,</i>      | “Outside of thought,” <i>i.e.</i> , “unexpectedly.”                   |
| <i>Hanashi no tsuide,</i> | “Occasion of talking,” <i>i.e.</i> , “in the course of conversation.” |
| <i>Ano yama no kage,</i>  | “Behind those mountains.”                                             |

¶ 142. When followed by a verb, the quasi-postpositions take *ni* after them, except in the case of the substantive verb “to be,” which requires *de*, unless when signifying “there is,” etc. (*De aru* is generally contracted to *da*; *de gozaimasū* to *desū*, and so on; see p. 64). Thus:

|                               |                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>To-dana no naka ni</i>     | } “It is in the cupboard.” (One might equally well say <i>Todana no naka desū</i> .) |
| <i>Cupboard 's inside in,</i> |                                                                                      |
| <i>hailte imasū.</i>          |                                                                                      |
| <i>entering is.</i>           |                                                                                      |

|                                      |                            |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Tsūkue no ue ni notte imasen</i>  | } “Isn't it on the table ? |
| <i>Table 's top on, riding isn't</i> |                            |
| <i>ka ?—Tsūkue no ue desū.</i>       | } —Yes, it is.”            |
| <i>? Table 's top (it) is.</i>       |                            |

*Kono hoka ni, mata* } “There are various kinds besides  
*This-of besides, again* } this one.”  
*iro-iro gozaimasū.* } (For *kono* = “of this,” see p. 54; simi-  
*various-kinds are.* } larly for *sono* immediately below.)

*Kawa no mukō de gozaimasū.* } “It is on the other  
*River 's opposite (it) is.* } side of the river.”

Note also the idiom *sono kawari ni*, lit. “change of that,” used in the sense of “on the other hand.”

¶ 143. When prefixed attributively to a noun, this class of words changes the *ni* into *no*, in accordance with the rule explained in ¶ 111, thus :

*Tansu no naka no kimono.* } “The clothes in the  
*Chest-of-drawers 's interior 's clothes.* } chest of drawers.”

*Kono hoka no shina-mono.* } “The other things  
*This-of exterior 's articles.* } besides these.”

*Mon no waki no momiji wa,* } “The leaves of the  
*Gate 's side 's maple as-for,* } maple-tree by the gate  
*rippa ni kōyō shimashita.* } have become beautifully  
*splendidly red-leaf has-done.* } red.”

¶ 144. When a member of this class of words follows a verb, its force changes slightly, so as to correspond to that of an English adverb or conjunction, thus :

*Kare kore suru uchi ni,* } “While we were doing all  
*That this do while,* } this, night came on.”  
*hi ga kuremashita.* } (Note the idiom *kare kore*, “that  
*day (nom.) darkened.* } and this,” or, as we should say, “this,  
 that, and the other.”)

*Sō suru hoka, shikata* } “There is nothing else to  
*So do except, way-of-doing* } be done.”  
*ga nai.*  
*(nom.) isn't.*

|                                           |                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kinō furimashīta kawari</i>            | } “Whereas it rained yesterday (i.e., after yesterday’s rain), it is beautiful weather to-day.” |
| <i>Yesterday rained change</i>            |                                                                                                 |
| <i>ni, kyō wa ii o</i>                    |                                                                                                 |
| <i>in, to-day as-for, good honourable</i> |                                                                                                 |
| <i>tenki (de gozaimasū).</i>              |                                                                                                 |
| <i>weather (is).</i>                      |                                                                                                 |

¶ 145. There are also quasi-postpositions formed by *ni* and the gerunds of verbs, as *ni atatte*, “just at,” from *ataru*, “to strike;” *ni shūtagatte*, “according to,” from *shūtagau*, “to conform;” *ni yotte*, “owing to,” from *yoru*, “to rely;” thus :

|                                           |                                                |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kyaku ni taishūte, shitsurei desū.</i> | } “It is rude to say (or do) that to a guest.” |
| <i>Guest to confronting, rudeness is.</i> |                                                |

|                                                     |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Anata ni taishūte, mōshi-wake ga gozaimasen.</i> | } “I know not how to excuse myself to you.” |
| <i>You to confronting excuse (nom.) is-not.</i>     |                                             |

|                                                                                             |                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Amari nyūhi wo kake-sugimashūte, ima ni itatte kōkwaī shūte imasū.</i>                   | } “I am sorry now for my extravagance.” |
| <i>Too-much expense (accus.) having-put-exceeded, now to reaching, repentance doing am.</i> |                                         |

|                                        |                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Shinnen ga kimasū ni yotte,</i>     | } “As the New Year is approaching, we must decorate (the gate).” |
| <i>New-year (nom.) comes to owing,</i> |                                                                  |
| <i>o kazari wo</i>                     |                                                                  |
| <i>honourable decorations (accus.)</i> |                                                                  |
| <i>itaskanereba narimasen.</i>         |                                                                  |
| <i>if-we-dou’t-make, (it)isn’t.</i>    |                                                                  |



## CHAPTER VI.

### *The Numeral.*

#### CARDINAL NUMBERS.

¶ 146. In European grammars the numerals are generally disposed of in a few lines, as forming a mere subdivision of the adjective. In Japanese the numeral is rather a species of noun, and a species of noun with marked peculiarities of its own, necessitating its treatment as a separate part of speech.

¶ 147. There are two sets of numerals, one of native and the other of Chinese origin. The native set is now obsolete except for the first ten numbers, which are as follows :—

#### SUBSTANTIVE FORM. FORM USED IN COMPOUNDS. ENUMERATIVE FORM.

|    |                  |                                |                 |
|----|------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1  | <i>hitotsu</i>   | <i>hito(-tsuki)</i> ( 1 month) | <i>hi</i>       |
| 2  | <i>fütatsu</i>   | <i>fūta(-, ,)</i> ( 2 ,, )     | <i>fū</i>       |
| 3  | <i>mitsu</i>     | <i>mi(-, ,)</i> ( 3 ,, )       | <i>mī</i>       |
| 4  | <i>yotsu</i>     | <i>yo(-, ,)</i> ( 4 ,, )       | <i>yō</i>       |
| 5  | <i>itsūtsu</i>   | <i>itsu(-, ,)</i> ( 5 ,, )     | <i>itsu</i>     |
| 6  | <i>mutsu</i>     | <i>mu(-, ,)</i> ( 6 ,, )       | <i>mū</i>       |
| 7  | <i>nanatsu</i>   | <i>nana(-, ,)</i> ( 7 ,, )     | <i>nana</i>     |
| 8  | <i>yatsu</i>     | <i>ya(-, ,)</i> ( 8 ,, )       | <i>yā</i>       |
| 9  | <i>kokonotsu</i> | <i>kokono(-, ,)</i> ( 9 ,, )   | <i>ko(ko)no</i> |
| 10 | <i>tō</i>        | <i>to(-, ,)</i> ( 10 ,, )      | <i>tō</i>       |

*N. B.* It will assist the memory to notice that the even numbers are formed from the odds of which they are the doubles by a process of vowel-strengthening, the consonants being originally the same, though slightly disfigured in modern pronunciation, thus :

|                                                   |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>hi</i> to (anciently probably <i>pi</i> to), | 2 <i>fu</i> ta (anciently probably <i>pu</i> ta). |
| 3 <i>mi</i> ,                                     | 6 <i>mu</i> .                                     |
| 4 <i>yo</i> ,                                     | 8 <i>ya</i> .                                     |
| 5 <i>i</i> tsu (anciently <i>i</i> tu),           | 10 <i>to</i> .                                    |

¶ 148. The substantive forms of the numerals may either be used quite alone, or they may follow the noun, or lastly they may take the postposition *no*, “of,” and precede the noun. They very rarely precede a noun without the intervention of *no*. Thus :—

*Ikutsu gozaimasū ka?*—*Hītotsu*. { “How many are  
How-many are ? — One. } there?—One.”

*Tsutsumi hītotsu*, or  
*Hītotsu no tsutsumi*. } “One parcel.”

*Mitsu de takusan (de gozaimashō)*. { “Three will no  
Three by, great-deal will-probably-be. } doubt be plenty.”

*Yatsu de tarimasū ka?* } “Will eight be enough?”  
Eight by, will-suffice ?

*Tō bakari kudasai*. } “Please give me about ten.”  
Ten about condescend.

*Iki mo kaeri mo*,  
Going also, returning also, } “Taking the same road  
*hītotsu michi*. } there and back again.”  
one road.

¶ 149. The form used in compounds always precedes the noun to which it refers, as *hīto-tsūki*, “one month;” *fūta-hako*, “two boxfuls;” *mi-ban*, “three nights.”

¶ 150. The enumerative form is used in counting over things, e.g. a bundle of paper money, linen to be sent to the wash, etc.

¶ 151. Though the native Japanese numerals above “ten” are now obsolete for ordinary purposes, note that *hatachi*, the old native word for “twenty,” is still used in the sense of “twenty years of age,” and that *chi*, “a thousand,” and *yorozu*, “a myriad,” or “ten thousand,” are still retained in proper names and in a few idioms, e.g. *Chi-shima*, “the Thousand Isles,” i.e., “the Kurile Islands;” *Yorozu-ya*, a favourite shop-name, probably originating in the fact of many sorts of articles being exposed for sale.

¶ 152. The set of numerals borrowed from the Chinese is :

|                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>ichi</i> , rarely <i>itsu</i> | 6 <i>roku</i> , rarely <i>riku</i> |
| 2 <i>ni</i> , rarely <i>ji</i>     | 7 <i>shichi</i>                    |
| 3 <i>san</i>                       | 8 <i>hachi</i>                     |
| 4 <i>shi</i>                       | 9 <i>ku</i> , rarely <i>kyū</i>    |
| 5 <i>go</i>                        | 10 <i>jū</i>                       |

100 *hyaku*    1,000 *sen*    10,000 *man* or *ban*

*N. B.* *ichi* also means “whole,” “all,” as *ichi-nichi*, “one day,” but also, “all day long.” The native Japanese numeral *hito*, “one,” has come to have the same secondary sense in certain cases, as *hito-ban*, “one night” or “all night.”—The word *ryō*, properly “both,” is often substituted for *ni*.

All the others are formed by combining these, thus :

|                     |                        |                                                 |
|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 11 <i>jū-ichi</i>   | 20 <i>ni-jū</i>        | 29 <i>ni-jū-ku</i>                              |
| 12 <i>jū-ni</i>     | 21 <i>ni-jū-ichi</i>   | 30 <i>san-jū</i>                                |
| 13 <i>jū-san</i>    | 22 <i>ni-jū-ni</i>     | 40 <i>shi-jū</i>                                |
| 14 <i>jū-shi</i>    | 23 <i>ni-jū-san</i>    | 50 <i>go-jū</i>                                 |
| 15 <i>jū-go</i>     | 24 <i>ni-jū-shi</i>    | 60 <i>roku-jū</i>                               |
| 16 <i>jū-roku</i>   | 25 <i>ni-jū-go</i>     | 70 <i>shichi-jū</i>                             |
| 17 <i>jū-shichi</i> | 26 <i>ni-jū-roku</i>   | 80 <i>hachi-jū</i>                              |
| 18 <i>jū-hachi</i>  | 27 <i>ni-jū-shichi</i> | 90 <i>ku-jū</i>                                 |
| 19 <i>jū-ku</i>     | 28 <i>ni-jū-hachi</i>  | 100 <i>ip-pyaku</i> (for<br><i>ichi hyaku</i> ) |

|                                                |                                              |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 200 <i>ni-hyaku</i>                            | 300 <i>sam-byaku</i> (for <i>san hyaku</i> ) |
| 400 <i>shi-hyaku</i>                           | 500 <i>go-hyaku</i>                          |
| 600 <i>rop-pyaku</i> (for <i>roku hyaku</i> )  | 700 <i>shichi-hyaku</i>                      |
| 800 <i>hap-pyaku</i> (for <i>hachi hyaku</i> ) | 900 <i>ku-hyaku</i>                          |
| 1,000 <i>is-sen</i> (for <i>ichi sen</i> )     | 10,000 <i>ichi-man</i>                       |
| 100,000 <i>jū-man</i>                          | 1,000,000 <i>hyaku-man</i>                   |
| 108 <i>hyaku hachi</i>                         | 365 <i>sam-byaku roku-jū-go</i>              |
|                                                | 1897 <i>is-sen hap-pyaku ku-jū shichi</i>    |
|                                                | 43,000,000 <i>shi-sen sam-byaku-man</i>      |

There is a term *oku* meaning 100,000, and a term *chō* meaning 1,000,000; but they are scarcely ever used, being almost always replaced by multiples of *man*, as in the examples just given.

¶ 153. The Chinese numerals are not often used independently. It is customary to make them precede a noun, with which they form of sort of compound, as *ichi-nen*, "one year;" *is-sun* (for *ichi sun*), "one inch."

In forming such combinations, note the category of letter-changes of which the following are examples :

|                       |                  |                     |                     |
|-----------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>ch</i>             | <i>it-chō</i>    | for <i>ichi chō</i> | "one <i>chō</i> *"  |
|                       | <i>hat-chō</i>   | „ <i>hachi chō</i>  | "eight <i>chō</i> " |
|                       | <i>jū-chō</i>    | „ <i>jū chō</i>     | "ten <i>chō</i> "   |
| <i>f</i> and <i>h</i> | <i>ip-pun</i>    | „ <i>ichi fun</i>   | "one minute"        |
|                       | <i>ip-pen</i>    | „ <i>ichi hen</i>   | "once"              |
|                       | <i>sam-pun</i> † | „ <i>san fun</i>    | "three minutes"     |
|                       | <i>sam-ben</i>   | „ <i>san hen</i>    | "thrice"            |
|                       | <i>rop-pun</i>   | „ <i>roku fun</i>   | "six minutes"       |
|                       | <i>rop-pen</i>   | „ <i>roku hen</i>   | "six times"         |

\* A measure of distance equivalent to about 120 yards English.

† Some words change *f*, not into *p*, but into *b*; thus *sam-buku*, "three scrolls," from *san* and *fūku*.

|           |                     |                      |                         |
|-----------|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
|           | <i>jip-pun</i>      | for <i>jū fun</i>    | “ ten minutes ”         |
|           | <i>jip-pen</i>      | „ <i>jū hen</i>      | “ ten times ”           |
|           | <i>(hyap-pun)*</i>  | „ <i>hyaku fun</i>   | “ a hundred minutes ”   |
|           | <i>hyap-pen</i>     | „ <i>hyaku hen</i>   | “ a hundred times ”     |
|           | <i>(sem-bun)*</i>   | „ <i>sen fun</i>     | “ a thousand minutes ”  |
|           | <i>sem-ben</i>      | „ <i>sen-hen</i>     | “ a thousand times ”    |
| <i>k</i>  | <i>ik-kin</i>       | „ <i>ichi kin</i>    | “ one pound ”           |
|           | <i>san-gin</i>      | „ <i>san kin</i>     | “ three pounds ”        |
|           | <i>rok-kin</i>      | „ <i>roku kin</i>    | “ six pounds ”          |
|           | <i>jik-kin</i>      | „ <i>jū kin</i>      | “ ten pounds ”          |
|           | <i>hyak-kin</i>     | „ <i>hyaku kin</i>   | “ a hundred pounds ”    |
|           | <i>sen-gin</i>      | „ <i>sen kin</i>     | “ a thousand pounds ”   |
| <i>m</i>  | <i>sam-mai</i>      | „ <i>sau mai</i>     | “ three (flat things) ” |
|           | <i>sem-mai</i>      | „ <i>sen mai</i>     | “ a thousand „          |
| <i>s</i>  | <i>is-sō</i>        | „ <i>ichi sō</i>     | “ one (vessel) ”        |
|           | <i>san-zō†</i>      | „ <i>san sō</i>      | “ three (vessels) ”     |
|           | <i>has-sō</i>       | „ <i>hachi sō</i>    | “ eight vessels ”       |
|           | <i>jis-sō</i>       | „ <i>jū sō</i>       | “ ten vessels ”         |
|           | <i>sen-zō</i>       | „ <i>sen-sō</i>      | “ a thousand vessels ”  |
| <i>sh</i> | <i>is-shaku</i>     | „ <i>ichi shaku</i>  | “ one foot ”            |
|           | <i>has-shaku</i>    | „ <i>hachi shaku</i> | “ eight feet ”          |
|           | <i>(jis-shaku)*</i> | „ <i>jū shaku</i>    | “ ten feet ”            |
| <i>t</i>  | <i>it-teki</i>      | „ <i>ichi teki</i>   | “ one drop ”            |
|           | <i>hat-teki</i>     | „ <i>hachi teki</i>  | “ eight drops ”         |
|           | <i>jit-teki</i>     | „ <i>jū teki</i>     | “ ten drops ”           |

*N. B.* Though the difficulty of making these letter-changes correctly will strike the beginner chiefly in the case of numeral combinations, the same euphonic rules apply to all other Chinese compounds, thus :

*ket-chaku*, from *ketsu chaku*, “ decision,” “ final resolve.”

*tem-pō*, „ *ten hō*, (See Vocabulary.)

\* Not in use.

† Some words in *s* do not change the *s* into *z*, thus *san-satsu*, “ three volumes,” not *san-zatsu*.

|                  |                         |                           |
|------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Nip-pon</i> , | from <i>nitsu hon</i> , | "Japan."                  |
| <i>ak-kō</i> ,   | „ <i>aku kō</i> ,       | "bad language."           |
| <i>an-ma</i> ,   | „ <i>an ma</i> ,        | "a shampooer."            |
| <i>mes-sō</i> ,  | „ <i>metsu sō</i> ,     | "extravagant."            |
| <i>zas-shi</i> , | „ <i>zatsu shi</i> ,    | "a magazine," "a review." |
| <i>bet-tō</i> ,  | „ <i>betsu tō</i> ,     | "a groom."                |

(In practice the hyphen is generally omitted in such words.)

¶ 154. The Japanese numerals, as far as they go, are mostly employed with Japanese nouns, and the Chinese numerals with Chinese nouns. But there are numerous exceptions to this rule, for instance :

|                                              |                        |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>it-toki</i> (but also <i>hito-toki</i> ), | "one hour."            |
| <i>fūta-fūfu</i> ,                           | "two married couples." |
| <i>mi-ban</i> ,                              | "three nights."        |
| <i>yo-nen</i> ,                              | "four years."          |

After "ten," beyond which the Japanese numerals no longer run, the Chinese numerals are perforce employed with Japanese as well as with Chinese words, thus :

|                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>jū-ni hako</i> , | "twelve boxfuls." |
| <i>hyaku kumi</i> , | a hundred sets.   |

¶ 155. Usage plays various freaks with the numerals. Thus the Chinese numeral *shi*, "four," which is considered unlucky because homonymous with *shi*, "death," is in many contexts replaced by the equivalent Japanese numeral *yo*, for instance :

|                       |                                                     |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>yo-nin</i> ,       | "four persons." ( <i>shi-nin</i> means "a corpse.") |
| <i>ni-jū-yo-ban</i> , | "No. 24."                                           |

*N. B.* Colloquialism sometimes goes a step further, corrupting the *yo* into *yon*. Thus people may say *yon-jū*, instead of *shi-jū*, "forty."

Chinese *shichi*, "seven," is sometimes replaced by Japanese *nana*. This is done for clearness' sake, as *shichi* is easily

confounded with *shi*, "four." Thus tradesmen will often say *nana-jis-sen*, instead of *shichi-jis-sen*, "seventy cents." But this is never either necessary or elegant.

- ¶ 156. Usage likewise establishes a shade of difference in the sense of certain expressions which would at first sight appear to be synonymous, thus :

*hito-hako*, "one boxful ;" *hako hitotsu*, "one box."

*hito-tsuki*, "one month ;" *ichi-getsu*, "the first month," i. e., "January ;" *ik-ka-getsu*, "one month." (For *ka* see ¶ 159, middle of p. 109.)

*hito-ban*, "one night ;" *ichi-ban*, "number one."

*futa-ban*, "two nights ;" *ni-ban*, "number two."

*N. B.* Both these *ban's* are of Chinese origin ; but they are different words written with different characters.

## AUXILIARY NUMERALS.

- ¶ 157. In English we do not say "one bread," "two beers," but "one loaf of bread," "two glasses of beer." Similarly we say "ten sheets of paper," "a hundred head of cattle," "so many rubbers of whist." Compare also the Pidjin-English "piecey," in such expressions as "one piecey man," "two piecey house," etc. Words of this kind are, in Japanese grammar, termed "auxiliary numerals." "Auxiliaries to the numerals" would be more strictly correct. The term "classifier" has also been proposed ; but "auxiliary numeral" is that which has obtained the widest currency. The auxiliary numerals constitute a highly important class of words. For whereas in English such expressions as those just mentioned are somewhat exceptional, they are the rule in Japanese.

- ¶ 158. In some cases, indeed, the numeral is prefixed directly to the noun, e. g., *ichi-nichi*, "one day ;" *ichi-nin*, "one

person ;" *ichi-ri*, "one league." But usage ordinarily demands the insertion of an auxiliary numeral, as :

*tera ik-ken*, "temple one eaves," i.e., "one Buddhist temple."

*futon sam-mai*, "quilt three flat-things," i.e., "three-quilts."

*onna roku-nin*, "woman six person," i.e., "six women."

*N. B.* One may also say *ik-ken no tera, sam-mai no futon*, etc.

¶ 159. The choice of the auxiliary numeral appropriate to each class of words is fixed by custom, a mistake in this matter producing the same absurd effect as does a wrong gender in French or German. The Japanese auxiliary numerals are, however, easier to remember than the French and German genders, since they are generally more or less founded on reason, as will be seen by the following list of those most in use. As the auxiliary numerals are always employed, not independently, but in combination with the numerals proper, we give them here preceded in each case by *ichi*, "one," and *ni*, "two." The student should carefully notice the phonetic changes caused in many instances by the presence of *ichi*, and should refer to the table of changes on pp. 104—105. The presence of *ni* causes no such changes. An auxiliary numeral may therefore always be seen in its original shape when following that word. The chief auxiliary numerals are :

(*ichi-bu, ni*, etc.-) *bu*, "a class ;" for copies of a book.

(*it-chō, ni*-) *chō*, "a handle ;" for things with handles, such as muskets, jinrikīshas, and many kinds of tools.

(*ichi-dai, ni*-) *dai*, "a stand ;" for carriages and jinrikīshas.

(*ip-puku, ni*-) *fūku*, (various meanings ;) for scrolls, sips of tea, whiffs of tobacco, and doses of medicine.



(*ip-pai, ni-*)*hai*, “a wine-cup;” for cupfuls and glassfuls of any liquid; also for loaded junks or steamers.

*N. B.* *Ip-pai* also means “full.”

(*ip-piki ni-*)*hiki*, “a fellow;” for most living creatures, excepting human beings and birds; also for certain quantities of cloth and sums of money.

(*ip-pon, ni-*)*hon*, “a stem;” for cylindrical things, such as sticks, trees, fans, pens, bottles, newspapers rolled up to be posted, etc.

(*ichi-jō, ni-*)*jō*, “a mat;” for mats.

(*ik-ka, ni-*)*ka*, sometimes *ko*, “the culm of the bamboo;” for a few things that have no other auxiliary numeral appropriated to them, more, however, in the bookish style than in genuine Colloquial.

(*ik-ken, ni-*)*ken*, “eaves;” for buildings generally.

(*ichi-mai, ni-*)*mai*, “a shrub;” for flat things, such as sheets of paper, coins, plates, coats, shirts, rugs, etc.

(*ichi-mei ni-*)*mei*, “a name;” for human beings. This word *mei* is somewhat bookish; *nin* is more genuinely Colloquial.

(*ichu-nin, ni-*)*nin*, “a person;” for human beings.

(*is-satsu, ni-*)*satsu*, “a volume;” for volumes of a book. Do not confound *satsu* with *bu*, which latter refers to complete copies of a work, irrespective of the number of volumes contained in it.

(*is-shu, ni-*)*shu*, a head;” for poems.

(*is-sō, ni-*)*sō*, “a boat;” for vessels of every description.

(*is-soku, ni-*)*soku*, “a foot;” for pairs of socks, clogs, boots, etc.

(*it-tō, ni-*)*tō*, “a head;” for horses and cattle; but *hiki* may also be used.

(*ichi-wa, ni-wa*, “a feather;” for birds. This word suffers irregular phonetic changes, thus :

|                      |                   |                |                  |
|----------------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 3 <i>sam-ba</i> ,    | 4 <i>shi-wa</i>   | 5 <i>go-wa</i> | 6 <i>rop-pa</i>  |
| 7 <i>shichi-wa</i> , | 8 <i>hachi-wa</i> | 9 <i>ku-wa</i> | 10 <i>jip-pa</i> |

¶ 160. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF THE AUXILIARY NUMERALS.

|                                    |                                                    |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hanshi ichi-mai.</i>            | { “One sheet of (a certain common kind of) paper.” |
| <i>Uta is-shu.</i>                 | { “One (Japanese) poem.”                           |
| <i>Ko-galana ni-chō.</i>           | { “Two pen-knives.”                                |
| <i>Fude sam-bon.</i>               | { “Three pens.”                                    |
| <i>Waraji is-soku.</i>             | { “One pair of straw sandals.”                     |
| <i>Hon go-satsu.</i>               | { “Five volumes.” ( <i>Hon</i> = “book.”)          |
| <i>Rok-ka-sho.</i>                 | { “Six places.”                                    |
| <i>Six-piecey-place.</i>           | { “Six places.”                                    |
| <i>Gunkan jis-sō.</i>              | { “Ten war-vessels.”                               |
| <i>Ushi hyap-piki.</i>             | { “A hundred head of cattle.”                      |
| <i>Ushi hyakū-tō.</i>              | { “A hundred head of cattle.”                      |
| <i>Suzume sem-ba.</i>              | { “A thousand sparrows” (in nature).               |
| <i>Sem-ba suzume.</i>              | { “A thousand sparrows” (in art).                  |
| <i>Ichī-nin-biki no kuruma.</i>    | { “A <i>jūrikisha</i> with one                     |
| <i>One-person-pull ’s vehicle.</i> | { man.”                                            |

*N. B.* This *biki* (the *nigori*’ed form of *hiki*, the “indefinite form” of *hiku*, “to pull”) is of course quite a different word from the auxiliary numeral *hiki* in *ip-piki*, *sam-biki*, etc.

|                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Ichī-nin-nori no kuruma.</i>    | { “A <i>jūrikisha</i> capable of |
| <i>One-person-ride ’s vehicle.</i> | { holding one person only.”      |
| <i>Ni-nin-nori no kuruma.</i>      | { “A <i>jūrikisha</i> capable of |
| <i>Two-person-ride ’s vehicle.</i> | { holding two persons.”          |
| <i>Ni-tō biki no basha.</i>        | { “A carriage with two           |
| <i>Two-head-pull ’s carriage.</i>  | { horses.”                       |

*Mukō san-gen, ryō-donari.* } “The three houses  
*Opposite three-eaves, both-next-door.* } opposite and the one on  
 either side.”

*Kochira wa hachi-jō, tsugi no* } “This room has eight  
*Here as-for, eight-mat; next of* } mats, the next twelve.  
*ma wa jū-ni-jō. Sono* } Besides these, there is  
*space as-for, twelve-mat. That* } one of ten mats, one o  
*hoka, jū-jō ni, roku-jō ni,* } six, and one of four and  
*besides, ten-mat and, six-mat and,* } a half.”  
*yo-jō-han mo gozaimasū.* }  
*four-mat-half also (there) are.* }

*Go-go no san-ji goro ni* } “I am going out at  
*Noon-after of three-hour about at* } about three o'clock. So  
*deru kara, sore made ni* } please see that a *jūnikū-*  
*go-out because, that till in,* } *sha* with two men is  
*ni-nim-biki no jūnikū ichi-dai* } ready for me by then.”  
*two-person-pull of jūnikūsha one-stand* }  
*shūtake sasele oite* }  
*preparation causing-to-do placing* }  
*kudasai.* }  
*condescend.* }

*Dōgu-ya de byōbu is-sō to,* } “Please send a coolie  
*Utensil-house at, screen one-pair and,* } to fetch a pair of screens  
*kakemono ni-fūku kalle* } and two *kakemonos*,  
*hanging-scroll two-border having-bought* } which I have just  
*oita kara, kozukai wo tori* } purchased at the curio-  
*placed because, coolie (accus.) fetch* } dealer's.”  
*ni yatte kudasai.* }  
*to sending condescend.* }

¶ 161. It will be noticed that all the examples hitherto given of auxiliary numerals are Chinese.\* The auxiliary numerals of native Japanese origin are far less numerous. The only ones worth mentioning here are :—

\* *Wa* (p. 110) indeed is Japanese. But we have classed it under the Chinese auxiliary numerals, because it is always used in conjunction with the Chinese numerals *ichi, ni*, etc.

(*hīto*-) *hashira*, “a post;” for Shintō divinities.

„ *kabu*, “a stump;” for shrubs.

„ *kumi*, “a company;” for sets of things or persons, such as toys consisting of more than one part, tea-sets, nests of boxes that fit into each other, pairs of gloves, parties of tourists, etc.

(*hīto*-) *ma*, “space;” for rooms.

„ *mune*, “the ridge of a roof;” for houses and any groups of buildings included under one roof.

(*hīto*-) *soroe*, “a match;” for sets of things of like nature, such as suits of clothes.

(*hīto*-) *suji*, “a line;” for towels and for rope-like things.

„ *tomai*, “a hut thatched with matting;” for godowns.

The native auxiliary numerals take the Japanese numerals before them up to “ten” inclusive, thus : *fūta-kumi*, *mi-ma*, *mu-tomai*. After “ten” they perforce take the Chinese numerals (conf. ¶ 154), thus : *jū-ni-kumi*, *ni-jū-ma*, *shi-jū-hachi-tomai*. No euphonic changes take place.

*N. B.* Things having no special auxiliary numeral appropriated to them are counted by means of the native Japanese numerals *hitotsu*, *fūtatsu*, etc. ; thus *tamago hitotsu*, “one egg;” *momo tō bakari*, “about ten peaches.” Even things provided with a special auxiliary numeral sometimes replace the latter by *hitotsu*, *fūtatsu*, etc., in slipshod talk. Purists, too, sometimes employ bookish auxiliary numerals now scarcely intelligible to the uneducated, as *kagami ichi-men*, “one mirror” (lit. mirror one surface), *isu ik-kyaku*, “one chair” (lit. chair one leg), where ordinary speakers would simply say *kagami hitotsu*, *isu hitotsu*.

¶ 162. In Classical Japanese, human beings are counted by means of the native numerals, with the unexplained suffix *tari* attached. Of these words the Colloquial language has retained only the following :

*hitori* (for *hito-tari*), "one person ;"  
*fūtari* (for *fūta-tari*), "two persons ;"  
*yottari* (for *yo-tari*), "four persons ;"

which are used concurrently with, but oftener than, their Chinese synonyms *ichi-nin*, *ni-nin* and *yo-nin*.\*

¶ 163. Questions respecting number and quantity are asked by means of the word *iku*, which is, however, not used alone, but always in combination, thus :

*iku-ra* ？ how much ?, *lit.* "about how much?", *ra* being the particle of vagueness already mentioned on pp. 29—30 as helping to form certain plurals ;

*iku-tabi* ？ "how often?"

*iku-tsu* ？ "how many?"

*iku-nin* ？ }  
*iku-tari* ？ } " " (said of people) ;

*iku-mai* ？ " " (said of flat things) ;

*iku-hon* ？ " " (said of cylindrical things) ;

and so on with all the auxiliary numerals, no phonetic changes taking place in the latter.

¶ 164. *Iku* may be replaced by *nani*, usually shortened to *nan* in such contexts. *Nani*, though itself Japanese, is chiefly found before words of Chinese origin, thus :

*nan-ji* ？ "what o'clock?"

*nan-nen* ？ "how many years?"

*nan-nin* ？ "how many persons?"

*nan-ri* ？ "how many leagues?"

Very often the word *hodo*, "about," is added, thus :

*nan-nen hodo* ？ *nan-ri hodo* ？

\* See ¶ 155, p. 106, for the substitution, even before Chinese auxiliary numerals, of Japanese *yo* for Chinese *shi*, "four."

“How much?” is often rendered by *ika-hodo* 幾 何 ほど or *dono kurai* 幾 何 くらい all really meaning “about how much?”

¶ 165. The following are examples of the use of the Japanese auxiliary numerals and of the interrogative numeral words :

*Sakazuki hito-kumi.* “One set of *sake*-cups.”

*Yōfuku hito-soroe.* “One suit of foreign clothes.”

*Kami fūta-hashira.* “Two Shintō deities.”

|                                                                                                                    |   |                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>O</i>            <i>ikū-tari de</i><br/>Honourable how-many-people<br/><i>gozaimasū.</i><br/><i>ure?</i></p> | } | <p>“How many are there in<br/>your party?”</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------|

*Yottari desū.* “There are four of us.”

*Nan-ji desū?* “What o’clock is it?”

*Iku-tsu gozaimasū?* “How many are there?”

|                                                                  |   |                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Iku-hon</i>            ,,<br/><i>Iku-mai</i> (etc.) ,,</p> | } | <p>(The choice of one or other of these<br/>Japanese equivalents depends on the nature<br/>of the object referred to; see ¶ 159.)</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                      |   |                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Kono tansu wa, ikura</i><br/>This cabinet as-for, how-much<br/><i>desū?</i><br/><i>is?</i></p> | } | <p>“How much is this<br/>cabinet?”</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |   |                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Kesa ake-gata no</i><br/>This-morning dawn 's<br/><i>kwaji de, naga-ya ga</i><br/>conflagration by, long-house (nom.)<br/><i>fūta-mune yakete, dozō</i><br/>two roof-ridges having-burnt, godown<br/><i>ga hito-tomai ochila sō</i><br/>(nom.) one-lut fell appearance<br/><i>desū.</i><br/><i>is.</i></p> | } | <p>“They say that two<br/><i>naga-ya</i> were burnt down<br/>and one godown ruined<br/>by the fire at dawn this<br/>morning.”</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* As the auxiliary numeral, so also does the Japanese equivalent of our word “pair” vary with the object to which it is applied. Thus people say

|                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>byōbu is-sō,</i><br/><i>hanatate it-tsui,</i><br/><i>hashi ichi-zen,</i><br/><i>tori hito-tsugai,</i></p> | <p>“a pair of screens.”<br/>“ „ „ „ flower-vases.”<br/>“ „ „ „ chopsticks.”<br/>“ „ „ „ fowls,” etc.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## ORDINAL, FRACTIONAL, ETC., NUMBERS.

¶ 166. What we term ordinal numbers are sometimes marked by suffixing the word *me* ("eye") to the Japanese, or *bamme* (*ban*="number") to the Chinese cardinal numbers; or else the word *dai* ("order") may be prefixed and nothing added, or *dai* may be prefixed and *bamme* added, to the Chinese cardinal numbers. All such forms take the post-position *no*, "of," when preceding a noun, thus :

|                                                                                      |   |               |   |                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>fūtatsu-me,</i><br><i>ni-bamme,</i><br><i>dai ni-ban,</i><br><i>dai ni-bamme,</i> | } | "the second." | { | <i>futsūka-me,</i> "the second day."<br><i>ni-do-me,</i> "the second time."<br><i>nan-chō-me</i> ? "what ward (of a street)?"<br><i>ni-chō-me,</i> "the second ward." |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Dai ni-ban*, or simply *ni-ban* also *dai ni-gō*—constantly means "number two;"—similarly in the case of the other numbers.

|                                                                                                             |   |                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nan-gō no shitsu ni</i><br><i>What-number 's room in</i><br><i>irasshaimasū.</i><br><i>deign-to-be ?</i> | } | "What is the number of your room (or cabin)?" |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------|

|                                                                   |   |                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| <i>Dai san-gō ni orimasū.</i><br><i>Order three-number in am.</i> | { | "I am in number three." |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------|

|                                                                      |   |                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Iida-machi roku-chō-me</i><br><i>ni-jū-banchi. (chi="earth.")</i> | } | "No. 20 of the 6th ward of Iida street." |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------|

|                                                                  |   |                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| <i>Kado kara san-gen-me.</i><br><i>Corner from, third-house.</i> | } | "The third house from the corner." |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|

*N. B.* *Gen* is the *nigori*'ed form of *ken*, the auxiliary numeral for houses (see p. 109).

¶ 167. Notwithstanding the existence of such forms as the above, the Japanese mind has not, properly speaking, a very

clear idea of the distinction between cardinal numbers and ordinal numbers, for which reason the cardinals are often used in an ordinal sense, thus :

*Meiji san-jū-ichi-nen* (lit. "Meiji 31 year"), "the thirty-first year of (the chronological period termed) Meiji," i.e., "A.D. 1898," according to the European reckoning. Similarly *ni-gwatsu* or *ni-getsu* (lit. "two month"), i.e., "February;" *jū-ichi-nichi* (lit. "eleven day"), i.e., "the eleventh day of the month."

*N. B.* The context generally shows whether the number should be taken as a cardinal or as an ordinal. Sometimes the cardinal numbers are distinguished by the insertion of an auxiliary numeral. Thus "two months" would be not *ni-getsu*, but *ni-ka-getsu*, or, in native Japanese parlance and without any auxiliary numeral, *fūta-tsūki*.

¶ 168. Years are usually counted by what are termed "year-names" (Jap. *nengō*), i.e., periods of irregular length with names arbitrarily chosen. The present period "Meiji" began with the overthrow of the Shōgunate and the restoration of the Mikado to absolute power in 1868. Occasionally of late, years have been counted from the fictitious era of the mythical Emperor Jimmu, who, according to the Japanese history books, was the first human monarch of this empire, and ascended the throne on the 11th February, B. C. 660.

¶ 169. January is called *shō-gwatsu*, lit. "the chief month;" sometimes also *ichi-getsu*, lit. "one month." (*Gwatsu* is the Go-on, *getsu* the Kan-on pronunciation of the same Chinese character 月, "moon;" see p. 7 for these technical terms.) The other months are formed by prefixing the Chinese numerals to the word *gwatsu* or *getsu*. Thus the months run as follows :



|                      |              |                         |               |
|----------------------|--------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| <i>shō-gwatsu</i> ,  | “ January.”  | <i>shichi-gwatsu</i> ,  | “ July.”      |
| <i>ni-gwatsu</i> ,   | “ February.” | <i>hachi-gwatsu</i> ,   | “ August.”    |
| <i>san-gwatsu</i> ,  | “ March.”    | <i>ku-gwatsu</i> ,      | “ September.” |
| <i>shi-gwatsu</i> ,  | “ April.”    | <i>jū-gwatsu</i> ,      | “ October.”   |
| <i>go-gwatsu</i> ,   | “ May.”      | <i>jū-ichi-gwatsu</i> , | “ November.”  |
| <i>roku-gwatsu</i> , | “ June.”     | <i>jū-ni-gwatsu</i> ,   | “ December.”  |

¶ 170. The counting of the days of the month is a medley of native Japanese and imported Chinese parlance. We give the former in ordinary Roman, the latter in italic type :

|                        |                  |                             |                          |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>ichi-nichi</i> ,    | } the 1st of the | <i>jū-roku-nichi</i> ,      | the 16th                 |
| <i>tsuitachi</i> ,     |                  | } month.                    | <i>jū-shichi-nichi</i> , |
| <i>futsūka</i> ,       | the 2nd          |                             | <i>jū-hachi-nichi</i> ,  |
| <i>mikka</i> ,         | „ 3rd            | <i>jū-ku-nichi</i> ,        | „ 19th                   |
| <i>yokka</i> ,         | „ 4th            | <i>hatsūka</i> ,            | „ 20th                   |
| <i>itsūka</i> ,        | „ 5th            | <i>ni-jū-ichi-nichi</i> ,   | „ 21st                   |
| <i>muika</i> ,         | „ 6th            | <i>ni-jū-ni-nichi</i>       | „ 22nd                   |
| <i>nanuka</i> ,        | „ 7th            | <i>ni-jū-san-nichi</i> ,    | „ 23rd                   |
| <i>yōka</i> ,          | „ 8th            | <i>ni-jū-yokka</i> ,        | „ 24th                   |
| <i>kokonoka</i> ,      | „ 9th            | <i>ni-jū-go-nichi</i> ,     | „ 25th                   |
| <i>tōka</i> ,          | „ 10th           | <i>ni-jū-roku-nichi</i> ,   | „ 26th                   |
| <i>jū-ichi-nichi</i> , | „ 11th           | <i>ni-jū-shichi-nichi</i> , | „ 27th                   |
| <i>jū-ni-nichi</i> ,   | „ 12th           | <i>ni-jū hachi-nichi</i> ,  | „ 28th                   |
| <i>jū-san-nichi</i> ,  | „ 13th           | <i>ni-jū-ku-nichi</i> ,     | „ 29th                   |
| <i>jū-yokka</i> ,      | „ 14th           | <i>san-jū-nichi</i> ,       | „ 30th                   |
| <i>jū-go-nichi</i> ,   | „ 15th           | <i>san-jū-ichi-nichi</i> ,  | „ 31st                   |

*misoka*, “ the last day of the month”

(whether the 30th or 31st).

*ō-misoka*, “ the last day of the year.”

*N. B.* The word *misoka* is tending to pass out of educated usage.

¶ 171. The above forms, which are really cardinals, serve likewise for such expressions as “ two days,” “ twelve days,”

“twenty days,” etc. But *tsuitachi* cannot be used in the sense of “one day,” because it is derived from *tsūki tachi*, “the moon rising,” i.e., “the first day of the moon.” “One day” is therefore always *ichi-nichi*. Neither can *misoka* be used in the sense of “thirty days” or “thirty-one days,” notwithstanding the fact that “thirty (*miso*) days (*ka*)” is its etymological meaning in Archaic Japanese.

¶ 172. Hours are counted by prefixing the Chinese numerals to the Chinese word *ji*, “time,” “hour,” thus :

|                                   |                                                          |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ichi-ji</i> ,                  | “one o'clock.”                                           |
| <i>yo-ji jū-go-fun</i> ,          | “a quarter ( <i>lit.</i> fifteen minutes)<br>past four.” |
| <i>jū-ichi-ji han</i> ,           | “half-past eleven.”                                      |
| <i>jū-ichi-ji shi-jū-go-fun</i> , | } “eleven forty-five.”                                   |
| <i>jū-ni-ji jū-go-fun mac</i> ,   |                                                          |
| <i>han-ji-kan</i> ,               | “half-an-hour.” ( <i>kan</i> = “interval.”)              |
| <i>ichi-ji han kan</i> ,          | “an hour and a half.”                                    |

¶ 173. “Half,” as just instanced, is *han*, or, when used substantively, *hambun* (*lit.* “half part”).

*N. B.* The word *hambun* is used idiomatically in such expressions as *kazari hambun*, “half (i.e. partly) as an ornament,”—said, for instance, of the charm-bags worn by children; *omoshiro hambun*, “half in fun,” where the ordinary rules of Japanese construction would lead one to expect to see *hambun* placed first instead of second. In all such instances the stress lies on the word *hambun*.

Other fractional and multiplicative numbers are expressed, as in the following examples, by means of the words *bu*, “part” (a corruption of *bun*, “part”), and *bai*, “double :”

|                         |               |
|-------------------------|---------------|
| <i>sam-bu no ichi</i> , | “one-third.”  |
| <i>sam-bu no ni</i> ,   | “two-thirds.” |
| <i>shi-bu no ichi</i> , | “a quarter.”  |

|                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>shi-bu no san,</i>        | “ three-quarters.”                 |
| <i>jū-bu no san,</i>         | “ three tenths.”                   |
| <i>bai</i> or <i>ni-bai,</i> | “ double,” “ twice as much.”       |
| <i>sam-bai,</i>              | “ treble,” “ three times as much.” |

*N. B.* Such expressions as *ni-bu*, lit. “ two parts,” may mean either “ two parts out of three ” (i.e., “ two thirds ”), or “ two tenths,” or “ two hundredths ” (i.e., “ two per cent ”), etc.

¶ 174. Note also the following miscellaneous locutions :

|                                                                  |                                                     |                                              |                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>ni-do,</i>                                                    | “ twice.”                                           | <i>san-do,</i>                               | “ thrice.”                                 |
| <i>ni-do-me,</i>                                                 | { “ the second<br>time.”                            | <i>san-do-me,</i>                            | { “ the third<br>time.”                    |
| <i>fūtari-mae,</i>                                               | { “ portions for<br>two.”                           | <i>san-nin-mae,</i>                          | { “ portions<br>for three.”                |
| <i>ni-wari,</i>                                                  | { “ twenty per<br>cent.”                            | <i>san-wari,</i>                             | { “ thirty per<br>cent.”                   |
| <i>ni-wari<br/>go-bu,</i>                                        | { “ twenty-five<br>per cent.”                       | <i>san-wari go-bu,</i>                       | { “ thirty-five<br>per cent.”              |
| <i>fūtatsu</i> or<br><i>ni-mai,</i> etc. }                       | <i>zutsu,</i> { “ two at<br>a time.”                | <i>mitsu</i> or<br><i>sam-mai,</i><br>etc. } | <i>zutsu,</i> { “ three at<br>a time.”     |
| <i>dai ni ni,</i>                                                | { “ in the second<br>place,”<br>“ secondly.”        | <i>dai san ni,</i>                           | { “ in the third<br>place,”<br>“ thirdly.” |
| <i>fūtatsu mitsu,</i>                                            | “ two or three.”                                    |                                              |                                            |
| <i>shi-go-nichi,</i>                                             | “ four or five days.”                               |                                              |                                            |
| <i>jū-go-roku-nin,</i>                                           | “ fifteen or sixteen persons.”                      |                                              |                                            |
| <i>jū ni hak-ku,</i><br><i>ten in, eight-nine.</i>               | { “ eight or nine out of ten,”<br>“ almost always.” |                                              | <i>hence</i>                               |
| <i>hitotsu oki,</i><br><i>one omitting,</i>                      | { “ every other one, alternate.”                    |                                              |                                            |
| <i>ichi-nichi oki,</i> (famil.)<br><i>kaku-jūtsu,</i> (elegant.) | { “ every other day.”                               |                                              |                                            |

## CHAPTER VII.

### *The Adjective.*

#### PRIMARY INFLECTIONS.

¶ 175. The salient points of the primary inflections of adjectives in the Tōkyō Colloquial may be compendiously described as follows :—

I. Adjectives have a form in *i*, which is both attributive and predicative, that is to say, which may be used either prefixed to a noun, or else at the end of a sentence with the English verb “to be” understood, thus :

*Takai yama*, “A high mountain.”      *Yama ga takai*, “The mountain is high.”

*Samui kaze*, “A cold wind.”      *Kaze ga samui*, “The wind is cold.”

*N. B. Ga* must not be mistaken for the equivalent of the English word “is.” It is a postposition serving approximately to denote the nominative case. (See p. 66.)

II. Adjectives have a form in *ō* or *ū*, which is used instead of the form in *i* when *gozaimasū*, the polite verb for “to be,” is expressed. Thus :

*Yama ga takō gozaimasū*. “The mountain is high.”

*Kaze ga samū gozaimashō*. “The wind is probably cold.”

III. Adjectives have a form in *ku*, which is used when a verb other than *gozaimasū* follows, and which often, though not always, corresponds to an English adverb in “ly ;” thus :

|                                    |   |                            |
|------------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| <i>Yama ga takaku miemasū.</i>     | } | “The mountain looks high.” |
| <i>Mountain (nom.) high looks.</i> |   |                            |
| <i>Hayaku kile kudasai.</i>        | } | “Please come quickly.”     |
| <i>Quickly coming condescend.</i>  |   |                            |

¶ 176. But in order to attain to a full and satisfactory intelligence even of these Colloquial forms, it is necessary to dig deeper, and to see how matters stand in the Classical language, from which the Colloquial forms are still in the act of being evolved. Observe at the outset that the inflections of Japanese adjectives have no reference whatever to such European grammatical categories as number, gender, or the degrees of comparison. Their object is partly to distinguish the attributive from the predicative relation, partly to distinguish the end of a mere clause from the end of a complete sentence.

¶ 177. The Classical termination of adjectives when used attributively is *ki*. Their termination when used predicatively at the end of a sentence is *shi*. Hence this latter is technically called the “conclusive form,” thus :

| ATTRIBUTIVE.                           | CONCLUSIVE.                                    |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Takaki yama,</i> “A high mountain.” | } <i>Yama takashi,</i> “The mountain is high.” |
| <i>Samuki kaze,</i> “A cold wind.”     |                                                |
|                                        | } <i>Kaze samushi,</i> “The wind is cold.”     |

¶ 178. It is from these two Classical forms in *ki* and *shi* that the single Colloquial form in *i* has originated, by the dropping of the distinctive consonants *k* and *sh*.

In set speeches and in the conversation of pedantic speakers, the “attributive form” in *ki* may still not infrequently be heard. It is employed exclusively in the case of the words *gotoki*, “like,” “similar,” and *beki*, a sort of verbal

adjective corresponding to our termination “. . . . ble,” or to our auxiliary verbs “ought” or “should,” thus, : *shinzu-beki*, “credible,” “ought to be believed ;” *osoru-beki*, “terrible.” (Conf. ¶ 192.)

*N. B.* The corresponding conclusive form *beshi* is no longer employed by educated speakers ; but the *bei* perpetually heard at the end of sentences from the lips of the lowest classes in Eastern and Northern Japan, and signifying “shall,” “will,” “must,” is a corruption of it. For instance, *Sō dam-bei*, “That is probably so,” “No doubt you are right,” represents an older *Sō de aru-beshi*, and is equivalent to the standard Colloquial *Sō de gozaimashō*.

¶ 179. The “conclusive form” in *shi* is still used in the words *nashi*, “non-existent,” “is not,” and *yoshi*, “good,” concurrently with the commoner forms *nai* and *yoi*, thus :

|                                                                                       |                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nani</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>mo</i> <sup>2</sup> <i>nashi</i> . <sup>3</sup> (elegant) | } “ Everything <sup>1,2</sup> (is) non-existent <sup>3</sup> ,” i. e., “ There is nothing.” |
| <i>Nami mo nai.</i> (familiar)                                                        |                                                                                             |

*Yoshi, yoshi!* “ All right !”

It is also still to be heard in such emphatic locutions as

|                                       |                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Samusa wa samushi.</i>             | } “ It is cold,” or, “ It was cold,” or, “ It is cold with a vengeance.” |
| <i>Coldness as-for, (it is) cold.</i> |                                                                          |

*Kurasa wa kurashi.* “ It is dark,” etc.

¶ 180. The third Classical termination of adjectives is *ku*. It corresponds to the indefinite form of verbs (conf. ¶ 278 and ¶ 425), and its original function is that of predicate at the end of every clause of a sentence excepting the last, which alone takes the conclusive termination *shi*. Thus :

|                                                   |                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Yama takaku, kikō samuku, jinka sūkunashi.</i> | } “ The mountains (of a certain country) are high, the climate is cold, and the human dwellings there are few.” |
|                                                   |                                                                                                                 |

This construction is now rarely heard except in set speeches, genuine Colloquial usage preferring either to end each clause by the form in *i* (sometimes followed by the expletive *shi*, as in the last example but two on p. 127), or, oftener still, to turn the sentence some other way, thus :

|                                        |                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Taiyō wa ōkii, atsui, akarui.</i>   | } “The sun is a great, hot, shining ball, around which circle other worlds called planets.” |
| <i>Sun as-for, big, hot, light</i>     |                                                                                             |
| <i>tama de, sono gururi wo</i>         |                                                                                             |
| <i>bull being, its around (accus.)</i> |                                                                                             |
| <i>yūsei to iu sekai</i>               |                                                                                             |
| <i>planets that (they) say worlds</i>  |                                                                                             |
| <i>ga mawatte iru.</i>                 |                                                                                             |
| <i>(nom.) circling are.</i>            |                                                                                             |

|                               |                                              |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ōkii chūsai no arasoi.</i> | } “An argument about the size (of a thing).” |
| <i>Big small 's dispute.</i>  |                                              |

|                                      |                                          |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Shina mo yoroshikereba,</i>       | } “The article is a good and cheap one.” |
| <i>Article also whereas-is-good,</i> |                                          |
| <i>nedan mo yasui.</i>               |                                          |
| <i>price also (is) cheap.</i>        |                                          |

*N. B.* For the conditional (as *yoroshikereba* above) thus used, see ¶ 300. The following example shows it and the *ku* form in harness together :

|                                           |                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Chūshaku mo nakereba,</i>              | } “Truly great were my perplexities, being, as I was, without a commentary, without a dictionary, and without a teacher. |
| <i>Commentary also as-there-is-not,</i>   |                                                                                                                          |
| <i>jibiki mo naku, kyōshi</i>             |                                                                                                                          |
| <i>dictionary also not-being, teacher</i> |                                                                                                                          |
| <i>mo nai to iu yō na</i>                 |                                                                                                                          |
| <i>also is-not that say manner being</i>  |                                                                                                                          |
| <i>wake de, jitsu ni go-ri</i>            |                                                                                                                          |
| <i>reason by, truly five-miles</i>        |                                                                                                                          |
| <i>muchū de arimashita.</i>               |                                                                                                                          |
| <i>fog-inside was.</i>                    |                                                                                                                          |

¶ 181. What the Colloquial has retained in full vigour is a secondary use of the form in *ku*, prefixed to verbs ; and it has become rather usual, having regard to this use alone, to call the form in question the “adverbial form,” because the European equivalents of Japanese adjectives in *ku* are often, though not invariably, adverbs, thus :

|                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Omoshiroku kikoemasū.</i>   | “It sounds amusing.”     |
| <i>Osoku kaerimashīta.</i>     | “I came home late.”      |
| <i>Yoku dekita.</i>            | “It is well done.”       |
| <i>Ōkiku narimashīta koto!</i> | “How big he has become!” |

*N. B.* For *koto* thus used, see top of p. 39.

|                                              |                                         |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Naru-take hayaku o</i>                    | } “Please come as quickly as possible.” |
| <i>As....as possible quickly, honourable</i> |                                         |
| <i>ide nasai.</i>                            |                                         |
| <i>exit deign.</i>                           |                                         |

*N. B.* Just as vulgar speakers often omit the termination “ly” of English adverbs, so also, in familiar Japanese style, and not from the uneducated alone, do we hear such expressions as *osoroshii warui*, “dreadful(ly) bad,” where *osoroshiku warui* would better accord with the old traditions of the language.

¶ 182. The verb “to be” is no exception to the rule whereby all verbs must be preceded by the adverbial or indefinite form in *ku*. It is therefore correct to say, for instance :  
*Ano yama ga takaku gozaimasū.* “That mountain is high.”  
*Kaze ga samuku gozaimashō.* “The wind will probably be cold.”

But Colloquial usage prefers to drop the *k* of the termination in such contexts. Moreover, after the *k* has been dropped, a crasis of the remaining vowels of the termination ensues. By this series of changes,

|                      |                  |                |                 |    |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|----|------------------|
| (Stems in <i>a</i> ) | <i>takaku</i>    | passes through | <i>takau</i>    | to | <i>takō.</i>     |
| ( „ „ <i>i</i> )     | <i>yoroshiku</i> | „ „            | <i>yoroshiu</i> | „  | <i>yoroshiū.</i> |
| ( „ „ <i>o</i> )     | <i>shiroku</i>   | „ „            | <i>shirou</i>   | „  | <i>shirō.</i>    |
| ( „ „ <i>u</i> )     | <i>samuku</i>    | „ „            | <i>samuu</i>    | „  | <i>samū.</i>     |

*N. B.* The genuine modern Colloquial possesses no stems ending in *e*. In earlier times, however, and in the semi-Colloquial of certain books we find such series as

|                 |                |                |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>shigeku,</i> | <i>shigeu,</i> | <i>shigyō.</i> |
| <i>beku,</i>    | <i>beu,</i>    | <i>byō.</i>    |



Hence it is usual to say :

*Ano yama ga takō gozaimasū ;*  
*Kaze ga samū gozaimashō ;* etc.

*N. B.* The Kyōto dialect goes a step further even than that of Tōkyō, and prefers to make use of these abbreviated forms before all verbs whatsoever. The same usage is found in the more or less artificial Colloquial alluded to just above, as sometimes making its way into print.—Foreigners are apt to say *Ano yama ga takai de gozaimasū*, etc. The use of such expressions, though not absolutely forbidden, should be avoided. If addressing an inferior, say *Ano yama ga takai*. If addressing an equal or superior, say *Ano yama ga takō gozaimasū*.

¶ 183. It will be noticed that all the inflections of adjectives are added to a stem which terminates in one of the vowels. This stem is occasionally employed as an independent word. Thus *Aka*, *Kuro*, *Shiro*, “Brownie,” “Blackie,” and “Whitie,” serve as names for dogs. The phrase *naga no toshi tsūki* means “long months and years” (lit. “years and months”). But by far the commonest use of the stem is to form compound words, thus :

*aka-gane*, “copper ;” from *akai*, “red,” and *kane*, “metal.”

*hoso-nagai*, “slender ;” from *hosoi*, “narrow,” and *nagai*, “long.”

*kurushi-magire*, “wildness caused by pain ;” from *kurushi*, “painful,” and *magireru*, “to be confused.”

*shiro-kane*, “silver ;” from *shiroi*, “white,” and *kane*, “metal.”

*yasu-domari*, “a cheap lodging ;” from *yasui*, “cheap,” and *tomaru*, “to stay.”

*yo-sugiru*, “to be too good ;” from *yoi*, “good,” and *sugiru*, “to exceed.”

*N. B.* There is a slight difference of signification, or at least of intention, between such expressions as *takai yama*, "a high mountain," and *taka-yama*, "a high-mountain," similar to that which we feel in English between "high land" and "the Highlands," or "a black bird" and "a blackbird." The compound form is more idiomatic, it tends to assume a specific meaning irrespective of the original signification of its constituent parts (e. g. *fūta-go*, "twins," from *fūta*, "two," and *ko*, "child"), and it is that preferred in proper names. Thus there are several places called *Takayama*, but none called *Takai yama*.

¶ 184. From the foregoing remarks, we may proceed to construct a table of the primary inflections of adjectives, as used in ordinary conversation. We take as specimens the adjectives *takai*, "high;" *yoroshii*, "good;" *shiroi*, "white;" and *samui*, "cold;" i. e., one for each of the four vowels *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, with which Japanese adjective stems almost invariably terminate :

|                                  | "High."       | "Good."          | "White."       | "Cold."       |
|----------------------------------|---------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| Stem                             | <i>taka</i>   | <i>yoroshi</i>   | <i>shiro</i>   | <i>samu</i>   |
| Attribut. }<br>Conclus. }        | <i>takai</i>  | <i>yoroshii</i>  | <i>shiroi</i>  | <i>samui</i>  |
| Adverbial or }<br>Indefinite }   | <i>takaku</i> | <i>yoroshiku</i> | <i>shiroku</i> | <i>samuku</i> |
| Predic. with }<br>verb "to be" } | <i>takō</i>   | <i>yoroshiū</i>  | <i>shirō</i>   | <i>samū</i>   |
| expressed }                      |               |                  |                |               |

*N. B.* *Onaji*, "same," is irregular, as its attributive (conclusive) form coincides in Colloquial with the stem. The adverbial form *onajiku* is still often heard; but with the verb "to be," more speakers say *onaji de* than *onajiū*.

¶ 185. The following are a few examples of the use of the primary inflections of adjectives :

- O* *hayō* *gozaimasū.* "Good morning."  
*Honourably* *early* *(it) is.*
- Yoi* *o* *tenki* *de* }  
*Good* *honourable* *weather* } "It is fine weather."  
*gozaimasū.*  
*(it) is.*
- Zōsa* *ga nai.* } "There is no difficulty."  
*Difficulty (nom.) is-not.* } (*Gozaimasen* would be more polite than *nai*.)
- Yakamashii!* *shabetcha* }  
*(You) are-noisy! as-for-chattering,* } "Don't chatter and  
*ikenai.* } make such a row!"  
*it-is-no-go.*
- Yoku* *wakarimasen.* { "I don't quite un-  
*Well understand-not.* } derstand."
- Warui* *no da.* { "It is a bad one."  
*Bad one is.* } (For *no*, see ¶ 112.)
- Tsui* *ni naku* *narimashita.* { "He is dead at last."  
*Finally non-existent has-become.* }
- Kanjō* *wo* *hayaku* *dōka* {  
*Bill (accus.) quickly please* } "Please bring the  
*(kudasai).* } bill quickly."  
*(condescend).* } (*Said to a hotel-keeper.*)
- Ano* *wakai* *kirei* *na* *hito.* { "That handsome  
*That young pretty person.* } young fellow."
- Shina* *mo yoi* *shi,* *nedan* *mo yasui.* } "It is both good  
*Article also (is) good, price also (is) cheap.* } and cheap."
- Takai* *to* *yasui* *to* *wa,* {  
*Dear and cheap and as-for,* } "The cheap ones  
*tamochi-kata* *ga* *chigau.* } do not wear so well as  
*durability (nom.) differs.* } the dear ones.
- Ai-niku* *no ame.* { "A rainy day coming just  
*Meet-odious of ruin.* } when it is not wanted."

*N. B.* Observe the stem-form *niku* with *no* suffixed, here used exceptionally for the attributive form *nikui*. The nick-name *Arigata no Kichibei*, in one of the stories in the Practical Part (¶ 451), is a similar case.

## SECONDARY INFLECTIONS.

¶ 186. Besides the primary inflections of adjectives, as set forth above, there is a series of secondary inflections which

| ¶ 187. TABLE OF THE SECONDARY OR TENSE AND MOOD INFLECTIONS OF ADJECTIVES.                                                                                                                                    |                                  |                              |                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| CERTAIN PRESENT OR FUTURE                                                                                                                                                                                     | { <i>yoroshii</i> ,              | <i>warui</i> ,               | is <i>or</i> will be bad.            |
| PROBABLE PRESENT OR FUTURE                                                                                                                                                                                    | { <i>yoroshikarō</i> ,           | <i>warukarō</i> ,            | { probably is <i>or</i> will be bad. |
| CERTAIN PAST                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <i>yoroshikatta</i> ,            | <i>warukatta</i> ,           | was bad.                             |
| PROBABLE PAST                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <i>yoroshikattarō</i> ,          | <i>warukattarō</i> ,         | was probably bad.                    |
| FREQUENTATIVE                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <i>yoroshikattari</i> ,          | <i>warukattari</i> ,         | { being sometimes bad.               |
| CONDITIONAL                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <i>yoroshikereba</i> ,           | <i>warukereba</i> ,          | if (it) is bad.                      |
| PAST CONDITIONAL                                                                                                                                                                                              | <i>yoroshikattara(ba)</i> ,      | <i>warukattara(ba)</i> ,     | if (it) had been bad.                |
| CONCESSIVE                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <i>yoroshikeredomo</i> ,         | <i>warukeredomo</i> ,        | though (it) is bad.                  |
| GERUND*                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <i>yoroshikute</i> ,             | <i>warukūte</i> ,            | being bad.                           |
| DO. EMPHASISED                                                                                                                                                                                                | <i>yoroshikūcha</i> ,            | <i>warukūcha</i> ,           | " "                                  |
| <p><i>N. B.</i> It is more polite, especially for the first four tenses, to use the form with long <i>ō</i> or <i>ū</i> and the verb <i>gozaimasu</i>, "to be," as explained in pp. 120 and 124-5, thus :</p> |                                  |                              |                                      |
| CERTAIN PRESENT OR FUTURE                                                                                                                                                                                     | { <i>yoroshiū gozaimasū</i> .    | <i>warū gozaimasū</i> .      |                                      |
| PROBABLE PRESENT OR FUTURE                                                                                                                                                                                    | { <i>yoroshiū gozaimashō</i> .   | <i>warū gozaimashō</i> .     |                                      |
| CERTAIN PAST                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <i>yoroshiū gozaimashita</i> .   | <i>warū gozaimashita</i> .   |                                      |
| PROBABLE PAST                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <i>yoroshiū gozaimashitarō</i> . | <i>warū gozaimashitarō</i> . |                                      |

\* Many in Tokyoō say *yoroshikutte*, *warukutte*, with double *t* and an emphasis on *ku*, and similarly in other cases.

are employed to indicate tense and mood. Most of these secondary inflections are obtained by agglutinating parts of the verb *aru*, "to be," to the adverbial or indefinite form in *ku*, euphony producing certain slight changes, as will be seen by comparing the table on the opposite page with the paradigm of the first conjugation, to which *aru* belongs. The use of the various moods and tenses will be found explained in ¶ 273 *et seq.* We have omitted from the table such imperative forms as *yoroshikare*, "be good!" and *warukare*, "be bad!" because they rarely if ever occur in practice, save in a few such idiomatic phrases as *osokare hayakare*, "sooner or later."

¶ 188. One of the most useful adjectives is what is called "the negative adjective *nai*." Its proper meaning is "non-existent;" but it commonly replaces the negative conjugation of the verb *aru*, "to be," and also sometimes corresponds to our preposition "without." Its inflections are as follows :

|                                                                                 |   |                                 |                                    |                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Primary.                                                                        | { | Attributive                     | <i>nai</i> .                       |                                             |
|                                                                                 | { | Conclusive                      | <i>nai</i> , rarely <i>nashi</i> . |                                             |
|                                                                                 | { | Adverbial                       | <i>naku</i> .                      |                                             |
| <i>N. B.</i> The contracted form <i>nō</i> is not in common use.                |   |                                 |                                    |                                             |
| Secondary.                                                                      | { | Certain Present<br>or Future    | } <i>nai</i> ,                     | { is not <i>or</i> will not<br>be.          |
|                                                                                 | { | Improbable Present<br>or Future | } <i>nakarō</i> ,                  | { probably is not <i>or</i><br>will not be. |
|                                                                                 | { | Certain Past                    | <i>nakatta</i> ,                   | was not.                                    |
|                                                                                 | { | Improbable Past                 | <i>nakattarō</i> ,                 | probably was not.                           |
| And so on, through all the forms given in the paradigm of adjectives on p. 128. |   |                                 |                                    |                                             |

¶ 189. *Nai*, added to the adverbial form of adjectives, serves to form their negative conjugation, thus :

|                              |                                          |                                               |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Certain Present or Future    | or } <i>yoroshiku</i><br><i>nai</i> ,    | { is <i>or</i> will not be good.              |
| Improbable Present or Future | { <i>yoroshiku</i><br><i>nakarō</i> ,    | { probably is not <i>or</i> will not be good. |
| Certain Past                 | { <i>yoroshiku</i><br><i>nakatta</i> ,   | { was not good.                               |
| Improbable Past              | { <i>yoroshiku</i><br><i>nakattarō</i> , | { probably was not good.                      |

And so on through the other moods and tenses.

*N. B.* In polite parlance, this negative conjugation in *nai* is mostly replaced by one with the verb *gozaimasen*, "not to be," thus :

|                              |                                               |                                               |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Certain Present or Future    | or } <i>yoroshiū gozai-</i><br><i>masen</i> , | { is <i>or</i> will not be good.              |
| Improbable Present or Future | { <i>yoroshiū gozai-</i><br><i>masūmai</i> ,  | { probably is not <i>or</i> will not be good. |

And so on through the other moods and tenses.

*Nai* itself is not susceptible of the negative conjugation. There is no such expression as *naku nai*, "not non-existent."

*N. B.* Positive adjectives happening to end in *nai*, as, for example, *kitanai*, "dirty," must not be confounded with adjectives in the negative form. The negative of *kitanai* is *kitanaku nai*, following the paradigm given in the above table. Similarly with *abunai*, "dangerous;" *sūkumai*, "scarce," etc.

¶ 190. EXAMPLES OF THE TENSE AND MOOD

INFLECTIONS OF ADJECTIVES.

|                                                                                                              |                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kō suru to yokatta ga...</i><br><i>Thus do if, was-good although..</i>                                    | { "I ought to have done it in this way."<br>(Conf. ¶ 287.) |
| <i>Aa ! kowakatta !</i><br><i>Ah ! was-afraid.</i>                                                           | { "Oh ! what a fright I have had !"                        |
| <i>Are ga yokarō</i><br>"That (nom.) will-probably-be-good"<br><i>to omoimasū.</i><br><i>that (I) think.</i> | { "I think that that one will probably do."                |

*Saku-ban, inu ga hoete,* } “ I couldn’t sleep last  
*Last-night, dogs (nom.) barking,* } night, on account of  
*sōzōshikute neraremasen deshita.* } the noise the dogs made  
*being-noisy, could-not-sleep (it) was.* } barking.”

*Kono hen wa, hai* } “ It is quite tiresome,  
*This neighbourhood as-for, flies* } the number of flies in  
*ga ōkūte urusō gozaimasū.* } this neighbourhood.”  
*(nom.)being-muny, tiresome is.*

*Go tsugō ga o* } “ Please don’t do it,  
*August convenience (nom.) honourably* } if it is inconvenient to  
*warukereba,* } *o yoshi* } you.”  
*if-is-but, honourably cease*  
*nascimashī.*  
*condescend.*

*Kono goro no tenki wa,* } “ The weather is  
*This period ’s weather as-for,* } so changeable just  
*yokallari warukallari* } now, that one can’t  
*being-sometimes-good being-sometimes-but* } rely upon it.”  
*shite, ate ni narimasen.*  
*doing, reliance to becomes-not.*

*Tonto mo muzukashiku nai.* } “ It is not in the least  
*Tittle even difficult is-not.* } difficult.”

*Muzukashiku nakeraba, yalle* } “ If it is not difficult,  
*Difficult if-is-not, sending* } I will try my hand at  
*mimashō.* - (Conf. ¶ 296.) } it.”  
*will-see.*

*Nakucha naranai mono.* } “ A thing one cannot  
*As-for-non-being, becomes-not thing.* } do without.”

*Tenka ni nai bijin.* } “ The greatest beauty  
*Empire in, non-existent belle.* } in the land.”  
*(More lit. “ A belle with  
 whom there is none to  
 compare beneath [ka] the  
 sky [ten].”)*

COMPOUND AND DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES.

¶ 191. Compound adjectives are numerous, and offer no difficulty. They sometimes consist of two adjectives, more frequently of a noun or verb followed by an adjective, thus :

*usu-akai*, "light red," "pink;" from *usu*, "thin,"  
"light-coloured," and *akai*, "red."

*usu-gurai*, "dusk," "almost dark;" from *usui*, "light-  
coloured," and *kurai*, "dark."

*kokoro-yasui*, "intimate;" from *kokoro*, "heart," and  
*yasui*, "easy."

*yondokoro-nai*, "unavoidable;" from *yoru*, "to rely,"  
*tokoro*, "place," and *nai*, the negative adjective.

*kiki-gurushii*, "ugly (to hear);" from *kiku*, "to hear,"  
and *kurushii*, "painful."

*mi-gurushii*, "ugly (to look at);" from *miru*, "to see,"  
and *kurushii*, "painful."

*wakari-nikui*, "difficult (to understand);" from *wakaru*,  
"to understand," and *nikui*, "odious."

*wakari-yasui*, "easy (to understand);" from *wakaru*, "to  
understand," and *yasui*, "easy."

¶ 192. There are various classes of derivative adjectives. Of these the chief are:—

1. Those in *beki*, corresponding to our phrases with "must" or "should," or to our adjectives in "...ble," and already noticed on pp. 121-2 as being now used only in attributive constructions. It is to verbs that *beki* is suffixed, —in the first conjugation to the present tense, as *aru-beki*, "should be," "necessary;" in the second and third conjugations to the indefinite form, as *tabe-beki*, "eatable;" *deki-beki*, "possible;" not *taberu-beki*, *dekiru-beki*. In the Written Language, *beki* is suffixed to what is termed the "conclusive form" of the present tense of the second and third conjugations, i.e., a short form ending in *u* without a following *ru*, thus: *tabu-beki*, (*i*)*deku-beki*; and this use may still sometimes be heard in the Colloquial. A like rule



obtains in the case of the irregular verbs *kuru* and *suru*, which always make *ku-beki* and *su-beki*. The verb *miru* is peculiar, making either *miru-beki* or *mi-beki*.

*Su-beki koto.* “A thing to be done.”

*Do-must thing.*

*Shinzu-beki koto.* “A credible thing.”

*Believe-must thing.*

|               |                      |                |                   |                                                                         |
|---------------|----------------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kono</i>   | <i>hen</i>           | <i>ni</i>      | <i>miru-</i>      | } “Are there no places<br>worth going to see in<br>this neighbourhood?” |
| <i>This</i>   | <i>neighbourhood</i> | <i>in,</i>     | <i>see-</i>       |                                                                         |
| <i>beci</i>   | <i>tokoro</i>        | <i>ga</i>      | <i>gozaimasen</i> |                                                                         |
| <i>should</i> | <i>places (nom.)</i> | <i>are-not</i> | <i>?</i>          |                                                                         |

|                |             |                      |              |                                     |
|----------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Omae</i>    | <i>no</i>   | <i>kamau-beki</i>    | <i>koto</i>  | } “It is none of your<br>business.” |
| <i>You</i>     | <i>of</i>   | <i>meddle-should</i> | <i>thing</i> |                                     |
| <i>de</i>      | <i>nai.</i> | <i>(familiar.)</i>   |              |                                     |
| <i>is-not.</i> |             |                      |              |                                     |

|             |                |                    |              |              |                                                     |
|-------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kore</i> | <i>wa</i>      | <i>mukō</i>        | <i>ye</i>    | <i>varu-</i> | } “This is a thing<br>which must be sent<br>there.” |
| <i>This</i> | <i>as-for,</i> | <i>opposite to</i> | <i>send-</i> |              |                                                     |
| <i>beci</i> | <i>mono</i>    | <i>desū.</i>       |              |              |                                                     |
| <i>must</i> | <i>thing</i>   | <i>is.</i>         |              |              |                                                     |

*N. B.* Observe how our English passive idioms are replaced by active idioms in Japanese, following a general tendency of the language commented on in ¶¶ 81—82, ¶ 427, and ¶ 439.

¶ 193. II. The so-called “desiderative adjectives” in *tai*, as *tabelai*, “desirous of eating,” “hungry;” *ikitai*, “desirous of going.” These will be treated of when we come to speak of the verb, ¶ 242 and ¶ 285.

¶ 194. III. A noticeable class of derivative adjectives is formed by agglutinating to nouns the termination *rashii*, which corresponds to the English terminations “ish” and “ly,” and occasionally to some such phrase as “said to be,” or “I think,” thus :

*baka-rashii*, “foolish;” from *baka*, “a fool.”

*kodomo-rashii*, “childish;” from *kodomo*, “children.”

*otoko-rashu*,        { “ said    to }  
                             { be skillful;” } from *jōzu*, “ skillful.”

*konnichi-rashii*,   { “ to-day, I }  
                             { believe;”    } from *konnichi*, “ to-day.

A much smaller class is obtained by reduplicating an adjective stem and agglutinating the suffix *shii*, thus: *ara-arashii*, “rude and rough;” *tō-dōshii*, “lengthy;” *uto-utoshii*, “cold” (metaph.), “estranged.”

¶ 195. It may be well to notice, in connection with these classes of derivative adjectives, two classes of verbs derived from adjectives. One of these is obtained by suffixing to the stem the suffix *garu*, a contraction of *ge aru*,—*ge* or *ke* (氣) being an old word signifying “spirit,” “air.” When added to the desiderative adjective in *tai*, the resulting compound suffix is *tagaru* :—

*kowagaru*, “to think fearful;” i. e., “to be frightened,”  
from *kowai*, “fearful.”

*mezurashigaru*, “to think strange;” from *mezurashii*,  
“strange.”

*ikitagaru*, “to want to go;” from *ikitai*, “wanting to  
go,”—itself the desiderative adjective of *iku*, “to go.”

N. B. Observe that *garu* occasionally serves to verbalise nouns, thus: *zannegaruru*, “to regret,” from *zannen*, “regret;” *iyagaruru*, “to dislike,” from *iya*, “nay!” “repugnance.” Also that the termination *tagaru* often means “to be apt to.....” rather than “to want to.....”

Of the second class of adjective-verbs the following specimens will give an idea :

*hiromeru*, “to spread” (trans); *hiromaru*, “to spread”  
(intrans.), from *hiroi*, “wide.”

*maromeru*, “to make round,” from *marui*, “round.”

N. B. Both these classes of verbs are, like verbs in general, susceptible of the passive and causative forms (conf. Chap. IX), thus

*Mezurashigarareru*, "to be thought strange," "to be lionised."

*Urayamashigarareru*, "to be regarded with envy," from *urayama-shigaru*, "to regard with envy," itself derived from *urayamashii*, "enviable."

*Ureshigaraseru*, "to cause to feel joyful," i.e., "to make happy;" from *ureshigaru*, "to feel joyful," itself derived from *ureshii*, "joyful."

*Hiromesaseru*, "to cause to spread."

## QUASI-ADJECTIVES.

¶ 196. There are large numbers of words in common use, such as *nama*, "raw;" *shizuka*, "quiet;" *yaseta*, "thin;" *koraerarenai*, "unendurable," which at first sight appear to be adjectives, and which must be translated into English by adjectives, but which are not true adjectives in Japanese, either as regards origin or grammatical treatment. Some of them are nouns, some are verbs, some are phrases formed from various parts of speech. They may be best understood by being classed under the following five headings:—

¶ 197. I. Nouns followed by *no*; as *Amerika no*, "of America," i.e., "American." Such are:

*gwaikoku*, "foreign countries;" *gwaikoku no*, "foreign."

*kin*, "gold;" *kin no*, "golden."

*konaida*, "a short while ago;" *konaida no*, "recent."

II. Nouns followed by *na*,\* a corruption of the Classical

---

\* It has been stated in ¶ 112 (p. 78) that the postposition *no* often assumes the signification of the English word "one" or "ones," used substantively. Thus from the adjective *nagai*, "long," one can form the phrase *nagai no*, "a long one," and similarly from such quasi-adjectives as *shōjiki* and *kirei* one can form the phrases *shōjiki na no*, "an honest one;" *kirei na no*, "a pretty one," etc. This idiom must not be confounded with another nearly alike in sound containing the word *nan*, which it is difficult to explain in English except by the help of examples, and whose origin is obscure. The following sentences containing it may be taken as representative of its use:

verb *naru*, "to be" (not to be confounded with *naru*, "to become"); as *shōjiki na*, lit. "honesty being," i.e. "honest." Such are :

*mendō*, "a bother;" *mendō na*, "bothersome."

*muda*, "uselessness;" *muda na*, "useless."

*rambō*, "disorderly conduct;" *rambō na*, "disorderly."

*shizuka*, "quiet" (subst.); *shizuka na*, "quiet" (adj.).

*N. B.* *No* mostly follows concrete nouns, *na* abstract nouns. Indeed the same noun will take *no* or *na*, according as it is viewed from the concrete or the abstract point of view. For instance, *baka no hanashi* means "a fool's story," "the sort of story a fool would tell," whereas *baka na hanashi* means "a foolish story" Very fine-

*Kore deshō ka?—Aa! sore nan desū.* { "Is this it?—Ah! yes; that is it."

*Ano otoko wa, dōmo akip-poi.—Sō sa! Mezurashii koto ga sūki nan da kara.* { "He is a very fickle fellow.—Yes indeed, because he is always hankering after something new and striking."

*Taiyō wa asa dete, maiban hikkomu no ga atarimac da to taitē wa omotte imasu ga,—jitsu wa, asa taiyō ga deru no de wa nakūte, taiyō no deru no ga asa nan desū.* { "Most people suppose it to be the natural order of things for the sun to rise in the morning and to retire in the evening. But the truth is not that the sun rises *in* the morning, but that the sun's rising *is* the morning."

Of the various authorities, both Japanese and foreign, whom the present writer has consulted on the subject of this idiom, some pronounce it to be "relative," others "relative, elliptical, and reflective(!)." Some say that it is a corruption of *naru*, "to be." Others would trace it back to the word *nani*? "what?" used as a kind of expletive indicating vagueness, like "thingummy" or "what-d'ye-call-'em" in vulgar English. Others again assert that the phrase means nothing at all. We ourselves incline to see in it a survival of the Classical particle *nan*, (Archaic *na mo*), which served to emphasise the word to which it was suffixed. Observe, however, that whereas Classical *nan* may occur before any verb, this Colloquial *nan* survives only before the verb "to be," as in all three examples given above.

drawn distinctions are sometimes produced in this way. Thus *marui kao no hito* means "a man with a round face," the concrete idea of "face" being here prominent. But *maru-gao na hito* means "a round-faced man," the abstract quality of round-facedness being uppermost in the speaker's mind. This particular phrase might be turned in yet a third way, viz., *kao no marui hito*, "a man round of face." Such idioms as this last are dealt with in ¶ 202. In some few cases *no* and *na* may be used almost indiscriminately. Thus we may say *mugaku no hito* or *mugaku na hito* equally well. But *na* is more common.

¶ 198. To the class formed by means of *na* belongs a numerous body of words obtained by adding *sō*, "appearance," to the stem of adjectives proper or to the indefinite form of verbs, thus :

*omoshiroi*, "amusing;" *omoshirosō na*, "likely to be amusing," "amusing-looking."

*īmai*, "nice to eat;" *īmasō na*, "appetising."

*furu*, "to rain;" *furisō na*, "likely to rain."

*kikocru*, "to be audible;" *kikoesō na*, "audible, one would suppose."

The forms *yosasō na*, "apparently good," and *nasasō na*, "not likely to exist," are derived irregularly from the adjectives *yoi*, "good," and *nai*, "non-existent," by the insertion of an epenthetic syllable *sa*. Compounds of *nai*, such as *tsumaranai*, "worth nothing," "trifling," may either follow *nai* in this its irregularity, or else be made to conform to the rule affecting adjectives in general, thus : *tsumaranasasō na* or *tsumaranasō na*, "looking worth nothing," "trifling-looking."

¶ 199. Sometimes words of the above two classes may be compounded with the following noun, instead of being divided from it by *no* or *na*, for instance :

*kara na* (or *no*) *hako*, or *karaba-ko*, "an empty box."

*kin no tokei*, , *kin-dokei*, "a gold(en) watch."

Sometimes, again, a word may be treated indifferently either as a true adjective or as a quasi-adjective of class II, for instance :

|                   |                        |          |
|-------------------|------------------------|----------|
| <i>chiisai,</i>   | or <i>chiisa na,</i>   | “small.” |
| <i>ōki,</i>       | ,, <i>ōki na,</i>      | “big.”   |
| <i>yawarakai,</i> | ,, <i>yawaraka na,</i> | “soft.”  |

¶ 200. The forms of classes I and II given above are the attributive forms. When the quasi-adjectives of classes I and II are used predicatively at the end of a clause (conf. ¶ 180), *no* or *na* is replaced by *de*, “being,” which thus corresponds to the termination *ku* of adjectives proper. When they are used predicatively at the end of a sentence (conf. ¶ 177), *no* or *na* is replaced by any tense of the verb “to be,” such as *da* (familiar), *desū* (polite), *de gozaimasū* (very polite). The word *de* in such contexts has been treated of at some length in ¶ 88, pp. 62—64, which the student should carefully read over.

¶ 201. The following examples will show the use of these various forms of the quasi-adjectives of classes I and II :—

|                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Igirisu no o kata.</i>          | } “An English gentleman.”          |
| <i>England's honourable side.</i>  |                                    |
| <i>Gin no ga hoshiū gozaimasū.</i> | } “I want a silver one.”           |
| <i>Silver one of desirous an.</i>  |                                    |
| <i>Okashi na</i>                   | } <i>hanashi.</i> “A funny story.” |
| <i>Okashii</i>                     |                                    |
| <i>Kekkō na o shina</i>            | } “It is a splendid thing.”        |
| <i>Splendid honourable article</i> |                                    |
| <i>de gozaimasū.</i><br>(it) is.   |                                    |
| <i>Fūshigi na yume wo</i>          | } “I had a strange dream.”         |
| <i>Strange dream (accus.)</i>      |                                    |
| <i>mimashita.</i><br><i>suw.</i>   |                                    |

- Fūshigi da.* (familiar) } “It is strange.”  
 ,, *desū.* (polite) }
- Rikō na inu desū.* } “It is an intelligent dog.”  
 “Clever dog is.” }
- Kono inu wa, rikō desū.* } “This dog is intelligent.”  
 “This dog as-for, clever is.” }
- Ano hito wa, shōjiki* } “He is honest, and he  
*That person as-for, honest* } works hard.”  
*de, yoku hatarakimasū.* }  
*being, well works.* }
- Amari somatsu de, shitsurei* } “It is quite rude of me  
*Too coarse being, rude* } to offer you so trifling a  
*desū.* } present.”  
*(it)is.* } (Said in depreciating a gift made  
 by oneself.)
- Are hodo yonda no ni,* } “One would think he  
*That amount called whereas,* } would hear, after being  
*kikoesō na mon(o) da.* } called so often.”  
*likely-to-be-audible thing is.* }
- Yosasō na hito deshita.* } “He seemed a good  
*Apparently-good person was.* } fellow.”

¶ 202. III. Phrases composed of nouns (including indefinite verbal forms used as nouns) followed by *no*, “of,” and an adjective proper, as *genki<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> yoi<sup>3</sup>*, lit. good<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> spirits<sup>1</sup>, i.e. “spirited,” “lively.” Such are :

- me<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> chikai<sup>3</sup>*, “near<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> eye<sup>1</sup>,” i.e., “near-sighted.”  
*mimi no tōi*, “far of ear,” ,, “hard of hearing.”  
*wakari no hayai*, “quick of understanding,” i.e., “sharp-witted.”

¶ 203. Great numbers of quasi-adjectives belonging to this Class III are formed by means of the words *yoi*, “good” (often corrupted by the Tōkyō people to *ii*), *warui*, “bad,” and *nai*, the negative adjective. Such are :

*benri no yoi*, "good of convenience," i. e., "convenient.  
*benri no warui*, "bad of convenience, ,, "inconvenient.  
*shī-kata no nai*, "no way to do," ,, "unavoidable."

Such quasi-adjectives in *nai* as that last instanced correspond to English adjectives with the prefix "un" or "in," or with the suffix "less," as *tsumi no nai*, "innocent;" *kagiri no nai*, "unbounded."

¶ 204. The above examples are all attributive in form. When the quasi-adjectives of class III are used predicatively, the postposition *no* changes to *ga*; thus:

*Mimi ga tōi*. "He is hard of hearing."

*Shī-kata ga nai*. "There is no help for it."

*Ano ko wa, wakari ga hayai*. "That child is sharp."

These examples are in the style used between intimates. It is always more polite to add the word *gozaimasū*, except when addressing an inferior. Of course with *gozaimasū* the *i* form of the adjective is exchanged for that with the long final vowel (see pp. 120 and 124). Thus the preceding examples would, in more polite parlance, become:

*Mimi ga tō gozaimasū*.

*Shī-kata ga gozaimasen* (*nō gozaimasū* is not used).

*Ano ko wa, wakari ga hayō gozaimasū*.

¶ 205. IV. Various tenses of verbs; also phrases formed from such verbs, as:

*micru*, "to appear;" hence "visible."

*fūlotta*, "has become fat;" ,, "fat."

*dekinai*, { "forthcomes not;" } ,, "impossible."  
 { "cannot;" }

*yomeru*, "reads;" (intrans.) ,, "legible."

*shireta*, "was knowable;" ,, "self-evident."



|                                                          |                                                                             |       |                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|--------------------------|
| <i>nakereba<sup>1</sup> na-</i>                          | { “won't-do <sup>2</sup> if-it-is-<br>not <sup>1</sup> ,”                   | hence | “indispensable.          |
| <i>ranai<sup>2</sup>,</i>                                |                                                                             |       |                          |
| <i>tame<sup>1</sup> ni<sup>2</sup> na-</i>               | “becomes <sup>3</sup> to <sup>2</sup> sake <sup>1</sup> ,”                  | ,,    | “beneficial.”            |
| <i>ru<sup>3</sup>.</i>                                   |                                                                             |       |                          |
| <i>ki<sup>1</sup> ni<sup>2</sup> iru<sup>3</sup>,</i>    | “enters <sup>3</sup> to <sup>2</sup> spirit <sup>1</sup> ;”                 | ,,    | “agreeable.”             |
| <i>ki ni iranai,</i>                                     | “enters-not to spirit ;”                                                    | ,,    | “distasteful.”           |
| <i>ki<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> kiita<sup>3</sup>,</i>  | “was-efficacious <sup>3</sup> of <sup>2</sup><br>spirit <sup>1</sup> ;”     | ,,    | “quick-witted.           |
| <i>tsumi<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> aru<sup>3</sup>,</i> | “is <sup>3</sup> of <sup>2</sup> guilt <sup>1</sup> ;”                      | ,,    | “guilty.”                |
| <i>enryo<sup>1</sup> suru<sup>2</sup>,</i>               | “does <sup>3</sup> diffidence <sup>1</sup> ;”                               | ,,    | “diffident.”             |
| <i>tai<sup>1</sup> shūta<sup>2</sup>,</i>                | “did <sup>2</sup> great <sup>1</sup> ;”                                     | ,,    | “important.”             |
| <i>choito<sup>1</sup> shūta<sup>2</sup></i>              | “did <sup>2</sup> slightly <sup>1</sup> ;”                                  | ,,    | “slight.”                |
| <i>gaten<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup></i>                  | { “goes-not <sup>3</sup> of <sup>2</sup> com-<br>prehension <sup>1</sup> ;” | ”     | “incomprehen-<br>sible.” |
| <i>ikan<sup>3</sup></i>                                  |                                                                             |       |                          |

¶ 206. The above are the attributive forms. Most of them serve also to express the predicative relation at the end of a sentence. Observe, however, that *no* must then be replaced by *ga*, and the simple past tense in *ta* by the compound present tense in . . . *te iru* (¶ 294), thus :

|                                 |                      |                |                                           |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ano</i>                      | <i>ojiisan</i>       | <i>wa,</i>     | } “That old gentleman is<br>fat.”         |
| <i>That</i>                     | <i>old-gentleman</i> | <i>as-for,</i> |                                           |
| <i>fūtotte</i>                  | <i>iru.</i>          |                |                                           |
| <i>fat</i>                      | <i>is.</i>           |                |                                           |
| <i>Ano</i>                      | <i>jochū</i>         | <i>wa,</i>     | } “That maid-servant is<br>quick-witted.” |
| <i>That</i>                     | <i>maid</i>          | <i>as-for,</i> |                                           |
| <i>ga</i>                       | <i>kiite</i>         | <i>iru.</i>    |                                           |
| <i>(nom.) being-efficacious</i> | <i>is.</i>           |                |                                           |

Of course the simple verb may in all cases be replaced by the polite inflection in *masū*. It is almost always so replaced in predicative constructions, except when an inferior is addressed. Thus the above examples would become, in ordinary polite parlance :

*Ano ojiisan wa, fūtotte imasū (or orimasū).*

*Ano jochū wa, ki ga kiite imasū (or orimasū).*

*N. B.* Quasi-adjectives of Class IV ending in *shīta*, as *tai shīta*, *choito shīta*, are never used predicatively.

¶ 207. When employed predicatively at the end, not of a sentence but of a *clause*, most of the words of this Class IV turn into gerunds, thus : *miete*, *fūllote*, *dekinakūte*, etc. But sometimes a periphrasis with *de* is used instead, as : *ki ni iranai de*.

¶ 208. Foreigners speaking a little Japanese constantly say *yoroshii no cha*, *shiroi no ūma*, *ōkii no neko*, etc. etc. But this is mere “pidjin.” It should be *yoroshii cha*, “good tea;” *shiroi ūma*, “a white horse;” *ōkii neko* or *ōki na neko*, “a large cat.” (*Yoroshii* and *shiroi* are always true adjectives, whereas we may either use *ōkii* as a true adjective, or *ōki na* as a quasi-adjective.) The mistake arises partly from a confusion between *no* and *na*, partly from the fact that nouns followed by *no* often correspond to the adjectives of European languages, e. g. *Nihon<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> kotoba<sup>3</sup>*, “the language<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> Japan,” i. e., “the Japanese language;” *moto<sup>1</sup> no<sup>2</sup> sumori<sup>3</sup>*, lit. “intention<sup>3</sup> of<sup>2</sup> origin<sup>1</sup>,” i. e., “the original intention.” *No* is only used after adjectives in the sense of the indefinite pronoun “one” or “ones,” as already explained in ¶ 112:—

*Dochi ga ii ?—Kuroi no.* { “Which are the best?—The black ones.”

*Ōkii no*  
*Ōki na no*  
*Big ones* } *katte kimashūta.* } “I have bought  
*having-bought have-come.* } some big ones.”

¶ 209. Do not confound such Chinese quasi-adjectives as *kirei*, “pretty;” *mumei*, “anonymous,” with real adjectives, simply because they happen to end in *i*. One cannot say *kirei onna*, “a pretty woman;” one must say *kirei na onna*. Similarly *mumei na katana*, “a sword without the maker’s name inscribed on it.”

¶ 210. v. The words *ko* forming diminutives and *ō* forming augmentatives, together with the honorific prefixes *o*,\* “honourable;” *go*, “august;” *ki*, “exalted;” and *mi*, “honourable,” are quasi-adjectives, as in the following examples :

*ko-bin*, “a small bottle.”

*ō-bin*, “a large bottle.”

*o tera*, “an honourable Buddhist temple,” i.e., simply  
“a Buddhist temple.”

*go hon*, “the august book,” i.e., “your book.”

*ki-koku*, “the exalted country, i.e., “your country.”

*o mi ashi*, lit. “august honourable feet,” i.e., generally  
“your feet.”

N. B. *ō* and *ko* frequently cause the *nigori*ing of the word to which they are prefixed, as *ō-dera*, “big temple;” *ko-dera*, “small temple;” *ko-jima*, “small island” (but *ō-shima*, without the *nigori*, “big island”). Such compounds as these are extremely common in place-names, the whole Japanese coast being lined with *ōshima*’s and *Kojima*’s. To express the idea “a big island,” “a small island,” the longer equivalents *ōki na shima*, *chiisa na shima*, would sound more natural, and similarly in most other cases.

The honorifics *o* and *go* are also used adverbially, thus :

*O<sup>1</sup> yasumi<sup>2</sup> nasai<sup>3</sup>*, lit. “honourably<sup>1</sup> deign<sup>3</sup> to rest,<sup>2</sup>”  
i.e., “good night.”

*Go yururi to*, “augustly quietly that,” i.e., “Don’t injure yourself by overdoing it (in walking, etc.).”

A noticeable peculiarity of this fifth class of quasi-adjectives is that they only occur prefixed to other words. They cannot be used predicatively at the end of a clause or sentence. If, for instance, we want to predicate smallness of a thing, we cannot say that it is *ko*. We must use a to-

\* Carefully distinguish long *ō*, “large,” from short *o*, “honourable.”

tally distinct word, such as *chiisai*. (For further details concerning the honorifics *o*, *go*, etc., see Chap XI, ¶ 395 *et seq.*)

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

¶ 211. Comparison in Japanese is more often implicit than explicit. Thus, when referring to the relative height of Fujiyama and Asama-yama, a Japanese will not say as we should, "Fujiyama is the higher," but simply "Fujiyama is high" (*Fuji ga takai*, or *Fuji no hō\* ga takai*), that is, it is high as estimated from the standpoint of the other mountain mentioned. Similarly, when pricing various goods, a Japanese will not say "Which is the cheapest?" but simply "Which is cheap?" (*Dochira ga yasui?*) i. e., by implication, cheap as compared with all the rest. Indeed, even in English the so-called positive is not infrequently a comparative by implication. When, for instance, we talk of a lake as large, what do we mean but that it is larger than most other lakes in the country or in the world? When we say that such and such a man is old, what interpretation can be put on our words, except that the man in question is older than the majority of people? This is a consideration which will hardly occur to such as are familiar with European languages only; but it may well engage our attention for a moment as a curious, though simple, instance of the different channels in which Eastern and Western thought runs. The only disagreement between English and Japanese usage is that the Japanese employ

---

\* *Hō* means literally "side," hence "one," "ones," as *kōno hō ga katai*, "This one is hard." In phrases like that in the text, it has no English equivalent. Similarly in such contexts—and they are of frequent recurrence—as *toshi no wakai hō*, "the younger of the two."

these "comparatives and superlatives by implication" in nine cases out of ten, whereas with us they are somewhat exceptional.

¶ 212. Comparison may, however, be rendered explicit by using the postposition *yorī*, "than," properly "from," as :

*Asama yorī, Fuji ga takai*, or (more frequently) *Asama yorī, Fuji no hō ga takai*, i. e., "(Viewed) from (the stand-point of) Asama-yama, Fujiyama is high."

|                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Umibe de sodatta hito wa,</i><br/>Sea-shore at grew-up people as-for,<br/><i>rikugun yorī kaigun no heishi ni</i><br/>army than, navy 's troops to<br/><i>tekūshimasū.</i><br/>suit.</p> | } | <p>"A coasting population makes better sailors than it does soldiers."</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                           |   |                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Muda na hanashi wo suru yorī</i><br/>Useless talk (accus.) do than<br/><i>wa, damatte iru hō ga</i><br/>as-for, silent being side (nom.)<br/><i>ii to omoimasū.</i><br/>(is)good that (I)think.</p> | } | <p>"I consider silence better than useless chatter."</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------|

At bottom, the idiom is the same as that explained in the last paragraph, only more circumstantial. In negative phrases *yorī* is replaced by *hodo*, which means "quantity," "amount," "about," e. g.

*Asama wa, Fuji hodo takaku nai*, lit. "As for Asama, (it) is not Fuji('s) amount high," i. e., "Asama-yama is less high than Fujiyama."

¶ 213. The idea of the superlative may be rendered explicit by the use of the word *ichi-ban*, "number one," "first," for instance :

|                                                                                                                           |   |                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Sore wa, ichi-ban omoshirō</i><br/>That as-for, one-number amusing<br/><i>gozaimashō.</i><br/>will-probably-be.</p> | } | <p>"That will probably be number one amusing," i. e., "That will no doubt be the most amusing of all."</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                            |            |                   |             |            |                                                                   |
|----------------------------|------------|-------------------|-------------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Fuji</i>                | <i>two</i> | <i>miru</i>       | <i>ni</i>   | <i>wa,</i> | } “The Otome-tōge<br>pass is the best place to<br>see Fuji from.” |
| <i>Fuji-yama</i> (accus.)  | <i>see</i> |                   | <i>for,</i> |            |                                                                   |
| <i>Otome-tōge</i>          | <i>ga</i>  | <i>ichi-ban</i>   |             |            |                                                                   |
| “Maiden pass” (nom.)       |            | <i>one-number</i> |             |            |                                                                   |
| <i>yoroshiū gozaimasū.</i> |            |                   |             |            |                                                                   |
| <i>good</i>                | <i>is.</i> |                   |             |            |                                                                   |

|                          |                                        |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Ichi-ban kisha.</i>   | } “The first train in<br>the morning.” |
| <i>One-number train.</i> |                                        |

There are various other periphrases employed for the same purpose. Specially noticeable is one with the word *uchi*, “inside,” “in,” or its Chinese equivalent *chū* (*nigori* *cd* to *jū*; conf. ¶ 28); thus:

|                                       |                                                      |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sono uchi no yosasō</i>            | } “Whichever may seem<br>to be the best of the lot.” |
| <i>That inside 's apparently-good</i> |                                                      |
| <i>na mono.</i>                       |                                                      |
| <i>being thing.</i>                   |                                                      |

|                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Nihon-jū no yūshi.</i>     | } “The bravest man in<br>Japan.” |
| <i>Japan-inside 's bravo.</i> |                                  |

¶ 214. After all, the chief thing the student should bear in mind with regard to the Japanese equivalents for our comparative and superlative, is *not to have recourse to them*, but to accustom himself from the beginning to use the simple positive instead, which alone, in nine cases out of ten, is idiomatic.

¶ 215. “Still” with the comparative is rendered by one of the adverbs *motto* or *nao*; thus:

|                                               |                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Motto chōjō made noborimashō.</i>          | } “Let us go on<br>still further, up to<br>the very top.” |
| <i>More summit till will-probably-ascend.</i> |                                                           |

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Kono hō wa, nao yoroshiū</i>     | } “This is a still<br>better one.” |
| <i>This side as-for, still good</i> |                                    |
| <i>gozaimasū.</i>                   |                                    |
| <i>is.</i>                          |                                    |

¶ 216. "The" with the comparative repeated is rendered by *hodo*, lit. "amount," thus :

*Mireba miru hodo, rippa* } "The longer I look  
*As-I-look, look amount splendid* } at it, the more splendid  
*desū.* } it appears."  
*(it)is.*

*Takai tokoro hodo, kaze wo* } "The higher the  
*High place amount, wind(accum.)* } situation, the windier  
*atemasū.* } it is."  
*applies.*

¶ 217. "Very" (comparatively little used) is expressed by such words as *hanahada*, *itatte*, *taisō (ni)*, or *takūsan*. The word *taihen (ni)* resembles the "awfully" of English Colloquial parlance, and is in perpetual requisition. The following are a few examples :

*Taisō ni kiret.* "Very pretty."

*Itatte muzukashii mon(o)* } "It is an extremely difficult  
*da.* (Or more politely, *desū.*) } thing."

*Hanahada o kinodokū* } "I am extremely sorry."  
*Very honourable sorrow* } (*More lit.* "It is honourable  
*sama (de gozaimasū).* } sorrow for Mr. you.")  
*Mr. (is).*

*Taihen ni omoshirō* } "It was awfully jolly."  
*gozaimashita.*

¶ 218. Another favourite phrase answering to our Colloquial "awfully" is the gerund of the adjective or verb, followed by the words *shī-yō ga nai* or *shī-kata ga nai*, which signify literally "there is nothing to be done," "there is no help for it," thus :

*Atsūkute shī-yō ga nai.* "It is awfully hot."

*Kūtabirete shī-yō ga* } "I am awfully tired," or "I  
*nai.* } am so tired I don't know what  
 { to do."

*Taikutsu de shī-kata ga nai.* “I am awfully bored.”

*N. B.* Observe *de* in this last instance, where it replaces the gerund because *taikutsu* is not an adjective, but in reality a noun here used as a quasi-adjective.

The following expressions may serve to exemplify a kindred idiom answering to our “so” or “too :”

*Kurakūte mienai.* { “It is so dark, I can’t see;”  
or “It is too dark to see.”

*Tōkute arukemasen deshīta.* { “It was so far, we couldn’t  
walk there;” or “It was too far  
to walk.”

*Ano hito wa, baka de,*  
*That person us-for, fool being,*  
*tsūkai-michi ga nai.* { “He is such a fool that  
*employ-way (nom.) isn’t.* } it is impossible to make any  
use of him.”

¶ 219. “Not very” is expressed by *amari*, “excess,” “too,” or *yokei (ni)* “superfluity,” with a negative verb, thus :

*Amari omoshiroku nai.* (familiar) } “It is not very  
*Amari omoshiroku gozaimasen.* (polite) } amusing.”

*Yokei gozaimasen.* { “There are not very many,”  
or “There is not very much.”

*Yokei ni mōkarimasen.* { “There is not much money  
*Superfluously gains-not.* } made.”



## CHAPTER VIII.

### *The Verb.*

---

#### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS.

- ¶ 220. The nature and functions of the Japanese verb differ considerably from those of the verbs of European languages. Conformably with the absence of number in the noun and of true personal pronouns, the Japanese verb entirely disregards all considerations of person and of number. "I am," "thou art," "he is," "she is," "it is," "we are," "you are," "they are," are all expressed by the same word *da* (familiar) or *desū* (polite). Similarly all the persons of the past tense ("I was," "thou wast," etc.) are expressed by the same word *datta* or *deshita*; all the persons of the probable present or future ("I probably am, or probably shall be," "thou probably art, or probably wilt be," etc.) by the same word *darō* or *deshō*. The present and past indicative can be used as adjectives (see ¶ 81 and ¶ 205), and even as nouns (see ¶ 45). Many of the moods are different from anything that exists in Europe. There are negative, potential, and causative conjugations, etc., etc. In fact, the whole verbal conception has been worked out in an alien manner.
- ¶ 221. Most of the Japanese verbal forms occurring in actual practice consist of four elements, viz., the root, the stem, the inflection or "base," and the agglutinated suffix or suffixes. Take, for instance, the word *komarimashita*, which

is so often heard in conversation, and which signifies “(I) was in trouble,” “was at a loss,” “didn’t know what to do.” The root is *kom*, which we meet with in the small group of related verbs *komu*, “to stuff into,” “to crowd into,” “to inclose,” “to confine;” *komeru*, synonymous or nearly so with *komu*; *komoru*, an intransitive verb signifying “to be in a state of confinement,” “to be shut up.” From the root *kom* is formed the stem *komar* by the agglutination of *ar(u)*, “to be.” To this is added the unexplained suffix *i*, which gives the “indefinite form” of the verb, a sort of participle or gerund (see ¶¶ 278—281 and ¶¶ 422—426), which can also be used as a “base” or foundation form, to which certain suffixes are agglutinated.\* In this case the agglutinated suffixes are *mashi*, which originally signified “to be,” and *tu*, the index of the past tense, itself shown, by reference to the Classical form of the language, to be a corruption of the gerundial suffix *te* and of *aru*, “to be.” The single word *komarimashīta* therefore contains the verb “to be” three times over.

---

\* It seems almost incredible that serious grammarians should ever have thought of applying the name of “root” to the indefinite form of the verb, which is as much an inflection of the stem (probably an ultimate analysis would prove the inflection to be an agglutinated form obtained from the stem) as any other. There is no more reason for calling *komari* a “root” than *komaru* or *komare*. But the unfortunate precedent set by Rodriguez, and followed by Hoffmann, has been constantly adhered to by writers who have not taken the trouble to think out the subject for themselves. Hence we are treated to such sesquipedalian “roots” as *araserare* (really the indefinite form of the potential of the causative conjugation of *aru*, “to be”), and we are told that such is the form from which all the other principal parts of the verb are derived! It would be about as reasonable to call “disregarding” the root of the verb “to disregard,” and to say that “disregardest,” “disregardeth,” etc., are derived from it.

¶ 222. Again take *samasanai*, “(I) do not cool” (transitive). The root is *sam* or *sab*, which we find in *sameru*, “to cool” (intransitive), “to fade,” “to wake;” in *samui*, “cold;” and in *samushii* or *sabishii*, “lonesome.” The stem is *samas*, formed from the root *sam* and the verb *suru*, “to do,” the second *a* apparently owing its existence to the “attraction” of the first (see ¶ 3). The third *a* is the inflection constituting the “negative base” *samasa*, to which is agglutinated the negative adjective *nai*, “non-existent,” in order to form the certain present tense of the negative conjugation. In some cases—for instance in *sameru*, “to cool” (intransitive)—the stem (*sam*) is not a lengthened form of the root, but simply the root itself. In others again there is no agglutinated suffix, the base itself being used as an independent word. Of this the imperative of verbs of the first conjugation offers a good example.

¶ 223. Japanese roots form an obscure subject, and one into which it is not necessary for the beginner to plunge, as it has scarcely any practical utility. For practical purposes the stem (whether identical with the root, or a lengthened form of the root) may be accepted as an ultimate fact,—not indeed as a complete word, but as the unit to which the bases are attached. The stem itself should, theoretically speaking, always remain absolutely invariable. But we shall see later on how phonetic decay has caused all verbs of the first conjugation to depart from this standard in the modern Colloquial speech.

¶ 224. The “bases” are formed from the stem by the addition of one or more letters, whose origin is too obscure to discuss here. The bases are four in number, and all the other conjugational forms are obtained by agglutinating certain suffixes to them. Their names are the Certain

Present, the Indefinite Form, the Conditional Base, and the Negative Base.\* The Negative Base is never used as an independent word. The Conditional Base is, in the first conjugation, identical with the imperative. In the other conjugations it is not used as an independent word. The bases are not always formed in the same manner, nor are the suffixes always attached to them in quite the same manner. Hence the distribution of verbs into different conjugations. Of these there are in the Written Language four, but in the Colloquial only three, as the third and fourth have coalesced.

¶ 225. EXAMPLES OF THE BASES IN THE THREE  
REGULAR CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

(The stem is italicised.)

|                                                                        | 1st. Conj. |            | 2nd. Conj.  |                 | 3rd. Conj.    |             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------|
|                                                                        | to sell    | to put     | to sleep    | to cut          | to fall       | to see      |
| Certain Present }<br>Indefinite }<br>Negative Base }<br>Condit. Base } | <i>uru</i> | <i>oku</i> | <i>neru</i> | <i>taberu</i> † | <i>ochiru</i> | <i>miru</i> |
|                                                                        | <i>uri</i> | <i>oki</i> | <i>ne</i>   | <i>tabe</i>     | <i>ochi</i>   | <i>mi</i>   |
|                                                                        | <i>ura</i> | <i>oka</i> | <i>ne</i>   | <i>tabe</i>     | <i>ochi</i>   | <i>mi</i>   |
|                                                                        | <i>ure</i> | <i>oke</i> | <i>neru</i> | <i>tabere</i>   | <i>ochire</i> | <i>mire</i> |

Observe how the letter *r* never enters into the formation of the bases of verbs of the 1st. conjugation, but always enters into the formation of those of the 2nd. and 3rd. conjugations. Of course *r* may appear in the stem of any verb, as it does in that of *uru*, "to sell," 1st. conj.

\* For the Certain Present, see ¶¶ 273 and 240; for the Indefinite Form, see ¶¶ 278 and 241; for the Conditional Base, see ¶ 252; and for the Negative Base, see ¶ 256.

† The stem—indeed the root—is really *ot*, as in the active verb *otosu*, "to drop" (1st. conj.). But the consonant *t* changes euphonicly to *ch* before the vowel *i* (see p. 25).

¶ 226. Before proceeding to the more important matter of verbal paradigms, we may just mention in passing that, when *naming* Japanese verbs, it is usual to mention the present tense as in Greek, not the infinitive as in English, Latin, and most other European languages. Thus *uru*, “to sell;” *yorokobu*, “to be glad;” *neru*, “to sleep;” *koshiraeru*, “to prepare;” *ochiru*, “to fall;” *kiru*, “to wear.” But *uru* has not the infinitive *signification* of “to sell;” at least it has not generally or properly that signification. It means “I (*or* you, they, etc.) sell.” Similarly in the case of all other verbs. The Japanese language has no form exactly answering in signification to our infinitive. The usual makeshift for an infinitive will be found mentioned in ¶ 277.

¶ 227. The following paradigms of the three regular conjugations and of the three most important irregular verbs, viz. *kuru*, “to come;” *suru*, “to do;” and *masū*, for which English has no equivalent, will serve to show how the various Japanese moods and tenses are formed by agglutinating suffixes to the bases. The memory will be assisted by noticing that almost all the tenses of the Positive Voice are obtained from the Indefinite Form and the Conditional Base, while those of the Negative Voice are obtained from the Negative Base and the Certain Present. Note further that the only difference between the second and third conjugation is that while the vowel *e* characterises the former, the vowel *i* characterises the latter. This fact has caused some European grammarians to class them together as a single conjugation (the second). They are thus classed in Mr. Aston’s Grammar, and in Messrs. Satow and Ishibashi’s excellent little “Dictionary of the Japanese Spoken Language.”

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

OKU, "to PUT" (stem *ok*).

## POSITIVE VOICE.

|                                  |                               |                                       |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. *Certain Present or Future    | <i>oku</i>                    | I put, I shall put.                   |
| 2.* Indefinite Form              | <i>oki</i>                    | (used for all tenses)                 |
| Desiderative Adjective           | <i>okitai†</i>                | I want to put.                        |
| Adjective of Probability         | <i>okisō na</i>               | likely to put.                        |
| Polite Certain Present or Future | <i>okimasū†</i>               | I put, I shall put.                   |
| Gerund                           | <i>oite</i>                   | having put, putting.                  |
| do. Emphasised                   | <i>oicha</i>                  | " "                                   |
| Certain Past                     | <i>oita</i>                   | I (have) put.                         |
| Probable Past                    | <i>oitarō</i>                 | I probably (have) put.                |
| Conditional Past                 | <i>oitarara(ba)†</i>          | if I had put.                         |
| Concessive Past                  | <i>oitarado(mo)†</i>          | though I (have) put.                  |
| Frequentative Form               | <i>oitari</i>                 | sometimes putting.                    |
| 3.* Conditional Base             | <i>oke</i>                    |                                       |
| Imperative                       | <i>oke!</i>                   | put (thou)!                           |
| Conditional Present              | <i>okeba</i>                  | if I put.                             |
| Concessive Present               | <i>okedo(mo)†</i>             | though I put,                         |
| 4.* Negative Base                | <i>oka</i>                    |                                       |
| Probable Present or Future       | <i>okō</i> (for <i>okau</i> ) | I probably put, I shall probably put. |

The *o* of the stem is dropped in these tenses in modern usage.

| NEGATIVE VOICE.<br>(First Form.)                           |                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1.* Imperative                                             | do not put !<br>{ I probably do not put,<br>I shall probably not put. |
| Improbable Present or Future                               |                                                                       |
| okū-na !                                                   |                                                                       |
| okumai                                                     |                                                                       |
| 4.* Certain Present of Future                              | I do not put, I shall not put.                                        |
| Certain Past                                               | I did not put.                                                        |
| Improbable Past                                            | I probably did not put.                                               |
| Frequentative Form                                         | sometimes not putting.                                                |
| Conditional Present                                        | if I do not put.                                                      |
| Conditional Past                                           | if I had not put.                                                     |
| Concessive Present                                         | though I do not put.                                                  |
| Gerund                                                     | not having put, not putting.                                          |
| okan(ā)†                                                   |                                                                       |
| okananda                                                   |                                                                       |
| okanandarō                                                 |                                                                       |
| okanandari                                                 |                                                                       |
| okan-ba                                                    |                                                                       |
| okanandara(ba)†                                            |                                                                       |
| okanado(mo)†                                               |                                                                       |
| okazu                                                      |                                                                       |
| NEGATIVE VOICE.<br>(Second Form—more used than the First.) |                                                                       |
| 4.* Certain Present or Future                              | I do not put, I shall not put.                                        |
| Certain Past                                               | I did not put.                                                        |
| Improbable Past                                            | I probably did not put.                                               |
| Frequentative Form                                         | sometimes not putting.                                                |
| Improbable Present or Future                               | { I probably do not put.<br>I shall probably not put.                 |
| Conditional Present                                        | if I do not put.                                                      |
| Conditional Past                                           | if I had not put.                                                     |
| Concessive Present                                         | though I do not put.                                                  |
| Gerund                                                     | not having put, not putting.                                          |
| do. Emphasised                                             | " " " "                                                               |
| okanakarō                                                  |                                                                       |
| okanakeraba                                                |                                                                       |
| okanakattara(ba)†                                          |                                                                       |
| okanakeredo(mo)†                                           |                                                                       |
| okanakūte, okanat de                                       |                                                                       |
| okanakūcha                                                 |                                                                       |

N. B. See ¶ 292 *et seq.* for the various compound tenses formed by means of auxiliary verbs. Specially important are *iru* and *oru*, "to be," which form continuative tenses (*oite iru* or *oite ru*, *oite ita*, etc.) like our "I am putting," "I was putting," etc.; see ¶ 294.

\* These numbers refer to the bases.

† Itself conjugated through the various moods and tenses (see p. 165.)  
‡ The letters within these brackets may be dropped at will.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

TABERU, "to EAT" (stem *tab*).

| POSITIVE VOICE.                                      |                                            | NEGATIVE VOICE.                    |                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Certain Present or Future } <i>taberu</i>         | I eat, I shall eat.                        | (First Form.)<br><i>taberu-na!</i> | do not eat!                                           |
| 2. Indefinite Form <i>tabe</i> (used for all tenses) |                                            |                                    |                                                       |
| Desiderative Adjective } <i>tabetai</i>              | I want to eat.                             | } <i>tabemai</i>                   | { I probably do not eat,<br>I shall probably not eat. |
| Adjective of Probability } <i>tabesō na</i>          | likely to eat.                             |                                    |                                                       |
| Polite Certain Present or Future } <i>tabemasū</i>   | I eat, I shall eat.                        | } <i>taben(ū)*</i>                 | { I do not eat,<br>I shall not eat.                   |
| Gerund } <i>tabete</i>                               | having eaten, eating.                      |                                    |                                                       |
| do. Emphasised } <i>tabecha</i>                      | " "                                        | (Second Form.)                     |                                                       |
| Certain Past } <i>tabeta</i>                         | I ate.                                     | } <i>tabenai</i>                   | { I do not eat,<br>I shall not eat.                   |
| Probable Past } <i>tabetarō</i>                      | I probably ate.                            |                                    |                                                       |
| Conditional Past } <i>tabetara(ba)*</i>              | if had eaten.                              | } <i>tabenakatta</i>               | I did not eat.                                        |
| Concessive Past } <i>tabetaredo(mo)*</i>             | though I ate.                              |                                    |                                                       |
| Frequentative Form } <i>tabetari</i>                 | sometimes eating.                          | } <i>tabenakattarō</i>             | I probably did not eat.                               |
| Imperative } <i>tabero!</i>                          | eat (thou)!                                |                                    |                                                       |
| 3. Conditional Base <i>tabere</i>                    |                                            | } <i>tabenakarō</i>                | { I probably do not or<br>shall not eat.              |
| Conditional Present } <i>tabereba</i>                | if I eat.                                  |                                    |                                                       |
| Concessive Present } <i>taberedo(mo)*</i>            | though I eat.                              | } <i>tabenakereba</i>              | if I do not eat.                                      |
| Negative Base <i>tabe</i>                            |                                            |                                    |                                                       |
| Probable Present or Future } <i>tabeyō</i>           | { I probably eat,<br>I shall probably eat. | } <i>tabenakatta(ba)*</i>          | if I had not eaten.                                   |
| Gerund } <i>tabeyō</i>                               |                                            |                                    |                                                       |
| 4. Negative Base <i>tabe</i>                         |                                            | } <i>tabenakeredo(mo)*</i>         | though I do not eat.                                  |
| Probable Present or Future } <i>tabeyō</i>           | { I probably eat,<br>I shall probably eat. |                                    |                                                       |
| Gerund } <i>tabenakite</i>                           | { not having eaten,<br>not eating.         | } <i>tabenai de</i>                | { not having eaten,<br>not eating.                    |
| do. Emphasised } <i>tabenakūcha</i>                  |                                            |                                    |                                                       |

\* The letters within brackets may be dropped at will.



THIRD CONJUGATION.

*ochiru*, "to FALL" (stem *ot*)\*.

| POSITIVE VOICE.                                                                                                                    |                                                | NEGATIVE VOICE.                    |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. Certain Present or Future } <i>ochiru</i>                                                                                       | I fall, I shall fall                           | (First Form.)<br><i>ochiru-na!</i> | do not fall! |
| 2. Indefinite                                                                                                                      | (used for all tenses)                          |                                    |              |
| Desiderative Adjective } <i>ochitai</i>                                                                                            | I want to fall.                                |                                    |              |
| Adjective of Probability } <i>ochisō na</i>                                                                                        | likely to fall.                                |                                    |              |
| Polite Certain Present or Future } <i>ochimasū</i>                                                                                 | I fall, I shall fall.                          |                                    |              |
| Gerund                                                                                                                             | having fallen, falling.                        |                                    |              |
| do. Emphasised                                                                                                                     | " " "                                          |                                    |              |
| Certain Past                                                                                                                       | I fell.                                        |                                    |              |
| Probable Past                                                                                                                      | I probably fell.                               |                                    |              |
| Conditional Past                                                                                                                   | if had fallen.                                 |                                    |              |
| Concessive Past                                                                                                                    | though I fell.                                 |                                    |              |
| Frequentative Form                                                                                                                 | sometimes falling.                             |                                    |              |
| Imperative                                                                                                                         | fall (thou)!                                   |                                    |              |
| 3. Conditional Base                                                                                                                |                                                |                                    |              |
| Conditional Present                                                                                                                | if I fall.                                     |                                    |              |
| Concessive Present                                                                                                                 | though I fall.                                 |                                    |              |
| 4. Negative Base                                                                                                                   |                                                |                                    |              |
| Probable Present or Future } <i>ochiyō</i>                                                                                         | { I probably fall,<br>{ I shall probably fall. |                                    |              |
| 1. Imperative                                                                                                                      |                                                |                                    |              |
| 4. Improbable Present or Future                                                                                                    |                                                |                                    |              |
| Present Indicative                                                                                                                 |                                                |                                    |              |
| <i>N. B.</i> The other tenses of this little-used First Form are all obtained from the Negative Base, as in the First Conjugation. |                                                |                                    |              |
| 4. Certain Present or Future                                                                                                       |                                                | (Second Form.)                     |              |
| Certain Past                                                                                                                       |                                                |                                    |              |
| Improbable Past                                                                                                                    |                                                |                                    |              |
| Frequentative Form                                                                                                                 |                                                |                                    |              |
| Improbable Present or Future                                                                                                       |                                                |                                    |              |
| Conditional Present                                                                                                                |                                                |                                    |              |
| Conditional Past                                                                                                                   |                                                |                                    |              |
| Concessive Present                                                                                                                 |                                                |                                    |              |
| Gerund                                                                                                                             |                                                |                                    |              |
| do. Emphasised                                                                                                                     |                                                |                                    |              |

\* See p. 25 and p. 152.

† The letters within brackets may be dropped at will.

| ¶ 231. THE IRREGULAR VERB <i>KURU</i> , "to COME." |                                                | NEGATIVE VOICE.                                                                                                             |                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| POSITIVE VOICE.                                    |                                                | (First Form.)                                                                                                               |                                                           |
| 1. Certain Present or Future } <i>kuru</i>         | I come, I shall come.                          | 1. Imperative                                                                                                               | do not come.                                              |
| 2. Indefinite Form <i>ki</i> (used for all tenses) |                                                | 2. Improbable Present or Future } <i>kinai</i>                                                                              | { I probably do not come,<br>{ I shall probably not come. |
| Desiderative } <i>kitai</i>                        | I want to come.                                | 4. Certain Present or Future } <i>kon(ū)</i>                                                                                | { I do not come,<br>{ I shall not come.                   |
| Adjective of Probability } <i>kisō na</i>          | likely to come.                                | N. B. The other tenses of this little-used First Form are all obtained from the Negative Base, as in the First Conjugation. |                                                           |
| Polite Certain Present or Future } <i>kimasū</i>   | I come, I shall come.                          | 4. Certain Present or Future } (Second Form.)<br><i>konai</i>                                                               | { I do not come,<br>{ I shall not come.                   |
| Gerund <i>kite</i>                                 | having come, coming.                           | Past Indicative } <i>konakatta</i>                                                                                          | I did not come.                                           |
| do. Emphasised <i>kiicha</i>                       | " " "                                          | Improbable Past } <i>konakattarō</i>                                                                                        | { I probably did not come.                                |
| Certain Past <i>kite</i>                           | I came.                                        | Frequentative Form } <i>konakattari</i>                                                                                     | sometimes not coming.                                     |
| Probable Past <i>kitarō</i>                        | I probably came.                               | Improbable Present or Future } <i>konakarō</i>                                                                              | { I probably do not or shall not come.                    |
| Conditional Past <i>kitara(ba)*</i>                | if I had come.                                 | Conditional Present } <i>konakereba</i>                                                                                     | if I do not come.                                         |
| Concessive Past <i>kitaredo(mo)*</i>               | though I came.                                 | Conditional Past } <i>konakattara(ba)*</i>                                                                                  | if I had not come.                                        |
| Frequentative Form <i>kitari</i>                   | sometimes coming.                              | Concessive Present } <i>konakeredo(mo)*</i>                                                                                 | though I do not come.                                     |
| 3. Conditional Base <i>kure</i>                    |                                                | Gerund } <i>konakūte</i>                                                                                                    | { not having come,<br>{ not coming.                       |
| Conditional Present <i>kureba</i>                  | if I come.                                     | do. Emphasised } <i>konakūcha</i>                                                                                           | { not having come,<br>{ not coming.                       |
| Concessive Present <i>kuredo(mo)*</i>              | though I come.                                 |                                                                                                                             |                                                           |
| 4. Negative Base <i>ko</i>                         |                                                |                                                                                                                             |                                                           |
| Probable Present or Future } <i>koyō</i>           | { I probably come,<br>{ I shall probably come. |                                                                                                                             |                                                           |
| Imperative <i>koi!</i>                             | come (thou)!                                   |                                                                                                                             |                                                           |

\* The letters within brackets may be dropped at will.

¶ 232. THE IRREGULAR VERB *SURU*, "to DO."

POSITIVE VOICE.

|                                  |                                  |                                          |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. Certain Present or Future     | <i>suru</i>                      | I do, I shall do.                        |
| 2. Indefinite Form               | <i>shi</i> (used for all tenses) |                                          |
| Desiderative                     | <i>shitai</i>                    | I want to do.                            |
| Adjective                        | <i>shisō na</i>                  | likely to do.                            |
| Adjective of Probability         | <i>shimasū</i>                   | I do, I shall do.                        |
| Polite Certain Present or Future | <i>shite</i>                     | having done, doing.                      |
| Gerund                           | <i>shīte</i>                     | " "                                      |
| do. Emphasised                   | <i>shīcha</i>                    | " "                                      |
| Past Indicative                  | <i>shita</i>                     | I did.                                   |
| Probable Past                    | <i>shitarō</i>                   | I probably did.                          |
| Conditional Past                 | <i>shitaraba</i> *               | if I had done.                           |
| Concessive Past                  | <i>shitarado(mo)</i> *           | though I did.                            |
| Frequentative Form               | <i>shitari</i>                   | sometimes doing.                         |
| Probable Present or Future       | <i>shiyō</i>                     | { I probably do.<br>I shall probably do. |
| Imperative                       | <i>shiro!</i>                    | do (thou)!                               |
| 3. Conditional Base              | <i>sure</i>                      |                                          |
| Conditional Present              | <i>sureba</i>                    | if I do.                                 |
| Concessive Present               | <i>suredo(mo)</i> *              | though I do.                             |
| 4. Negative Base                 | <i>se</i>                        |                                          |

NEGATIVE VOICE.

|                                                                                                                                           |                                  |                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. Imperative                                                                                                                             | (First Form.)<br><i>suru-na!</i> | do not do!                              |
| 2. Improbable Present or Future                                                                                                           | <i>shinai</i>                    | { I shall probably not<br>do.           |
| 4. Certain Present or Future                                                                                                              | <i>sen(ū)†</i>                   | { I do not do.<br>I shall not do.       |
| <p><i>N. B.</i> The other tenses of this little-used First Form are all obtained from the Negative Base, as in the First Conjugation.</p> |                                  |                                         |
| (Second Form)                                                                                                                             |                                  |                                         |
| 1. Certain Present or Future                                                                                                              | <i>shinai</i>                    | { I do not do,<br>I shall not do.       |
| Certain Past                                                                                                                              | <i>shinakatta</i>                | I did not do.                           |
| Improbable Past                                                                                                                           | <i>shinakattarō</i>              | I probably did not do.                  |
| Frequentative Form                                                                                                                        | <i>shinakattari</i>              | sometimes not doing.                    |
| Improbable Present or Future                                                                                                              | <i>shinakarō</i>                 | { I probably do not or<br>shall not do. |
| Conditional Present                                                                                                                       | <i>shinakerēba</i>               | if I do not do.                         |
| Concessive Past                                                                                                                           | <i>shinakattaraba</i> *          | * if I had not done.                    |
| Concessive Present                                                                                                                        | <i>shinakeredo(mo)</i> *         | * though I do not do.                   |
| Gerund                                                                                                                                    | <i>shinakūte</i>                 | { not having done.<br>not doing.        |
| do. Emphasised                                                                                                                            | <i>shinakūcha</i>                | { not having done,<br>not doing.        |

\* The letters within brackets may be dropped at will.

## 233. THE IRREGULAR POLITE SUFFIX MASŪ.

(Exemplified in the Conjugation of the Verb *Nasaimasū*, "to Deign to Do.")

### POSITIVE VOICE.

|                            |                                                       |                                                |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1st. Base                  | <i>masū</i> or <i>masuru</i> .                        |                                                |
| Certain Present or Future  | } <i>nasaimasū</i> or }<br>} <i>nasaimasuru</i> }     | } you deign to do,<br>} you will deign to do.  |
| 2nd. Base                  | <i>mashū</i>                                          |                                                |
| Gerund                     | <i>nasaimashite</i>                                   | } having deigned to do,<br>} deigning to do.   |
| do. Emphasised             | <i>nasaimashicha</i>                                  | (ditto.)                                       |
| Certain Past               | <i>nasaimashita</i>                                   | you deigned to do.                             |
| Probable Past              | <i>nasaimashitarō</i>                                 | } you probably deigned<br>} to do.             |
| Conditional Past           | } <i>nasaimashita-</i><br>} <i>ra(he)*</i> }          | } if you had deigned to<br>} do.               |
| Concessive Past            | } <i>nasaimashita-</i><br>} <i>redo(mo)</i> }         | } though you deigned to<br>} do.               |
| Frequentative Form         | <i>nasaimashitari</i>                                 | } sometimes deigning to<br>} do.               |
| Imperative                 | <i>nasaimashi!</i>                                    | deign to do!                                   |
| 3rd. Base                  | <i>masure</i>                                         |                                                |
| Conditional Present        | <i>nasaimasureba</i>                                  | if you deign to do.                            |
| Concessive Present         | } <i>nasaimasure-</i><br>} <i>do(mo)*</i> }           | } though you deign to<br>} do.                 |
| 4th. Base                  | <i>mase</i>                                           |                                                |
| Imperative                 | <i>nasaimase!</i>                                     | deign to do!                                   |
| Probable Present or Future | } <i>nasaimashō (for)</i> }<br>} <i>nasaimasen!</i> } | } you probably deign<br>} or will deign to do. |

### NEGATIVE VOICE.

(Strictly speaking, *Masū* may be conjugated through all the moods and tenses of both Forms of the Negative Voice. But in practice many of these never occur. We give only such as are in common use.)

|                              |                                                 |                                                           |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Imperative                | } <i>nasaimasū-na!</i> }                        | } do not deign to do!                                     |
| Improbable Present or Future | } <i>nasaimasuru-na!</i> }                      | } you probably do not or<br>} will not deign to do.       |
| 4. Certain Present or Future | } <i>nasaimasen(ū)</i> }                        | } you do not deign to do,<br>} you will not deign to do.  |
| Certain Past                 | } <i>nasaimasen de-</i><br>} <i>shita †</i> }   | } you did not deign to<br>} do.                           |
| Improbable Past              | } <i>nasaimasen de-</i><br>} <i>shitarō †</i> } | } you probably did not<br>} deign to do.                  |
| Frequentative Form           | <i>nakattari</i>                                | } sometimes not deign-<br>} ing to do.                    |
| Conditional Present          | } <i>nasaimasen-</i><br>} <i>kereba †</i> }     | } if you do not deign to<br>} to do.                      |
| Conditional Past             | } <i>nasaimasen-</i><br>} <i>kattara(he)*</i> } | } if you had not deign-<br>} ed to do.                    |
| Concessive Present           | } <i>nasaimasen-</i><br>} <i>keredo(mo)*</i> }  | } though you do not<br>} deign to do.                     |
| Gerund                       | } <i>nasaimasazu</i><br>} <i>nasaimasen de</i>  | } not having deigned to<br>} do, not deigning to<br>} do. |

\* The letters within brackets may be dropped at will.

† *De-shita* and *de-shitarō* stand for *de gozaimashita* and *de gozaimashitarō*.

‡ The termination should be *nakeraba*, but the first *a* is general dropped. The same is the case in the next two forms.

¶ 234. It will be found good practice to conjugate, according to the paradigms of the three regular conjugations, a few of the verbs in commonest use. Such are :

|            |   |                      |                    |                 |                  |                                                                   |             |
|------------|---|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1st. conj. | { | <i>butsu</i> ,       | “to beat.”         | <i>komaru</i> , | { “to be in      | } Be careful to observe the euphonic rules exemplified on p. 162. |             |
|            |   | <i>dasu</i> ,        | “to take out.”     | <i>nomu</i> ,   | trouble.”        |                                                                   | “to drink.” |
|            |   | <i>isogu</i> ,       | } “to make haste.” | <i>omou</i> ,   | “to think.”      |                                                                   |             |
|            |   | <i>kiku</i> ,        |                    | “to hear.”      | <i>yobu</i> ,    |                                                                   | “to call.”  |
| 2nd conj.  | { | <i>deru</i> ,        | “to go out.”       | <i>makeru</i> , | “to be beaten.”  | } (in war, etc.)                                                  |             |
|            |   | <i>koshiraeru</i> ,* | “to prepare.”      | <i>neru</i> ,   | “to sleep.”      |                                                                   |             |
|            |   | <i>kūlabireru</i> ,  | “to get tired.”    | <i>sūteru</i> , | “to throw away.” |                                                                   |             |
| 3rd conj.  | { | <i>abiru</i> ,       | “to bathe.”        | <i>kiru</i> ,   | “to wear.”       |                                                                   |             |
|            |   | <i>dekiru</i> ,      | “to be able.”      | <i>niru</i> ,   | “to boil.”       |                                                                   |             |
|            |   | <i>kariru</i> ,      | “to borrow.”       | <i>tariru</i> , | “to be enough.”  |                                                                   |             |

¶ 235. As may be seen by the paradigms, the Japanese verbal forms are not numerous in comparison with those of French, Latin, and most other European tongues. But a peculiar difficulty arises from the fact that *all* verbs of the first conjugation are more or less anomalous. In the Classical language each suffix was simply agglutinated to one of the bases, without any letter-changes occurring, e.g., gerund *oki-te*, “having put;” *ari-te*, “having been;” *tsugi-te*, “having joined.” But in modern usage phonetic decay has obliterated this pristine simplicity, and has given us *oite*, *atte*, *tsuide*,—forms in which the stem loses its final consonant, and other letter-changes are apt to take place. The nature of the irregularity thus caused depends in every case upon the last letter of the

\* Vulgarly contracted to *kosaeu*.

stem. The student will more easily master this difficulty by committing to memory the following examples, than by being furnished with a set of abstract rules :—

| 236. CERTAIN PRESENT                   | INDEF. FORM                                        | NEGAT. BASE                                                       | GER-UND                                                              | EMPHAS. GERUND                                                          | CERTAIN PAST                                                         |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Stems ending in a vowel.               | to finish ;<br>to say ;<br>to think ;<br>to sew ;  | <i>shimawau,</i><br><i>irou,</i><br><i>omowau,</i><br><i>nau,</i> | <i>shimatte,</i><br><i>itte,</i><br><i>omotte,</i><br><i>nutte,</i>  | <i>shimatcha,</i><br><i>itcha,</i><br><i>omotcha,</i><br><i>nutcha,</i> | <i>shimatta,</i><br><i>itta,</i><br><i>omotta,</i><br><i>nutta,</i>  |
| Stems ending in <i>b</i> or <i>m</i> . | to study ;<br>to steal ;<br>to call ;<br>to read ; | <i>manabu,</i><br><i>nusumu,</i><br><i>yobu,</i><br><i>yomu,</i>  | <i>manande,</i><br><i>nusunde,</i><br><i>yonde,</i><br><i>yonde,</i> | <i>mananja,</i><br><i>nusunja,</i><br><i>yonja,</i><br><i>yonja,</i>    | <i>mananda,</i><br><i>nusunda,</i><br><i>yonda,</i><br><i>yonda,</i> |
| Stems ending in <i>g</i> .             | to row ;<br>to join ;                              | <i>kogu,</i><br><i>tsugu,</i>                                     | <i>koidc,</i><br><i>tsuide,</i>                                      | <i>koija,</i><br><i>tsuija,</i>                                         | <i>koida,</i><br><i>tsuida,</i>                                      |
| Stems ending in <i>k</i> .             | to write ;<br>to stick ;                           | <i>kaka,</i><br><i>tsūku,</i>                                     | <i>kakc,</i><br><i>tsūtc,</i>                                        | <i>kaicha,</i><br><i>tsuicha,</i>                                       | <i>kaika,</i><br><i>tsuika,</i>                                      |
| Stems ending in <i>r</i> .             | to be ;<br>to take ;                               | <i>aru,</i><br><i>toru,</i>                                       | <i>atte,</i><br><i>totte,</i>                                        | <i>atcha,</i><br><i>totcha,</i>                                         | <i>atta,</i><br><i>totta,</i>                                        |
| Stems ending in <i>s</i> .             | to do ;<br>to lower ;                              | <i>nasu,</i><br><i>orosu,</i>                                     | <i>nashite,</i><br><i>oroshite,</i>                                  | <i>nashicha,</i><br><i>oroshicha,</i>                                   | <i>nashita,</i><br><i>oroshita,</i>                                  |
| Stems ending in <i>t</i> .             | to beat ;<br>to wait ;                             | <i>butsu,</i><br><i>matsu,</i>                                    | <i>butte,</i><br><i>matte,</i>                                       | <i>butcha,</i><br><i>matcha,</i>                                        | <i>butta,</i><br><i>matia,</i>                                       |

¶ 237. It will be observed that most of the above letter-changes have ease of pronunciation for their sole efficient cause. Some, however, may appear strange; for instance, that affecting the stems in *g*, where *d* and *j* replace *t* and *ch* in the terminations. The reason of this is that when the *nigori*'ed letter *g*\* dropped out, there remained a feeling that the *nigori* should be marked in some other way. It was therefore carried on to the next syllable, converting plain *t* and *ch* into *nigori*'ed *d* and *j*. Had this not been done, many forms of such pairs of verbs as *tsugu* and *tsūku* would have become indistinguishable,—a disaster which has actually overtaken verbs with stems ending in *b* and *m*, and also those ending in a vowel, in *r*, and in *t*. Thus it is only by the context that we can tell whether *yonde* is to be understood as the gerund of *yobu*, “to call,” or of *yomu*, “to read;” whether *nutte* is the gerund of *nuu*, “to sew,” or of *nuru*, “to lacquer;” whether *utte* is the gerund of *uru*, “to sell,” or of *utsu*, “to strike.”

¶ 238. The Kyōto people, together with the people of Central and Western Japan generally, say

|                  |                  |       |     |                   |                   |      |
|------------------|------------------|-------|-----|-------------------|-------------------|------|
| <i>shimōte</i> , | <i>shimōta</i> , | etc., | for | <i>shimatte</i> , | <i>shimatta</i> , | etc. |
| <i>iūte</i> ,    | <i>iūta</i> ,    | ,,    | ,,  | <i>itte</i> ,     | <i>itta</i> ,     | ,,   |
| <i>omōte</i> ,   | <i>omōta</i> ,   | ,,    | ,,  | <i>omotte</i> ,   | <i>omotta</i> ,   | ,,   |
| <i>nūte</i> ,    | <i>nūta</i> ,    | ,,    | ,,  | <i>nutte</i> ,    | <i>nutta</i> ,    | ,,   |

and the educated in Tōkyō sometimes follow their example, especially when speaking in public. But this sounds somewhat pedantic. The habit has arisen from the fact that in former days, when the Court resided at Kyōto, the dialect of that place was naturally esteemed above the vernacular

\* See ¶ 28.

of Eastern Japan. A similar case is offered by the verbs *kariru*, "to borrow;" *tariru*, "to suffice," and one or two others, which the genuine usage of Tōkyō inflects according to the third conjugation, but which public speakers sometimes make of the first conjugation (*karu*, *taru*, etc.), in imitation of the Kyōto dialect and of old Classical rules.

¶ 239. In the case of stems ending in *s*, the change of *s* into *sh* in the indefinite form is caused by the inability of the modern Japanese to sound an *s* before the vowel *i*. Originally *nashi* was probably *nasi*, and so in other cases.

The changes in the *t* series have their origin in a similar modern inability to pronounce that consonant before the vowels *i* and *u*. It is probable that, some centuries ago, people consistently said

PRESENT. INDEF. FORM. CONDIT. BASE. NEG. BASE.

*matu*,            *mati*,            *mate*,            *mata*,            "to wait;"

and the conditional and negative bases still retain the pronunciation which theoretical unity postulates, while the other two bases—*matu* and *mati*—have slid respectively into *matsu* and *machi*. All that we know for certain on this point is that the modern pronunciation was already established at the close of the sixteenth century, from which time the first Jesuit works on the language date. The insertion of a *w* in the negative base of verbs ending in vowel stems (*shimawa*, *iwa*, *omowa*, *nuwa*) has its origin in a curious phonetic change which took place many centuries ago. Originally the stem of all such verbs ended in an *f*, thus :

PRESENT.    INDEF. FORM.    CONDIT. BASE.    NEG. BASE.

*shimafu*        *shimafi*        *shimafe*        *shimafa*.



But according to a rule which permeates the whole vocabulary of the modern language, the *f* has been dropped before *u*, *i*, and *e*, and has been converted into a *w* before *a*, thus giving *shimau*, *shimai*, *shimae*, *shimawa*.

ANALYSIS OF THE FORMATION OF THE VARIOUS MOODS  
AND TENSES IN THE REGULAR VERBS.

¶ 240. **Certain Present or Future** (the 1st. base) : to the stem add *u* for the 1st. conjugation, *eru* for the 2nd., and *iru* for the 3rd. The origin of these terminations is unknown.

*N. B.* In the Written Language, both *eru* and *iru* are replaced by *uru*, a peculiarity to be heard also from the lips of some speakers.

¶ 241. **Indefinite Form** (the 2nd. base) : to the stem add *i* for the 1st. and 3rd. conjugations, and *e* for the 2nd. The origin of these terminations is unknown.

¶ 242. **Desiderative Adjective** : to the indefinite form add *tai*. *Tai* is an adjective originally identical with *itai*, "painful," and is capable of conjugation like other adjectives, according to the paradigms on pp. 126, 128, and 130, thus : *okitaku*, *okitō gozaimasū*, *okitakereba*, *okitaku nai*, etc.

¶ 243. **Adjective of Probability** : to the indefinite form add *sō na* (see p. 137).

¶ 244. **Polite Certain Present or Future** : to the indefinite form add *masū*, which can itself be conjugated through most of the moods and tenses, thus : *okimashita*, *okimashō*, etc. (see p. 160).

¶ 245. **Gerund** (by some called the Past Participle) : to the indefinite form add *te*, observing the rules of phonetic change in the 1st. conjugation (see p. 162). *Te* is supposed by the native grammarians to be a fragment of the verb

*hateru*, "to finish." If this view is correct, *oite*, for instance, literally means "having finished putting," or "finishing putting." The next six tenses in the paradigm are all obtained by agglutinating other suffixes to the *te* of this one.

- ¶ 246. **Gerund Emphasised**: to the indefinite form add *cha*, observing the rules of phonetic change in the 1st. conjugation (see p. 162). *Cha* is a corruption of *te wa*, which latter original form is still mostly preferred by cultured speakers. *Wa* is the postposition treated of in pp. 85 *et seq.*
- ¶ 247. **Certain Past**: to the indefinite form add *ta*, observing the rules of phonetic change in the 1st. conjugation (see p. 162). *Ta* is a corruption of the Classical past *tari*, itself derived from *te ari* (*ari* is the Classical "conclusive present" of *aru*, "to be"). *Oita* therefore etymologically means "am having finished putting."
- ¶ 248. **Probable Past**: to the indefinite form add *tarō*, observing the rules of phonetic change in the 1st. conjugation (see p. 162). *Tarō* stands for *te arō*, lit. "probably shall be having finished."
- ¶ 249. **Conditional Past**: to the indefinite form add *taraba* or *tara*, observing the rules of phonetic change in the 1st. conjugation (see p. 162). *Taraba* stands for *te araba*, lit. "if am having finished," *araba* being a Classical form—the so-called "hypothetical mood"—of *aru*, "to be" (see ¶ 287, p. 184).
- ¶ 250. **Concessive Past**: to the indefinite form add *taredomo* or *taredo*, observing the rules of phonetic change in the 1st. conjugation (see p. 162). *Taredomo* stands for *te aredomo*, lit. "though am having finished." *Aredomo*, the concessive present of *aru*, "to be," is itself compounded of the conditional base *are* and the postpositions *to* and *mo*.

- ¶ 251. **Frequentative Form**: to the indefinite form add *tari*, observing the rules of phonetic change in the 1st. conjugation (see p. 162). *Tari* would seem to stand for *te ari*, in which case its original meaning is the same as that of the past indicative tense.
- ¶ 252. **Conditional Base** (the 3rd. base): to the stem add *e* for the 1st. conjugation, *ere* for the 2nd., and *ire* for the 3rd. The origin of these terminations is unknown. The name of "conditional base" was given to this form by Mr. Aston from one of its functions, that of serving as the basis on which the present conditional tense is built up. From it is also formed the concessive present.
- ¶ 253. **Imperative**: in the 1st. conjugation it is identical with the conditional base; in the 2nd. and 3rd. conjugations it is formed by adding to the indefinite form the syllable *ro*, which seems to be a corruption of *yo*, an exclamation resembling our word "oh!"
- N. B.* Some speakers drop the termination.—A familiar imperative, often used by members of the same household in addressing each other, is obtained by adding *na* to the indefinite form, as *yobi-na!* "call!" *shi-na!* "do!" It is uncertain whether this *na* be simply an interjection, or a corruption of the word *nasai*, "please." The former view is, however, the more probable.
- ¶ 254. **Conditional Present**: to the conditional base add *ba*, which is an irregularly *nigori<sup>ed</sup>* form of the postposition *wa*.
- ¶ 255. **Concessive Present**: to the conditional base add *domo* or *do*. *Do* is the *nigori<sup>ed</sup>* form of the postposition *to*, and *mo* is also one of the postpositions.
- ¶ 256. **Negative Base** (the 4th. base): in the 1st. conjugation add *a* to the stem; in the 2nd. and 3rd. conjugations the negative base is identical with the indefinite form.

The name of "negative base" was given to this form by Mr. Aston with reference to one of its functions, that of serving as the basis on which most of the tenses of the negative voice are built up. Note, however, that it likewise helps to form the probable present or future of the *positive* voice, together with all passives, potentials, and causatives. The name is, therefore, not a completely adequate one, though there is no harm in retaining it, provided the nature of the form itself be always borne in mind.

¶ 257. **Probable Present or Future**: in the 1st. conjugation add *u* to the negative base, and then contract the diphthong *au* thus obtained into *ō*. The termination *u* is a corruption of the unexplained Classical *n*. The steps of the process therefore are *okan* (the Classical probable present or future of *oku*), *okau*, *okō*. Rapid speakers sometimes go further still, and, shortening the *o*, say *oko* (retaining an emphasis on the final syllable). In the 2nd. and 3rd. conjugations the Classical language also simply adds *n*, thus: *taben*, "I shall probably eat;" *ochin*, "I shall probably fall" (not to be confounded with the negative present *tabenū* and *ochinū*). Some of the Colloquial dialects of the Western provinces vocalise this *n* into *u* exactly as in the 1st. conjugation, and say *tabeu*, *ochiu*. The Tōkyō forms in *yō*, as *tabeyō*, *ochiyō*, are built on a false analogy suggested by the *ō* sound of the future in the 1st. conjugation.

¶ 258. **Negative Imperative**: to the present indicative add *na*, which is probably a fragment of *nakare*, the Classical imperative of the "negative adjective *nai*." (*Nakare*=*naku*<sup>1</sup> *are*<sup>2</sup>, be<sup>2</sup> not-being<sup>1</sup>.)

¶ 259. **Negative Probable Present or Future**: in the 1st. conjugation add *mai* to the present indicative, in the

2nd. and 3rd. conjugations add it to the negative base. *Mai* is a corruption of *maji*, *majiki*, *majiku*, a Classical adjective expressing doubt or prohibition. In the Colloquial it has ceased to be conjugated.

- ¶ 260. **Negative Certain Present or Future**: to the negative base add *n*, which here and throughout the negative tenses is probably a corruption of the Classical negative particle *ani*, which exists likewise in Korean. The *n* should properly be followed by short *ŭ*, but this letter is now generally omitted in pronunciation.
- ¶ 261. **Negative Certain Past**: to the negative base add *nanda*, a termination of unknown origin.\*
- ¶ 262. **Negative Probable Past**: to the negative base add *nandarō*, formed from the negative certain past on the model of the same tense of the positive voice.
- ¶ 263. **Negative Frequentative Form**: to the negative add *nandari*, formed from the negative certain past on the model of the same tense of the positive voice.
- ¶ 264. **Negative Conditional Present**: to the negative base add *neba*. *Ne* is really a sort of negative conditional base formed on the analogy of the conditional base of the positive voice, and *ba* is the postposition *wa* with the *nigori*.
- ¶ 265. **Negative Concessive Present**: to the negative base add *nedomo* or *nedo*. For *ne* see the preceding paragraph. *Do* (for *to*) and *mo* are postpositions.
- ¶ 266. **Negative Gerund**: to the negative base add *zu*, a termination of doubtful origin. The postposition *ni* is often added to this form without affecting its signification, as *tabezu ni* for *tabezu*, “not eating,” “without eating.”

---

\* See, however, the present writer's “Essay in Aid of a Grammar of Luchuan,” ¶ 124.

¶ 267. **Second Form of the Negative Voice:** to the negative base add the “negative adjective *nai*” (see p. 129) in one or other of its conjugational forms.

*N. B.* In order to avoid tedious repetition, we leave the student to analyse for himself on the above model the conjugation of adjectives given on p. 128. A curious little item for him to notice is the occasional substitution of the Chinese negative prefix *fu* or *bu* for the negative Japanese negative *suffixes*. The use of this idiom implies, not simple negation, but the additional idea of badness, dereliction of duty, etc. Thus, *fu-deki*, “badly made;” *fu-iki-todoki*, “negligent;” *bu-ashirai*, “discourteous.”

#### IRREGULAR VERBS.

¶ 268. Japanese has very few irregular verbs, and the irregularities even of these few are but slight. We have already given paradigms of the three chief ones, viz. *kuru*, “to come” (p. 158); *suru*, “to do” (p. 159); and *masū* (p. 160), which formerly meant “to be,” but which is now used only as a termination that may be added to the indefinite form of any verb. With its aid there is obtained an honorific conjugation, which sounds more courteous than the ordinary conjugation and which is therefore in particularly frequent use. The plain verb without *masū* is apt to strike the ear as curt, especially at the end of a sentence. Instead of giving *masū* alone, the paradigm shows it attached to the verb *nasaru*, “to deign to do” (for *nasaru* see also below, ¶ 270 and ¶ 402).

¶ 269. The peculiarities of the other slightly irregular verbs are as follows:—*Aru*, “to be,” when combined with the postposition *de*, loses its final syllable, making *da* instead of *daru*. It lacks the desiderative adjective. Its negative voice likewise is not used, being replaced by the “negative

adjective " *nai*. The improbable present or future *arumai* alone remains, used concurrently with *nakarō*.

¶ 270. *Gozaru*, "to be," in the mouths of most Tōkyō speakers, drops the *r* of its last syllable when *masū* is suffixed; thus *gozaimasū* for *gozarimasū* (but see end of ¶ 388). The same is the case with the polite verbs *irassharu*, "to go," "to come;" *kudasaru*, "to condescend;" *nasaru*, "to deign to do;" and *ossaru*, "to deign to say." These latter verbs also use the forms thus obtained, viz. *irasshai*, *kudasai*, and *nasai*, as imperatives, in lieu of the older *iraserare*, *kudasare*, and *nasare*. But *ossai* is rare, *osshaimashī* being preferred. Another peculiarity of these four verbs is that, though now conjugated according to the 1st. conj., they are corruptions of verbs originally belonging to the 2nd, viz. *iraserareru*, *kudasareru*, *nasareru*, and *ōserareru*,—properly potential forms which early assumed an honorific meaning (conf. ¶ 403). *Kureru*, "to give," 2nd. conj., follows their example, having the imperative *kurei* for *kurero*. Moreover, *irassharu*, *kudasaru*, and *nasaru* may drop the letter *a* of the termination *aru* in the gerund and in the six following tenses, thus: *irashitte* for *irasshatte*, *kudasttarō* for *kudasattarō*, *nastlara* for *nasattara*. In familiar conversation *gozaimasū* is often shorn of all its middle letters, and pronounced *gozasū*, *gasū*, or *gesū*. Similarly *gozaimashīta* becomes *gashīta*, etc. When the particle *de* precedes it, *gozaimasū* is apt to lose its initial letter as well, *de gozaimasū* being fused into *desū*, *de gozaimashīta* into *deshīta*, etc.

¶ 271. *Iku*, "to go," instead of the gerund *iite*, the emphasised gerund *ūcha*, etc., which would be required by the rule for verbs of the first conjugation with stem ending in *k* (see p. 162), shows the following irregular forms :

|                 |                       |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Gerund          | <i>itte</i> ,         | “having gone, going.” |
| Emphatic Gerund | <i>itcha</i> ,        | “having gone, going.” |
| Certain Past    | <i>illa</i> ,         | “I went.”             |
| Probable Past   | <i>iltarō</i> ,       | “I probably went.”    |
| Condit. Past    | <i>iltara(ba)</i> ,   | “if I had gone.”      |
| Concess. Past   | <i>iltaredo(mo)</i> , | “though I went.”      |
| Frequent. Form  | <i>ittari</i> ,       | “sometimes going.”    |

These irregular forms of *iku* coincide with the regular forms of the same tenses of the verb *iu*, “to say.” Otherwise the verb *iku* is conjugated regularly.

¶ 272. *Shinuru*, “to die,” is conjugated regularly through most of the moods and tenses, as if it were *shinu* (stem *shin*), and belonged to the first conjugation. But the addition of the syllable *ru* makes its certain present *shinuru*, and also the negative imperative *shinuru-na*, irregular. It has, moreover, inherited from the Classical Language a conditional base *shinure*, which occasionally replaces the regular *shine*. Altogether it appears as a sort of hybrid between the first conjugation and the third.\*

#### REMARKS ON THE USE OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

¶ 273. *Present, Future, and Past*.—The Japanese verb does not, like ours, clearly distinguish present from future time. It has one form serving to denote any *certain* action or state, whether present, future, or habitual, and another serving to denote any *merely probable* action or state, whether present or future. It is the question of certainty or uncertainty that

---

\*Such does *shinuru* appear from the exclusively Colloquial stand-point. Proof has been supplied elsewhere (“Essay in Aid of a Grammar of Luchuan,” section entitled “Excursus on the Origin of the Japanese Conjugations,” pp. 139 *et seq.*) of the thesis that *all* Japanese verbs originally followed a system of which *shinuru* is the sole surviving relic.



forms the criterion, not the question of time. Still, as future actions and events must, in the nature of things, be more often uncertain than present actions and events, the form denoting certainty is applied in the majority of cases to present time, while the form denoting mere probability is applied in the majority of cases to future time. This it is which has led most writers on Japanese grammar to term the former the present tense, and the latter the future tense. But such a terminology is really incorrect, and it has been the cause of much misunderstanding between Europeans and natives.

*Bara wa, ii hana da.* { “The rose is a beauti-  
*Rose as-for, good flower is.* { ful flower.”

*Doko ni sunde irassharu ɾ* { “Where are you liv-  
*Where in dwelling deign-to-be?* { ing?”

*Kimasū ka ɾ* (certainty) “Will he come?”

*Kimashō ka ɾ* (mere probability) { “Is he likely to  
 { come?” “Do you think  
 { he will come?”

*Fiki kimasū.* (certainty) { “He will come im-  
 { mediately.”

*Kimashō.* } (mere probability) { “He will probably  
*Kimasū deshō.* } { come.”

*Kimasūmai.* (probability of) { “I don’t think he will  
 (a negation) { come.”

*Yuki ga furimasū.* { “It snows;” “it is  
*Snow (nom.) falls.* { snowing.”  
 { “It will certainly  
 { snow.”

*Yuki ga furimashō.* { “It will probably  
 { snow.”

*Myōnichi shuttatsu shimasū.* { “I (shall) start to-  
*To-morrow start do.* } morrow.”

*Myōnichi shuttatsu shimashō.* { “I think of starting  
 to-morrow.”

*Kaze wo hiita kara,* { “As I have  
*Wind (accus.) have-drawn because,* } caught cold, I think  
*yu wo yoshimashō.* { I won't take any  
*hot-water (accus.) (I) will-probably-forbear.* } bath to-day.”

In this last case there is little difference in English between “I think I won't,” and plain “I won't.” The former is less abrupt; that is all. Similarly in Japanese, where consequently the merely probable present or future tense sometimes comes in a roundabout way to correspond exactly to our real future. Thus :

*Isoide ikō.* } “I will go quickly,” or  
*Having-listened, will-probably-go.* } “I will make haste and  
 (More politely, *Isoide ikimashō.*) } go.”

But it would do equally well to use the present, and to say *Isoide ikimasū*.—See also ¶ 291.

¶ 273. A. The essence of the probable present or future in Japanese being uncertainty with a strong tinge of probability, this tense is often used to express a guess, such as English idiom generally conveys by means of the word “may” or “must,” thus :

*Sō omou mono mo arō* } “There may be some  
*So think persons also may-be* } folks who think so, but. . . .”  
*ga. . . .*  
*although. . . .*

*Sazo go fu-jiyū* } “You must find it very  
*Indeed august inconvenience* } inconvenient.”  
*de gozaimashō.*  
*probably is.*

*N. B.* Needless to say that this idiom cannot be used to express our very different “must” denoting necessity. The “must” of necessity is rendered by a double negative, thus :

*Harawanakereba narimasen.* } “If won’t do not to pay, i.e.  
*If-pay-not, won’t-be.* } “You *must* pay.”

Englishmen knowing a little Japanese are apt to use this double negative too freely, because in English we habitually scatter *must’s* broadcast, even where no real necessity is implied, as, when rising to take leave, we say “I am afraid I must be going.” A Japanese would say *Mō o itoma itashimasū*, lit. “Already I will do honourable leave.”

¶ 273. *B.* Both the certain and the probable present must, in many cases, be translated by our conditional mood, thus :—

*Mayoimasū nē!* } “Indeed I shouldn’t  
*Am-in-quandary indeed!* } know what to do.”

*Tōkyō no hito wa, nan* } “What would Tōkyō  
*Tōkyō’s person as-for, what* } people say, I wonder? (e.g.  
*to imashō?* } if told of the dearness of  
*that will-probably-say?* } living in America.)”

*Kimo wo tsubushimasū.* } “They would be per-  
*Liver (accus.) (they)will-burst.* } fectly astounded.”

*N. B.* “I wonder,” in the second of these instances, is intended to represent the shade of uncertainty inherent in the Probable Present *imashō*. Japanese possesses no actual equivalent of our useful verb “to wonder.”

¶ 274. The difference between the certain past and the probable past is precisely analogous to that between the certain present or future and the probable present or Future :—

*Kimo tsubushimashita.* } “He was astounded.”  
*Liver (he) burst.* }

*Kimo tsubushimashitarō.* } “He must have been  
 } astounded.”

Needless to dwell further on this point after the copious illustrations in the preceding paragraph. The student will be more perplexed by certain anomalous uses of the certain past itself. Thus this tense is sometimes used where English idiom would prefer the present, for instance: *Arimashūta* (lit. "has been"), "Here it is!" said when one finds something which had been lost; *Wakarimashūta*, "I have understood," i.e., "I understand;" *Gozen ga dekimashūta* (lit. "dinner has forthcome"), "Dinner is ready;" *Nodo ga kawakimashūta* (lit. "throat has dried"), "My throat is dry," i.e., "I am thirsty." Contrariwise the Japanese often use the present—especially the present of the negative—where strict logic demands the past, thus:

|                                |   |                              |
|--------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| <i>Watakūshi wa Amerika ni</i> | } | "While I was in<br>America." |
| <i>Me as-for, America in</i>   |   |                              |
| <i>oru aida.</i>               |   |                              |
| <i>dwell while.</i>            |   |                              |

|                                           |   |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Narawanai kara, dekimasen.</i>         | } | "I can't do it, because<br>I haven't learnt how." |
| <i>Learn-not because, forthcomes-not.</i> |   |                                                   |

¶ 275. In such an example as the following, the Japanese may seem illogical in using the past tense. But the English are equally illogical in using the present, seeing that the time referred to is future:

|                                           |   |                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Shūaku no dekita toki,</i>             | } | "Let me know when<br>everything is ready."<br>(Said to an inferior.) |
| <i>Preparation 's has-forthcome time,</i> |   |                                                                      |
| <i>shirashite o kun nasai.</i>            |   |                                                                      |
| <i>informing honourably give deign.</i>   |   |                                                                      |

In the following example (and many similar ones might be quoted) the two languages play still more strangely at cross purposes, English using the past where Japanese has the future, and the present infinitive where Japanese has the past:

*Kō shīta hō ga* } “ You had probably better do  
*Thus have-done side (nom.)* } it in this way,” or “ I think you  
*yokarō.* } ought to do it like this.”  
*will-probably-be-good.*

*N. B.* Observe the phrase...*hō ga yoi* equivalent to our “ should,” “ ought,” “ had better,” and compare the foot-note to p. 144.

Somewhat similar are instances like the following, where the past tense (especially the past tense of adjectives) has the sense of our conditional :

*Massugu ga chikakatta.* } “ It would have been  
*Straight (nom.) was-near.* } shorter to go straight on.”

*Sō suru to yokatta.* } “ It would have been  
*So do if, was-good.* } better to do that.”

*N. B.* If we were to use the bookish English idiom “ it had been shorter,” “ it had been better,” we should obtain a close approximation to the Japanese expression. Compare also last part of ¶ 287.

¶ 276. Notwithstanding the occasional appearance of such cases as those hitherto exemplified, the use of the present and past generally gives no trouble, thus :

*Tsune ni iu koto desū ka ?* } “ Is it a thing people  
*Generally say thing is ?* } generally say ?”

*Ano hito wa ki-yō da* } “ He is so handy, he  
*That person as-for, handy is* } can do anything.”  
*kara, nan de mo shimasū.* } (Be careful to pronounce *ki-yō*  
*because, anything-whatever does.* } as two syllables. *Kyō*, as one  
 syllable, means “ to-day.”)

*Uchi no shafu wa,* }  
*House 's jinrikīsha-man as-for,* } “ As the house *jinrikīsha-*  
*ashi wo itamemashita kara,* } man has hurt his foot,  
*foot (accus.) has-hurt(trans.) because,* } I have called another  
*kawari no otoko wo* } instead.”  
*exchange 's man (accus.)* }  
*yonde mairimashita.* }  
*having-called have-come.* }

|                    |              |               |               |                                                                               |
|--------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Senkoku</i>     | <i>kiki</i>  | <i>ni</i>     | <i>yatta</i>  | } “ I sent to enquire a<br>little while ago ; but there<br>is no answer yet.” |
| <i>Former-hour</i> | <i>hear</i>  | <i>to</i>     | <i>sent</i>   |                                                                               |
| <i>ga,</i>         | <i>mada</i>  | <i>henji</i>  | <i>ga</i>     |                                                                               |
| <i>whereas,</i>    | <i>still</i> | <i>answer</i> | <i>(nom.)</i> |                                                                               |
| <i>gozaimasen.</i> |              |               |               |                                                                               |

*is-not.*

¶ 277. The certain present and certain past, sometimes followed by the word *koto*, “ thing,” “ act,” “ fact,” to some extent replace the infinitive, a mood for which the Japanese language lacks a special form. Thus *oku koto*, “ to put ” in general ; *oita koto*, “ to have put ” in the past :—

|                        |                  |               |                                                      |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Mabushikute,</i>    | <i>miru koto</i> | <i>ga</i>     | } “ The light is so daz-<br>zling that I can't see.” |
| <i>Being-dazzling,</i> | <i>to-see</i>    | <i>(nom.)</i> |                                                      |
| <i>dekimasen.</i>      |                  |               |                                                      |
| <i>forthcomes-not.</i> |                  |               |                                                      |
|                        |                  |               |                                                      |

|                     |               |                |                            |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Mita koto</i>    | <i>ga</i>     | <i>nai.</i>    | } “ I have never seen it.” |
| <i>To-have-seen</i> | <i>(nom.)</i> | <i>is-not.</i> |                            |

¶ 278. *Indefinite Form, Gerund, and Emphasised Gerund.*—The indefinite form of Japanese verbs is one to which there is nothing that exactly corresponds in our Western tongues. It is by itself of no tense and mood, but may denote any tense or mood according to the context. The rule regarding its use in the Written Language is as follows :—

When several clauses are correlated, that is to say, follow each other and express the same tense or mood, then only the verb or adjective of the last of such correlated clauses takes the termination which indicates the tense or mood intended by the speaker, the verbs or adjectives of all the foregoing clauses being put in the indefinite form. One thus has to wait till the end of the last clause before one can tell whether the writer intends to refer to the past, present, or future, to the indicative, conditional, imperative, etc. The final verb or adjective, so to speak, focuses and clinches

all that went before. Thus the Shintō theologian Hirata, when insisting on the inscrutableness of the divine nature, says :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Kami no mi ue wa,</i><br/> <i>Gods of august surface as-for,</i><br/> <i>midari ni hakari-iu-beki mono</i><br/> <i>rashly calculate-say-should thing</i><br/> <i>de wa nai. Tada sono tattoki</i><br/> <i>is-not. Simply their venerableness</i><br/> <i>wo tattobi, kashikoki wo</i><br/> <i>(accus.) to-venerate, usefulness (accus.)</i><br/> <b>kashikomi,</b> <i>osoru-beki wo</i><br/> <i>to-reverence, fearfulness (accus.)</i><br/> <b>osoreru hoka nashi.</b><br/> <i>to-fear besides is-not.</i></p> | } | <p>“The nature of the gods is not a thing which men should rashly speculate and talk about. There is nothing else for us to do but to honour their greatness, to reverence their majesty, and to fear their power.”</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

In this passage *tattobi* and *kashikomi*, the indefinite forms of the verbs *tattobu* and *kashikomou*, must be rendered by our infinitive mood, because they are correlated with *osoreru*, which is in the certain present tense, here corresponding to what we term the infinitive (conf. ¶ 277). Note also the use of the bookish form in *ki* (see ¶¶ 177 and 178) of the attributive adjectives *tattoki* and *kashikoki* (for *tattoi* and *kashikoi*), here—as generally in the higher style—employed in preference to the abstract substantives in *sa*, such as *tattosa*, *kashikosa*.

¶ 279. In the negative voice, the place of the indefinite form is supplied by the negative gerund, thus :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Sekai no kuni-guni no</i><br/> <i>World 's countries of</i><br/> <i>uchi ni wa, sōmoku</i><br/> <i>middle in, herbs-trees</i><br/> <i>mo haezu, jimbutsu</i><br/> <i>also grow-not, human-beings</i><br/> <i>mo nai tokoro ga</i><br/> <i>also exist-not places (nom.)</i><br/> <i>arimasū.</i><br/> <i>are.</i></p> | } | <p>“Among the various countries in the world, there are some where no plants or trees grow, and where no human beings live.”<br/> <i>(N. B. Haezu is the negative gerund of haeru, “to sprout,” correlated with the present of the negative adjective nai.)</i></p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ 280. In the Book Language the foregoing rule concerning the use of the indefinite form is exemplified at every turn. It is also followed pretty frequently in set speeches, and sometimes even in the ordinary conversation of careful and cultured speakers. Foreign students should, therefore, not fail to make themselves acquainted with it. At the same time, it must be admitted that the familiar and lower styles of Colloquial almost completely disregard it. Sometimes it is replaced, as in European languages, by two or more clauses in the same tense. But more frequently the indefinite form gives way to the gerund, so that, for instance, the last example but one, if made genuinely conversational, would run thus :

*Kami no koto wa, midari ni suiryō wa*  
*Gods of matters as-for, rashly speculation as-for,*  
*dekimasen. Tada sono tattoi tokoro wo tattonde,*  
*cannot. Simply their venerable place (accus.) venerating,*  
*sono uya-uyashii tokoro wo uyamatte, sono osoroshii*  
*their awe-inspiring place (accus.) reverencing, their fearful*  
*tokoro wo osoreru yori hoka wa nai.*  
*place (accus.) to-fear than besides as-for, is-not.*

*N. B.* Notice the word *tokoro*, "place," used as a sort of suffix to the adjective *tattoi*, "venerable," to express the abstract quality of "venerableness," and similarly in connection with the adjectives of the other clauses.

¶ 281. Hardly a sentence—especially a sentence of any length—can be uttered without the gerund being thus used. Take, for instance, the following :

|                          |                   |                                                                                |
|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Haya-tsūke-gi</i>     | <i>wo</i>         | } "Bring some matches!"<br>( <i>More lit.</i> "Having carried matches, come!") |
| <i>Quick-strike-wood</i> | ( <i>accus.</i> ) |                                                                                |
| <i>molte</i>             | <i>koi!</i>       |                                                                                |
| <i>having-carried</i>    | <i>come!</i>      |                                                                                |

*Kikashite kudasai!* "Please tell me."  
*Causing-to-hear condescend!*



*Uchi ni ite, hon de mo*  
*House in being, books even*  
*mile orimashō.*  
*looking-at (I) shall-probably-be.*

{ “I think I will stay at home and read.” (*More lit.* “Staying at home, I shall probably be looking at books.”)

*Kaeri-gake ni kwankōba*  
*Returning-while in, bazaar*  
*ye yotte, sūkoshi kai-*  
*at stopping, a-little pur-*  
*mono shite kima-*  
*chases having-done, (I) have-*  
*shita.*  
*come.*

{ “On my way home, I looked in at the bazaar, and made a few purchases.” (*More lit.* “Having stopped at the bazaar, and having made some purchases, I have come home again.”)

*Kinō hiru-gozen wo*  
*Yesterday midday-meal (accus.)*  
*tabe, uchi wo*  
*having-eaten, house (accus.)*  
*demashite, sore kara*  
*having-gone-out, that from*  
*sumō wo mile,*  
*wrestling (accus.) having-seen,*  
*han-nichi asunde ki-*  
*half-day having-played*  
*mashita.*  
*have-come.*

{ “I went out yesterday after luncheon, was present at a wrestling match, and was away half the day.” (*More lit.* “Having eaten luncheon, having gone out, then having looked at wrestling, having played half the day, I have come.”)

¶ 282. Sometimes the gerund expresses instrumentality rather than correlation, thus :

*Susugi-sentaku wo*  
*Rinse-washing (accus.)*  
*shite, kurashi wo*  
*doing, livelihood (accus.)*  
*tsūkele orimasū.*  
*affixing is.*

{ “She gains her livelihood by washing clothes.”

¶ 283. The gerund of adjectives occurs most frequently in phrases where English idiom employs the word “so,” for instance :

*Kurakūte miemasen.* } “It is so dark, I can’t  
*Being-dark, cannot-see.* } see.”

*Itakūte shiyō ga nai.* { “It is so painful I  
*Being-painful, way-to-do (nom.) isn’t.* { don’t know what to  
do,” or “It is awfully  
painful.” (Conf. ¶ 218.)

Occasionally the gerund of verbs is employed in the same manner, to help to express the meaning conveyed by our word “so,” thus :

*Ashi ga hiete* } “My feet are so  
*Feet (nom.) being-cold,* } cold, I don’t know  
*tamaranai.* } what to do.”  
*(I) cannot-endure.*

¶ 284. The Emphasised Gerunds *oicha*, *tabecha*, *ochicha*, *shīcha*, are somewhat vulgar, or at least familiar, and cultured speakers still prefer the uncontracted forms *oite wa*, *tabete wa*, *ochite wa*, etc.

*Necha inai.* } “Oh! no; he is  
*As-for-sleeping-indeed, isn’t.* } not asleep.”

*Matcha oraremasen.* } “I can’t wait.”  
*As-for-waiting-indeed, cannot-be.* }

*Itcha dō da?* } “What do you say  
*As-for-going-indeed, how is (it)?* } to our going there?”

*Sō shīcha komarimasū.* } “Annoyance will be  
*So doing-indeed, will be-troubled.* } caused if you do that.”

*Sō shīcha ikemasen.* } “It won’t do for you  
*So doing indeed, is-no-go.* } to do that,” or “You  
mustn’t do that.”

*Kō shinakūcha narimasen.* } “It won’t do not to  
*This not-doing, won’t-become.* } do this,” i.e., “You  
must do this.”

|                  |                   |                             |                                            |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ki</i>        | <i>wo</i>         | <i>otoshicha</i>            | } “You mustn’t let<br>your spirits droop.” |
| <i>Spirit</i>    | ( <i>accus.</i> ) | <i>letting-fall us-for,</i> |                                            |
| <i>ikemasen.</i> |                   |                             |                                            |
| <i>is-no-go.</i> |                   |                             |                                            |

*N. B.* The last three examples illustrate what has already been said in the Note at top of p. 175 concerning the rendering of our word “must” by a double negative in Japanese, while also showing that “must not” is rendered by a single negative. Observe, moreover, the general tendency to use the emphatic gerund chiefly in phrases expressing negation, interrogation, or something disagreeable.

¶ 285. *Desiderative Adjective and Adjective of Probability.*—The use of these forms may be best understood from a few examples :

|                          |                                           |   |                                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Mitai</i>             | <i>mono.</i>                              | } | “Something I<br>should like to see.”          |
| <i>Want-to-see</i>       | <i>thing.</i>                             |   |                                               |
| <i>Sono</i>              | <i>mono wo mitai.</i>                     | } | “I want to see<br>that.”                      |
| <i>That</i>              | <i>thing (accus.) want-to-see.</i>        |   |                                               |
| <i>Chotto</i>            | <i>negaiō gozaimasū.</i>                  | } | “I want to ask<br>you a slight favour.”       |
| <i>Slightly</i>          | <i>wanting-to-beg am.</i>                 |   |                                               |
| <i>Arisō</i>             | <i>na koto.</i>                           | } | “Something which<br>is likely to happen.”     |
| <i>Likely-to-be</i>      | <i>fact.</i>                              |   |                                               |
| <i>Arisō</i>             | <i>mo nai koto.</i>                       | } | “Something which<br>isn’t likely to happen.”  |
| <i>Likely-to-be</i>      | <i>also isn’t fact.</i>                   |   |                                               |
| <i>Ame</i>               | <i>ga agarisō desū.</i>                   | } | “It looks as if the<br>rain would clear off.” |
| <i>Rain</i>              | ( <i>nom.</i> ) <i>likely-to-rise is.</i> |   |                                               |
| <i>Oishisō</i>           | <i>desū.</i> (from the adject-            | } | “It looks good.”<br>( <i>e. g. a cake.</i> )  |
| <i>Likely-to-be-nice</i> | <i>is</i> tive <i>oishii,</i>             |   |                                               |
|                          | “good to eat.”)                           |   |                                               |

¶ 286. Besides this “adjective of probability” obtained by agglutinating *sō* to the indefinite form, there is an idiom formed by using *sō* after the present or past tense. *Sō*, which is then best written as a separate word, has the force of “it would seem that,” “they say that” :—

|                   |                        |                |                  |                                                    |
|-------------------|------------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>O</i>          | <i>ide</i>             | <i>ni</i>      | <i>naru</i>      | } “It would seem<br>that he is coming.”            |
| <i>Honourable</i> | <i>exit</i>            | <i>to</i>      | <i>becomes</i>   |                                                    |
| <i>sō</i>         | <i>desū.</i>           |                |                  |                                                    |
| <i>appearance</i> | <i>is.</i>             |                |                  |                                                    |
| <i>Ano</i>        | <i>yado-ya</i>         | <i>wa,</i>     | <i>yaketa</i>    | } “They say that<br>that hotel has burnt<br>down.” |
| <i>That</i>       | <i>hotel</i>           | <i>as-for,</i> | <i>has-burnt</i> |                                                    |
| <i>sō</i>         | <i>desū.</i>           |                |                  |                                                    |
| <i>appearance</i> | <i>is.</i>             |                |                  |                                                    |
| <i>Taisō ni</i>   | <i>ii</i>              | <i>sō</i>      | <i>desū.</i>     | } “It is said to be<br>excellent.”                 |
| <i>Greatly</i>    | <i>good appearance</i> |                | <i>is.</i>       |                                                    |

¶ 287. *Conditional Present and Past.*—These tenses have a somewhat peculiar history. In the Classical form of the language there is what is called a “hypothetical present and past,” thus :

Condit. Pres., *okeba*, “when I put, “as I put;” *tabureba*, “when I eat,” “as I eat.”

Condit. Past, *okitareba*, “when (or as) I had put;” *tabetareba*, “when (or as) I had eaten.”

Hypoth. Pres., *okaba*, “if I put;” *tabeba*, “if I eat.”

Hypoth. Past, *okitaraba*, “if I had put;” *tabetaraba*, “if I had eaten.”

The hypothetical present, it will be noticed, was formed by suffixing *ba* to the negative base. All four forms may still be met with in the so-called Colloquial of certain books. But in actual Colloquial practice the distinction between hypothetical and conditional has been given up, and the sense of “when” is generally expressed by a periphrasis with the word *toki*, lit. “time,” as *kuru toki*, “when he comes.” The curious thing is that what have survived are the present tense of the old conditional mood, and the past tense of the old hypothetical. The single Colloquial mood thus pieced together from the halves of the two

Classical moods might perhaps better be termed the hypothetical, as it has the sense of "if. . . . ." But we have preferred the name of conditional as being more familiar to European ears, and as having been employed by other writers on Japanese Grammar. The only present tense hypothetical forms that have remained in common use are *iwaba*, from *iu*, "to say," which is employed in the sense of "so to say," and *naraba*, from *naru*, a Classical verb meaning "to be," and not to be confounded with the *naru* which means "to become." *Naraba* therefore properly signifies "if it be;" but when employed as an auxiliary attached to other verbs, it comes to mean no more than "if." Thus *iku naraba* is "if I go." *Naraba* is often clipped of its last syllable, and becomes *nara* :—

|                           |                 |                                                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Dekirara(ba),</i>      | <i>molte</i>    | } "Please bring it with<br>you if it is ready." |
| <i>If-has-forthcome,</i>  | <i>carrying</i> |                                                 |
| <i>kite kudasai.</i>      |                 |                                                 |
| <i>coming condescend.</i> |                 |                                                 |

|                                    |                                          |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>O iriyō naraba,</i>             | } "Please take it if you<br>require it." |
| <i>Honourably requisite if-is,</i> |                                          |
| <i>o mochi nasai.</i>              |                                          |
| <i>honourably taking deign.</i>    |                                          |

|                                |                                                                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Aiite iru nara, kashite</i> | } "If you have no use for<br>it at present, please lend<br>it to me." |
| <i>Open is if, lending</i>     |                                                                       |
| <i>kudasai.</i>                |                                                                       |
| <i>condescend.</i>             |                                                                       |

|                                  |                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Areba, yō gozaimasu</i>       | } "I wish there were<br>some ( <i>but I hardly think<br/>there are</i> ); hence "I fear<br>there are none." |
| <i>If-there-is, good (it) is</i> |                                                                                                             |
| <i>ga. . . . .</i>               |                                                                                                             |
| <i>although. . . . .</i>         |                                                                                                             |

|                                           |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kochira de zanjite oreba,</i>          | } "I would tell you if I<br>knew ( <i>but I don't know</i> .)" |
| <i>Here in knowing if-be,</i>             |                                                                |
| <i>mōshi-agemasu ga. . . . .</i>          |                                                                |
| <i>say-will-lift-up although. . . . .</i> |                                                                |

|                                     |                             |   |                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kō sureba,</i>                   | <i>dekiru (no) ni..</i>     | } | “ You could do it<br>in this way if you tried<br>(but you haven't tried,<br>although you ought to<br>have done so).” |
| <i>Thus if-do,</i>                  | <i>forthcomes whereas..</i> |   |                                                                                                                      |
| or, with a stronger tinge of blame, |                             |   |                                                                                                                      |
| <i>Kō sureba,</i>                   | <i>dekiru mono</i>          |   |                                                                                                                      |
| <i>Thus if-do,</i>                  | <i>forthcomes thing</i>     |   |                                                                                                                      |
| <i>wo....</i>                       |                             |   |                                                                                                                      |
| <i>(accus.).....</i>                |                             |   |                                                                                                                      |

These last three examples are specially important as illustrating a whole class of elliptical idioms with which Colloquial Japanese abounds, and by which our “I would if I could,” “I should, had I been able,” etc., etc., are expressed. It is true that the qualifying particles (*ga, ni, no ni, mono wo*) are sometimes absent; but they are generally there, and the sentence remains unfinished. After all, there is nothing to be astonished at in this. From the point of view of logic, a conditional sentence is always incomplete. For instance, when we say “I should like to travel,” the implied rider is “but I cannot,” or “I cannot yet,” or some such clause. Compare also the words within parenthesis in the examples under discussion. Observe that *ni* final implies regret or reproach, while *no ni* superadds to this a further shade of meaning, showing that the thing to be done is either something concerning which a command had previously been given, or else that it is a point of duty, or that it refers to some other circumstance known to both speaker and doer. *Mono wo* is more emphatic still. It lays still greater stress on the failure to perform the desired action, and often alludes to some accident or misfortune as the cause of such failure.

¶ 288. *Concessive Present and Past.*—The peculiar force of these forms corresponds most nearly to that of our word “though,” but is generally best rendered in practice by prefixing “but” to the following clause. The orthodox

concessive forms given in the paradigms are not often heard in actual practice, being mostly replaced by the independent word *keredo* (*mo*), "though," itself of verbal origin, construed with the present or past indicative, thus :

|                                                                                                                                             |   |                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Iya da keredo, shi-kata</i><br/> <i>Distasteful is though, way-to-do</i><br/> <i>ga nai.</i><br/> <i>(nom.) isn't. (familiar)</i></p> | } | <p>"It is distasteful to me, but I can't help myself."</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                        |   |                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Ii keredo, ne ga takai.</i><br/> <i>Good though, price (nom.) (is) high.</i></p> | } | <p>"The article is a good one, but it is too dear."</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                   |   |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Sagashita keredomo, shi-</i><br/> <i>Sought though, can-</i><br/> <i>remasen.</i><br/> <i>not-know.</i></p> | } | <p>"I have looked for it, but can't find it."</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------|

Sometimes, instead of *keredomo* or *keredo*, we hear the longer periphrasis *to wa iedo(mo)*, lit. "though one says that." Thus *oitaredo(mo)*, *oita keredo(mo)*, and *oita to wa iedo(mo)* are all synonymous and equally correct.

¶ 289. A well-marked shade of meaning distinguishes the concessive mood proper from expressions closely resembling it in . . . *te mo*, *de mo* and *to mo*. Thus *attaredomo*, *atta keredo*, or *atta to wa iedo* signifies "though there was," "though there has been," whereas *atta<sup>1</sup> to<sup>2</sup> itte<sup>3</sup> mo<sup>4</sup>* (lit. "even<sup>4</sup> saying<sup>3</sup> that<sup>2</sup> there was<sup>1</sup>) signifies "though there may (or might) have been," and *aru to mo* signifies "though there be." The former set of idioms serves to state facts, the latter to hazard suppositions :—

|                                                                                                                     |   |                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Karinakūte mo tarimasū.</i><br/> <i>Karinai de mo tarimasū.</i><br/> <i>Borrowing-not even, suffices.</i></p> | } | <p>"I have enough, without borrowing any more."</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                              |   |                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Miru mo iya desū.</i><br/> <i>Seeing even disagreeable is.</i><br/> <i>or Miru no mo iya desū.</i></p> | } | <p>"I can't bear even to see it."</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|

*Iku to mo, yosu to mo,*  
*Go whether, abstain whether,*  
*go tsugō shidai ni* } “Pray suit yourself, whe-  
*August convenience according to,* ther it be to go or to stay.”  
*nasai.*  
*deign.*

*Iwanakūe mo shitteru.* } “I know it without your  
*Saying-not even, knowing-am.* } telling me.”

*N. B.* *Shitteru* stands for *shitte iru*. See end of ¶ 294.

*Uchatte mo yoroshii.* } “There will be no harm  
*Throwing-away even, (is) good.* } done, even if you throw it  
 away.” *I.e.*, “You may  
 throw it away.”

*Sonna ni yoku nakūte mo* } “You need not use such  
*Thus good not-being even,* } a good one.”  
*yoroshii.*  
*(is) good.*

*N. B.* These examples suggest the manner in which some of our idioms with “may,” “need,” and “without” are to be rendered in Japanese.

We have already noticed in ¶ 118 (p. 83) the force, not unlike that of the concessive mood, often inherent in the postposition *tote*. Here is another example :

*Seijin-tachi ga donna* } “That can never be  
*Sages (nom.) in-what* } known, however much the  
*ni yotte kangaeta tote,* } philosophers may put their  
*way assembling reflected even-if,* } heads together.”  
*shire ya shinai.*  
*able-to-know us-for, do-not.*

¶ 290. *Frequentative Form.*—Frequentatives are almost always used in pairs, the second member of the pair being generally followed by the verb *suru*, “to do.” The fundamental force of this tense is either to show that the action denoted by the verb is occasional, or else to imply the alternation or opposition of two different actions. The English translation must vary according to circumstances :—



|                         |                             |                                                    |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kitarī</i>           | <i>konakattari</i>          | } “ Sometimes he comes, and sometimes he doesn't.” |
| <i>Sometimes-coming</i> | <i>sometimes-not-coming</i> |                                                    |
| <i>shimasū.</i>         |                             |                                                    |
| <i>does.</i>            |                             |                                                    |

|                        |                            |                                                                               |
|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nairi</i>           | <i>warattari,</i>          | } “ There is a great scene going on,—tears and laughter turn and turn about.” |
| <i>Sometimes-rying</i> | <i>sometimes-laughing,</i> |                                                                               |
| <i>ō-sawagi</i>        | <i>desū.</i>               |                                                                               |
| <i>great-hubbub</i>    | <i>(it) is.</i>            |                                                                               |

|                             |               |                             |                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kagen</i>                | <i>ga</i>     | <i>warukūte,</i>            | } “ I feel so unwell that I divide my time between getting up and lying down a-gain.” |
| <i> bodily-state</i>        | <i>(nom.)</i> | <i>being-tired,</i>         |                                                                                       |
| <i>netari</i>               |               | <i>okitari</i>              |                                                                                       |
| <i>sometimes-lying-down</i> |               | <i>sometimes-getting-up</i> |                                                                                       |
| <i>shite orimasū.</i>       |               |                             |                                                                                       |
| <i>doing am.</i>            |               |                             |                                                                                       |

¶ 291. *The Imperative* occurs in military words of command, such as *tomare!* “halt!” and *yasume!* “stand at ease!” But in social intercourse, even with the lowest classes, it sounds rude, and is therefore rarely employed except in the case of a few honorific verbs, for instance *asobase*, “be pleased to do.” An honorific periphrasis is mostly preferred, even when addressing an inferior, as will be explained in ¶ 409. It is to that paragraph that the student should devote his attention.

*N. B.* Observe, however, the idiomatic use of the imperative in such phrases as *Nani shiro!* or *nani itase!* “do what you may!” “act as one will!” Conf. also end of ¶ 186.

A noteworthy idiom, by means of which the English first person plural of the imperative (“let us . . .”) may generally be rendered, is shown in the following examples:—

|                                 |                                |                           |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Kō shiyō ja nai ka?</i>      | } “ Let us do it in this way.” |                           |
| <i>Thus will-do isn't ?</i>     |                                | (familiar)                |
| <i>Hana-mi ni ikō ja</i>        | } “ Let us go and see the      |                           |
| <i>Flower-seeing to will-go</i> |                                | (cherry, etc.) blossoms.” |
| <i>arimasen ka?</i>             |                                | (polite)                  |
| <i>is-not ?</i>                 |                                |                           |

Or else the future alone (without *ja nai ka*, etc.) may be employed. For instance, *Isoide ikō* may signify, not only "I will make haste to be off," but "Let us make haste to be off."

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

¶ 292. Properly speaking, several of the suffixes helping to form the moods and tenses are auxiliary verbs which were once independent, some of which are indeed still independent in other positions. Thus, when we make use of the common phrase *yoku nemashita*, "I have slept well," the polite suffix *mashī* originally meant "to be," and the past termination *ta* (for *te aru*) means "am having finished," as explained in ¶ 247 and ¶ 245. The whole word *nemashita*, resolved into its constituent parts, therefore signifies "am having finished being asleep." Many verbal stems, too, have been built up by means of the verbs *aru*, "to be," and *eru*, "to get," as :

*atsumaru*, "to collect" (intr.); *atsumeru*, "to collect" (trans.);  
*suwaru*, "to squat;" *sueru*, "to set."

*N. B.* Uneducated persons use such forms in *aru* unnecessarily when they say, for instance, *narabaru*, "to be in a row;" *akatte imasū*, "it is open." The simpler forms *narabu* and *aite imasū* are the correct ones.

¶ 293. More modern, and still felt to be separate and independent words, are the following auxiliaries :

*Aru*, "to be," which is often construed with the gerund of an active verb, to give a sense which we should render by a passive idiom, thus :

|                                    |   |                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Muzukashiku kaite aru</i>       | } | "It is written in too difficult a hand for me to be able to read it." ( <i>More lit.</i> "It is in such difficult writing that," etc.) |
| <i>Difficultly writing is</i>      |   |                                                                                                                                        |
| <i>kara, watakūshi-domo ni</i>     |   |                                                                                                                                        |
| <i>because, the-likes-of-me to</i> |   |                                                                                                                                        |
| <i>wa, yomemasen.</i>              |   |                                                                                                                                        |

*as-for, is-unreadable.*

|                                                                                                                                                        |   |                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Furoshiki</i>    <i>ni</i>    <i>tsutsunde</i><br/> <i>Cloth-wrapper</i> <i>in</i> <i>having-wrapped</i><br/> <i>arimasū.</i><br/> <i>is</i></p> | } | <p>“It is wrapped up in a cloth.” (<i>More lit.</i> It is in a state of wrapped-up-ness in a cloth.”)</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* The corresponding active phrases “is writing,” “is wrapping up,” etc., would be rendered by *kaite iru* or *oru*, *tsutsunde iru* or *oru*, as explained in ¶ 294. Notice, moreover, that these quasi-passive idioms with *aru* always denote something which *is done already*, not something which *is being done*, that is to say that they are never what English grammarians term “continuative tenses.” They are also rather intransitive in intention than properly passive.

The most frequent use of *aru* as an auxiliary is to form compound equivalents for the probable present or future, and for several of the tenses of the negative voice, thus :

*Kuru de arō* or *kuru darō*, for *koyō*, “will probably come.”

*Konai de atta* or *konaidatta*, for *konakatta*, “did not come.”

*Konai de attarō* or *konai dattarō*, for *konakattarō*, “has probably not come.”

For *darō*, *datta*, etc., may be substituted their polite equivalents *deshō*, *deshita*, etc., already mentioned on p. 171, thus : *kuru deshō*, *konai deshita*, *konai deshitarō*. Notice that the compound future expresses a somewhat stronger shade of doubt than the simple future. *Aru* is also replaced by the politer *gozaru* in such phrases as *naorimashite gozaimasū*, for *naorimashita*, “He has got well again.” The lower classes, too, when addressing their superiors, frequently use the periphrasis *gozaimasen de gozaimasū* in lieu of simple *gozaimasen*, “there is not.”

¶ 294. *Iru* and *oru*, “to be,” construed with the gerund, form continuative tenses corresponding to such English expressions as “I am reading,” “I was writing,” “I shall be working,” etc., thus :

- Nani wo shite imasū ?* } “What is he doing ?  
*What (accus.) doing is ?*
- Mada nete orimasū.* } “He is still sleeping.”  
*Still sleeping is.*
- Necha imasūmai.* } “He is not likely to be  
*Sleeping-as-for, probably-is-not.* } *sleeping.* (emphatic gerund)
- Kesa kara kumotte* } “It has been clouding  
*This-morning since, clouding* } over (or cloudy) since the  
*orimashita ga, tōtō ame ni* } morning, and now at last it  
*had-been whereas, finally rain to* } has come on to rain.”  
*natte kimashita.* }  
*having-become has-come.*
- Ei no ichi-ri to, Nihon* } “Which do you think is  
*England's one-mile and, Japanese* } the longer, an English mile  
*no ichi-ri to, dochira ga* } or a Japanese *ri* ?”  
*'s one-league and, which (nom.)* }  
*nobite imashō ?* }  
*extending probably-is ?*
- Kite orimasū.* } “He is having come.”  
*Having-come is.* } *i.e., “He has come.”*

In such an instance as the last, the simple past *kimashita* would be less clear; for it might only mean that the man *had* come and had gone away again, whereas *kite orimasū* can only mean that he has come and is still there.

Sometimes we must translate such sentences by the English passive, Japanese idiom almost invariably preferring the neuter, thus :

- Mada dekite imasen ka ?* } “Isn't it finished yet ?”  
*Still forthcoming is-not ?*

Very often the word *iru*, “to be,” loses its initial *i* after the gerund, especially in the present tense, and we hear *neteru* for *netete iru*, “is sleeping;” *kaiteru* for *kaite iru*, “is written” (lit. “is writing”), etc. This is a good example of the tendency of the Japanese language to turn independent

words into agglutinated suffixes. In very vulgar parlance the particle *wa*, used with an exclamatory force, often coalesces with a preceding *iru*. Thus *naïte irā!* "oh! he is crying." Such expressions are to be carefully avoided.

*N. B.* Observe, too, that *iru* is often politely replaced by *irassharu*.

¶ 295. *Kuru*, "to come," construed with the gerund, forms what grammarians of certain other eastern Asiatic languages have termed "illative" tenses,— "illative" because they superadd to the main idea the subsidiary idea of *motion towards* the speaker or the person addressed, thus :

|                   |                   |                      |                        |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Kippu</i>      | <i>wo</i>         | <i>katte</i>         | } "I will go and buy a |
| <i>Ticket</i>     | ( <i>accus.</i> ) | <i>having-bought</i> |                        |
| <i>kimashō.</i>   |                   |                      |                        |
| <i>will-come.</i> |                   |                      |                        |

|                      |                     |           |   |                        |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------|---|------------------------|
| <i>Yonde</i>         | <i>kimashō</i>      | <i>ka</i> | ? | } "Shall I go and call |
| <i>Having-called</i> | <i>shall(I)come</i> |           |   |                        |

|                  |                      |               |             |                           |
|------------------|----------------------|---------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Omoshiroi</i> | <i>koto</i>          | <i>wo</i>     | <i>itte</i> | } "He has told us a funny |
| <i>Amusing</i>   | <i>thing(accus.)</i> | <i>saying</i> |             |                           |
| <i>kila.</i>     |                      |               |             |                           |
| <i>has-come.</i> |                      |               |             |                           |

*N. B.* Observe how English sometimes exactly reverses the Japanese idiom, using "to go" where Japanese has "to come." In other cases, as in the last of the above examples, the word "come" must simply be omitted in English as superfluous.

¶ 296. *Miru*, "to see," construed with the gerund, shows that an action is to be attempted, but without any very great effort,—that it is to be, as the slang phrase has it, just taken a shot at :

|                       |                      |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Yatte mimashō.</i> | (from <i>yarū,</i> ) | } "I will just try my hand |
|                       | "to send"            |                            |

|                             |                 |                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>Kiite miru ga</i>        | <i>ii.</i>      | } "You had better |
| <i>Asking to-see (nom.)</i> | <i>is-good.</i> |                   |

*Nete mite mo neraremasen* } “I tried to take a  
*Sleeping trying even, could-not-sleep* } nap, but couldn't.”  
*deshīta.*  
*(it)was.*

¶ 297. *Nara(ba)*, “if it be,” serves to form a compound conditional (see p. 185).

¶ 289. *Oku*, “to put,” construed with the gerund, indicates the full and complete settling of a matter, thus :

*Kippu wo katte* } “I have got my ticket  
*Ticket (accus.) having-bought* } all right.”  
*okimashīta.*  
*have-put.*

*Kangaete oite kudasai.* } “Please think the matter  
*Reflecting putting condescend.* } well over.”

*Techō ni tsūkeite* } “I think I will put it  
*Note-book in having-fixed* } down in my note-book (so  
*okimashō.* } as to be sure to remember it).”  
*will-probably-put.*

*Sore made no koto ni shīte* } “There is nothing for it  
*That till 's thing to doing* } but to let the matter rest  
*oku hoka, shi-kata ga* } there.”  
*to-put besides, way-to-do (nom.)*  
*nai.*  
*is-not.*

*Atsuraete oita.* } “I have ordered it (at a  
*Having-ordered have-put.* } shop”).  
*(More politely okimashīta).*

*N. B.* The word *oita* in this last example shows that the speaker thinks that the order will be satisfactorily executed. *Atsuraete kita* would mean that one had just come from leaving the order with the shopman.

*Oku* suffixed often causes *e* final of the preceding gerund to be clipped in hurried speech,—*atsuraete oita*, for instance, becoming *atsuraet'oita*.

¶ 299. *Shimau*, “to finish,” construed with the gerund, expresses the completion of an action, thus :

*Shinde shimatta.* (familiar) } “ He is dead *and gone.*”  
*Having died has-finished.*

*Isha sama ni natte* } “ He has become a  
*Physician Mr. to having-become* } doctor.” (after having had  
*shimaimashita.* } several other professions in view)  
*has-finished.*

*Motte* } *itte*  
*Having-carried* } *having-gone* } “ He has carried it off.”  
*shimaimashita.* }  
*has-finished.*

*Utchatte shimaimashō.* { “ I think I will throw it  
*Throwing-away (I)-will-finish.* {away.”

*Tōtō hom-buri ni natte* } “ It has ended by  
*At-last main-falling to having-become* } turning into a regular  
*shimaimashita.* } wet day.”  
*has-finished.*

*N. B.* “ Main-falling,” in this last example, having been supposed by some students of the first edition to be a misprint for “rain-falling,” it may be well to point out that *hon*, “main (rain),” is here antithetical to “occasional (rain),” or what we should call “a shower,” Jap. *yūdachi*.

Beginners might easily be led into misapprehension by attributing to *shimau* an independent force, instead of looking on it as a simple auxiliary to the verb which precedes it. This point requires attention. Thus *nete shimatta* does not mean “He has finished sleeping,” but rather “He has finished by sleeping,” or more simply “He has gone to sleep.” *Dete shimaimashita* does not mean “He has finished going out,” but “He has gone out.”

¶ 300. The negative present of *suru* or *itasu*, “to do,” construed with the indefinite form of any verb and the postposition *wa*, forms an emphatic equivalent for the negative present of that verb. In such contexts *wa* is generally pronounced *ya* in familiar intercourse (conf. p. 88) :

*Ari wa shimasen.* (polite) }  
*Ari ya shinai.* (familiar) } “There isn't any.”

*Sonna koto wa, ii*  
*Such thing as-for, saying* }  
*ya itashimasen.* } “I should never dream of  
*as-for, (I) do-not-do.* } saying such a thing.”

*Mō ki ya itashimasen.* { “I am sure he won't  
*Again coming as-for, (he) will not-do.* } come again.”

When two such clauses are co-ordinated, *mo* replaces *wa* in both, thus ;

*Mi mo shinai, kiki mo*  
*Seeing even do-not, hearing even* } “I neither saw nor  
*shinai.* } heard anything.”  
*do-not. (familiar)*

The first of two clauses thus co-ordinated is often put in the conditional, strange as such a construction may seem to European ideas. Thus the last example might equally well read thus : *Mi mo shinakereba, kiki mo shinai*. Indeed this last would be the most strictly grammatical manner of expressing the idea ; for the two clauses would then be *correlated* syntactically, according to the rule explained in ¶¶ 278—279 (pp. 178-9), *sezu* being the negative gerund of *suru*, “to do.”

¶ 301. *Yaru*, “to send,” “to give,” construed with the gerund, often helps to form a periphrasis for the simple verb when that verb is a transitive one, the periphrasis always retaining something of the idea of “giving,” as in the following examples :

*Dashite yaru*, or *dasū*. “To put outside.”

*Butte yarimashō*. { “I will give him a beat-  
 ing.” (*Buchimashō* would be  
 simply “I will beat him.”)



*Inu wo toite yarimasū.* { “I am going to give  
*Dog (accus.) loosening will-give.* { the dog his liberty (by  
 (untying him).”

(*Inu wo tokimasū* would be simply “I am going to untie the dog.”)

*Daiku ni koshiraesasete* { “I think I will let the  
*Carpenter by, causing-to-prepare* { carpenter make one.”  
*yarimashō.* { (Either in order to give him  
 (I)will-probably-give. { work, or in order to benefit  
 some poor person).

There are a few more auxiliary verbs ; but as their force is purely honorific, the student is referred to ¶ 402 *et seq.*, where the subject of honorific verbs is discussed at length.

¶ 302. The Japanese have a great fondness for rounding off their sentences by one of the equivalents for “to be,” or by *kuru*, *oku*, *shimau*, or *jaru*. The plain verb, without one or other of these auxiliaries, is apt to sound bald. We do not mean to say that the auxiliaries are meaningless expletives. Far from it. They always retain in the mind of the Japanese speaker a portion of their original force. But whereas English idiom for the most part simply states the occurrence of an action, Japanese idiom delights in describing more particularly the manner of the action’s occurrence with reference to the subsidiary ideas of “coming,” “finishing,” etc., which the auxiliaries express. For instance, an English maid-servant, speaking of a piece of dirty linen, will say “I will have it washed, Sir.” Her Japanese sister would say *Arawashite okimashō*, lit. “Having caused (some one) to wash (it, I) will put (it),” that is to say, “I will have it washed, and there it will be.” The simple verb merely states a dry fact. The addition of the auxiliary makes the action seem to pass vividly before you. The sentence becomes lifelike and picturesque.

## CHAPTER IX.

### *The Verb (concluded).*

#### PASSIVE AND POTENTIAL VERBS.

¶ 303. The Japanese language has no special conjugation for the passive voice. All passive verbs belong to the second (active) conjugation, the paradigm of which has been given on p. 156. They are derived from the corresponding active or neuter verbs according to the following rule :—

In verbs of the 1st conjugation add *reru*, in verbs of the 2nd and 3rd conjugations add *rareru*, to the negative base, thus :

|            |   |                 |               |                     |                                                 |
|------------|---|-----------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1st. conj. | { | <i>matsu</i> ,  | “ to wait ;”  | <i>matareru</i> ,   | “ to be ( <i>more lit.</i> to get) waited for.” |
|            |   | <i>oku</i> ,    | “ to put ;”   | <i>okareru</i> ,    | “ to be put.”                                   |
|            |   | <i>warau</i> ,  | “ to laugh ;” | <i>warawareru</i> , | “ to be laughed at.”                            |
|            |   | <i>yobu</i> ,   | “ to call ;”  | <i>yobareru</i> ,   | “ to be called.”                                |
| 2nd. conj. | { | <i>keru</i> ,   | “ to kick ;”  | <i>kerareru</i> ,   | “ to be kicked.”                                |
|            |   | <i>taberu</i> , | “ to eat ;”   | <i>taberareru</i> , | “ to be eaten.”                                 |
| 3rd. conj. | { | <i>iru</i> ,    | “ to shoot ;” | <i>irareru</i> ,    | “ to be shot.”                                  |
|            |   | <i>miru</i> ,   | “ to look ;”  | <i>mirareru</i> ,   | “ to be looked at.”                             |

The irregular verbs *kuru*, to come ;” *shinuru*, “ to die ;” and *suru*, “ to do,” have the passives *korareru*, *shinareru*, and *serareru* respectively. The polite termination *masū* is not susceptible of the passive form.

¶ 304. A glance at the origin of the Japanese passive will furnish the student with a key to all the difficulties connected with it. Properly speaking, the so-called passive is not a passive at all, but an active in disguise. Such a form as *utareru*, for instance, is etymologically *uchi<sup>1</sup> ari<sup>2</sup> eru<sup>3</sup>*, as literally as possible “to get<sup>3</sup> being<sup>2</sup> beating<sup>1</sup>,” i.e., “to get a beating,” “to get beaten,” hence “to be beaten.” Similarly *irareru* is from the stem *i*, a euphonic *r*, and *ari eru*, i.e., “to get being shooting,” “to get a shooting,” “to get shot.” Hence the place of all passive verbs in the second conjugation along with the verb *eru*, “to get.” Hence, too, the fact that intransitive verbs are susceptible of passive forms, such as *furareru*, “to get rained upon,” “to have it rain,” from *furu*, “to rain;” *shinareru*, “to have some one die.”

¶ 305. This curious idiom may be better illustrated by some complete sentences, thus :

|                                                                                                                 |   |                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Ototsan ni okorareru</i><br/> <i>Papa by (you) will-be-got-angry,</i><br/> <i>yo!</i><br/> <i>oh!</i></p> | } | <p>“Oh! you will have<br/> (or make) papa angry<br/> with you;” <i>more lit.</i><br/> “ You will be got angry<br/> with by papa.”</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                           |   |                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Anna kyaku ni korarecha,</i><br/> <i>Such guests by getting-come,</i><br/> <i>meiwaku shimasu.</i><br/> <i>perplexity does.</i></p> | } | <p>“A man doesn't know<br/> what to do, when he has<br/> such guests as those come to<br/> the house;” <i>more lit.</i> “when<br/> he is come to by such<br/> guests.”</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Or take from the opening sentence of the second chapter of the “*Botan Dōrō*” in the Practical Part of this work, the words

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Go</i>            <i>shimpu</i>    <i>sama</i>        <i>ni</i>        <i>wa</i>        <i>naku</i><br/> <i>August</i>    <i>real-father</i>    <i>Mr.</i>        <i>by</i>        <i>as-for,</i>    <i>non-existent</i><br/> <i>narare....</i><br/> <i>getting-become.....</i></p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Parsed literally, they signify "Being died by his father;" but they simply mean "Having had his father die," or, as we should generally express it, "Having lost his father."

*N. B.* As shown in the above instances, the preposition "by" of English passive constructions is expressed by the postposition *ni*. Some further examples will be found in ¶ 105.

¶ 306. The following examples are of a somewhat different nature :

|                                                                                                                                          |   |                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Ano hito wa, dare ni</i><br/>That person as-for, everybody<br/><i>de mo homerarete imasū.</i><br/>by even, getting-praised is.</p> | } | <p>"He is praised by every body."</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                               |   |                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Kono inu wa, muyami ni</i><br/>This dog as-for, recklessly<br/><i>hoeru kara, hito ni</i><br/>barks because, people by<br/><i>iyagararemasū.</i><br/>gets-disliked.</p> | } | <p>"This dog gets itself disliked, because it is forever barking."</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                     |   |                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Kubi wo hanerareta.</i><br/>Head (accus.) got-struck-off.</p> | } | <p>"He got his head cut off," <i>less lit.</i> "His head was cut off."</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                           |   |                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Ashi wo inu ni</i><br/>Leg (accus.) dog by<br/><i>kui-tsūkaremasū.</i><br/>(I) have-got-bitten.</p> | } | <p>"I have had my leg bitten by a dog;" <i>less lit.</i><br/>"I have been bitten in the leg by a dog;" <i>still less lit.</i><br/>"My leg has been bitten by a dog."</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |   |                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Oshii koto ni wa, yūkyō ni</i><br/>Regrettable fact as-for, pleasure by,<br/><i>kokoro wo ubawaremashite,</i><br/>heart (accus.) having-got-stolen,<br/><i>gyō ga orosoka ni</i><br/>business (nom.) remissness to<br/><i>narimashita.</i><br/>has-become.</p> | } | <p>"I am sorry to say that he has become engrossed in (<i>lit.</i> has got his heart stolen by) pleasure, and has become remiss in his work."</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* The phraseology of this last example would hardly be understood by the lower classes.

¶ 307. The presence of *wo* in such examples as the last three is apt to puzzle the beginner. But there is nothing really illogical about it. The word accompanied by *wo* actually *is* in the accusative in Japanese, as shown by the literal translations we have given. It is not in any way the subject of the sentence. That its English equivalent in a free translation may happen to be the indirect object of the verb, or even a nominative, only shows how necessary it is for those who would speak idiomatically to get into the habit of looking at ideas from the Japanese point of view. The real nominative here, as in sentences of every kind, is very rarely expressed in Japanese. (Conf. ¶ 131, p. 92.)

¶ 308 It is important for the student, when occupied with Japanese passive constructions proper, to compare what has been said in ¶ 293 (p. 190) concerning an intransitive idiom with *aru*, "to be," by which the English passive is frequently expressed. To that paragraph he is accordingly referred.

¶ 309. The passive passes by a natural transition into the potential sense. If such and such an action is performed by me, evidently I am able to perform it. If it is not performed by me, a somewhat hasty logic will assume that I am not able to perform it. Hence *okareru* may mean either "to be put," or "to be able to put;" *korareru* may mean either "to have some one else come to one" ("to be *comed*"), or "to be able to come."

*N. B.* The single form *omowareru*, from *omou*, "to think," is somewhat exceptional. When taken potentially, it does not mean "to be able to think," but "to venture to think," "I am inclined to think."

*N. B.* For the natural transition of these passive-potential forms to an honorific sense, see ¶ 403.

*Ano hito ni wa, sake wa* { “He cannot drink  
*That person by as-for, liquor as-for* } *sake.*” (More lit. “*Sake*  
*nomarenai.*” } does not get drunk by  
*does-not-get-drunk.* } (him.)”

*Gozen ga taberaremasen.* } “I can’t taste a  
*Rice (nom.) gets-not-eaten.* } morsel.

*Mairaremasū.* } “One can go.”

*Ikaresō mo nai.* } “I am not likely to  
*Likely-to-be-able-to-go even am-not.* } be able to go.”  
 (or more politely *gozaimasu*).

*Mazukūte taberaremasen.* } “It is too nasty to  
*Being-nasty, cannot-eat.* } eat.”

*Kyō no atsūsa wa, korae-* } “The heat to-  
*To-day ’s heat as-for, cannot-* } day is unbear-  
*raremasen.* } able.”  
*bear.*

¶ 310. Potentiality is often otherwise expressed by means of the verb *dekiru*, a corruption of the Classical (*i*)*de-kuru*, “to come out,” to “forthcome.” *Dekiru* has assumed the signification of “to eventuate,” “to take place,” “to be ready,” “to be done,” “possible,” but must often be rendered in English by the active “can,” “can do,” thus :

*Watakūshi wa agaru koto ga* }  
*Me as-for, 'go-up fact (nom.)* }  
*dekimasen kara, anata ga* } “As I cannot go  
*forthcomes-not because, you (nom.)* } to you, I can only  
*o ide kudasaru koto ga* } see you if you will  
*honourable exit condescend fact (nom.)* } be so kind as to  
*dekimasū nara, o me ni* } come to me.”  
*forthcomes if, honourable eyes on* }  
*kakarimashō.* }  
*will-probably-hang.*

The original intransitive meaning of *dekiru* sufficiently explains why this verb is construed with the nominative

particle *ga*, and not with the accusative particle *wo*,—a point which foreigners often fail to grasp.

- ¶ 311. Impossibility is sometimes expressed by means of the verb *kaneru*, “to be unable,” “cannot,” which is suffixed to the indefinite form, thus :

|                        |                  |                   |                   |                                                                                      |
|------------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sekkaku</i>         | <i>no</i>        | <i>o</i>          | <i>sasoi</i>      | } “I am sorry I cannot avail myself of your exceedingly kind invitation for to-day.” |
| <i>Special-pains</i>   | <i>of</i>        | <i>honourable</i> | <i>invitation</i> |                                                                                      |
| <i>de gozaimasu</i>    | <i>ga,—</i>      | <i>konnichi</i>   | <i>wa</i>         |                                                                                      |
| <i>is</i>              | <i>although,</i> | <i>to-day</i>     |                   |                                                                                      |
| <i>mairi-kanemasū.</i> |                  |                   |                   |                                                                                      |
| <i>go-cannot.</i>      |                  |                   |                   |                                                                                      |

|                   |                         |                          |                                                                                |
|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Makoto</i>     | <i>ni</i>               | <i>mōshi-kanemashīta</i> | } “I hardly like to ask you for it, but would you kindly lend me an umbrella?” |
| <i>Truth</i>      | <i>in</i>               | <i>say-could-not</i>     |                                                                                |
| <i>ga,—</i>       | <i>kasa</i>             | <i>wo ip-pon</i>         |                                                                                |
| <i>although,</i>  | <i>umbrella(accus.)</i> | <i>one-piecey</i>        |                                                                                |
| <i>o</i>          | <i>kashi</i>            | <i>kudasaimashī.</i>     |                                                                                |
| <i>honourably</i> | <i>lending</i>          | <i>condescend.</i>       |                                                                                |

This idiom, which is inherited from the Written Language, is now heard only from the lips of the educated.

- ¶ 312. The verb *morau*, “to receive” (more politely *itadaku*, “to put on the head,” in allusion to the Japanese custom of raising a present to the forehead), construed with the gerund, helps to form an idiom which closely resembles the so-called passive both in formation and meaning, thus :

*Shimbun wo yonde morau,*  
*Newspaper (accus.) reading to-receive,*

i. e., “to receive [somebody else’s] reading of the newspaper,” or, as we should generally say, “to have the newspaper read aloud to one.”

*Monde morau.*  
*Rubbing to-receive.*

} “To have one-  
 self shampooed.”

|                         |               |                 |                                               |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Asa</i>              | <i>hayaku</i> | <i>okoshite</i> | } “I wish to be called early in the morning.” |
| <i>Morning</i>          | <i>early,</i> | <i>rousing</i>  |                                               |
| <i>moraitai.</i>        |               |                 |                                               |
| <i>wish-to-receive.</i> |               |                 |                                               |

|                           |               |                   |                   |              |                                                                               |
|---------------------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Dōka</i>               | <i>go</i>     | <i>shūsen</i>     | <i>wo</i>         | <i>shite</i> | } “I wish you would be so very kind as to help me.”<br>( <i>very polite</i> ) |
| <i>Please</i>             | <i>august</i> | <i>assistance</i> | ( <i>accus.</i> ) | <i>doing</i> |                                                                               |
| <i>itadakitō</i>          |               | <i>gozaimasū.</i> |                   |              |                                                                               |
| <i>wishing-to-receive</i> |               | <i>am.</i>        |                   |              |                                                                               |

*N. B.* These last two examples show how wishing is expressed in the passive voice, the desiderative adjective of passive verbs not being in colloquial use.

¶ 313. Many English passive verbs must be rendered by Japanese intransitives. This happens when the idea is one which does not necessarily imply the action of an outer agent, as in *kūtabireru*, “to be tired;” *odoroku*, “to be astonished;” *tasūkaru*, “to be saved” (not by another person, which would be the passive *tasūkerareru*, but rather “to be *safe* owing to having escaped from danger”); *yorokobu*, “to be pleased;” *hasen<sup>1</sup> ni<sup>2</sup> au<sup>3</sup>*, “to be shipwrecked,” lit. “to meet<sup>3</sup> with<sup>2</sup> shipwreck.<sup>1</sup>” After all, “to be tired,” “to be astonished,” “to be pleased,” are not necessarily passive ideas even in English, as may be seen by comparing them with such synonyms as “to be weary,” “to wonder,” “to rejoice.”

*N. B.* Many of the verbs here spoken of are inchoative, i.e., they mark the beginning of a condition. For instance, *kūtabireru* means properly “to *become* tired;” *nureru* is “to *get* wet;” *kawaku* is “to *get* dry.” “I *am* tired” is expressed by *kūtabirete iru*, or by the past tense *kūtabiremashita*. Similarly:

*Nurete imasū, or Nuremashita.* “I am (i.e., have become) wet.”

*Kimono ga kawakimashita.* { “Your clothes are dry” (i.e., have become dry after having been wet).



¶ 314. The aversion of the Japanese language to the use of passive constructions is strongly marked. In nine cases out of ten, the English passive must be replaced either by one of the intransitive verbs just mentioned, or by an active though subjectless construction, thus :

*Risūke*<sup>1</sup> *to*<sup>2</sup> *iu*<sup>3</sup> *otoko*<sup>4</sup>, "A man called Risūke;" *lit.* "A man<sup>4</sup> (of whom people) say<sup>3</sup> that<sup>2</sup> (he is) Risūke<sup>1</sup>."

*Kyo-nen*<sup>1</sup> *tateta*<sup>2</sup> *uchi*<sup>3</sup>, "A house built last year," *lit.* "A house<sup>3</sup> (which some one) built<sup>2</sup> last-year.<sup>1</sup>"

*Ate*<sup>1</sup> *ni*<sup>2</sup> *narimasen*<sup>3</sup>, "It is not to be depended upon," *lit.* "(It) becomes-not<sup>3</sup> to<sup>2</sup> reliance<sup>1</sup>."

*Yoshūta*<sup>1</sup> *hō*<sup>2</sup> *ga*<sup>3</sup> *yokarō*<sup>4</sup>, "It had better be given up," *lit.* "The forbore<sup>1</sup> side<sup>2</sup> will-probably-be-good<sup>4</sup>."

*Kore*<sup>1</sup> *wa*<sup>2</sup> *nani*<sup>3</sup> *ni*<sup>4</sup> *tsūkaimasū*<sup>5</sup> ♪ "What is this used for?" *lit.* "As-for<sup>2</sup> this<sup>1</sup>, (people) use<sup>5</sup> (it) for<sup>4</sup> what<sup>3</sup>?"

*Kore*<sup>1</sup> *wa*<sup>2</sup>, *nan*<sup>3</sup> *de*<sup>4</sup> *dekite*<sup>5</sup> *orimasū*<sup>6</sup> ♪ "What is this made of?" *lit.* "As-for<sup>2</sup> this<sup>1</sup>, what<sup>3</sup> by<sup>4</sup> forthcoming is<sup>6</sup>?"

*Konna*<sup>1</sup> *tansū*<sup>2</sup> *wa*<sup>3</sup>, *doko*<sup>4</sup> *de*<sup>5</sup> *kaemasū*<sup>6</sup> ♪ "Where are such cabinets as this to be bought?" *lit.* "As-for<sup>3</sup> such<sup>1</sup> cabinets<sup>2</sup>, where<sup>4</sup> at<sup>5</sup> are-buyable<sup>6</sup>?"

These examples, together with those given on pp. 57—8 and in ¶ 439, besides others scattered throughout the volume, may serve to show the student how passive idioms are avoided. He could hardly do better than forbid himself the use of them altogether during the first six months of his battle with the language.

## ON CERTAIN INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

¶ 315. Japanese has a large class of verbs which it is generally convenient to translate by English passive or potential idioms, but which in Japanese itself are, properly speaking, intransitive. Even in English we feel a difference between

two such assertions as "The gold is melting in the furnace," and "The gold is being melted in the furnace." In the first case the melting appears as a spontaneous event; in the second case it is explicitly declared to be the work of some outer agent. The verb of the former corresponds to the Japanese *tokeru*, "to melt" (intransitive); that of the latter to *tokareru*, "to get melted" (passive derived from the transitive *toku*, "to melt"). There are thus numbers of intransitive verbs of the second conjugation, formed from transitives of the first conjugation by changing the termination *u* into *eru* :—

| TRANSITIVE.   | INTRANSITIVE.   |             |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
| <i>kaku</i> , | <i>kakeru</i> , | "to write." |
| <i>kiru</i> , | <i>kireru</i> , | "to cut."   |
| <i>toku</i> , | <i>tokeru</i> , | "to melt."  |
| <i>toru</i> , | <i>toreru</i> , | "to take."  |
| <i>uru</i> ,  | <i>ureru</i> ,  | "to sell."  |
| <i>yomu</i> , | <i>yomeru</i> , | "to read."  |

¶ 316. The transitives *kiru*, *uru*, *yomu*, etc., are used in translating such phrases as "to cut a slab of stone," "to sell goods," "to read a sentence." The intransitives *kireru*, *ureru*, *yomeru*, are used in translating such phrases as "This stone cuts easily," "These goods sell cheaply," "This sentence does not read well." The Japanese construction is less closely followed, but practical convenience often best served, by employing the word "can," thus :

"You can cut this stone easily."

"These goods can be sold cheaply."

More especially is this the case when the original verb is itself intransitive according to English ideas, thus : *iku*, "to go;" *ikeru*, "(I) can go." But there is never any reference to "I" or "can" in the mind of the Japanese speaker.

¶ 317. The difference between the intransitives in *eru* and the true potentials in *areru* and *rareru* is that the latter tend to express moral ability—"may" rather than "can,"—because the moral ability to perform an action depends on the sanction of a law outside the agent; whereas the forms in *eru* express a physical ability—"can" rather than "may,"—because the physical ability to perform an action is generally independent of any outer will. Thus *ikemasū* means "one can go" (because the way is easy, or because one is a good walker). *Ikaremasū* means "one can go" (because there is no prohibition against so doing). It is true that the two forms are sometimes confounded, just as English speakers occasionally use "can't" where "mayn't" would be more appropriate.

*N. B.* *Ikenai* (politely *ikemasen*) is an idiom of constant occurrence in the sense of "(that) won't do."

¶ 318. The difference in meaning between the passive forms in *areru* and *rareru* and the intransitives in *eru*, the former implying, and the latter not implying, the action of an outer agent, may be illustrated by the following example. *Kirare-mashīta* would be used in speaking of a man who had been killed (lit. cut) by some highwayman or other person. *Kireta* would be used in speaking of a rope which had snapped spontaneously, or of friendly intercourse which had dropped without either of the parties to it formally breaking with each other.

¶ 319. Verbs belonging to the second and third conjugations are not capable of forming intransitives in *eru*, and therefore make shift with the passive potentials in *rareru*. Note however *mieru*, "to be visible," "to seem," formed irregularly from *miru*, "to see." Like it is *kikoeru*, "to be audible," formed from *kiku*, "to hear."

¶ 320. The following are a few examples of intransitives :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sōzōshikute kikoemasen.</i><br><i>Being-noisy, is-not-audible.</i>                                                                                                                                                       | { “There is such a row, I can’t hear a word.”                                                           |
| <i>Ienai koto wa nai.</i><br><i>Cannot-say fact as-for, is-not.</i>                                                                                                                                                         | { “It can be said (though in practice people do not often say it).”                                     |
| <i>Kono mama de wa irarenai.</i><br><i>This fashion by as-for, cannot-be.</i>                                                                                                                                               | { “We can’t go on in this way.”                                                                         |
| <i>Kore de wa, totemo ikemasen.</i><br><i>This by as-for, positively goes-not.</i>                                                                                                                                          | { “This won’t do at all.”                                                                               |
| <i>Dō de mo shire ya shinai.</i><br><i>Anyhow be-knowable as-for, does-not.</i><br>( <i>ya = wa</i> ; see N. B. to p. 88.)                                                                                                  | { “There is no means of knowing.”                                                                       |
| <i>Mazukūte nomenai.</i><br><i>Being-nas y, is-undrinkable.</i>                                                                                                                                                             | { “It is too nasty to drink.”                                                                           |
| <i>Mazukūte taberarenai.</i><br><i>Being-nasty, is-uneatable.</i>                                                                                                                                                           | { “It is too nasty to eat.”                                                                             |
| <i>Yomeru ni wa yomemasu</i><br><i>Readable as-for, is-readable</i><br><i>ga, — te ga warukūte,</i><br><i>although, hand (nom.) being-bad,</i><br><i>koto no hoka mendō desū.</i><br><i>extraordinarily troublesome is.</i> | { “Oh ! yes, one can read it ; but it is extremely difficult, owing to the badness of the handwriting.” |

Observe the repetition of the verb at the beginning of this last example. A specially strong emphasis is often expressed by this idiom, for which see ¶ 124 (p. 88).

ON TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE PAIRS OF VERBS.

¶ 321. In English the same word commonly does duty both as a transitive and as an intransitive verb, the context alone determining in which of these acceptations it is to be understood. Sometimes the passive does duty for the

intransitive, sometimes altogether different words are employed. In Japanese the transitive and intransitive meanings are almost always expressed by different verbs derived from the same root, thus :

| INTRANSITIVE.                                         | TRANSITIVE. /                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>aku</i> , 1st. conj., "to be open ;"               | <i>akeru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to open."      |
| <i>hajimaru</i> , 1st. conj., "to begin ;"            | <i>hajimeru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to begin."  |
| <i>hirakeru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to become civilised ;" | <i>hiraku</i> , 1st. conj., "to civilise." |
| <i>kaeru</i> , 1st. conj., "to return ;"              | <i>kaesu</i> , 1st. conj., "to return."    |
| <i>kakureru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to hide (oneself) ;"   | <i>kakūsu</i> , 1st. conj., "to hide."     |
| <i>naoru</i> , 1st. conj., "to get well ;"            | <i>naosu</i> , 1st. conj., "to cure."      |
| <i>nobiru</i> , 3rd. conj., "to stretch ;"            | <i>nobasu</i> , 1st. conj., "to stretch."  |
| <i>oreru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to break ;"               | <i>oru</i> , 1st. conj., "to break."       |
| <i>oriru</i> , 3rd. conj., "to descend ;"             | <i>orosu</i> , 1st. conj., "to lower."     |
| <i>sorou</i> , 1st. conj., "to match ;"               | <i>soroeru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to match."   |
| <i>tisūkaru</i> , 1st. conj., "to be saved ;"         | <i>tasūkeru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to save."   |
| <i>tatsu</i> , 1st. conj., "to stand ;"               | <i>tateru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to set up."   |
| <i>yakeru</i> , 2nd. conj., "to burn ;"               | <i>yaku</i> , 1st. conj., "to burn."       |

*N. B.* Sometimes only one of the pair is in modern use, e.g., *hosu*, "to dry" (1st. conj., trans.), the corresponding intransitive of which—*hiru* (3rd. conj.)—is now always replaced by the synonymous verb *kawaku*.

¶ 322. The derivation of these pairs of verbs from a common root follows no fixed rule. Practice and the dictionary are the only guides. At the same time we may note that :

I. Numbers of intransitives of the 1st. conjugation end in *aru*, thus :

|                    |                   |                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>aratamaru</i> , | "to be reformed." | } Such mostly have corresponding transitives in <i>eru</i> belonging to the 2nd. conjugation, thus, <i>aratameru</i> , <i>kakeru</i> , <i>kasaneru</i> , etc. |
| <i>kakaru</i> ,    | "to hang."        |                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>kasanaru</i> ,  | "to be piled up." |                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>mazaru</i> ,    | "to be mixed."    |                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>sadamaru</i> ,  | "to be fixed."    |                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>todomaru</i> ,  | "to stop."        |                                                                                                                                                               |

The reason for such verbs in *aru* all being intransitives is that they are formed by the agglutination of the substantive verb *aru*, "to be," to the stem.

¶ 323. II. Numbers of transitives of the 1st. conjugation have stems ending in *s*, thus :

|                 |                  |                                                            |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kesu</i> ,   | "to extinguish." | } The corresponding intransitives follow no fixed analogy. |
| <i>kowasu</i> , | "to break."      |                                                            |
| <i>mawasu</i> , | "to turn."       |                                                            |
| <i>modosu</i> , | "to give back."  |                                                            |
| <i>utsusu</i> , | "to remove."     |                                                            |
| <i>wakasu</i> , | "to boil."       |                                                            |

The *s* terminating the stem of such verbs is probably—in many cases at least—a fragment of the auxiliary *suru*, "to do."

## REFLECTIVE VERBS.

¶ 324. The Japanese language has no reflective verbs. But we may, before quitting the subject of intransitive verbs, draw attention to the fact that many Japanese intransitives correspond to European reflectives, as, for instance, the following :

## JAPANESE INTRANSITIVES.

## ENGLISH REFLECTIVES.

|                    |                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>asobu,</i>      | “to amuse oneself” (“to play”).     |
| <i>hataraku,</i>   | “to exert oneself” (“to work”).     |
| <i>kūtabireru,</i> | “to tire oneself” (“to get tired”). |
| <i>shūtagau,</i>   | “to conform oneself” (“to obey”).   |

Many compounds with *suru* likewise correspond to English reflectives, thus :

|                          |                                          |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>jisatsu suru,</i>     | “to kill oneself” (“to commit suicide”). |
| <i>manzoku suru,</i>     | “to content oneself” (“to be content”).  |
| <i>shūtakei wo suru,</i> | “to prepare oneself” (“to get ready”).   |
| <i>taikutsu suru,</i>    | “to bore oneself” (“to get bored”).      |

*N. B.* The alternative non-reflective English equivalents, which we have given for each of the above, will suffice to show how easy it is to render a reflective idea in some other way, and how natural it therefore was for the Japanese mind not to hit on the reflective form of verbal expression.

In cases where the word “self” would be emphasised in English, Japanese idiom adds some other word to the phrase. Speaking, for instance, of a child amusing himself (playing), one would simply say *Asonde orimasū*, whereas the emphatic “He is amusing *himself*” (i.e. playing alone) would be *Hitori de asonde orimasū*.

## CAUSATIVE VERBS.

¶ 325. Causative verbs are derived from transitives or intransitives according to the following rule :—

In verbs of the 1st. conjugation add *seru*, in verbs of the 2nd. and 3rd. conjugations add *saseru*, to the negative base, thus :

|            |   |                                               |                                                                          |
|------------|---|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1st. conj. | { | <i>korosu</i> , “to kill ;”                   | <i>korosaseru</i> , “to cause to kill.”                                  |
|            |   | <i>oku</i> , “to put ;”                       | <i>okaseru</i> , “to cause to put.”                                      |
|            |   | <i>shiru</i> , “to know ;”                    | <i>shiraseru</i> , { “to cause to know,”<br>} <i>i.e.</i> , “to inform.” |
|            |   | <i>yomu</i> , “to read ;”                     | <i>yomaseru</i> , “to cause to read.”                                    |
| 2nd. conj. | { | <i>eru</i> , “to obtain ;”                    | <i>esaseru</i> , { “to cause to obtain,”<br>} <i>i.e.</i> , “to give.”   |
|            |   | <i>taberu</i> , “to eat ;”                    | <i>tabesaseru</i> , { “to cause to eat,”<br>} <i>i.e.</i> , “to feed.”   |
| 3rd. conj. | { | <i>abiru</i> , “to bathe ;”                   | <i>abisaseru</i> , “to cause to bathe.”                                  |
|            |   | <i>tsūkiru</i> , { “to come to<br>} an end ;” | <i>tsūkisaseru</i> , { “to cause to come<br>} to an end.”                |

*N. B.* The *s* of the causative termination is probably a fragment of the verb *suru*, “to do.”

The chief irregular verbs are made causative as follows :

|                             |                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>kuru</i> , “to come ;”   | <i>kosaseru</i> , “to cause to come.” |
| <i>shinuru</i> , “to die ;” | <i>shinaseru</i> , “to cause to die.” |
| <i>suru</i> , “to do ;”     | <i>saseru</i> , “to cause to do.”     |

The polite termination *masū* is not susceptible of the causative form.

¶ 326. An alternative method of forming the causative, which belongs to the Written Language, but which may still occasionally be heard from the lips of the educated, is to agglutinate *shimeru* and *seshimeru* instead of *seru* and *saseru* respectively, thus : *korosashimeru*, *eseshimeru*, *tsūkiseshimeru*.



*N. B.* The verb *imashimeru*, "to warn," is an interesting example of this method of formation. For though now current as a transitive verb, it is evidently nothing more than the old causative of *imu*, "to shun." When you warn a man of a thing, you naturally cause him to shun it.

¶ 327. All causatives are conjugated according to the paradigm of the second conjugation (p. 156) and are, like other verbs, susceptible of the passive voice, thus :

*shiraserareru*, "to be caused to know," *i.e.*, "to be informed."

*tabesaserareru*, "to be caused to eat," *i.e.*, "to be fed."

*abisaserareru*, "to be caused to bathe."

In practice, however, these complicated forms are rarely employed.

¶ 328. The Japanese causative includes several shades of meaning. Thus *koshiraesaseru*, the causative of *koshiraeru* "to prepare," must be rendered sometimes by "to cause to prepare" or "to make . . . prepare," sometimes by "to allow to prepare" or "to let . . . prepare." The fundamental idea of the causative is that while the action is actually performed by one person, the question as to whether it shall be performed at all is in some way or other decided by another person.

*N. B.* In a few exceptional cases the causation is purely imaginary. For instance, you hope it will not rain to-morrow, and you say *Myōnichi furasetaku nai*, lit. "(I) do not wish to cause (it) to rain to-morrow."

¶ 329. In causative constructions, the noun standing for the person who is made to perform the action is marked by the postposition *ni*, and the noun standing for the person or thing the action is performed upon is marked by the postposition *wo*.

*Kiku wo uki-ya ni* { “ Please make the  
*Chrysanthemums (accus.), gardener by,* }  
*sugu ni uesashite kudasai.* }  
*immediately causing-to-plant condescend.* }  
 gardener plant out the  
 chrysanthemums at  
 once.”

*Daiku wo yonde,* }  
*Carpenter (accus.) having-called,* }  
*futsugō na tokoro wo* }  
*inconvenient place (accus.)* }  
*naosaseru ga ii.* }  
*to-cause-to-repair (nom.) (is) good.* }  
 “ It will be as well to  
 send for the carpenter,  
 and get him to repair  
 the broken places.”

*Ima kozūkai ni ii-tsūketē,* }  
*Now coolie to commending,* }  
*nīwa no sōji wo saseru* }  
*garden's cleansing (accus.) to-cause-to-do* }  
*ga ii.* }  
*(nom.) (is) good.* }  
 “ You had better tell  
 the coolie to come and  
 sweep up the garden.”

*Tsumari sake de mo kawase-* }  
*At-last liquor even to-be-caused-* }  
*rareru no deshō yo!* }  
*to-buy fact will-probably-be, oh!* }  
 (Example of passive of causative from }  
 the “*Botan-Dōrō*.”) }  
 “ I tell you it will  
 end by his getting  
 bullied into treating  
 the other fellow to  
 liquor.”

*Henji wo kaite iru kara,* }  
*Answer (accus.) writing am because,* }  
*tsūkai no mono wo matashite* }  
*message's person (accus.) causing-to-wait* }  
*kudasai.* }  
*condescend.* }  
 “ Please tell the  
 messenger to wait  
 while I write an  
 answer.”

A. B. The gerunds *uesashite* and *matashite* should, strictly speaking, be *uesasete* and *matasete*, according to the paradigm of the second conjugation to which all causative verbs belong. But it is very usual in ordinary conversation thus to make the gerund of such causative verbs follow the analogy of the first conjugation.

¶ 330. Do not confound transitive verbs of the first conjugation whose stem happens to end in *s*, such as *dasu*, “to put outside,” “to send out;” *hayasu*, “to grow” (trans.), with causative verbs of the second conjugation, thus :

|                          |                        |                 |                                                          |
|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Detagatte</i>         | <i>iru</i>             | <i>kara,</i>    | } “The pug wants<br>to go out; so please<br>let it out.” |
| <i>Wishing-to-go-out</i> | <i>is</i>              | <i>because,</i> |                                                          |
| <i>chin wo</i>           | <i>dashite</i>         | <i>yatte</i>    |                                                          |
| <i>pug (accus.)</i>      | <i>putting-outside</i> | <i>sending</i>  |                                                          |
| <i>kudasai.</i>          |                        |                 |                                                          |
| <i>condescend.</i>       |                        |                 |                                                          |

|                  |              |                 |                  |                |                                                                            |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Moto</i>      | <i>kara</i>  | <i>ima</i>      | <i>no</i>        | <i>yō</i>      | } “Did (the Japan-<br>ese) formerly grow<br>mustaches, as they do<br>now?” |
| <i>Origin</i>    | <i>from,</i> | <i>now</i>      | <i>'s</i>        | <i>fashion</i> |                                                                            |
| <i>ni</i>        | <i>hige</i>  | <i>wo</i>       | <i>hayashite</i> | <i>ima-</i>    |                                                                            |
| <i>in,</i>       | <i>beard</i> | <i>(accus.)</i> | <i>growing</i>   | <i>were</i>    |                                                                            |
| <i>shita ka?</i> |              |                 |                  |                |                                                                            |

¶ 331. It is true that we have been obliged to use the causative word “let” in rendering the first of these sentences into English, and that we might just as well have used it in the second. Nevertheless the distinction has some importance in Japanese. It would be a great mistake to confound *kasu*, “to lend,” with *karisaseru*, “to cause to borrow,” just as it would be a great mistake to confound *tateru*, “to set up,” with *tataseru* (from *tatsu*), “to cause to stand up.” In the case of “lending” and “causing to borrow,” the difference is quite clear even in our English idiom. In Japanese it is so in all cases. Thus, *tateru* means to stand some dead object up, or to “set up” as king some puppet with no will of his own. *Tataseru*, on the other hand, implies that the person who is caused to stand up is an agent possessed of independent volition. *Tatesaseru*, the causative of *tateru*, “to set up,” would mean to cause another to set a third person up. To take another instance, *orosu* means to “lower,” i.e., “to launch,” a vessel into the water, while *orisaseru* (causative of *oriru*, “to descend”) would be used, let us say, of making a person descend the side of a ravine on his own feet.

¶ 332. Though scrupulous with regard to the above point, the Japanese are less careful than ourselves to distinguish the causative from the ordinary active idiom. Thus, where we should say "I am going to *have* my hair cut," they prefer to say simply *Kami<sup>1</sup> hasami<sup>2</sup> ni<sup>3</sup> ikimasū<sup>4</sup>*, lit. "(I) go<sup>4</sup> to<sup>3</sup> cut<sup>2</sup> (my) hair<sup>1</sup>." Even in English, however, we often violate logical exactness in precisely the same way. Thus we are apt to say that we are building a house, when what we really mean is that we are having one built for us by an architect, who himself causes it to be built by the masons.

*N. B.* The causative occurs idiomatically in a few cases where European usage goes quite a different way. Thus, "Such and such a Chinese character is read so and so" is in Japanese *Nani-nani no ji wo nani-nani to yomasemasū*, with the causative representing our passive. The idea is of course that the literary authorities induce the world at large to pronounce the character in such or such a way. The phrase *Kirashimashite gozaimasū* (from *kiru*, "to cut"), used by tradesmen to signify that they are "out" of an article, is a still more curious instance.

¶ 333. Observe that though Japanese, as stated in ¶ 327, p. 213, has passive forms of the causative, it has no causative forms of the passive. It never uses such idioms as the English "to cause to be arrested," "to cause to be altered," etc., but always employs the corresponding active instead, thus :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                      |   |                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Mihon wo motte kosa-</i><br/> <i>Sample (accus) carrying hav-</i><br/> <i>shite, sōdan</i><br/> <i>ing-caused-to-come, consultation</i><br/> <i>itashimashō.</i><br/> <i>(we) wit-ido.</i></p> | } | <p>"We will let some samples be brought, and then consult about the matter." <i>More lit.</i> "We will cause (some one) to bring some samples," etc.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

This is but an additional illustration of the marked preference which the Japanese language has for the active over the passive voice.

*N. B.* Note in passing how *motte kuru*, "to bring," becomes *motte kosaseru*, "to cause to bring," the second verb *kuru* alone suffering a change of form. All such cases are treated in the same manner.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

¶ 334. Many complex verbal ideas are expressed in Japanese by means of compound verbs, which replace the prepositional verbs of European languages, and sometimes correspond to whole phrases, thus :—

*tobi-agaru*, lit. "jump-ascend," i.e., "to ascend by jumping," "to jump up."

*tobi-komu*, lit. "jump-enter," i.e., "to enter by jumping," "to jump in."

*tobi-kosu*, "to cross by jumping," i.e., "to jump across."

*kiri-korosu*, "to kill by cutting," i.e., "to cut to death."

*buchi-korosu*, "to kill by beating," i.e., "to beat to death."

*buchi-taosu*, "to prostrate by beating," i.e., "to knock down."

*mi-mawaru*, "to go round by looking," i.e., "to look round."

*mi-otosu*, "to drop in looking," i.e., "to overlook."

*mi-sokonau*, "to mistake in looking," i.e., "to see wrong."

*kiki-sokonau*, "to mistake in hearing," i.e., "to hear wrong."

*shini-sokonau*, "to mistake in dying," i.e., "barely to escape death."

*wake-ataeru*, "to divide and give," i.e., "to give in shares."

¶ 335. The following are further examples chosen from among many scores of those in commonest use :

*de-au*, "to meet by going out," i.e., "to meet out of doors," "to encounter."

*deki-agaru*, "to forthcome and rise," i.e., "to be completed."

*meguri-au*, "to meet by going round," i.e., "to come across after many adventures."

*mi-tsūkeru*, "to fix by seeing," i.e., "to notice."

*mōshi-awaseru*, "to cause to meet by saying," i.e., "to arrange beforehand." (*Awaseru* is the causative of *au*, "to meet.")

*nori okureru*, "to be late in riding," i.e., "to be too late" (for the train, etc.).

*omoi-dasu*, "to put outside by thinking," i.e., "to call to mind."

*toki-akasu*, "to loosen and clear," i.e., "to explain."

*tsūki-ataru*, "to reach by striking," i.e., "to strike against," "to come to the end" (of a street).

*uke-au*, "to meet by receiving," i.e., "to guarantee."

*uke-toru*, "to take by receiving," i.e., "to take delivery of."

*uri-sabaku*, "to manage by selling," i.e., "to sell off."

¶ 336. Some verbs recur with special frequency in the character of second member of a compound; thus (to mention only three or four):

*Dasu* denotes the action of coming out, taking out, or beginning, as in *hashiri-dasu*, "to run out;" *tori-dasu*, "to take out;" *naki-dasu*, "to begin to cry."

*N. B.* *Dasu* is properly a transitive verb, corresponding to the intransitive *deru*, "to come out." Its intransitive use in such compounds as *hashiri-dasu* is therefore somewhat anomalous, but it is sanctioned by usage.

*Kakaru* shows that the action denoted by the chief verb is about to commence, or else that it is accidental, as in *naori-kakaru*, "to be on the road to recovery;" *tōri-kakaru*, "to happen to pass by."

*Kakeru*, generally shows that the action has been begun and then abandoned, as in *shī-kakeru*, "to leave half done;" *hanashi-kakeru*, "to break off in the middle of saying something."

*Kiru*, "to cut," indicates totality, as in *kai-kiru*, "to purchase the whole" (of a consignment, etc.); *kari-kiru*, "to hire the whole" (of a house, etc.); *shime-kiru*, "to close up" (e.g. a room undergoing repairs).

*Komu* corresponds to the English word "in," as in *tobi-komu*, "to jump in;" *furi-komu*, "to come in" (said of rain or snow coming into the house).

On the other hand, *toru*, "to take," is used in numberless compounds as their *first* member, with but little independent meaning. Thus, *tori-atsūkau*, the same as *atsūkau*, "to manage;" *tori-kaeru*, the same as *kaeru*, "to change," "to exchange;" *tori-shiraberu*, "to investigate." The prefix seems to make the signification of the second verb a little more precise.

¶ 337. Occasionally three verbs are compounded together, as *mōshi-age-kaneru*, a very respectful way of expressing "to hesitate to say." It is compounded of *mōsu*, "to say;" *ageru*, "to lift up;" and *kaneru*, "to be unable."

¶ 338. Compound verbs, like simple ones, are susceptible of taking the negative, passive, potential, and causative suffixes, as:

*buchi-taosanakatta*, "did not knock down;"

*buchi-taosenakatta*, "could not knock down;"

*buchi-taosarete*, "being knocked down;"

*buchi-taosaseru*, "to cause to knock down;"

all from the verb *buchi-taosu*, "to knock down."

¶ 339. As illustrated in the examples we have given, the first member of a compound verb is put in the indefinite form, while the second member alone is conjugated through the various moods and tenses. The first member generally stands in an adverbial relation to the second. Thus in *buchi-korosu*, "to beat to death," the first member *buchi* shows the manner of action of the second member *korosu*. In some few cases, however, the signification of the two members of the compound is co-ordinated, for instance in *iki-kaeru*, "to go and come back again."

¶ 340. The Japanese language make such lavish use of compound verbs that it is essential for him who would speak idiomatically to get into the habit of employing them in preference to simple verbs wherever possible. Here are a few examples of their use:—

|                 |                            |                                    |
|-----------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Fūto</i>     | <i>omoi-dashimashita.</i>  | } "It has just occurred<br>to me." |
| <i>Suddenly</i> | <i>think-have-put-out.</i> |                                    |

|            |                             |                                                |
|------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Aa!</i> | <i>kaki-sokonaimashita.</i> | } "Oh! I have made a<br>mistake (in writing)." |
| <i>Ah!</i> | <i>write-have-mistaken.</i> |                                                |

|                     |                 |                              |
|---------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Kiki-sokonai</i> | <i>desū.</i>    | } "You have heard<br>wrong." |
| <i>Hear-mistake</i> | <i>(it) is.</i> |                              |

|                  |                  |                 |                                              |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Chōdo</i>     | <i>watakūshi</i> | <i>ga</i>       | } "I was just on the<br>point of going out." |
| <i>Just</i>      | <i>I</i>         | <i>(nom)</i>    |                                              |
| <i>de-kakeru</i> | <i>tokoro</i>    | <i>deshita.</i> |                                              |
| <i>go-out</i>    | <i>place</i>     | <i>was.</i>     |                                              |
|                  |                  |                 |                                              |

|                     |               |                   |           |                                               |
|---------------------|---------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Tsūkai</i>       | <i>ga</i>     | <i>iki-chigai</i> | <i>ni</i> | } "The two messengers<br>crossed each other." |
| <i>Messengers</i>   | <i>(nom.)</i> | <i>go-differ</i>  | <i>to</i> |                                               |
| <i>narimashita.</i> |               |                   |           |                                               |
| <i>became.</i>      |               |                   |           |                                               |

|                 |                             |              |             |             |                                                    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kono</i>     | <i>uchi</i>                 | <i>kara,</i> | <i>ii</i>   | <i>no</i>   | } "I will select the<br>best from among<br>these." |
| <i>This</i>     | <i>inside</i>               | <i>from,</i> | <i>good</i> | <i>ones</i> |                                                    |
| <i>wo</i>       | <i>eri-dashimash.</i>       |              |             |             |                                                    |
| <i>(accus.)</i> | <i>choose-will-put-out.</i> |              |             |             |                                                    |



|                                         |                        |                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Furi-dashite</i>                     | <i>kila</i>            | } "As it has come on<br>to rain, I think I will<br>put off my walk." |
| <i>Full-beginning</i>                   | <i>has-come</i>        |                                                                      |
| <i>kara, deru</i>                       | <i>no wo</i>           |                                                                      |
| <i>because, going-out</i>               | <i>action (accus.)</i> |                                                                      |
| <i>mi-awasemashō.</i>                   |                        |                                                                      |
| <i>see-will-probably-cause-to-meet.</i> |                        |                                                                      |

|                          |                    |                   |              |                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Mō</i>                | <i>hitotsu</i>     | <i>ii-tsūkeru</i> | <i>koto</i>  | } "I have another<br>order to give to the<br>messenger who has<br>just started off; so<br>please call him back." |
| <i>Still</i>             | <i>one</i>         | <i>say-flx</i>    | <i>thing</i> |                                                                                                                  |
| <i>ga aru</i>            | <i>kara,</i>       | <i>ima</i>        | <i>no</i>    |                                                                                                                  |
| <i>(nom.) is</i>         | <i>because,</i>    | <i>now</i>        | <i>'s</i>    |                                                                                                                  |
| <i>tsūkai</i>            | <i>wo</i>          | <i>yōbi-</i>      | <i>call-</i> |                                                                                                                  |
| <i>messenger</i>         | <i>(accus.)</i>    |                   |              |                                                                                                                  |
| <i>kayashite</i>         | <i>kudasai.</i>    |                   |              |                                                                                                                  |
| <i>having-given-back</i> | <i>condescend.</i> |                   |              |                                                                                                                  |

*N. B.* With regard to the gerund *kayashite* in this last example, observe that the verb is properly *kaesu* (compare *kaeru*, "to go back"); but the corruption *kayasu* is in common colloquial use.

#### THE EQUIVALENTS OF THE VERB "TO BE"

¶ 341. The student who is perplexed by the variety of manners in which the Japanese language expresses the sense of our substantive verb "to be," should note the following remarks:—

*Aru, atta, arō,* etc., except in the case to be mentioned in the next paragraph, mean properly "there is," "there was," "there perhaps will be," but are often best translated by "I (you, etc.) have," "had," "shall have," the Japanese nominative becoming the English objective case, as:

|              |               |                   |                        |
|--------------|---------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Kane</i>  | <i>ga</i>     | <i>aru.</i>       | } "I have some money." |
| <i>Money</i> | <i>(nom.)</i> | <i>(there)is.</i> |                        |

By the addition of *masū*, as *arimasū, arimashita, arimashō,* the expression is made more polite. *Gozaimasū, gozaimashita, gozaimashō* (conf. ¶ 27c, p. 171) are more honorific still, but the signification is exactly the same.

- ¶ 342. However *aru*, *arimasū*, *gozaimasū* signify simply “to be” (not “there is”) when construed with a gerund, as illustrated in ¶ 293. *Gozaimasū* also means simply “to be” when construed with an adjective, as

|                                                                                                                                     |   |                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Kono mizu wa, taihen ni karū</i><br/> <i>This water as-for, awfully light</i><br/> <i>gozaimasū.</i><br/> <i>(it) is.</i></p> | } | <p>“This water is<br/> deliciously soft.”</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------|

The certain present tense of *aru* and of *arimasū* is rarely, if ever, thus used with the *ū* or *ō* form of adjectives (see p. 120 and pp. 124—5), as the adjective includes in itself the idea of the verb “to be.” Thus the less polite equivalent of the above sentence would be simply *Kono mizu wa, taihen ni karui*. In the other tenses, however, the verb *aru* appears as an agglutinated suffix, as explained in ¶ 186 (pp. 128—9), and there exemplified in a paradigm; thus *karukauu*, “was light;” *karukurō*, “is or will probably be light,” etc.

- ¶ 343. *De aru*, *de atta*, *de arō*, etc. (familiar),—*De arimasū*, *de arimashita*, *de arimashō*, etc. (rather polite),—*De gozaimasū*, *de gozaimashita*, *de gozaimashō*, etc. (truly polite), are the simple verb “to be” without “there,”—that is to say, they mean “I am,” “he, she, or it is,” “we are,” “you are,” “they are,” and so on through all the other tenses. *Da* is a corruption of *de aru*; *datta* and *darō* are corruptions of *de atta* and *de arō*, with which they exactly agree in meaning. (Conf. end of ¶ 88, p. 64.) These forms might with propriety be written *d'a*, *d'atta*, and *d'arō*, in order the more clearly to mark their composite origin.

|                                                                           |   |                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Kore wa nan de aru?</i><br/> <i>This as-for, what is (it) ?</i></p> | } | <p>“What is this?”<br/> (More often, <i>Kore wa nan da?</i>)</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                               |   |                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| <p><i>Uso de gozaimashō.</i><br/> <i>Lie probably-is.</i></p> | } | <p>“It is probably a lie.”</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|

Tōkaidō kara mawatte itta hō  
 Tōkaidō by, turning wcut side  
 ga kaette toku darō.  
 (nom.)contrariwise profit will-probably-be.  
 (politely, de gozaimashō.)

“ Though you  
 mightn't think so, it  
 will probably be  
 shorter to go round  
 by the Tōkaidō.”

- ¶ 344. *Desū*, *deshīta*, and *deshō* have the same signification respectively as *de gozaimasū*, *de gozaimashīta*, and *de gozaimashō*, of which they are contractions. Thus the second and third examples in the preceding paragraph might equally well read thus :

*Uso deshō.*

*Tōkaidō kara mawatte itta hō ga kaette toku deshō.*

- ¶ 345. *Iru* (3rd. conj., stem *i*) and *oru* (1st. conj., stem. *ori*) signify properly “to dwell,” hence “to live,” “to be” (in a certain place). Their chief use is as auxiliaries (see ¶ 294), in which function they are now often employed in speaking of inanimate things, notwithstanding their original signification, which would seem to limit their application to living creatures.

*N. B.* The use of *iru* for animate beings and *aru* for inanimate still, however, maintains itself in many idioms. Notice, for instance, the difference between *imasū* or *orimasū*, “he is there” (*or* here), “and *arimasū*, “it is there” (or here), “there is some.”

- ¶ 346. *Irassharu* and *o ide nasaru* are honorific synonyms of *iru*, “to be,” and of several other verbs, as will be shown in ¶ 405.
- ¶ 347. *Ja*, as a verb, is not heard from the lips of Tōkyō speakers. But in the Colloquial of Kyōto, in the language of the stage, and frequently in printed Colloquial (co-called), it takes the place of *da*. It must not be confounded with *ja*, the Tōkyō contracted form of the two postpositions *de wa*, as in *Kore ja nai* for *Kore de wa nai*, “It is not this.” (Conf. ¶ 89, p. 64.)

¶ 348. *Naru*, “to be,” not to be confounded with *naru*, “to become,” belongs almost entirely to the Written Language. We still find, however, in common use the form *naraba* explained on p. 185, and such expressions as *isoganakereba<sup>1</sup> narimasen<sup>2</sup>*, lit. “it-is-not<sup>2</sup> (i. e., it won’t do) if-one-hurries-not<sup>1</sup>” i. e., “you must make haste;” also occasionally the “conclusive present\*” *nari*, used to separate the various items of an enumeration, and hence coming to correspond to our conjunction “or :”

*Tōka nari, hatsūka nari.* { “Ten or twenty days;”  
*Ten-days is, twenty-days is.* { *less lit.* “ten days or a  
 fortnight.”

¶ 349. *Suru*, properly “to do,” sometimes passes over into the sense of “to be.” See ¶¶ 356 and 357.

THE VERB *Suru*.

¶ 350. No verb recurs more constantly in Japanese than the irregular verb *suru*, the paradigm of which has been given on p. 159, and whose primary signification is “to do,” “to make,” the French *faire*. Sometimes it stands independently in its proper sense of doing or making, the noun governed by it taking the accusative postposition *wo*, as usual with transitive verbs, thus :

|                         |                                                                                    |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ikūsa wo suru.</i>   | “To make war.”                                                                     |
| <i>Shūtaku wo suru.</i> | “To make preparations.”                                                            |
| <i>Ryōri wo suru.</i>   | “To cook” ( <i>faire la cuisine</i> ).                                             |
| <i>Fama wo suru.</i>    | { “To make obstruction,” i. e.,<br>“to be in the way.”                             |
| <i>Mane wo suru.</i>    | { “To make imitation,” “to<br>imitate,” also simply to “to<br>do” (something bad). |

---

\* One form of the present tense is so termed in the Written Language. Conf. ¶ 177, p. 121.

|                                      |                                    |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Sō shīte.</i>                     | { “ Having done so ;” “ and then.” |
| <i>Omae dō shimasū ?</i><br>(famil.) | “ What are you doing ?”            |

Compare also such adjectival and adverbial expressions as *chan<sup>1</sup> to<sup>2</sup> shīta<sup>3</sup>*, lit. “did<sup>3</sup> that<sup>2</sup> quiet<sup>1</sup>,” i.e., simply “quiet;” *sube-sube<sup>1</sup> shīte<sup>2</sup>*, lit. “having-done<sup>2</sup> smooth<sup>1</sup>,” i.e., simply “smoothly.” (*Chan* and *sube-sube* are onomatopes.)

¶ 351. More often *suru* sinks into being a mere suffix serving to verbalise nouns. Of verbs thus formed, the modern language contains an enormous number. The following are a few specimens :

|                       |                                |                      |                               |                                                        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>aisuru</i> ,       | “ to love ;”                   | from <i>ai</i> ,     | “ love.”                      | } These Chinese nouns are rarely, if ever, used alone. |
| <i>chakūsuru</i> ,    | “ to arrive ;”                 | ,, <i>chaku</i> ,    | “ arrival.”                   |                                                        |
| <i>hisuru</i> ,       | “ to compare ;”                | ,, <i>hi</i> ,       | “ comparison.”                |                                                        |
| <i>jisuru</i> ,       | “ to refuse ;”                 | ,, <i>ji</i> ,       | “ refusal.”                   |                                                        |
| <i>kessuru</i> ,      | “ to decide ;”                 | ,, <i>ketsu</i> ,    | “ decision.”                  |                                                        |
| <i>sassuru</i> ,      | “ to guess ;”                  | ,, <i>satsu</i> ,    | “ a guess.”                   |                                                        |
| <i>anshin suru</i> ,  | “ to feel at ease ;”           | from <i>anshin</i> , | { “ an easy heart.”           |                                                        |
| <i>chōai suru</i> ,   | “ to love ;”                   | ,, <i>chōai</i> ,    | “ love.”                      |                                                        |
| <i>kaikwa suru</i> ,  | { “ to be(come) civilised ;” } | ,, <i>kaikwa</i> ,   | { “ civilisation.”            |                                                        |
| <i>kenkwa suru</i> ,  | “ to quarrel ;”                | ,, <i>kenkwa</i> ,   | “ a quarrel.”                 |                                                        |
| <i>rōshi suru</i> ,   | “ to die in prison ;”          | ,, { <i>rō</i> ,     | { “ prison,” and <i>shi</i> , |                                                        |
|                       |                                |                      | { “ death.”                   |                                                        |
| <i>tōchaku suru</i> , | “ to arrive ;”                 | ,, <i>tōchaku</i> ,  | “ arrival.”                   |                                                        |

*N. B.* It seems to have become usual among transliterators to attach *suru* to the preceding noun (e.g. *aisuru*, *chakūsuru*) when this noun consists of a single Chinese character, and to write it separately (e.g. *anshin suru*, *chōai suru*) when the noun consists of two Chinese characters. There is nothing to object to in this practically convenient distinction.

¶ 352. When the noun is a monosyllable, the verb formed from it by means of *suru* is sometimes treated as if it belonged to the first regular conjugation, thus *jisanai*, "he does not refuse" (as if from *jisu*), instead of *jishinai*. But this is incorrect and somewhat vulgar.

¶ 353. When the noun is a monosyllable ending in *n*, *suru* generally changes to *zuru* in the Written Language, and thence to *jiru* in Colloquial speech, this *jiru* being conjugated regularly according to the paradigm of the third conjugation. The same thing sometimes happens even when the final letter is not *n*, thus :

|                                    |                                      |                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>anjiru</i> , "to be anxious ;"  | from <i>an</i> , "opinion."          | } Not used<br>alone. |
| <i>ōjiru</i> , "to correspond ;"   | ,, <i>ō</i> , "correspond-<br>ence." |                      |
| <i>ronjiru</i> , "to argue ;"      | ,, <i>ron</i> , "argument."          |                      |
| <i>sonjiru</i> , "to be injured ;" | ,, <i>son</i> , "injury."            |                      |

¶ 354. The examples given in ¶¶ 351—3 are all Chinese words. *Suru* is less frequently attached to words of native Japanese origin. The following and several others are, however, in common use :

*agari-sagari suru*, "to go up and down ;" from the indefinite forms (used substantively) of *agaru*, "to ascend," and *sagaru*, "to descend."

*ne-gaeri suru*, "to turn in bed ;" from *neru*, "to lie," "to sleep," and *kaeru*, "to exchange."

*kega suru*, "to be wounded ;" from *kega*, "a wound."

¶ 355. There are a few instances of *zuru* or *jiru* (for *suru*) being agglutinated to an adjective stem, as :

*karonjiru*, "to think lightly of ;" from *karui*,\* "light."

---

\* *Karoki*, *karoshi* in the Written Language, whence the *o* of *karonjiru*.

*omonjiru*, "to esteem;" from *omoi*, "heavy."

But these words sound bookish, and are not much used in genuine Colloquial.

¶ 356. Just as in French the expression *faire chaud* does not mean "to make hot," but "to be hot," so also in Japanese the verb resulting from the combination of *suru* with a noun is not necessarily a transitive verb. It may indeed be transitive; but sometimes it is intransitive, and sometimes it corresponds to an English passive, as variously illustrated in the examples given in the preceding paragraphs. In a few cases, e.g., *shōjiru* (for *shōsuru*), "to produce" or "to be produced," it has a double acceptation. Usage is the sole arbiter in each instance. When usage sanctions the transitive use, then the corresponding passive is obtained by substituting for *suru* its passive *serareru* or *sareru*, thus:

*aisuru*, "to love;" *aiserareru*, "to be loved."

*chōchaku suru*, "to thrash;" *chōchaku serareru*, { "to get a thrashing."

*omonjiru*, "to esteem;" *omonjirareru*, { "to be esteemed."

¶ 357. Sometimes *suru*, when used independently, takes *ga* instead of *wo*. It then signifies "to be," as in

*Oto ga suru*, "There is a noise."

*Zutsū ga suru*, "There is a headache," i.e., "I have a headache."

¶ 358. Construed with the particle *to*, *suru* means "to be about to," thus:

*Ikō to shite*, "Being about to go."

Construed with the particle *ni*, *suru* forms an idiom which the following sentence may serve to illustrate:

*Kaette kara no koto ni shiyō*. { "I will leave it till  
Having-retuned after s' thing to will-do. { after my return."

## VERBS LIABLE TO BE MISTAKEN FOR EACH OTHER.

¶ 359. Foreign students of Japanese are often naturally perplexed by the fact that the stems of many verbs of the 1st. conjugation end in *r*, while two of the "bases" (the certain present and the conditional base) of verbs of the 2nd. and 3rd. conjugations always contain an *r*. For instance, is *shaberu*, "to chatter," of the 1st. conjugation or of the 2nd.? It is of the 1st., because the stem is *shaber*, the indefinite form *shaberi*, and the negative base *shabera*. On the other hand, *tsumeru*, "to pack," is of the 2nd. conjugation, the letter *r* belonging in this case, not to the stem, but to the termination. Similarly *chir-u*, "to fall" (like faded flowers), is of the 1st. conjugation, while *ni-ru*, "to boil," is of the 3rd. Especially perplexing are such pairs of verbs as *her-u* (1st. conj.), "to diminish," and *he-ru* (2nd. conj.), "to pass through"; *kir-u* (1st. conj.), "to cut," and *ki-ru* (3rd. conj.), "to wear." Neither is it easy at first sight to distinguish correctly all the forms of, say, *todomar-u*, the intransitive verb "to stop," from those of *todome-ru*, the corresponding transitive verb "to stop." Practice and the dictionary are the only guides in this matter.

¶ 360. The comparative paradigm on the opposite page will serve to illustrate the differences obtaining, in the various moods and tenses, between pairs or sets of like-sounding verbs, such as those above-mentioned. The three verbs given are all in daily Colloquial use. They are :

*iru*, 1st. conj., stem *ir*; "to go in," used chiefly in the sense of "to be useful," and in the phrase *ki ni iru*, "to go into one's mind," i. e., "to be agreeable to one."

*ireru*, 2nd. conj., stem *ir*; "to put in."

*iru*, 3rd. conj., stem *i*; "to dwell," "to be."



*Iru*, "to go in," and *ireru*, "to put in," are related to each other as respectively the intransitive and transitive forms of the same verb. The resemblance of these two to *iru*, "to be," is merely fortuitous.

|                                    | 1st. Conj.<br><i>Iru</i> , "to go in." | 2nd. Conj.<br><i>ireru</i> , "to put in." | 3rd. Conj.<br><i>Iru</i> , "to be."   |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>POSITIVE VOICE.</b>             |                                        |                                           |                                       |
| 1st. Base. Certain Present or Fut. | <i>iru</i>                             | <i>ireru</i>                              | <i>iru</i>                            |
| 2nd. " Indefinite Form             | <i>iri</i>                             | <i>ire</i>                                | <i>i</i>                              |
| 3rd. " Conditional Base            | <i>ire</i>                             | <i>irere</i>                              | <i>ire</i>                            |
| 4th. " Negative Base               | <i>ira</i>                             | <i>ire</i>                                | <i>i</i>                              |
| Desiderative Adjective             | <i>iritai</i>                          | <i>iretai</i>                             | <i>itai</i>                           |
| Adjective of Probability           | <i>irisō na</i>                        | <i>iresō na</i>                           | <i>isō na</i>                         |
| Polite Present                     | <i>irimasū</i>                         | <i>iremasū</i>                            | <i>imasū</i>                          |
| Gerund                             | <i>itte</i>                            | <i>irete</i>                              | <i>itte</i>                           |
| do. Emphasised                     | <i>itcha</i>                           | <i>irecha</i>                             | <i>itcha</i>                          |
| Certain Past                       | <i>itta</i>                            | <i>irete</i>                              | <i>ita</i>                            |
| Probable Past                      | <i>ittarō</i>                          | <i>iretarō</i>                            | <i>itarō</i>                          |
| Conditional Past                   | <i>ittara(ba)</i>                      | <i>iretara(ba)</i>                        | <i>itara(ba)</i>                      |
| Concessive Past                    | <i>ittaredo(mo)</i>                    | <i>iretaredo(mo)</i>                      | <i>itaredo(mo)</i>                    |
| Frequentative Form                 | <i>ittari</i>                          | <i>iretari</i>                            | <i>itari</i>                          |
| Imperative                         | <i>ire!</i>                            | <i>irero!</i>                             | <i>iro!</i>                           |
| Conditional Present                | <i>ireba</i>                           | <i>ireeba</i>                             | <i>ireba</i>                          |
| Concessive Present                 | <i>iredo(mo)</i>                       | <i>iredo(mo)</i>                          | <i>iredo(mo)</i>                      |
| Probable Pres. or Fut.             | <i>iro</i>                             | <i>ireyō</i>                              | <i>iyō</i>                            |
| <b>NEGATIVE VOICE.</b>             |                                        |                                           |                                       |
| Imperative                         | <i>iru-na!</i>                         | <i>ireru na!</i>                          | <i>iru-na!</i>                        |
| Improb. Pres. or Fut.              | <i>irumai</i>                          | <i>iremai</i>                             | <i>imai</i>                           |
| Certain Pres. or Fut.              | <i>iranai</i>                          | <i>irenai</i>                             | <i>inai</i>                           |
| Certain Past                       | <i>iranai</i> or <i>iranai</i>         | <i>irenai</i> or <i>irenai</i>            | <i>inai</i> or <i>inai</i>            |
| Improbable Past                    | <i>iranakatta</i>                      | <i>irenakatta</i>                         | <i>inakatta</i>                       |
| Frequentative Form                 | <i>iranadarō</i> or <i>irana-</i>      | <i>irendarō</i> or <i>irena-</i>          | <i>inadarō</i> or <i>inakattarō</i>   |
| Conditional Present                | <i>kattarō</i>                         | <i>kattarō</i>                            | <i>inadarō</i> or <i>inakattarō</i>   |
| Conditional Past                   | <i>iranadari</i> or <i>irana-</i>      | <i>irendari</i> or <i>irena-</i>          | <i>inadari</i> or <i>inakattari</i>   |
| Concessive Present                 | <i>kattari</i>                         | <i>kattari</i>                            | <i>inaba</i> or <i>inakereba</i>      |
| Gerund                             | <i>iranadare(ba)</i> or <i>irana-</i>  | <i>irendare(ba)</i> or <i>irena-</i>      | <i>inadare(ba)</i> or <i>inakare-</i> |
|                                    | <i>nakattaru(ba)</i>                   | <i>nakattaru(ba)</i>                      | <i>kattaru(ba)</i> or <i>ina-</i>     |
|                                    | <i>iranedo(mo)</i> or <i>irana-</i>    | <i>irenedo(mo)</i> or <i>irena-</i>       | <i>inedo(mo)</i> or <i>inakere-</i>   |
|                                    | <i>keredo(mo)</i>                      | <i>keredo(mo)</i>                         | <i>do(mo)</i>                         |
|                                    | <i>irazu</i>                           | <i>irezu</i>                              | <i>izu</i>                            |
|                                    | <i>iranakūte</i>                       | <i>irenakūte</i>                          | <i>inakūte</i>                        |
|                                    | <i>iranai de</i>                       | <i>irenai de</i>                          | <i>inai de</i>                        |

## VERBS USED AS OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

- ¶ 362. Some few verbs, mostly in the gerundial form, are used as postpositions, e.g.,  
*motte*, “with,” “by means of;” from *mot-su*, “to hold.”  
*ni yotte*, “owing to;” from *yoru*, “to rely.”
- ¶ 363. Others correspond to English adverbs, adverbial phrases, or conjunctions, thus:  
*amari*, “too (much);” indef. form of *amaru*, “to exceed.”  
*hajimete*, “for the first time,” } gerund of *hajimeru*, “to  
“never before.” } begin” (trans.).  
*kaette*, “contrary to what one might expect;” gerund of  
*kaeru*, “to return” (intrans.).  
*kiri* (vulg. *kkiri*), used as a suffix meaning “only,” e.g.  
*sore-kiri*, “only that;” indef. form of *kiru*, “to cut.”  
*nokorazu*, “without excep- } negative gerund of *nokoru*,  
tion,” “all.” } “to remain.”  
*sayō nara*, “good-bye,” lit. “if that } *nara(ba)*, condition-  
be so (we shall meet again).” } al of *naru*, “to be.”  
*semete*, “at least,” “at most;” gerund of *semeru*, to “treat  
with rigour.”  
*shiite*, “urgently;” gerund of *shiiru*, “to urge.”  
*subete*, “altogether,” “all.” } gerund of *suberu*, “to  
unite in one.”  
*tatoeba*, “for instance;” condit. of *tatoeru*, “to compare.”
- ¶ 364. The present tense is in some few cases doubled and used adverbially, thus:  
*kaesu-gaesu*, “over and over again;” from *kaesu*, “to  
send back.”
- ¶ 365. It has already been shown in pp. 140—1 how Japanese verbs, and phrases formed from verbs, frequently replace the adjectives of European languages.

## CHAPTER X.

### THE ADVERB, INTERJECTION, AND CONJUNCTION.

#### SPECIAL PHRASEOLOGY.

¶ 366. Japanese has few if any true adverbs. Almost all the words corresponding to our adverbs prove, on examination, to be stragglers from the other parts of speech. It will, however, afford some insight into the nature of the language, and be practically useful to students, to glance at the various expedients by which the necessity for adverbs is obviated.

¶ 367. The indefinite forms in *ku* of adjectives are used adverbially, and correspond for the most part to English adverbs in “ly,” although, as has been explained in ¶¶ 180—181 (pp. 122—4), such is not their original force, nor indeed their invariable force even at the present day :—

*Zōsa naku dekimasū.* { “It can easily be  
*Difficulty not-being, (it)forthcomes.* { done.”

*Atarashiku tsūkurimashita.* { “It has been newly  
*Newly have-made.* { built.”

*Kīanarashikū<sup>1</sup> miemasū<sup>2</sup>.* “It looks<sup>2</sup> dirt(il)y<sup>1</sup>.”

*N. B.* Some few adjectives are no longer used colloquially, except in the *ku* form corresponding to our adverbs, e.g., *kotogotoku*, “altogether;” *mattaku*, “quite.”

¶ 368. Japanese nouns often correspond to European adverbs, e.g., *kon-nichi*, lit. “this day,” i.e., “to-day;” *jū-bun*, lit.

“ten parts,” i.e., “plenty,” “exceedingly;” *ō-kata*, lit. “great side,” i.e., “mostly;” *ko-ko*, lit. “this” (1st. *ko*), “place” (2nd. *ko*), i.e., “here.” (Conf. ¶ 64, p. 45.) Words of this class retain their substantive character so completely that the equivalents of such particles as “of,” “at,” “from,” etc.,—in fact the postpositions,—can be construed with them as readily as with any other substantives, thus :

|                                       |                            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Doko made o ide ni</i>             | } “How far are you going?” |
| <i>Where till, honourable exit to</i> |                            |
| <i>narimasū ?</i><br><i>becomes ?</i> |                            |

|                                                  |                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Asūko kara saki wa, ji-ki desū.</i>           | } “It is no distance on from there to the next place.” |
| <i>There from, front as-for, immediately is.</i> |                                                        |
| <i>ki desū.</i>                                  |                                                        |

|                                        |                                  |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Itsumo no kimono de yoroshii.</i>   | } “My ordinary clothes will do.” |
| <i>Always of clothes by (is) good.</i> |                                  |
|                                        | (Said to one's own servant.)     |

|                                           |                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Ato de koko wo sōji shūte kudasai.</i> | } “Please clean this room afterwards.” |
| <i>After by, here (accus.) cleaning</i>   |                                        |
| <i>doing condescend.</i>                  | (Said to the servant at a hotel.)      |

|                                    |                                         |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Sonna ni sawaija ikenai yo!</i> | } “I say! you mustn't make such a row.” |
| <i>is-no-go, oh!</i>               |                                         |
|                                    | <i>So as-for-making-a-row,</i>          |

¶ 369. Some nouns receive an adverbial tinge by means of reduplication, as :

*hō-bō*, “everywhere;” from *hō*, “side,” “direction.”

*naka-naka*, “very,” “more than you might think;” from *naka*, “inside.”

*tabi-tabi*, “often;” from *tabi*, “a time” (*une fois*).

*toki-doki*, “sometimes;” from *toki*, “time” (*le temps*).

*tokoro-dokoro*, “here and there;” from *tokoro*, “a place.”

¶ 370. There are also many words which are nouns etymologically speaking, but which are always or almost always used as adverbs, and which mostly take the post-position *ni*, as *jiki* or *jiki ni*, "immediately;" *sude ni*, "already;" *sugu* or *sugu ni*, "directly."

¶ 371. Phonetic decay has considerably altered some of these words in their passage from other parts of speech to the state of adverbs. Thus *dō* 乎 "how?" is a corruption of *dono yō* 乎 "what manner?" Similarly *kō*, "in this way," "thus;" *sō* or *sayō*, "in that way;" and *ā*, "in that way," are derived from *kono yō*, *sono yō*, and *ano yō* respectively.

¶ 372. Many words which we are obliged to translate by adverbs or adverbial phrases are the gerunds of verbs, as explained in ¶¶ 362—3 (p. 230). How truly words of this class retain their verbal force even at the present day, may be seen from the use of such phrases as *hitori<sup>1</sup> mo<sup>2</sup> nokorazu<sup>3</sup>*, "all without exception," lit. "even<sup>2</sup> one-person<sup>1</sup> remaining-not<sup>3</sup> (behind)."

¶ 373. The following are some of the chief Japanese words corresponding to our adverbs, not already mentioned in this chapter. More will be found in the paradigm on p. 52.

*bakari*, "about," "only."

*chi(t)to*, } "a little,"  
*chotto*, } "slightly."  
*choito*, }

*dake*, "only," "about,"  
 "as. . . . as."

*hanahada*, "very."

*ikaga* 乎 "how?"

*iku bun ka*, "rather," "more  
 or less."

*itsudemo*, "always;" *with a  
 negative verb*, "never."

*ma*, "quite" (always com-  
 bined with the following  
 adjective, whose initial  
 consonant is doubled, as  
*makkurai*, "pitch-dark,"  
 from *kurai*, "dark.")

*mada*, "still;" *with a nega-  
 tive verb*, "not yet."

*mata*, "again."  
*mazu*, "in the first place,"  
 "well!" (In this sense  
 often abbrev. to *ma*.)  
*mō*, "already;" with a  
*negative verb*, "no more."  
*motto*, "more" (adverb).  
*naru-take*, "as...as possi-  
 ble;" "if possible."  
*naze* ？ "why?"  
*sate*, "well!"  
*sūkoshi*, "a little."  
*tada* (vulgarly and empha-  
 tically *tatta*), "merely,"  
 "nothing but."  
*tadaima*, "immediately"  
 (from *tada* and *ima*,  
 "now.")

*taisō*, "much," "very."  
*takūsan*, same as *taisō*.  
*tokoro de*, "thereupon,"  
 "and so."  
*tokoro ga*, "nevertheless,"  
 "still."  
*yahari* (emphatically *yap-  
 pari*), "also."  
*yohodo* (emphatically *yop-  
 podo*), "very."  
*zehi*, "positively" (from  
 Chinese *ze*, "good," and  
*hi*, "bad," like our phrase  
 "for better for worse").  
*zuibun*, "a good deal,"  
 "pretty" (as in "pretty  
 tired").

*N. B.* Avoid, as much as possible, the Japanese equivalents for "very" and "a little," as the Japanese rarely employ them.

¶ 374. It may seem strange that the foregoing list should contain no equivalent for our adverbs of affirmation and negation, "yes" and "no." The reason is that there are no words exactly corresponding to our "yes" and "no" in Japanese. There exists, it is true, a word *ie* which means "no;" but it is little used, except when the denial is emphatic. The word *he!* *hei!* or *hai!* which may sometimes be translated by "yes," is properly an interjection used to show that one has heard and understood what has been said to one. It does not generally imply assent to a statement. Thus, when a tea-house girl is called, she will cry out *hei!* simply to show that she is coming.

Instead of "yes," the Japanese say "that<sup>1</sup> is<sup>2</sup> so<sup>3</sup>," *sō<sup>3</sup> da<sup>2</sup>*, more politely *sō desū*, still more politely *sayō de gozai-masū*. Similarly for "no" they say "that is not so," *sō ja*

*nai*, politely *sayō de gozaimasen*. Or else they repeat the verb of the question, thus :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |   |                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| <p><i>O</i>            <i>wakari</i>    <i>ni</i>    <i>nari-</i><br/> <i>Honourable understanding to has-</i><br/> <i>mashīta ka</i> ？ (For use of past tense)<br/> <i>become</i> ？ (here, conf. ¶ 274, p. 176.)</p> | } | <p>“Do you under-stand?”</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|

|                                                           |   |               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| <p><i>Wakarimashīta.</i><br/> <i>Have-understood.</i></p> | } | <p>“Yes.”</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|

|                                                        |   |              |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------|
| <p><i>Wakarimasen.</i><br/> <i>Understand-not.</i></p> | } | <p>“No.”</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------|

|                                                                                         |   |                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------|
| <p><i>O</i>    <i>ide ni narimasū ka</i> ？<br/> <i>Honourable exit to becomes</i> ？</p> | } | <p>“Is he coming?”</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------|

|                                                                            |   |               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| <p><i>Sayō de gozaimasū.</i><br/> <i>So</i>            <i>(it) is.</i></p> | } | <p>“Yes.”</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|

*N. B.* In familiar intercourse, *sayō de gozaimasū* is often abbreviated to the single word *sayō*.—Some speakers use the word *ikanimo* for “yes;” but this is decidedly old-fashioned.

¶ 375. The Japanese have a habit, which generally proves irritating to foreigners, of answering one question by another, especially in cases where a European would simply say that he did not know. Thus :

|                                                                                                   |   |                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| <p><i>O</i>    <i>kaeri ni narimashīta ka</i> ？<br/> <i>Honourable return to has-become</i> ？</p> | } | <p>“Have they come home?”</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|

|                                                                                         |   |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Ikaga de gozaimasū ka</i> ？<br/> <i>How</i>            <i>is</i>            ？</p> | } | <p>“How is it?” <i>i.e.</i>, “I don’t know.”</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------|

¶ 376. Japanese idiom differs from ours with respect to the answer given to a negative interrogation. The following examples will serve to illustrate the difference, which must be constantly borne in mind if grave misunderstandings are to be avoided :—

|                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <p>“Isn’t he coming?”</p> | <p><i>Kimasen ka</i> ？</p> |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|

- “No.” - (*I.e.*, It is so as the negative in your question implies.) } *Sayō de gozaimasū.*  
*Kimasen.*  
*He!*
- “Oh! yes, he is.” *Kimasū.*
- “Of course he is!” *Kimasū to mo.*  
 (Conf. middle of p. 85.)

¶ 377. Adverbial phrases are formed by means of the post-positions *de*, *mo*, *to*, and especially *ni*, thus :

|                                                   |                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>don to</i> , “with a bang.”                    | <i>shidai-shidai ni</i> , “little by little.”               |
| <i>jōzu ni</i> , “skillfully.”                    | <i>sude ni</i> , “already.”                                 |
| <i>maru de</i> , “quite.”                         | <i>tonto mo</i> (with a negative verb), “not in the least.” |
| <i>metta ni</i> (with a negative verb), “rarely.” | <i>waza to</i> , “on purpose.”                              |

¶ 378. Onomatopes, like the English words “ding-dong,” “topsy-turvy,” “higgledy-piggledy,” etc., which are generally classed as adverbs, are extremely numerous in Japanese. Such are *burā-burā*, expressive of sauntering; *guzu-guzu*, expressive of complaining or scolding; *kyan-kyan*, expressive of the yelping of a dog; *pika-pika*, expressive of glitter; *soro-soro*, expressive of slow movement; *bon-yari*, expressive of obscurity or listlessness; *katchiri*, expressive of a clicking sound, etc., etc. Almost all words beginning with the letter *p* are onomatopes, excepting *pan*, “bread.”

*N. B.* There is room for doubt whether Japanese *pan* is simply the like-sounding Spanish word, or whether it may not rather be a corruption of Portuguese “*pão*,” anciently spelt “*pam* ;” for the Portuguese came to Japan fully forty years before the Spaniards, namely, in the middle of the 16th century.

#### INTERJECTIONS.

¶ 379. The chief interjections, besides *he!* (see p. 234) and those more or less inarticulate “ah’s!” “oh’s!” and “eh’s?” which occur in all languages, are :



*Ai!a!* a cry of pain, derived from the exclamation *aa!* and *ita*, the stem of the adjective *itai*, "painful."

*Ara!* an exclamation of surprise, used chiefly by women.

*Dokkoisho!* a sort of sigh of relief, used for instance when one has safely lifted something heavy and put it in its place. This word is rarely employed by any but the lower classes.

¶ 380. *Dōmo*, lit. "even (*mo*) how? (*dō* ?)" This much-used term expresses difficulty, hopelessness, astonishment, and corresponds to some extent to such English phrases as "do what I may," "well I never!" "really now!" or to an emphasis on the chief word of the clause, thus:

*Omoshirokūte dōmo..* } "It was so amusing, that..."  
*Being-amusing....* }

the sentence perhaps remaining unfinished. But very often *dōmo* or *naka-naka\** *dōmo* is a mere expletive, used to gain time and to cover paucity of ideas.

*Hate na!* equivalent to our "well, I never!"

¶ 381. *Ke* or *kke*, a final expletive conveying the idea of an indistinct conviction on the speaker's part, is often translatable by "surely" or "I believe." Thus *atta* means "there was;" but *atta-kke* is "surely there was!"

*Ashūta made ni dekiru* } "I believe he said it  
*To-morrow by in, will-be-ready* } would be ready by to-  
*to sempō de ittakke.* } morrow."  
*that, other-side ut, said-surely.* }

*Ke* is used only in the most familiar intercourse.

*Koso*, an emphatic particle, used to strengthen the word which precedes it.

*Mā!* an exclamation of surprise or entreaty, used chiefly

\* See ¶ 369, p. 232.

by women. Very often it sinks into meaning nothing at all. Do not confound it with *ma*, for *mazu* (see p. 234.).

*Nan* emphatic, see footnote to ¶ 197, pp. 135—6.

¶ 382. *Naruhodo!* a very useful word, for which there is no exact English equivalent. When pronounced in a tone of great surprise, it corresponds to “who would have thought it?” “you don’t say so!” “well, I never!” But more often it is pronounced in an assenting tone of voice, and then it means “oh! indeed,” “really!” “I see.” When some one is telling a long story, it is usual to chime in with a *naruhodo!* at every point he makes, or every time he pauses to take breath. Instead of *naruhodo*, one may say *sō<sup>1</sup> desū<sup>2</sup> ka<sup>3</sup> ɾ* lit. “is<sup>2</sup> that sō<sup>1</sup>?” or less politely *sō ka ɾ*

¶ 383. *Ne* or *nē*, vulgarly and provincially *nā* or *nō*, serves to draw attention to the preceding word or clause, which it emphasises and separates, somewhat after the fashion of *wa* (see p. 85). Indeed it may be superadded to *wa* for the sake of greater emphasis and distinctness, as *Kore wa ne*, “This,—*this*.” The meaningless “you know,” or “don’t you know?” with which so many English speakers interlard their remarks, has been suggested as the nearest equivalent to it in our language. Occasionally it might be rendered in French by “n’est-ce pas?” in German by “nicht war?” and in English by such idioms as “is it?” “do you?” “won’t they?” etc., according to what has gone before. Sometimes it shows that the speaker is puzzled, as *sō desū nē* (pronounced in a hesitating tone of voice), “well, I don’t know,” or “let me see!” *Ne* belongs exclusively to familiar intercourse, and should never be employed on official or public occasions.

Many persons are in the habit of beginning sentences, and even of calling people, by means of the words *ano ne!* (*ano* = "that"), just as English speakers often begin by "I say!"

¶ 384. *Oi!* an exclamation used to call people.

*Oya-oya!* an exclamation of great surprise, heard chiefly from the mouths of women.

*Sa!* or *Sā!*—Short *sa* is used by the lower classes to give emphasis at the end of a sentence, thus :

*Kore kara iku no sa!* { "Now we'll go along!"  
*Now from (we)go!* { (*No* is emphatic also; see ¶ 113.)

*Sa* and *sā* are used indifferently to urge, hurry, or defy, as

*Sa!* *o ide nasai!* { "Come along! come  
*Honourable exit deign!* { along!"

A very common idiom is *sayō sa!* "of course," "yes."

*Yo*, used emphatically at the end of a sentence, as :  
*Arimasen yo!* "I have none, and there's an end of it!"

*Zo*, belonging rather to the Written Language than to the Colloquial, but still occasionally heard at the end of a sentence, to which it adds emphasis. *Ze* seems to be a variation of *zo*.

*N. B.* The personal pronoun *anata*, "you," is sometimes intercalated in a sentence with a certain interjectional or expletive force, chiefly by members of the lower classes.

¶ 385. Japanese is honourably distinguished from most languages of the world by being totally devoid of oaths. Where, for instance, a European driver would probably swear at his unmanageable steed, a Japanese will only emphatically exclaim *kore!* lit. "this!" or *sore!* "that!" *Ko-rya!* and *sorya!* (for *kore wa*, and *sore wa*) are used much in

the same way, as scolding expletives. The words *baka!* "fool;" *berabō-me!* "scoundrel;" *chikūshō!* "beast;" etc., are common terms of abuse. The *me* of *berabō-me* is a sort of particle of contempt, which may be suffixed to any noun, as *ano inu-me*, "that brute of a dog."

## BABY LANGUAGE, ETC.

¶ 386. In Japanese, as in English, there are numerous special words and corruptions of words which are used by young children, and also by adults in addressing young children. Such are :

|                                                                |                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>abayō</i> , "goodbye" (=baby English "ta!").                | <i>enko</i> , † "to sit."                           |
| <i>an-yō</i> , from <i>ashi</i> , "the feet," hence "to walk." | <i>nenne</i> , from <i>neru</i> , "to sleep."       |
| <i>bāya</i> , from <i>obāsan</i> , "an old lady," "granny."    | <i>nennei</i> , from <i>ningyō</i> , "a doll."      |
| <i>bebe</i> , "clothes."                                       | <i>tete</i> , "the hands;" from <i>te</i> repeated. |
| <i>botchan</i> ,* "a little boy."                              | <i>īmamma</i> , ‡ "food."                           |
| <i>chan</i> , from <i>san</i> , "Mr.," "Mrs.," "Miss."         | <i>wan-wan</i> , "a dog" (properly "bow-wow").      |

Most of these words are also used in addressing pet animals. Thus a pet dog's forefeet are *tete*, its hind feet *an-yō*, its little "tummy" *pon-pon*.

¶ 387. There are also some few words which are almost entirely confined to the fair sex. Such is, for instance, *o hiya*, "cold water" (lit. "honourably fresh"), which men call *mizu*.

\* Derived from *bōsan*, "a Buddhist priest," Japanese children resembling Buddhist priests in having shaven pates.

† Perhaps from *en*, "the floor," and *koto*, "thing," "act."

‡ Not to be confounded with the term *o mamma*, "rice," "food," used by adults. *Ūmamma* is probably *īmai*, "good to eat," twice repeated.

¶ 388. A number of objects and actions receive peculiar designations in the mouths of members of the Imperial Family, and of those privileged to address them. Although ordinary mortals can have no use for this exalted phraseology, a few specimens of it will doubtless not fail to interest the student. Some of the Court words are survivals from Classical times; some are euphemisms (e.g. *ase*, "perspiration," used to signify "blood"); some, as *kachin* and *o kabe*, belong also to the language of women, while others are of uncertain origin:—

| ORDINARY<br>EXPRESSION. | COURT LANGUAGE.                                                                      | ENGLISH.       |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <i>aruku</i> ,          | <i>o hiroi</i> , (lit. honourable<br>picking up)                                     | "walking."     |
| <i>chi</i> ,            | <i>ase</i> , (lit. perspiration)                                                     | "blood."       |
| <i>dango</i> ,          | <i>ishi-ishi</i> ,                                                                   | "a dumpling."  |
| <i>deru</i> ,           | <i>o nari</i> , (lit. honourable<br>becoming)                                        | "going out."   |
| <i>juban</i> ,          | <i>hiyo</i> ,                                                                        | "a shirt."     |
| <i>kami</i> ,           | <i>o gushi</i> , (classical)                                                         | "hair."        |
| <i>kane</i> ,           | <i>takara</i> , (lit. treasure)                                                      | "money."       |
| <i>kome</i> ,           | <i>yone</i> , (classical)                                                            | "rice."        |
| <i>miso</i> ,           | <i>o mushi</i> , (lit. honourably<br>steamed)                                        | "bean-sauce."  |
| <i>mizu</i> ,           | <i>o hiya</i> , (lit. honourably<br>cool)                                            | "cold water."  |
| <i>mochi</i> ,          | <i>kachin</i> ,                                                                      | "rice-cake."   |
| <i>neru</i> ,           | <i>mi koshi</i> ,                                                                    | "sleeping."    |
| <i>sakana</i> ,         | <i>o mana</i> , (conf. Colloquial <i>mana-ita</i> ,<br>a board for cleaning fish on) | "fish" (food). |
| <i>sake</i> ,           | <i>kukon</i> ,                                                                       | "rice-beer."   |
| <i>tōfu</i> ,           | <i>o kabe</i> ,                                                                      | "bean-curd."   |
| <i>zōri</i> ,           | <i>kongō</i> ,                                                                       | "sandals."     |

Notice, too, that the Court, having for many centuries resided at Kyōto, retains a preference for Kyōto pronun-

ciations, e.g. *gozarimasū* for *gozaimasū*, *nasare* for *nasai*, *kudasare* for *kudasai*, etc.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

¶ 389. Conjunctions, can scarcely be said to exist in Japanese as an independent part of speech, their place being taken, partly by conjugational forms of the verb and adjective, partly by postpositions, partly by nouns. With regard to the word “and,” which is in Western languages the most constantly recurring of all conjunctions, the necessity for it between verbs or clauses is almost completely obviated in Japanese by the construction with the indefinite form or the gerund, explained in ¶¶ 278—281. Between nouns, “and” is sometimes represented by *ni* or *to*, as explained in ¶ 109 and ¶ 119. But more often the two nouns are simply placed side by side, as *Kazusa Bōshū*, “Kazusa and Bōshū” (the names of two provinces on the ocean side of Tōkyō Bay). Occasionally “and” is represented between verbs—never between nouns—by the phrase *sō shūte* (pedantically *shikō shūte* or *shika shūte*), lit. “having done so.” But this idiom, imitated from the Chinese, must not be used too freely.

“But” is sometimes represented by *shikashi*; but neither must this Japanese word be repeated nearly as often as “but” is in English.

“Or” is sometimes expressed by means of the word *nari*, as explained in ¶ 348.

“Provided” is represented by such constructions as

|              |             |                |                        |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|------------------------|
| <i>Iki</i>   | <i>sae</i>  | <i>sureba.</i> | } “Provided one goes.” |
| <i>Going</i> | <i>even</i> | <i>if-do.</i>  |                        |

“While” is sometimes represented by the word *nagara* agglutinated to the indefinite verbal form, as *aruki-nagara*, “while walking;” sometimes by *tokoro*, as explained in ¶ 58.

The following references to sections of this work, in which words or constructions corresponding to the chief English conjunctions are treated of, may be found useful :

|                        |                 |              |                     |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------------|
| “although,”            | see ¶ 288.      | “since,”     | see ¶ 99 & 135.     |
| “and,”                 | ,, , 389.       | “than,”      | ,, , 135 & 212.     |
| “as,”                  | ,, , 99 & 287.  | “that,”      | ,, , 117.           |
| “because,”             | ,, , 99.        | “though,”    | ,, , 288.           |
| “but,”                 | ,, , 288 & 389. | “when,”      | ,, , 57, 58, & 287. |
| “either...or,”         | ,, , 97 & 348.  | “whereas,”   | ,, , 58 & 93.       |
| “neither... }<br>nor,” | ,, , 102.       | “whereupon,” | ,, 58.              |
|                        |                 | “whether,”   | ,, , 97.            |
| “if,”                  | ,, , 128 & 287. | “while,”     | ,, , 57, 58, & 389. |

¶ 390. “As,” meaning “in the same manner as,” is expressed by the noun *tōri*, lit. “way,” “road,” thus :

*Kono tōri no mono. } “Such things as this.”  
This way 's things. }*

*Watakūshi no iu tōri ni nasai. } “Please do as  
I of say way in deign. } I tell you.”*

¶ 391. Details concerning the best manner of translating the English conjunctions into Japanese in various contexts belong not so much to grammar as to the dictionary. The student is accordingly referred to Messrs. Satow and Ishibashi’s “English-Japanese Dictionary of the Spoken Language,” where the words in question are amply illustrated.

## CHAPTER XI.

---

### HONORIFICS.

¶ 392. No language in the world is more saturated with honorific idioms than Japanese. These idioms affect, not only the vocabulary, but the very grammar itself. Therefore, although scattered references have been made to the subject of honorifics in former chapters, it seems advisable to gather together under one heading all the leading manifestations of a habit of speech, without a proper mastery of which it is impossible to speak Japanese with any approach to correctness.

¶ 393. The use of honorifics is guided by four main considerations, namely :

i. Honorific forms are used in speaking of the actions or possessions of the person addressed, while depreciatory or humble forms are used in speaking of oneself. In other words, what we should style the first person is self-depreciatory, and the second person complimentary.

ii. In speaking *of* others (what we should call the third person), honorifics are used only if the person spoken of is superior in rank to the person spoken to, or if he is present and, though not a superior, at least an equal, or assumed to be such for courtesy's sake.

iii. There are gradations in the use of honorifics, according to the greater or less respect meant to be paid to the person spoken to or of.



iv. Honorifics have a tendency to lose their original signification, and to sink into mere marks of a courteous style of speech. Sometimes they become absolutely meaningless.

¶ 394. It has been asserted by some that the use of honorifics in Japanese replaces that of the personal pronouns of European languages. This is not strictly correct. The expression *go hon*, for instance, means "the august book," not only etymologically, but also in the mind and intention of every Japanese speaker who makes use of it. It is only because "you" are an august person, that the words *go hon* come, in many contexts, to correspond pretty closely to our more precise phrase "your book." The correspondence is still only approximate; for very often *go hon* may mean the book of some other august lady or gentleman different from you, i.e., it may mean "her book" or "his book." In some circumstances it may denote the book of the most august of all persons, namely the Emperor, and this is indeed the more primitive signification of the Chinese character with which the word *go* is written. Similarly *go yō*, "august business," may be either "your business," "his business," or "Government business." Like considerations apply to other honorific phrases.

¶ 395. Descending from general considerations to particulars, the student should remember the following leading facts:—

In addressing an equal or superior, the word *o*, "honourable," or *go*, "august" (conf. ¶ 210, p. 143), is prefixed to most of the nouns denoting objects belonging to or connected with him in any way. Even adjectives and adverbs sometimes take one or other of the honorific prefixes. *O*, being of Japanese origin, is mostly employed

with native Japanese words, while *go*, which is of Chinese origin, is mostly employed with words borrowed from the Chinese. But usage admits of numerous exceptions to this rule.—*O* and *go* are applied to the third person, subject to the limitations mentioned in ¶ 393.

¶ 396. Here are a few familiar instances of the use of these honorific prefixes :

|                                                                                                         |                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>O kodomo-shu.</i>                                                                                    | { “Your (his, her, etc.)<br>children.”                        |
| <i>O taku.</i>                                                                                          | “Your (or his) house.”                                        |
| <i>O taku desū ka ?</i>                                                                                 | “Is he at home?”                                              |
| <i>O rusu.</i>                                                                                          | “Your (or his) absence.”                                      |
| <i>O rusu desū.</i>                                                                                     | “He is out.”                                                  |
| <i>Go shōchi.</i>                                                                                       | “Your (or his) consent.”                                      |
| <i>Go shinrui.</i>                                                                                      | “Your (or his) relations.”                                    |
| <i>Go son.</i>                                                                                          | { “Your (or his) loss” (in<br>money, etc.).                   |
| <i>O kega.</i>                                                                                          | “Your (or his) wound.”                                        |
| <i>O kage de.</i>                                                                                       | { “By your (or his) kind<br>influence” ( <i>lit.</i> shade).  |
| <i>Yohodo o kirei desū.</i><br><i>Very honourably pretty is.</i>                                        | { “It is very pretty” (e.g.<br>this garden of <i>yours</i> ). |
| <i>Danna wa o</i><br><i>Master as-for, honourably</i><br><i>isogashiū gozaimasū.</i><br><i>busy is.</i> | { “My master is busy.”                                        |
| <i>Go mottomo de gozaimasū.</i><br><i>August very is.</i>                                               | { “You are perfectly<br>right.”                               |
| <i>Go taikutsu de gozaimashitarō.</i><br><i>August tedium probably-was.</i>                             | { “You must have felt<br>bored.”                              |

¶ 397. Occasionally the word *sama*, “Mr.,” is added, in order to make the expression still more polite, thus :

*Go* *kurō sama.* { “(Thanks for) your  
*August* *trouble* *Mr.* } trouble.”

*O* *machi-dō sama.* { “You have had a long  
*Honourable* *wait-long* *Mr.* } time to wait ;” or “Excuse  
me for keeping you waiting  
so long.”

*O* *kinodoku sama.* { “I am sorry for  
*Honourable* *poison-of-the-spirit* *Mr.* } your sake.”

*N. B.* Regret on one's own account is expressed by the word *zannen*, never by *kinodoku*.

¶ 398. Examples such as these introduce us to the use of *o* and *go* in (so to speak) an *objective* way, which at first sounds very strange to European ears, thus :

*O* *yasū gozaimasū.* { “It is cheap, Sir,” i.e.,  
*Honourably* *cheap* *is.* } “I have the honour to offer  
it to you cheap.”

*Go* *busata itashimashīta.* { “I have been sadly re-  
*August* *remissness* *(I)have-done.* } miss about calling upon  
you.”

*Go* *burei mōshi-agemashīta.* { “I was very rude  
*August* *rudeness* *(I) said-lifted.* } to you.”

*O* *jama itashimashīta.* { “Excuse me for  
*Honourable* *obstacle* *(I)have-done.* } having interrupted you.”

At a first hearing, the literal import of the individual words may cause the student to think that the Japanese speaker is applying honorifics to himself. Far from any Japanese mind is such a thought. The idea underlying these idioms is that the cheapness of my goods, and even the remissness, the rudeness, the interruption, and what not, of which I have been guilty with regard to you, have a sort of reflected glory cast on them by their connection with so exalted a personage as yourself. It is as if one

should say "I have had the honour to be remiss in calling;" "I had the honour to be rude to you," etc. Moreover such phrases about remissness in calling, about rudeness, etc., are for the most part mere verbiage corresponding to no actual facts.

¶ 399. The phrase *o saki*, "honourably first," is employed in two contrary ways. It sometimes signifies "Please do *you* go first" (*après vous*), sometimes "Kindly excuse *me* for going first."

¶ 400. Many words in common use take *o* without any honorific intent vis-à-vis the person spoken to, especially in the mouths of women and of the lower classes. Thus we daily hear such expressions as

*o bake*, "a goblin."  
*o bon*, "a tray."  
*o cha*, "tea."  
*o deki*, "a pimple," "a boil."  
*o kane*, "money."  
*o naka*, "a person's inside."  
*o tagai*, "mutually."  
*o tenki*, "the weather."  
*o tera*, "a Buddhist temple."

*o tomurai*, "a funeral."  
*o tsūki sama*, "the moon" (lit. "Honourable Mrs. Moon!").  
*o tsuri*, "small change."  
*o tsuyu*, "soup" (lit. "dew").  
*o yu*, "hot water," "a hot bath."  
*o zen*, "the small trays on which Japanese food is served;" etc., etc.

These are examples of the tendency of honorifics to become meaningless. Occasionally honorifics are used with a point of satire, to convey an indirect attack under cover of an irreproachably courteous style of speech. Thus, not far from the beginning of Chap. II of the "*Botan-Dōrō*," the novelist Enchō tells us that Dr. Yamamoto Shijō was

“an honourable chatter-box and an honourable quack” (*o taiko-isha no o shaberi*)!—Compare *o seji*, “flattery;” *o temba*, “a hoyden.”

- ¶ 401. Pedantic speakers sometimes use *on*, the Classical word of which *o* is an abbreviated form. Another honorific current in ancient times was *mi*, synonymous with *o*, and still retained in such words as *Mikado* (see p. 35); *miya*, lit. “honourable house,” hence “a Shintō temple,” less often “a palace,” and, with the addition of the word *sama*, “a prince” or “princess” of the Imperial Family of Japan. In the phrase *o mi ashi*, “your feet,” the two honorifics *o* and *mi* are used pleonastically.
- ¶ 402. In order to make verbs polite, the plain forms, as given in the verbal paradigms on pp. 154—9, are replaced by those in *masū*, illustrated on p. 160. These are, however, scarcely honorific in the proper sense of the word, that is to say that they are more often simply marks of a courteous style than of any special respect paid to the person addressed. For the latter purpose it is usual to employ a periphrasis consisting of the word *o*, “honourable,” the indefinite form of the verb, and *mōsu* (“I say”) if the first person is intended, or *nasaru* (less frequently *ni naru*) if the second or third person is intended. *Nasaru* means “to deign,” *ni naru* means “to become.” Thus *tanomu*, “to ask,” becomes *o tanomi mōsu*, “I ask,” and *o tanomi nasaru*, or *o tanomi ni naru*, “you ask.” The past *tanonda* becomes *o tanomi mōshīta* and *o tanomi nastta*, etc. The polite termination *masū* may be superadded, thus: *o tanomi mōshimasū*, *o tanomi nasaimasū*; *o tanomi mōshimashīta*, *o tanomi nasaimashīta*. The periphrases here indicated are used in addressing equals and superiors. They need not indeed always be accorded the preference over the simpler forms, but

they should be scattered about pretty freely. The more exalted the rank of the person addressed, the more frequently must they be introduced.

¶ 403. Another way of making a verb honorific is to replace the ordinary conjugation by the corresponding potential forms, it sounding more polite to suggest that a person is *able to do* a thing than bluntly to state that he does it. Thus we have *noborareru*, for *noboru*, “to go up;” *naku narareru*, for *naku naru*, “to die.” This locution is specially affected by the lower classes in speaking of their betters; but in some few cases it is adopted by all the world, as *iraserareru* and *ōserareru* (usually corrupted to *irassharu* and *ossharu*, as explained in the N. B. near the bottom of p. 251).

¶ 404. The use of the verb *ageru*, “to raise,” construed with the gerund, shows that something is being done by that lowly person myself for some one above me. The use of *itadaku* shows that some one superior to me is condescending enough to do something for me. We have already noticed this incidentally under the heading of passive verbs, in ¶ 312, pp. 203—4. Here are a few additional examples :

|                   |                                   |                   |                                                                                          |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kiite</i>      | <i>agemashō.</i>                  | }                 | “I will go and ask<br>for you.”                                                          |
| <i>Hearing</i>    | <i>will-lift-up.</i>              |                   |                                                                                          |
| <i>Kiite</i>      | <i>itadakitō</i>                  | }                 | “I wish you would be<br>so kind as to ask” (for<br>me).                                  |
| <i>Hearing</i>    | <i>wishing-to-put-on-the-head</i> |                   |                                                                                          |
| <i>gozaimasū.</i> | <i>am.</i>                        |                   |                                                                                          |
| <i>Oshiete</i>    | <i>itadakitai.</i>                | }                 | “I wish you would be<br>so kind as to show me<br>how.”                                   |
| <i>Teaching</i>   | <i>wish-to-put-on-the-head.</i>   |                   |                                                                                          |
| <i>O</i>          | <i>tsuide</i>                     | <i>ni</i>         | } “I venture to hope<br>that you will take that<br>opportunity of letting me<br>see it.” |
| <i>Honourable</i> | <i>opportunity</i>                | <i>in,</i>        |                                                                                          |
| <i>misele</i>     | <i>itadakitō</i>                  | <i>gozaimasū.</i> |                                                                                          |
| <i>showing</i>    | <i>wishing-to-receive</i>         | <i>am.</i>        |                                                                                          |

¶ 405. There are, moreover, several constantly recurring ideas, for which separate verbs are employed according as the expression is meant to be honorific or humble. The chief of these are :

| PLAIN VERB.                                 | HONORIFIC.                                            | HUMBLE.                                            |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>au</i> , "to meet ;"                     | <i>o ai nasaru</i> ,                                  | <i>o me ni kakaru</i> .                            |
| <i>iku</i> , "to go ;"                      | { <i>o ide nasaru</i> ,*<br><i>irassharu</i> ,        | { <i>mairu</i> , <i>agaru</i> ,<br><i>makaru</i> . |
| <i>iru</i> or } "to be ;"<br><i>oru</i> , } | { <i>o ide nasaru</i> ,<br><i>irassharu</i> ,         | { <i>iru</i> , <i>oru</i> .                        |
| <i>iu</i> , "to say ;"                      | <i>ossharu</i> ,                                      | <i>mōshi-ageru</i> .                               |
| <i>kariru</i> , "to borrow ;"               | <i>o kari nasaru</i> ,                                | <i>haishaku suru</i> .                             |
| <i>kiku</i> , "to hear ;"                   | <i>o kiki nasaru</i> ,                                | <i>uketamawaru</i> .                               |
| <i>kuru</i> , "to come ;"                   | { <i>o ide nasaru</i> ,<br><i>irassharu</i> ,         | { <i>mairu</i> , <i>agaru</i> ,<br><i>makaru</i> . |
| <i>miru</i> , "to see ;"                    | <i>goran nasaru</i> ,                                 | <i>haiken suru</i> .                               |
| <i>miseru</i> , "to show ;"                 | <i>o mise nasaru</i> ,                                | <i>o me ni kakeru</i> .                            |
| <i>suru</i> , "to do ;"                     | { <i>nasaru</i> ,<br><i>asobasu</i> ,                 | { <i>suru</i> .                                    |
| <i>taberu</i> , "to eat ;"                  | ( <i>meshi</i> )- <i>ageru</i> ,                      | { <i>itadaku</i> , <i>chōdai</i><br><i>suru</i> .  |
| <i>ukeru</i> , "to receive ;"               | <i>o uke nasaru</i> ,                                 | { <i>itadaku</i> , <i>chōdai</i><br><i>suru</i> .  |
| <i>yaru</i> , "to give ;"                   | { <i>kudasaru</i> ,<br><i>kureru</i> , (less polite)} | { <i>ageru</i> ,<br><i>shinjō suru</i> .           |

*N. B.* The slightly irregular verb *irassharu* (see ¶ 270, p. 171), which is used to express so many shades of meaning, is a corruption of *iraserareru*, the potential of the causative of *iru*, "to enter." *Ossharu*, the honorific equivalent of *iu*, "to say," is a corruption of *ōserareru*, the potential of the little-used verb *ōseru*, "to say."

¶ 406. Of course the honorific verbs can only be employed in speaking to or of others, while the humble verbs are

\* Or *o ide ni naru*. Similarly in the instances given below. 251

applied only to the speaker himself, or to some one intimately connected with him, for instance, his own child or servant.

The following are a few examples of their use :

|                   |                  |           |                 |              |                              |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------|-----------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| <i>O</i>          | <i>me</i>        | <i>ni</i> | <i>kakete</i>   | <i>mo.</i>   | } “ May I show it to you ? ” |
| <i>Honourable</i> | <i>eyes</i>      | <i>in</i> | <i>pointing</i> | <i>even,</i> |                              |
| <i>yō</i>         | <i>gozaimasū</i> | <i>ka</i> | <i>?</i>        |              |                              |
| <i>good</i>       | <i>is</i>        | <i>?</i>  |                 |              |                              |

|                   |                |                       |           |          |                                        |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------|----------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>O</i>          | <i>mise</i>    | <i>nasaimasen</i>     | <i>ka</i> | <i>?</i> | } “ Please won't you show it to me ? ” |
| <i>Honourably</i> | <i>show</i>    | <i>deign-not</i>      | <i>?</i>  |          |                                        |
| <i>or</i>         | <i>Misete</i>  | <i>kudasaimasen</i>   | <i>ka</i> | <i>?</i> |                                        |
|                   | <i>Showing</i> | <i>condescend-not</i> | <i>?</i>  |          |                                        |

|                     |               |                 |           |          |                          |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------|----------|--------------------------|
| <i>Haiken</i>       | <i>ga</i>     | <i>dekimasū</i> | <i>ka</i> | <i>?</i> | } “ May I look at it ? ” |
| <i>Adoring-look</i> | <i>(nom.)</i> | <i>can</i>      | <i>?</i>  |          |                          |

|             |                     |                 |                   |          |                                                           |
|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kō</i>   | <i>iu</i>           | <i>hanashi</i>  | <i>wo</i>         | <i>o</i> | } “ Have you heard this story (or this piece of news) ? ” |
| <i>Such</i> | <i>story</i>        | <i>(accus.)</i> | <i>honourably</i> |          |                                                           |
| <i>kiki</i> | <i>nasaimashita</i> | <i>ka</i>       | <i>?</i>          |          |                                                           |
| <i>hear</i> | <i>have-deigned</i> | <i>?</i>        |                   |          |                                                           |

|              |                            |                   |
|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Mada</i>  | <i>uketamawarimasen.</i>   | } “ No, not yet.” |
| <i>Still</i> | <i>(I) have-not-heard.</i> |                   |

|           |                 |                    |                     |
|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sō</i> | <i>osshatte</i> | <i>kudasai.</i>    | } “ Please say so.” |
| <i>So</i> | <i>saying</i>   | <i>condescend.</i> |                     |

|            |                 |                             |                                   |
|------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Uso</i> | <i>wo</i>       | <i>mōshi-agemasen.</i>      | } “ I am not deceiving you, Sir.” |
| <i>Lie</i> | <i>(accus.)</i> | <i>(I) say-lift-not-up.</i> |                                   |

|              |           |                    |          |                             |
|--------------|-----------|--------------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Doko</i>  | <i>ye</i> | <i>irassharu</i>   | <i>?</i> | } “ Where are you going ? ” |
| <i>Where</i> | <i>to</i> | <i>deign-to-go</i> | <i>?</i> |                             |

|               |           |                   |                                 |
|---------------|-----------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Gakkō</i>  | <i>ye</i> | <i>mairimasū.</i> | } “ I am going to the college.” |
| <i>School</i> | <i>to</i> | <i>go.</i>        |                                 |

|                   |              |           |                            |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------|-----------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>O</i>          | <i>daiji</i> | <i>ni</i> | <i>asobase.</i>            | } “ Mind you take care of yourself.” |
| <i>Honourable</i> | <i>care</i>  | <i>to</i> | <i>be-please-it-to-do.</i> |                                      |

¶ 407. The treatment of the imperative mood calls for special notice. The honorific verbs mentioned in ¶ 405 make use of their imperatives, thus :



|                                                       |                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>asobase!</i>                                       | “be pleased to do!”                       |
| <i>goran nasai!</i>                                   | “deign to look!”                          |
| <i>irasshai!</i> or <i>irasshai-</i><br><i>mashī!</i> | “deign to go!” ( <i>or come, or be.</i> ) |
| <i>o ide nasai!</i>                                   |                                           |
| <i>kudasai!</i>                                       | “condescend to give!”                     |
| <i>meshi-agare!</i>                                   | “deign to eat” ( <i>or drink!</i> )       |
| <i>nasai!</i>                                         | “deign to do!”                            |
| <i>osshaimashī!</i>                                   | “deign to say!”                           |

*N. B.* *O ide nasai* is often familiarly abbreviated to *o ide*; *goran nasai* to *goran*.

¶ 408. But except occasionally in addressing coolies or one's own servants, and in the naval and military words of command, the imperative mood of other verbs can scarcely be said to be in use (conf. ¶ 291, p. 189). Such a style of address would sound too rude and abrupt. The following examples will serve to illustrate the honorific periphrases by which the imperative is habitually replaced :

|                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                 |                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| For <i>kaku</i> ,<br>imperative of<br><i>kaku</i> , “to<br>write.” | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} o^1 \text{ } kaku^2 \text{ } nasai^3, \text{ lit. } \text{“honourably}^1 \text{ deign}^2 \text{ to write}^3.” \\ o \text{ } kaku \text{ } kudasai, \text{ ,, } \text{“honourably } \text{condescend to} \\ \text{write.”} \\ kaite \text{ } kudasai, \text{ ,, } \text{“writing condescend.”} \end{array} \right.$ |                                                                                                                                                 |                   |
|                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} o \text{ } mise \text{ } nasai, \\ o \text{ } mise \text{ } kudasai, \\ misete \text{ } kudasai, \end{array} \right.$ | “please show me.” |
|                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                 |                   |

*N. B.* Defining the difference between *nasai* and *kudasai* perhaps a little too trenchantly, we might say that the former is essentially a command, though so polite as to have its imperative force disguised, whereas *kudasai* is a request. Therefore *kudasai* should be employed when we want a friend to do something for us.—A polite imperative very common in the Written Language is obtained by means of the verb *tamau*, “to deign,” thus: *kaki-tamae*, *mise-tamae*. It is nowadays chiefly to be heard from the lips of members of the student class.

¶ 409. The above forms are those generally used in addressing equals or superiors. In speaking to the latter, the degree of politeness may be increased by lengthening the periphrasis, thus: *o<sup>1</sup> kaki<sup>2</sup> nastle<sup>3</sup> kudasai<sup>4</sup>* (“honourably<sup>1</sup> condescend<sup>4</sup> deigning<sup>3</sup> to write<sup>2</sup>”), *o mise nastle kudasai*. In addressing inferiors one may say *kaite kurei* (“writing give”), *misete kurei*, or *kaite o kun nasai* (“writing honourably giving deign”), *misete o kun nasai*, and similarly with all other verbs. (*Kun* is a corruption of *kure*, the indefinite form of *kureru*, “to give,” of which *kurei* is the imperative (see p. 171.) These latter forms are those to be preferred in speaking to one’s own servants, to coolies, and to the servants at small inns and tea-houses. They would be too familiar as a mode of address to one’s friend’s servants, or to the servants at a first-class hotel. Such must always be treated to a fair amount of the honorifics illustrated in the preceding paragraphs. The same remark applies *à fortiori* to teachers, office-writers, respectable shop-keepers, etc. In fact, from the point of view of the proper use of honorifics, the term “inferiors” includes few but coolies, peasants, and the speaker’s own children and servants. Other people may, as a matter of fact, be his social inferiors; but politeness forbids his reminding them of this by a rude mode of address. Even animals are often treated to honorifics, as when one says to a dog *o ide!* instead of *koi!* “come here!” *o tachi!* instead of *tate!* “sit up!” But this is semi-jocular.

¶ 410. It is rather common, in slipshod talk addressed to inferiors, to omit the honorific imperative, thus:

|                                 |   |                                                                           |
|---------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Cha wo irete.</i>            | } | “Make (lit. put in) some tea.”<br>(for <i>Cha wo irete o kun nasai</i> .) |
| <i>Tea (accus.) putting-in.</i> |   |                                                                           |

The sentence thus appears to end in a gerund; but the ellipsis must always be mentally supplied. Observe also the

phrase...*hō ga ii*, "it will be good to...", "you had better...", which frequently replaces the imperative, thus :

*Kō shūta hō ga ii.* { "You had better do  
Thus did side (nom.) (is) good. { it like this."

*N. B.* For *hō* conf. p 144, foot-note ; for the past *shūta* in a context where the present would better suit European ideas, see ¶ 275, pp. 176—7.

¶ 411. *Dōzo* and *dōka*, which the dictionaries give as equivalents of our word "please," are comparatively little used. The honorific equivalents of the imperative amply make good their absence. Properly speaking, both *dōzo* and *dōka* mean, not so much "please," as "somehow or other," "if possible," "by hook or by crook," "managing to do a thing," as in the following example :

|                                 |                                          |                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Dōka</i>                     | <i>watakushi no</i>                      | } "I wish it could be managed so that others would support my view of the matter." (But I hardly dare hope that they will.) |
| <i>Somehow-or-other</i>         | <i>I of</i>                              |                                                                                                                             |
| <i>jiron</i>                    | <i>two hito ga</i>                       |                                                                                                                             |
| <i>contention (accus.)</i>      | <i>people (nom.)</i>                     |                                                                                                                             |
| <i>sansei shūte kurereba ii</i> | <i>approval doing if-give, (is)good,</i> |                                                                                                                             |
| <i>ga.....</i>                  | <i>hardly dare hope that</i>             |                                                                                                                             |
| <i>but....</i>                  |                                          | <i>they will.)</i>                                                                                                          |

*Arigatō*, "thank you," is likewise used less profusely than its European equivalents. It must never be employed to mean "no, thank you." This latter phrase finds polite Japanese counterparts in *yoroshiū gozaimasū*, "it is all right (without it)," and *yoshimashō*, "I think I will desist."

¶ 412. The use of special honorific and humble words is occasionally exemplified in nouns as well as in verbs. Thus, whereas the general term for "head" is *atama*, the polite one is *o tsumuri*. But the honorific tendency comes into peculiar prominence in the case of nouns indicative of the degrees of relationship, of which we give the chief :

| PLAIN NOUN.     |                    | HONORIFIC.                                  | HUMBLE.                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ani</i> ,    | “elder brother,”   | <i>o ani sama</i> ,                         | <i>ani(ki)</i> .                                                                                                                            |
| <i>chichi</i> , | “father,”          | <i>otottsān</i> ,                           | } <i>oyaji</i> .                                                                                                                            |
|                 |                    | <i>go shimpu</i> ,                          |                                                                                                                                             |
|                 |                    | <i>go rōjin</i> ,                           |                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>haha</i> ,   | “mother,”          | <i>okkasan</i> ,                            | { <i>haha</i> .                                                                                                                             |
|                 |                    |                                             | { <i>o fūkuro</i> .                                                                                                                         |
| <i>musūko</i> , | “son,”             | <i>go shūshoku</i> ,                        | <i>segare</i> .                                                                                                                             |
| <i>musūme</i> , | “daughter,”        | <i>o jōsan</i> ,                            | <i>musūme</i> .                                                                                                                             |
| <i>otōto</i> ,  | “younger brother,” | <i>go shatei</i> ,                          | <i>otōto</i> .                                                                                                                              |
| <i>otō</i> ,    | “husband,”         | <i>go teishu</i> ,                          | } ( <i>yado, uchi, taku</i> ,<br>(all lit. = “house”);<br>or else the <i>na</i> cor-<br>responding to our<br>Christian name<br>may be used. |
|                 |                    | (generally pronounced<br><i>go teishi</i> ) |                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>tsuma</i> ,  | “wife,”            | <i>okamisan</i> (lower class)               | } <i>sai</i> ,                                                                                                                              |
|                 |                    | <i>go shinzo</i> , (middle class)           |                                                                                                                                             |
|                 |                    | <i>saikun</i> , ,                           |                                                                                                                                             |
|                 |                    | <i>okūsama</i> ,* (upper class)             |                                                                                                                                             |

*N. B.* The humble words for “husband,” viz. *yado*, *uchi*, and *taku*, generally take *de wa* instead of the nominative particle *ga*, thus :

|                      |                 |                    |           |                                                        |
|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Yado</i>          | <i>de wa</i> ,  | <i>tabi</i>        | <i>ye</i> | } “My husband is absent, having<br>gone on a journey.” |
| <i>Husband</i>       | <i>as-for</i> , | <i>journey</i>     | <i>to</i> |                                                        |
| <i>de</i> ,          | <i>rusu de</i>  | <i>gozaimasū</i> . |           |                                                        |
| <i>having-gone</i> , | <i>absent</i>   | <i>is</i> .        |           |                                                        |

¶ 413. The words *otottsān* and *okkasan* well exemplify the remark made on p. 245, to the effect that Japanese honorifics do not *replace* the pronouns of other languages, though they often serve a somewhat analogous purpose. Being honorific words, *otottsān* and *okkasan* naturally

\* *Okūsama* is also used in the closely related sense of “a lady,” “my lady.” The term comes from *oku*, “interior,” “recess;” and *sama*, “Mr.” or “Mrs.” (referring to the retirement in which Japanese ladies formerly spent their lives).

serve to indicate “*your* father,” “*your* mother,” when *I* am speaking to *you*. But if I am addressing my own parents, they mean respectively “papa” and “mamma;” for it is natural for a dutiful son to address his parents politely. It is only in speaking *of* them to an equal or superior that he will be led to substitute the humble expressions *oyaji* and *haha*. The term *o fūkuro* is slightly vulgar. The other words in the column marked “Honorific” are used only of the relatives of the person addressed, those in the column marked “Humble” only of the first and third persons.

¶ 414. Formal speakers occasionally employ humble terms that properly belong to the Written Language only. Such are *gu*, “stupid;” *hei*, “broken down;” *setsu*, “awkward;” *so*, “rough,” “coarse;” as in

*gu-fu*, lit. “the stupid father,” i.e., “my father.”

*gu-sai*, lit. “the stupid wife,” i.e., “my wife.”

*hei-sha*, lit. “the broken-down company,” i.e., “our firm.”

*set-taku*, lit. “the awkward house,” i.e., “my house.”

*so-han*, lit. “coarse rice,” i.e., “the poor fare which alone I am able to offer you.”

¶ 415. But generally speaking, explicitly depreciatory nouns and indeed explicitly depreciatory words of any class are rare. Speakers show their humility chiefly by abstaining from applying honorifics to themselves, or to anybody or anything connected with themselves. Thus, whereas *o kuni*, lit. “honourable country,” serves to designate “your country,” the simple word *kuni* is taken to mean “my country.” Similarly the simple verbs *komarimashita*, *wakarimashita*, etc., naturally in most cases denote the first person, and signify respectively “I was troubled,” “I understand” (lit. “have understood”), whereas *Sazo o komari nasaimashitarō*

signifies "You must have been greatly troubled;" and *O wakari ni narimashita ka* ? signifies "Do you understand?"

¶ 416. There are no polite modes of address exactly corresponding to our "Sir" or "Madam." But the student who has perused this chapter with care will be able to judge how amply their absence is made good by the use of verbal and other honorifics. Of titles, that in commonest use is *Sama*, as in

*Kami Sama*, "a Shintō god or goddess."

*Shaka Sama*, "Buddha" (*the* Buddha, Shaka Muni).

*Tenshi Sama*, "the Mikado," lit. Son of Heaven."

In speaking of ordinary mortals, *Sama* is mostly abbreviated to *San*, which then corresponds to our "Mr.," thus :

*Watanabe San*, "Mr. Watanabe."

*Kōshi\** *San*, "the Minister" (Plenipotentiary).

*N. B.* Compare such French expressions as *Monsieur le Ministre*.

Sometimes *San* is replaced by the Chinese word *Kun*, lit. "Prince;" thus, *Watanabe Kun*. This expression is much affected by the young men of the present day whose slang is apt to be of the grandiloquent order. Members of the Diet also habitually refer to each other as so-and-so *Kun*.

¶ 417. There are no words corresponding to our "Mrs." and "Miss." These are replaced by such periphrases as

*Watanabe San no okūsama.* } "Mrs. Watanabe"  
*Watanabe Mr. 's lady.* }

*Watanabe San no ojōsan.* } "Miss Watanabe."  
*Watanabe Mr. 's young-lady.* }

*Pan-ya no okamisan.* "The baker's wife."

(*Instead of mentioning her surname.*)

*N. B.* Such an expression as *Watanabe San*, though properly meaning "Mr. Watanabe," has come, quite of late years, to be sometimes

\* *Kōshi*, written with different Chinese characters, also means "Confucius." But he, as an ancient sage, would be *Kōshi Sama*, not *Kōshi San*.

employed to signify "Mrs." or "Miss Watanabe" in cases where no confusion of persons can arise.

¶ 418. Women's personal names (corresponding to our Christian names) are preceded by the honorific *o*, and followed by the title *San*; but the *San* is omitted in familiar intercourse. Such names are mostly borrowed from graceful natural objects, less often from other sources, thus :

|                      |              |               |         |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------|---------|
| <i>O Hana San</i> ,  | (Honourable) | " Blossom "   | (Miss). |
| <i>O Haru San</i> ,  | ,,           | " Spring "    | ,,      |
| <i>O Matsu San</i> , | ,,           | " Pine-tree " | ,,      |
| <i>O Sei San</i> ,   | ,,           | " Pure "      | ,,      |
| <i>O Take San</i> ,  | ,,           | " Bamboo "    | ,,      |
| <i>O Yone San</i> ,  | ,,           | " Rice "      | ,,      |

Honorific *o* is, however, dropped before such women's names as consist of more than two syllables, thus *Kiyoshi (San)*, *Sonoe (San)*, not *O Kiyoshi (San)*, *O Sonoe (San)*; neither is it employed before surnames or men's personal names (for these see p. 36). Observe that Japanese usage puts the surname first, the personal name last.

¶ 419. It is not usual in Japan, as it is in England, to drop the title of "Mr." between friends. To do so would savour, if not exactly of contempt, at least of that excessive familiarity by which contempt is said to be bred. Officials, however, mostly drop the "Mr." in addressing their subordinates when on duty. This is on account of the halo which surrounds superiority in official rank. No Japanese speaker ever applies the word "Mr." to himself. If, therefore, a friend's servant asks what name he is to announce, the caller must give his name simply as *Smith*, *Brown*, or whatever it may be. It would sound conceited were he to speak of himself as *Smith San* or *Brown San*.

## CHAPTER XII.

---

### SYNTAX.

¶ 420. The fundamental rule of Japanese construction is that qualifying words precede the words they qualify. Thus the adjective or genitive precedes the noun which it defines, the adverb precedes the verb, and explanatory or dependent clauses precede the principal clause. The object likewise precedes the verb. The predicative verb or adjective of each clause is placed at the end of that clause, the predicative verb or adjective of the main clause rounding off the entire sentence.

*N. B.* The adverb, instead of immediately preceding the verb which it defines, sometimes heads the whole clause.

¶ 421. Postpositions, which are words corresponding for the most part to English prepositions and conjunctions, follow the word or clause to which they belong. This seems, at first sight, an infraction of the fundamental rule of Japanese construction as laid down in the preceding paragraph. But the history of the language shows that this apparent exception is really an exemplification of the rule itself. Some of the postpositions were originally verbs, and as such naturally follow their object, e.g. *kore<sup>1</sup> yori<sup>2</sup>*, “*than<sup>2</sup> this<sup>1</sup>,*” “*hence-forward,*” lit. “*leaning (yori being from the verb yoru, “to lean”) on this.*” Some were nouns, e.g. *wa*, which meant “*thing,*” “*person,*” so that *fune wa*, which now means “*as for the ship*” or simply “*the ship,*” originally meant “*ship thing.*” *Yama no ue*, “*on the mountain,*” means lit. “*the top (u) side (he) of (no) the mountain*



(*yama*).” In such cases it is, historically speaking, the noun which qualifies the postposition, not the postposition the noun. Other postpositions again were independent exclamations, each, so to speak, forming a clause by itself. Such is the accusative postposition *wo* (see ¶ 130, p. 92). Altogether, in every case where the etymology of a postposition is traceable, we find that its position *after* the noun constitutes no exception to the main rule of construction set forth in ¶ 420.

¶ 422. When the verbs of several clauses are intended to express the same tense or mood, it is only the last of these verbs that takes the suffix by which such tense or mood is indicated. The previous verbs all assume the gerundial (or, in the higher style, the indefinite) form. Adjectives assume either the gerundial or the indefinite form. Conf. ¶¶ 278—283 and ¶ 180.

*N. B.* This rule, which was formerly inviolable, is now occasionally transgressed.

¶ 423. When the verb has a subject, this usually heads the sentence. But most verbs are subjectless, and express rather *a coming-to-be with reference to some person* than an act explicitly declared to be performed by him. In the absence of a subject, the word on which it is desired to lay most stress is often placed at the beginning of the sentence, and isolated by means of the particle *wa*. The student should compare with this paragraph what has been said of *wa* in pp. 85 *et seq.*, and the further discussion of the subjectlessness of Japanese verbs, which will be found in ¶¶ 427, pp. 266—7.

¶ 424. The following examples will serve to illustrate the above rules :

|                        |                |   |                    |
|------------------------|----------------|---|--------------------|
| <i>Ki-iroi</i>         | <i>hana.</i>   | } | “A yellow flower.” |
| <i>Yellow-coloured</i> | <i>flower.</i> |   |                    |

- Makka na kao.*  
Quite-red being face. } "A very red face."
- Kura no kagi.*  
Godown of key. } "The key of the godown."
- Kirei ni sorotte*  
Prettily being-in-order  
*orimasū.*  
are. } "They are all nicely ar-  
ranged."
- Mae kara yoku shil-*  
Before from, well know-  
*teru hito.*  
ing-am person. } "A person whom I knew  
well beforehand."
- Ki wo tsūketē kuda-*  
Spirit(accus.) fixing con-  
*sai.*  
descend. } "Please take care."
- Kono tsugi no shūku*  
This next of post-town  
*made, nan ri hodo*  
till, what leagues about  
*arimashō?*  
probably-is? } "How many miles may it  
be to the next town?"
- Goku goku tsugō*  
Extremely extremely convenience  
*ga warui.*  
(nom.) is-bad. } "It is extremely incon-  
venient."
- Taisō ni Nihon-go*  
Greatly Japan-language  
*yoku tsūjimasū.*  
well communicates. } "He speaks Japanese  
beautifully."
- Iisu made matte*  
When till having-waited  
*mo, yūbin ga hitotsu mo*  
even, post (nom.) one even  
*kimasen kara, makoto ni*  
comes-not because, truth in  
*shimpai ni narimasū.*  
anxiety to (I)become. } "Wait as I may, no letters  
come, so that I am getting  
quite anxious."

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |   |                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Ano hen wa, fuyu</i><br/>That neighbourhood us-for, winter<br/><i>ni naru to, shimo-doke de</i><br/>to becomes when, frost-melting by,<br/><i>michi ga warukūte, aruku koto</i><br/>roads (nom.) bad-being, walking act<br/><i>ga dekimasen.</i><br/>(nom.) forthcomes-not.</p> | } | <p>“When winter comes, the roads in that neighbourhood are so bad with the thaw, that it is impossible to walk.”</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Iya, mō! okite, te</i><br/>No indeed! having-risen, hands<br/><i>wo arau koto mo dekimasen</i><br/>(accus.) wash act even forthcomes-not<br/><i>deshīta. Chōzu-bachi no mizu</i><br/><i>wa</i> Washing-basin 's water<br/><i>ga maru de kōri-tsuite</i><br/>(nom.) altogether freeze-sticking<br/><i>shimatte, dō shite mo</i><br/>having-finished, how doing even,<br/><i>shiyō ga arimasen deshīta.</i><br/>doing-way (nom.) is-not was.</p> | } | <p>“No indeed! when I got up, I couldn't wash my hands. The basin was entirely frozen over, and all my efforts to break the ice were in vain.” (More lit., “It was a fact (<i>deshīta</i>) that I cannot wash my hands. . . ; it was a fact that my efforts are vain,” etc.)</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |   |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Sonna koto wo osshai-</i><br/>Such things (accus.) deigning-not-<br/><i>masezu ni, sekkaku motte</i><br/>to-say, toilsomely having-carried<br/><i>kita mon(o) desū kara, dōzo</i><br/>have-come thing (it) is because, please<br/><i>totte kudasai.</i><br/><i>tuking condescend.</i></p> | } | <p>“Please do not feel any such delicacy about it, but oblige me by accepting it, as I have taken the trouble to bring it.”<br/>(Said to one who hesitates to accept a gift.)</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Or take the following proverb :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |   |                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Forō no makoto to, tamago no</i><br/>Courtesan 's truth and, egg 's<br/><i>shū-kaku, areba misoka</i><br/>four-sides,—if (these) are, last-day-of-the<br/><i>ni tsūki ga deru.</i><br/>month on, moon (nom.) will-come-out.</p> | } | <p>“When you find a truthful courtesan or a square egg, then will the moon come out on the last night of the month.”</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* According to the old Japanese calendar, which went by real “moons,” not by artificial “months,” it would have been a miracle for the moon to come out on the last night of the month, i.e., on the night before new moon.

¶ 425. Now for a slightly more formal example, specially illustrating the use of the indefinite form in correlated clauses. It is taken from a modern Buddhist sermon :—

*Ūma ni mukatte*  
*Horse to confronting,*  
*“Kōkō wo tsūkuse!”*  
*“Filial-piety (accus.) exhaust!”*  
*ōkami ni mukatte “Chūgi*  
*wolf to confronting, “Loyalty*  
*wo tsūkuse!” nado to*  
*(accus.) exhaust!” etcetera, that*  
*itta tokoro ga, dekiru*  
*said place although, forthcomes*  
*koto de wa gozaimasen*  
*fact indeed is-not*  
*ga,— hito wa*  
*whereas,— person as-for,*  
*ze-hi zen-aku wo*  
*right-wrong good-evil (accus.)*  
*wakatsu chie ga*  
*discern intelligence (nom.)*  
*atte, kimi ni chū wo*  
*being, lord to loyalty (accus.)*  
*tsūkushi, oya ni*  
*exhausting, parent to*  
*kō wo tsūkushi,*  
*filial-piety (accus.) exhausting,*  
*kyōdai wa naka*  
*brethren as-for, intercourse*  
*yoku, fūfu wa*  
*being-good, spouses as-for,*  
*mutsumashiku, hōyū ni*  
*being-harmonious, friends to*  
*wa shitashiku, makoto*  
*as-for, being-intimate, sincerity*  
*wo motte majiwat-*  
*(accus.) taking, having-inter-*  
*te koso, hajimete shin*  
*course indeed, firstly truth*  
*no hito to iwaremasū.*  
*'s person that gets-said.*

“Supposing you were to tell a horse to practise filial piety, or a wolf to practise loyalty, those animals would not be able to do what you required of them. But man has the intelligence wherewith to discern right from wrong, good from evil; and he can only then first be said to be truly man, when he practises loyalty towards his master and filial piety towards his parents, when he is affectionate towards his brethren, when he lives harmoniously with his wife, when he is amiable towards his friends, and acts sincerely in all his social intercourse.”

Here the two *tsūkushi*'s, *yoku*, *mutsumashiku*, and *shitashiku*—five indefinite forms—must all be rendered by the gerund, because *majiwalle* the verb of the next clause, with which they are all correlated, is a gerund.

¶ 426. Next we give another passage from the same sermon, illustrating the use of the gerund in correlated clauses, and also, in one instance (*sūkunaku*), that of the indefinite form. *Sūkunaku* is rendered by the present “are few,” because the verb *omoimasū* at the end of the sentence is in the present tense :—

*Kono goro ni itarimashite,*  
*This period at having-arrived,*  
*Bukkyō to mōsu mono*  
*Buddhism that (they)say thing*  
*wa, tada katō-jimmin no*  
*as-for, merely low-class-people 's*  
*shinzuru lokoro to natte,*  
*believing place that having-become,*  
*chūō ijō de wa*  
*middle-class thence-upwards in as-for,*  
*sono dōri wo wakimaeteru*  
*its reason (accus.) discerning-are*  
*hito ga sūkunaku; shūmon*  
*persons(nom.) are-few; religion*  
*to ieba, sōshiki no toki*  
*that if-one-says, funeral-rite 's time*  
*bakari ni mochiuru koto no*  
*only in employ thing 's*  
*yō ni omoimasū.*  
*manner in (they) think.*

“At the present day Buddhism has sunk into being the belief of the lower classes only. Few persons in the middle and upper classes understand its *raison d'être*, most of them fancying that religion is a thing which comes into play only at funeral services.”

Again take the following :

*Hito ka to omoeba,*  
*Person ? that if-one-thinks,*  
*hito de mo naku; yūrei ka*  
*person also is-not; ghost ?*  
*to omoeba, yūrei de*  
*that if-one-thinks, ghost*  
*mo nai.*  
*also is-not.*

“One might have taken them for human beings; but they were not human beings. Or else one might have taken them for ghosts; but neither were they ghosts.”

Here the indefinite form *naku* has exactly the same sense as the final *nai*; but it is preferred to *nai* in the first instance, because it merely ends a clause and does not complete a sentence.

For further examples of the correlation of sentences by means of the indefinite form and of the gerund, see pp. 178—181, and also the stories and extracts in the Practical Part *passim*.

¶ 427. Of all the peculiarities of Japanese syntax, the most puzzling to the foreign student is the already mentioned fact that most sentences are subjectless. It is not that the subject is dropped but still “understood,” as so frequently happens in Latin, but that it does not exist at all in the mind of the Japanese speaker. The best way of getting behind this difficulty is to consider the case of passive constructions in our own language. We may say, for instance, “A house in European style has recently been built next door to mine.” Now by whom has it been built? The sentence gives no information on this point. The action is affirmed, but no mention is made of any agent. In Japanese it is just the same, with this difference, that the verb used is an active instead of a passive one. English people say “A house has been built (*by* *?*).?) has built a house.” In strict reason the two assertions are identical; for it is only the grammatical clothing of the thought, not the thought itself, that varies. Thus the example in question, translated into Japanese, would run as follows:

*Konaida watakūshi no tonari ni seiyō-zūkuri*  
*Recently I of next-door in, European-construction*  
*no ie wo talemashita.*  
*'s house (accus.) has-built.*

I. e., "Next door to me, recently (*some one*) has built a European house."

Again, take such an instance as "I think I'll send these boots to be mended." We do not in English explicitly state who is to do the mending. In Japanese the sentence will run thus :

*Kono kutsu wo naoshi ni yarimashō.*  
*These boots (accus.) mend to will-probably-send.*

Here the verb *naoshi*, "mend," is active, but as usual subjectless, so that the wording is, as literally as may be :— "I am going to send the boots (*for some one*) to mend." The verb *yarimashō* is subjectless too ; but no ambiguity can arise with regard to it. For who, under ordinary circumstances, will trouble himself about any boots but his own? The pronoun "I" is so obviously the one to be supplied that its omission can cause no ambiguity. One specially complicated class of instances, in which two different pronouns must be supplied in the same clause, has been already treated of from other points of view in ¶ 312 and ¶ 404. Let us again take up the last example of ¶ 404, omitting the first unessential words. We thus get *Misete<sup>1</sup> itadakitō<sup>2</sup> gozaimasū<sup>3</sup>*, lit "to-be<sup>3</sup> wishing-to-receive<sup>2</sup> showing<sup>1</sup>," but employed to signify "*I*-am wishing-to-receive *your* showing," in other words, "I wish you would show me." The Japanese go the length of omitting personal pronouns in almost all cases. The perpetual iteration of "I" and "me," "you," "your," "he," etc., which characterises the languages of the West, would seem to them no less tiresome than superfluous and absurd. The student is referred to almost every page of this Handbook, and more particularly to every page of the Practical Part, for examples of the omission of personal pronouns and of

the general subjectlessness of verbs. He should also refer to ¶ 71 and to ¶¶ 122—125, in which latter the difficult particle *wa*, which has a bearing on this point, is treated of.

¶ 428. The relative order of the direct and indirect objects of the verb depends on circumstances. Whichever of the two it is desired to emphasise comes first. In English the same end is often attained by using the word “the” for the more important, and “some” for the less important of the two objects. Thus,

*Hito ni kane wo tsūkawasu*  
*Person to money (accus.) to-give*

means “To give the person some money.”

*Kane wo hito ni tsūkawasu*

means “To give the money to somebody.”

¶ 429. Though, properly speaking, every sentence ought to terminate in a verb (or adjective used as a verb), the final verb is often omitted for brevity's sake, when there can be no ambiguity in the meaning, especially in short idiomatic sentences, for instance :

*Kore de shimai (desū).* } “This is the last.”  
*This by, end is.* } (*The full form is the politer.*)

*Chotto haiken (wo* }  
*A-little respectful-glance (accus.)* } “Please just let me look  
*negaimasū).* } a minute.”  
*(I) beg.*

*Watakūshi sansei (itashimasū).* } “I beg to second the  
*I seconding do.* } (motion.”

*Iisu go shukkin (ni* }  
*When angust office-going to* } “When does he go to  
*narimasū) ?* } office?”  
*becomes ?*



|                   |                              |                  |                                                                                                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Makoto</i>     | <i>ni</i>                    | <i>shibaraku</i> | } “ Really it is quite a time<br>since we last met.”<br>(This is a set phrase in constant<br>use.) |
| <i>Truth</i>      | <i>in,</i>                   | <i>some-time</i> |                                                                                                    |
| ( <i>o</i>        | <i>me ni kakarimasen</i>     |                  |                                                                                                    |
| <i>honourable</i> | <i>eyes on, (I) hang-not</i> |                  |                                                                                                    |
| <i>deshīta</i> ). |                              |                  |                                                                                                    |

*it-has-been.*

|                           |                       |           |                                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Taisō</i>              | <i>ni kirei desū</i>  | <i>to</i> | } “ It is said to be extremely<br>pretty.” |
| <i>Greatly</i>            | <i>pretty is that</i> |           |                                            |
| ( <i>hīto ga imasū.</i> ) |                       |           |                                            |
| <i>people (nom.) say.</i> |                       |           |                                            |
|                           |                       |           |                                            |

This omission of final verbs, though the commonest form of ellipsis, is not the only one. The fondness of the Japanese for long and highly complex sentences (conf. ¶ 442) often lands them in the predicament of not knowing exactly how to finish. The speaker then perforce breaks off either with a gerund (conf. ¶ 410), or the postposition *ga* (conf. ¶ 287, p. 186), or a concessive form, somewhat as if one should end by “and..” or “but..,” through absence of further definitely expressible deas. Thus we get such sentences as

*Ie; sō bakari mo gozaimasen keredomo..,*  
*No; so only even is-not although,*

meaning “That is not the only reason.” There is some other reason behind; but the speaker either does not care to explain it, or does not exactly know how best to set to work to do so.

¶ 430. As in the case of verbs only the last of a set of correlated verbs takes the suffix denoting the tense or mood which is common to them all, so also in the case of nouns it is only the last of a set of nouns that takes the postposition common to all. Thus :

|                                |                            |                        |                                                   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Yokohama</i> <sup>1</sup> , | <i>Kōbe</i> <sup>2</sup> , | <i>Naga-</i>           | } “The ports <sup>3</sup> of <sup>5</sup> Yokoha- |
| <i>saki</i> <sup>3</sup>       | <i>nado</i> <sup>4</sup>   | <i>no</i> <sup>6</sup> |                                                   |
|                                |                            |                        | } ma, Kōbe, Nagasaki, etc <sup>4</sup> .”         |

*N. B.* The word "etc." might be dropped from the English translation, as *nado* is often absolutely meaningless.

|                   |                       |               |   |                        |
|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------|---|------------------------|
| <i>O</i>          | <i>cha to</i>         | <i>kwashi</i> | } | "Bring tea and cakes." |
| <i>Honourable</i> | <i>tea and</i>        | <i>cakes</i>  |   |                        |
| <i>wo</i>         | <i>motte</i>          | <i>koi.</i>   |   |                        |
| <i>(accus.)</i>   | <i>having-carried</i> | <i>come.</i>  |   |                        |

*Mo* (with any other postposition which may precede it) is, however, suffixed to every noun of a set, thus :—

|                       |                       |   |                                  |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| <i>Ryūkyū ni mo,</i>  | <i>Chōsen ni mo.</i>  | } | "Both in Luchu and<br>in Korea." |
| <i>Luchu in also,</i> | <i>Korea in also.</i> |   |                                  |

¶ 431. Inversion of the regular order of words is rare. It occurs for the most part only when a word or clause which ought to have been inserted in an earlier portion of the sentence, has been forgotten, and is therefore perforce brought in at the end. From such forgetfulness result phrases like the following, which not infrequently occur in conversation :

*Sono okamisan, jishin to ieba, mas-  
That married-woman, earthquake that if-one-say, perfectly-  
sao ni naru,—kowagatte.  
green to becomes,—being-frightened.*

It should, properly speaking, run thus :

|                                   |   |                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sono okamisan,* jishin</i>     | } | "Mrs. (so-and-so) is so<br>frightened of earthquakes, that<br>she turns green at the bare men-<br>tion of them." |
| <i>to ieba, kowagatte, massao</i> |   |                                                                                                                  |
| <i>ni naru.</i>                   |   |                                                                                                                  |
| <i>(more politely narimasū.)</i>  |   |                                                                                                                  |

Again :

*Naka-naka hi nando ni atatcha iraremasen,—  
Positively } five etcetera at as-for-touching, (I)cannot-be,—  
goran no tōri, isogi no yō desū kara.  
august-glance 's way, hurry 's business is because.*

\* If a lady is meant, then say *okūsama*, not *okamisan*. Conf. middle of p. 256.

This sentence should, properly speaking, be

*Goran no tōri, isogi no yō desū kara, naka-naka hi nando ni atatcha iraremasen.* } “I am, as you see, far too busy to be able to sit quiet, warming my hands at the fire.”

In familiar conversation, occasional inversion, such as is here instanced, may perhaps be thought to add liveliness and variety to the expression. But it would hardly be considered appropriate in a set speech. In Japan as elsewhere, however, usage sanctions a few special locutions which seem to run counter to the general rules of the language, for instance, the placing of the adverb *after* its verb in phrases like *Ima kita bakari*, which is more idiomatic than *Ima bakari kita*, “He has just come.”

¶ 432. Negatives destroy each other, as in English, thus :

*Nai koto wa nai.* } “It is not a fact that there  
*Not-is fact as-for, is-not.* } are none,” *i.e.*, “There are  
some,” or “There are *some*.”

*Kō shinakereba narimasen.* } “It won’t do not to do  
*Thus if-do-not, is-not.* } thus,” *i.e.*, “It *must* be done  
in this way.”

*N. B.* Such mutually destructive negatives are very frequently used, the practice having been apparently borrowed from the Chinese.

Occasionally the Japanese employ a negative where we should employ a positive construction, for instance in such phrases as *Ano hito no konai mae*, lit. “Before that person’s not coming,” but signifying simply “Before he comes” (*or* came). The train of thought here seems to be that, before a man comes, he of course cannot have come yet, and similarly in other cases.

¶ 433. Japanese has no negative pronouns, adverbs, or conjunctions, such as the English words “nobody,” “nothing,” “none,” “never,” “nowhere,” “neither . . . nor,” etc. Their absence is supplied by the negative voice of the verb or adjective, combined with positive pronouns and other positive words. Thus, for the English “I know nothing,” a Japanese will say *Na(n)ni<sup>1</sup> mo<sup>2</sup> shiranai<sup>3</sup>*, “(I) know-not<sup>3</sup> anything<sup>1,2</sup>,”—more literally (so far as the grammatical expression is concerned), “I ignore everything.” For “There are none to be had anywhere,” he will say *Doko<sup>1</sup> ni<sup>2</sup> mo<sup>3</sup> gozaimasen<sup>4</sup>*, “Everywhere<sup>1,2,3</sup> (*more lit.* even<sup>3</sup> in<sup>2</sup> where<sup>1</sup>) are-non-existent<sup>4</sup>. The following examples will serve to illustrate the manner in which the various kinds of English negative and quasi-negative assertions, and other kindred idioms, are expressed in Japanese:—

|                                                     |                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Dare mo shiranai.</i> (familiar)                 | } “Nobody knows.” |
| <i>Everybody knows-not.</i> ( <i>i.e.</i> ignores)  |                   |
| <i>Donata mo go zonji ga nai.</i> ( <i>polite</i> ) |                   |
| <i>Everybody august knowledge (nom.) is-not.</i>    |                   |

|                                    |                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Shiranai hito mo gozaimasū.</i> | } “There are some persons who know not,”<br><i>i.e.</i> , “Every body doesn’t know.” |
| <i>Ignore persons also are.</i>    |                                                                                      |

|                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Shiru hito mo gozaimasū.</i>      | } “Some people know.” |
| <i>Know persons also (there)are.</i> |                       |

|                                               |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Shiru hito mo areba,</i>                   | } “Some people know,<br>and some don’t.” |
| <i>Know persons also whereas(-there)-are,</i> |                                          |
| <i>shiranai hito mo gozaimasū.</i>            |                                          |
| <i>ignore persons also (there)are.</i>        |                                          |

|                                                   |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Shitteru hito wa sūkunō</i>                    | } “There are few who know;” or “Few people know.” |
| <i>Knowing-are persons as-for, few gozaimasū.</i> |                                                   |
| <i>are.</i>                                       |                                                   |

|                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Mattaku zonzimasen.</i>  | } “I don’t know at all.” |
| <i>Completely know-not.</i> |                          |

- Kuwashiku wa zanjimasen.* } "I don't quite know."  
*Minutely us-for, know-not.*
- Mattaku tsumi ga nai.* { "He has not committed  
*Completely crime (nom.) is-not.* the smallest crime."
- Ano hito wa, ichi-do mo* }  
*That person us-for, one-time even* } "He has never once  
*kita koto ga gozaimasen.* } come."  
*came act (nom.) is-not.*
- Konai toki mo gozaimasū.* { "There are times when  
*Comes-not time also is.* he doesn't come," *i.e.*,  
 "He doesn't always come."
- Kuru toki mo areba,* }  
*Comes time also whereas-there-is,* } "Sometimes he comes,  
*konai toki mo gozaimasū.* } and sometimes he doesn't."  
*comes-not time also is.*
- Kuru koto wa sūkuro gozaimasū.* } "He rarely comes."  
*Comes act us-for, few are.*
- Konai koto wa gozaimasen.* { "There is no such thing  
*Comes-not act us-for, is-not.* as his not coming," *i.e.*  
 "He *does* come."
- Sūkoshi mo konaku narimashita.* { "He has quite left  
*A-little even coming-not has-become.* off coming."
- Are kara ijirimasen.* } "I have never touched  
*That from (I)middle-not.* it since then."
- Doko ye mo ikimasen.* { "I don't go anywhere,"  
*Everywhere go-not.* or "I go nowhere."
- Sappari wakarimasen.* }  
*Quite (I)understand-not.* } "I don't understand it  
*Sūkoshi mo wakarimasen.* } at all."  
*A-little even understand-not.*
- Yoku wakarimasen.* }  
*Well understand-not.* } "I don't quite under-  
 stand it."
- Yoku wa wakarimasen.* } "I don't quite under-  
*Well us-for, understand-not.* stand it."

*Mina miemasen.* } "I can't see any of  
*All appear-not.* } them."

*Mina wa miemasen.* } "I can't see them all."  
*All as-for, appear-not.* }

*N. B.* Observe the radical difference of signification effected by the limiting power of *wa* in such instances as the last.

*Tonto kikimasen.* } "I have heard nothing."  
*Quite (I) hear not.* }

*Amari kikimasen.* } "I have not heard  
*Too much hear-not.* } much."

*Hotondo nai kurai desū.* } "There is hardly any ;"  
*Almost exists-not degree is.* } or "There is little if any ;"  
 } *more lit.* "It is almost to  
 } the pitch of there being  
 } none."

*Ano hito to kyōdai desū* } "It is impossible that  
*That person with, brothers are* } he shouldn't know about  
*kara, shiranai to iu wake* } it, seeing he is the fellow's  
*because, ignores that say reason* } brother."  
*ni wa mairimasen.* }  
*to goes-not.* }

¶ 434. The difficulty of using negative constructions correctly will disappear as soon as the learner clearly grasps the fact that in Japanese the negative and the verb are not conceived of as two separate ideas, as is mostly the case in European languages, but as a single idea. Even in European languages, however, there is no lack of parallels to this Japanese idiom. Thus "to disapprove," for "not to approve ;" "to disregard," for "not to regard ;" "impossible," for "not possible," etc., etc.

*N. B.* Custom limits the use of the word *sūkumai* (vulg. *sūkenai*), "few," to predicative constructions, as instanced in two or three of the examples in the preceding section. Thus we can only render the phrase "Few people know" by *Shitteru hito wa sūkumai* (more politely *sūkunō gozaimasū*), lit. "The knowing people are few," never by *Sūkumai hito*

*wa shitteru*. The same remark applies to the kindred adjective *ōi*, "many." The sole case in which the words *sūkunai* and *ōi* can be used attributively is in relative clauses, for instance :

|                                       |                          |   |                                                         |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nandemo,</i>                       | <i>shina no sūkunai</i>  | } | "Every kind of article is expensive when it is scarce." |
| <i>Anything-whatever,</i>             | <i>article 's scarce</i> |   |                                                         |
| <i>toki wa, ne ga takō</i>            | <i>gozaimasū.</i>        |   |                                                         |
| <i>time us-for, price (nom.) dear</i> | <i>is.</i>               |   |                                                         |

|                                               |   |                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kyō wa, kisha ni nori-te ga</i>            | } | "There was a great bustle at the train to-day, because there were such a lot of travellers." |
| <i>To-day us-for, train in, riders (nom.)</i> |   |                                                                                              |
| <i>ōi kara, yohodo konzatsu</i>               |   |                                                                                              |
| <i>many because, plentifully confusion</i>    |   |                                                                                              |

*shimashūta.*  
*did.*

It may perhaps be thought that as *toki* means "when," and *kara* means "because," the construction is not an attributive one even here. It is so, however, from the Japanese point of view, *toki* being even now apprehended as a noun signifying "time," and *kara* also having almost certainly been a noun in the archaic period of the language.

¶ 435. In Japanese almost all quotation, whether of the words of others or of the speaker's own thoughts, is direct. The manifold shiftings of person, mood, and tense, which are brought about in European languages by the use of indirect quotation, are consequently unknown. Thus a Japanese, when mentioning the plans of an absent friend, does not say "He said he would be back by Sunday;" but he repeats his friend's exact words, and says: "He said that: 'I shall be back by Sunday.'" In Japanese the phrase would run as follows:

"*Nichiyō made kaeru*" *to imashūta.*  
 "Sunday till, (I) will-return," that (he) said.

*N. B.* The word *to*, "that," cannot be omitted in such contexts. Compare also *to*, ¶ 117, p. 82.

One alteration does, however, commonly occur in quotations,—an alteration affecting the honorifics. For instance, you say to me *O<sup>1</sup> ide<sup>2</sup> nasai<sup>3</sup>*, lit. "Deign<sup>3</sup> honourable<sup>1</sup>

exit<sup>2</sup>,” i.e., “Please come.” Now, if I am repeating this remark of yours to a third person, my modesty naturally prevents me from applying honorifics to myself, even within quotation marks. I therefore express the idea “He asked me to come” thus :

*Watakūshi ni “Koi!” to iimashūta*, or *Watakūshi ni kuru yō ni iimashūta* (conf. next ¶), employing the corresponding non-honorific verb *kuru*, “to come,” in lieu of the honorific *o ide nasaru*. So persistently inherent in the Japanese habit of speech is the tendency to give honour to others, and to abase self.

¶ 436. The sole kind of indirect quotation ever employed by the Japanese is a locution with the present tense and the words *yō<sup>1</sup> ni<sup>2</sup>*, lit. “in<sup>2</sup> the manner<sup>1</sup>,” thus :

|                                                                                                                            |   |                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kitto kuru yō ni to</i><br><i>Positively come manner in that,</i><br><i>sō itte koi.</i><br><i>so having-said come.</i> | } | “Go and tell him<br>to be sure to come.”<br>(Said to an inferior in<br>speaking of another inferior.) |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |   |                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kuru yō ni to itta</i><br><i>Come manner in that (I) said</i><br><i>ga,— mukō de dō shite</i><br><i>though,—opposite at, how doing</i><br><i>mo korarenai to iimasū.</i><br><i>even, cannot-come that says.</i> | } | “I told him to come;<br>but he said it was abso-<br>lutely impossible for him<br>to do so.” |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*N. B.* *To* may be omitted after *yō ni*.—Notice the word *mukō* in the last example, and consult p. 48, line 6, for it.

The phraseology of the above examples is not polite. That of the next is extremely so :

|                                                                                                                                                                                 |   |                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Daiji ni nasaru yō</i><br><i>Carefully deign-to-do manner</i><br><i>ni yoku osshate kuda-</i><br><i>in, well deigning-to-say con-</i><br><i>saimashū.</i><br><i>descend.</i> | } | “Please be so kind as to<br>tell him to take great care of<br>himself.” |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|



Somewhat similar in character to the above are such phrases as

*Yosasō ni omoimasū.* } “I think it looks as if it  
*Good-appearance in (I) think.* } would do.”

¶ 437. Notwithstanding the example given at the beginning of the preceding paragraph (*Kitto kuru yō ni to sō ille koi*), the Japanese generally avoid such phrases containing one command within another. Thus, rather than say “Tell O Haru to come here,” they will mostly prefer the simpler expression “Call O Haru,” viz.

*O Haru wo yonde koi!*  
*O-Haru (accus.) having-called come!*  
 or more politely

*O Haru wo yonde kudasai!*  
*O-Haru (accus.) calling condescend!*

Rather than say “Tell Jirō to get the *jinrikisha* ready for me at twelve o'clock,” they will use the causative and say :

*Jū-ni-ji ni deru kara, Jirō ni kuruma no shī-*  
*Twelve-o'clock at, go-out because, Jirō to, jinrikisha 's pre-*  
*taku wo sashite oku ga ii.*  
*parations (accus.) having-caused-to-do to-place (nom.) is-good.*

I.e., as literally as may be, “As I am going out at twelve o'clock, it will be well to cause Jirō to make preparations for the *jinrikisha*.”—Similarly, “Tell him to wait” becomes “Cause him to wait,” *Matashite kudasai*.

In still more complicated cases, the difficulty is often turned by omitting one whole clause. Thus, where an English servant would say “My master told me to tell you, Sir, that he particularly wishes to see you,” a Japanese servant will more briefly say “My master said that he particularly wishes to see you.” In Japanese the sentence would run thus :

*Shujin ga zehi o ai-mōshītai to*  
*Master (nom.) positively honourably " (I) wish-to-meet" that*  
*mōshimashīta.*  
*said.*

*N. B.* Do not misinterpret the word *mōshītai* as signifying "wants to say." *O ai-mōshītai* is simply a very polite equivalent for *aitai*, the desiderative adjective of *au*, "to meet." See ¶ 402, p. 249.

On the other hand, Japanese constructions with quotations are often pleonastic, some such formula as "he said" being used both before and after the words quoted, instead of once only, as is the case in English. The following example, taken from Dr. Katō's lecture given later on in this volume, will show what we mean :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>Doitsu no tetsugakūsha Schopen-<br/> Germany's philosopher Schopen-<br/> hauer to in hito no iuta kotoba<br/> hauer that say person's said words<br/> ni, "Shūkyō wa hōtaru no<br/> in, "Religion indeed firefly's<br/> yō na mono. Kurai<br/> fashion being thing (is). Dark<br/> tokoro de nakereba, hikaru koto ga<br/> place if-is-not, shine act (nom.)<br/> dekinai" to mōshimashīta.<br/> forthcomes-not" that (he) said.</i></p> | } | <p>"The German philosopher Schopenhauer has said: 'Religion is like a firefly. It can shine only in dark places' [is what he said]."</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ 438. Interrogation is not denoted, as in European languages, by an inversion of the usual construction. The construction remains the same, but the interrogative particle *ka* is generally added. (See p. 68.)

¶ 439. Passive constructions are very sparingly used, and when used, their grammar is peculiar (see p. 198 *et seq*; also pp. 57—58, 204, and 216). The passive is almost always replaced by the subjectless active construction explained in pp. 266—267, or else by an intransitive construction, as explained in pp. 204—5 and pp. 190—1. Thus, to give

one or two additional examples, a Japanese will not say "As has already been explained." He will say "As (I) have already explained,"

*Sude ni toki-akashimashīta tōri.*  
*Already (I) have-explained way.*

He will not say "It has been notified by the Department," but "A notification has issued from the Department,"

*Yakūsho kara tasshi ga demashīta.*  
*Office from, notification (nom.) has-come-out.*

¶ 440. Inanimate objects are rarely, if ever, personified. Not only does Japanese idiom eschew all such fanciful anthropomorphic expressions as "the hand of Time," "old Father Christmas," "the spoilt child of Fortune," "Nature's abhorrence of a vacuum," etc., etc.; but it goes so far as almost to prohibit the use of the name of any inanimate thing as the subject of a transitive verb. For instance, a Japanese will not say "The rain delayed me," thus appearing to attribute an action to those inanimate things, the drops of rain; but he will turn the phrase intransitively, thus:

*Ame no tame ni ōi ni osoku narimashīta.*  
*Rain 's sake in, greatly late (I) have-become.*

I.e., "I am very late on account of the rain."

Similarly it will not come into his head to employ such a phrase as "His diligence surprises me." He will say:

*Ano hito no benkyō ni wa kanshin shimasū.*  
*That person's diligence at, admiring-astonishment (I) do.*

I.e., "I feel astonishment at his diligence."

¶ 441. Thus no language lends itself less to the imaginative and mythopœic faculty than does Japanese. When, for instance, a European speaks of "the strife between Religion and Science," he very likely spells these names with

a capital R and a capital S, and unconsciously slides into regarding them as being, in some sort, actual things, even individualities capable of aspirations, aims, and conquests, of teaching and sustaining their devotees, of revenging themselves on those who slight them, etc., etc. Such mythology (for mythology it is, albeit those who have been reared under the exclusive influence of European modes of expression may not at first recognise it as such) is utterly alien to the matter-of-fact Far-Eastern mind. During the last few years, the study of English, and the translation into Japanese of great numbers of English and other European books, have indeed resulted in the occasional adoption by public speakers of such expressions as *Rekishi ga watakushi-domo ni . . . . . wo oshieru*, a literal rendering of our phrase "History teaches us that. . . . ." But such "Europeanisms" are quite unidiomatic, and would scarcely be comprehended by any Japanese save those who have themselves at least a tincture of Western learning.

¶ 442. Languages differ greatly in the degree of integration of their sentences. For instance, Chinese and Pidjin-English simply put assertions side by side, like stones without cement, as "*He bad man. My no like he.*" Our more synthetic English would generally subordinate one assertion to the other, coupling them thus: "*I don't like him, BECAUSE he is a bad man.*" Now one of the most essential characteristics of the Japanese language is the extreme degree to which it pushes the synthetic tendency in the structure of sentences. Japanese always tries to incorporate the whole of a statement, however complex it may be and however numerous its parts, within the limits of a single sentence, whose members are all mutually inter-dependent. In fact the normal Japanese sentence is

a paragraph, or (so to say) an organism, as much more complicated than the typical English sentence just quoted, as the English sentence is more complicated than the Chinese or the Pidjin-English. As an illustration, let us take the following anecdote, the first paragraph of which forms but one sentence in Japanese, though it may be conveniently broken up into four or five in English :—

¶ 443. HEMPŌ-GAESHI.<sup>1</sup>

TIT FOR TAT.

*Aru*<sup>2</sup> *hito ga naga-ya*<sup>3</sup>  
*A-certain person (nom.) block-of-houses*  
*no mae wo tōrimasu toki, ishi*  
*of front (accus.) passes time, stone*  
*ni tsumazukimashitareba*<sup>4</sup>, *naga-ya*  
*on when-he-had-stumbled, block-of-houses*  
*no uchi no hito ga baka ni*  
*of inside of person(nom.) fool to*  
*shūte*<sup>5</sup>, “*Aitata!*” *to koe*  
*making, “Ah!-how-painful!” that voice*  
*wo kakemashita kara, tsumazuila*  
*(accus.) placed because, (the)stumbled*  
*hito wa, ima-imashii to*  
*person as-for, disagreeable that*  
*omoiashita ga, waza to*  
*(he) thought though, purposely*  
*otonashiku*<sup>7</sup>, “*Iya!*” *go men*  
*sedately “Nay!” august excuse*  
*nasaimashi!* *Kemashita no wa,*  
*deign!* *Kicked thing as-for,*  
*ishi ka*<sup>8</sup> *to omoiashitara, anata*  
*stone ? that whereas-(I-)thought, you*  
*no hana no saki deshita ka?*<sup>9</sup>  
*of nose of tip was ?*  
*to imashita.*  
*that (he)said.*

“A certain man, passing one day in front of a block of houses, tripped against a stone. Thereupon, some one inside the block of houses made fun of him, and cried out: “Oh how I have hurt myself!” So he who had tripped constrained himself to be quiet (although he felt disgusted), and said: “Oh! pray excuse me, I thought that what I had kicked was a stone. But was it the tip of your nose?”

1 *Hempō* is a Chinese expression meaning “requital;” *gaeshi* is the *nigori*’ed form of *kaeshi*, the indefinite form of *kaesu*, “to return” (trans.).—2 *Aru*, “to be,” sometimes has the sense of “a certain.”—3 *Naga-ya*, lit. “long house,” is an expression denoting the quarters

*Naga-ya no hito no kokoro-mochi* { “ I wonder how the  
*Block-of-houses of person's feelings* { man inside the block  
*wa, donna deshitarō?* { of houses felt on re-  
*as-for, what-like probably-were?* { ceiving this snub.”

¶ 444. The integration of sentences, as illustrated in the foregoing example, is secured by the application of the rule of syntax which was set forth in ¶ 422, p. 261, and illustrated in pp. 264—6, and which is here exemplified in the word *shite*; furthermore by the incorporation of quotations, and by the use of such particles as *kara* (“because”) and *ga* (“whereas”) and of the conditional and concessive moods of verbs and adjectives. In translating a Japanese sentence into idiomatic English it is generally necessary to break it at each of these *hinges*, as they may perhaps be termed.

---

formerly attached to the mansions (*yashiki*) of the *daimyōs*, as residences for their retainers. Such *naga-ya* as remain are now mostly let out in sets of two or three rooms to poor families.—4 *Tsumazuki-mashitara* would be the more strictly Colloquial form of this word; but see p. 184.—5 *Hito wo baka ni suru* means “to make a fool of a person;” but here of course *hito ga* is the subject of the verb, and the object is left unexpressed.—6 *Aitata!* is the same as *aita!* at the top of p. 237.—7 *Otonashiku*, more lit. like a grown-up person.” It qualifies the verb *iimashita* at the end of the sentence.—8 *Ishi ka*, “perhaps a stone.” Taken more literally still, the words *ishi ka* are a direct quotation of the speaker's thoughts: “Is it a stone?” i.e., “May it not perhaps be a stone?”

---

PRACTICAL  
PART.





## ¶ 445. SHORT PHRASES

IN

## CONSTANT USE.

- |                                                                                                                                          |                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <i>Amari mita koto ga</i><br/> <i>Too-much have-seen fact (nom.)</i><br/> <i>gozaimasen.</i><br/> <i>is-not.</i></p>               | <p>I have hardly ever<br/> seen any.</p>               |
| <p>2. <i>Anata mazu dō iu</i><br/> <i>You, well, what-sort-of</i><br/> <i>go ryōken de gozaimasū?</i><br/> <i>angust opinion is?</i></p> | <p>Well, what is your<br/> opinion on the subject?</p> |
| <p>3. <i>Arigatō gozaimasū.--Dō</i><br/> <i>Thankful (I) am.—How</i><br/> <i>itashimashite!</i><br/> <i>having-done?</i></p>             | <p>Thank you. — Oh!<br/> pray don't mention it.</p>    |
| <p>4. <i>Ate ni narimasen.</i><br/> <i>Reliance to becomes-not.</i></p>                                                                  | <p>He is not to be<br/> depended upon.</p>             |
| <p>5. <i>Ato kara go aisatsu</i><br/> <i>Afterwards angust answer</i><br/> <i>wo mōshimashō.</i><br/> <i>(accus.) will-say.</i></p>      | <p>I will send my answer<br/> afterwards.</p>          |
| <p>6. <i>Chito o kake</i><br/> <i>A-little honourably to-please</i><br/> <i>nasaimashī.</i><br/> <i>deign.</i></p>                       | <p>Pray sit down a<br/> moment.</p>                    |

1. *Amari*, conf. ¶ 219, p. 148.—3. I.e., “You are grateful to me for having done what?” It is still more polite to substitute *Dō tsūkamatsumashite* for *Dō itashimashite*.—4. Observe the avoidance of the passive, and conf. p. 205.—7. After *chito* supply *koshi wo*, “the loins.”

- |     |                                                                                                        |                                                                 |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7   | <i>Chitto mo kamaimasen.</i><br><i>A-little even matters-not.</i>                                      | It doesn't matter a bit.                                        |
| 8.  | <i>Chitto haiken.</i><br><i>A-little adoring-look (let me do).</i>                                     | Please just let me look.                                        |
| 9.  | <i>Da ga . . . (famil.)</i><br><i>Desu ga . . . (polite)</i><br><i>(It) is, but</i>                    | Yes, but . . .                                                  |
| 10. | <i>Danjūte mimashō.</i><br><i>Consulting (I) will-see.</i>                                             | I will speak to him about it.                                   |
| 11. | <i>Dō shimashō?</i><br><i>How shall-probably-do?</i>                                                   | What shall we do?                                               |
| 12. | <i>Dō shīta hō ga</i><br><i>How did side (nom.)</i><br><i>yokarō?</i><br><i>will-probably-be good?</i> | What do you think we had best do?                               |
| 13. | <i>Dochira ye irasshaimasū?</i><br><i>Where to, deign-to-go?</i>                                       | Where are you going?                                            |
| 14. | <i>Dōka nasaimashīta ka?</i><br><i>Somehow have-deigned?</i>                                           | Have you hurt yourself? or Is anything the matter with you?     |
| 15. | <i>Go busata itashi-</i><br><i>August remissness have-</i><br><i>mashīta.</i><br><i>done.</i>          | I have been very rude in not coming to see you for so long.     |
| 16. | <i>Go kurō sama.</i><br><i>August trouble Mr.</i>                                                      | Thanks for your trouble.<br><i>(Said chiefly to inferiors.)</i> |

8. Conf. p. 268.—9. Properly speaking, this phrase should come in the middle of a sentence; but in familiar conversation it often begins one. For *ga* = "but," see p. 67. The *u* of *desū* is pronounced before *ga*, for which reason we print it in this context without the mark of short quantity.—10. For *miru* auxiliary, see p. 193.—11 and 12. The Japanese habitually use "how?" for "what?" in such phrases as these. For *hō* see p. 144.—13. For *irasshaimasū*, substitute *ikimasū* in speaking to an inferior.—14. For *nasaimashīta* substitute *shimashīta*, or still less politely *shīta*, in speaking to an inferior.—15. See p. 247.—16. See p. 247.—19. *Yukkuri* is a sort of noun, which the addition of *to* turns into an adverbial phrase; conf. ¶ 377, p. 236.

- |                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 17. <i>Go men nasai.</i><br><i>August excuse deign.</i>                                                                          | Please excuse me,<br>or I beg your pardon.                                                        |
| 18. <i>Go mottomo de gozai-</i><br><i>Augustly right is</i><br><i>masu ga . . . .</i><br><i>but . . . .</i>                      | What you say is<br>very true ; still . . . .                                                      |
| 19. <i>Go yukkuri to ille</i><br><i>Augustly leisurely going</i><br><i>irasshai.</i><br><i>deign-to-be.</i>                      | Go slowly. ( <i>A polite<br/>phrase frequently addressed<br/>to one starting off on a walk.</i> ) |
| 20. <i>Go zonji de mo</i><br><i>August knowledge even</i><br><i>gozaimashō ga . . . .</i><br><i>probably-is although . . . .</i> | You probably know<br>that . . . .                                                                 |
| 21. <i>Go zonji no tōri.</i><br><i>August knowledge 's way.</i>                                                                  | As you know.                                                                                      |
| 22. <i>Hakkiri-to wakarimasen.</i><br><i>Clearly understand-not.</i>                                                             | I don't clearly un-<br>derstand.                                                                  |
| 23. <i>Hara ga itai.</i> (familiar)<br><i>Belly (nom.) (is) painful.</i>                                                         | I've got a stomach-<br>ache.                                                                      |
| 24. <i>Hayaku ! hayaku !</i><br><i>Quickly ! quickly !</i>                                                                       | Hurry up ! hurry up !                                                                             |
| 25. <i>Hitotsu ikura ?</i><br><i>One how-much ?</i>                                                                              | How much for one ?                                                                                |
| 26. <i>Hoka de mo nai</i><br><i>Other-thing even isn't</i><br><i>ga . . . .</i><br><i>although . . . .</i>                       | What I want to say is<br>is simply this :— . . . .                                                |

20 and 21. *Zonji* is the indefinite form, used substantively, of *zonjiru*, "to know." *Ga* has here but little meaning. Similarly in No. 26. For *tōri*, see p. 243.—22. For *to* see p. 82.—23. The predicative adjective includes the meaning of the verb "to be." But if it is desired to make the phrase polite, *itai* must be changed to *itō gozaimasū* conf. p. 140, ¶ 204.—24. Supply the imperative *koi!* "come," or *hashire!* "run."—25. More grammatically *Hitotsu wa ikura de gozaimasū?* The numeral *hitotsu* will vary according to the article alluded to :—if a fan, substitute *ip-pon* ; if a mirror, substitute *ichi-men*, etc. ; see ¶ 157 *et seq.*, especially pp. 108—110,

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>27. <i>Ichinichi rusu desū.</i><br/><i>One-day absent is.</i></p> <p>28. <i>Ikenai koto shimashita.</i><br/><i>Can't-go thing have-done.</i></p> <p>29. <i>Ikura mo gozaimasen.</i><br/><i>How-much even is-not.</i></p> <p>30. <i>Itsu no koto deshita?</i><br/><i>When 's fut was?</i></p> <p>31. <i>Iya desū, yo!</i><br/><i>Disagreeable (it)is, oh!</i></p> <p>32. <i>Kagen ga warū gozai-</i><br/><i>Bodily-state (nom.) bad is.</i><br/><i>masū.</i></p> <p>33. <i>Kare kore tarimashō.</i><br/><i>That, this, will-probably-suffice.</i></p> <p>34. <i>Kaze wo hikimashita.</i><br/><i>Wind (accus.) (I) have-drawn.</i></p> <p>35. (<i>Kazoete mireba ...</i><br/><i>Counting when(I)see.</i></p> | <p>He is (or will be) away all day.</p> <p>I've gone and done a stupid thing.</p> <p>There is scarcely any more.</p> <p>When did it happen?</p> <p>No, I won't; or Get along with you! or None of your impudence!</p> <p>I feel poorly.</p> <p>I think it will be about enough.</p> <p>I have caught cold.</p> <p>On counting them over, I found that....</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

27. *Ichinichi* means indifferently "one day" or "all day;" see N. B. to ¶ 152, p. 103.—28. *Ikenai* is lit. "cannot go" = "no go," "won't do;" conf. ¶ 317.—29. This idiom may be explained thus: "There is not even enough to make it worth asking how much there is."—30. For the construction *itsu no*, conf. p. 232.—31. A phrase used chiefly by women of the lower class.—32. *Kagen* is originally one of the "syntheses of contradictories" noticed on p. 34, *ka* meaning "increase" (of bodily well-being), and *gen* "decrease."—33. *Kare kore* is an idiom expressive of approximation, like our "more or less," "pretty well,"—34. The English word "a cold" cannot be translated more literally into Japanese.—35. *Miru*, "to see," here has rather its proper signification, than the auxiliary use explained on p. 193. Moreover the conditional here has the sense of "when...;" see p. 184.

|                                                                                                                               |                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 36. <i>Kiite</i> <i>kuru</i> <i>ga</i><br><i>Having-heard to-come</i> ( <i>nom.</i> )                                         | You had better go<br>and ask. ( <i>familiar</i> )                                   |
| <i>ii.</i><br>( <i>is</i> ) <i>good.</i>                                                                                      |                                                                                     |
| 37. <i>Kikashite</i> <i>kudasai.</i><br><i>Causing-to-hear</i> <i>condescend.</i>                                             | Please tell me.                                                                     |
| 38. <i>Kimi ga warui.</i><br><i>Feelings</i> ( <i>nom.</i> ) ( <i>are</i> ) <i>bad.</i>                                       | It quite makes me<br>shudder. ( <i>familiar</i> )                                   |
| 39. <i>Kochira ye o tôri</i><br><i>Here to honourably to-pass</i><br><i>nasai.</i><br><i>deign.</i>                           | Please come in here.<br>( <i>The formula used to invite</i><br><i>a guest in.</i> ) |
| 40. <i>Kokoromochi ga warui.</i><br><i>Bodily-feelings</i> ( <i>nom.</i> ) ( <i>are</i> ) <i>bad.</i>                         | I feel unwell.                                                                      |
| 41. <i>Komatta koto desu.</i><br><i>Was-bothered fact is.</i>                                                                 | It is a nuisance.                                                                   |
| 42. <i>Komban wa!</i><br><i>This-night as-for!</i>                                                                            | Good evening.                                                                       |
| 43. <i>Kondate wo misete</i><br><i>Bill-of-fare</i> ( <i>accus.</i> ) <i>showing</i><br><i>kudasai.</i><br><i>condescend.</i> | Please show me the<br>bill of fare.                                                 |
| 44. <i>Konnichi wa!</i><br><i>This-day as-for!</i>                                                                            | Good day! <i>or</i> How do<br>you do?                                               |

36. *Tou*, which is the proper word for "to ask," is almost always thus replaced in the mouths of Tôkyô speakers by *kiku*, properly "to hear." For *kuru* as an auxiliary, see p. 193.—37. *Kikashite* should, strictly speaking, be *kikasete*, but see N. B. to p. 214.—38. Observe how Japanese prefers the intransitive to the transitive construction, of which "it" is the subject in English, and conf. p. 279 for this marked feature of the language.—41. The use of the past, where the present would seem to us more natural, is idiomatic here. 42. Some polite phrase must be mentally supplied; but it is never expressed, unless it be some such hackneyed remark about the weather as (*Komban wa*) *o suzushiiu gozaimasû*, "What a pleasantly cool evening it is!" etc.—44. Same remark as that concerning No. 42.

- |                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 45. <i>Kore de takusan.</i><br><i>This by plenty (is).</i>                                                                            | This is quite enough.                                                                                             |
| 46. <i>Kore de yoroshii ja nai ka?</i><br><i>This by, good isn't ?</i>                                                                | Won't this do?                                                                                                    |
| 47. <i>Kore wa, nan de</i><br><i>This as-for, what by</i><br><i>dekite orimasu ?</i><br><i>eventuating is ?</i>                       | What is this made<br>of?                                                                                          |
| 48. <i>Kore wa nani ni</i><br><i>This as-for, what to</i><br><i>tsūkaimasu ka ?</i><br><i>(do people) use (it) ?</i>                  | What is this used<br>for?                                                                                         |
| 49. <i>Kore wa, o</i><br><i>This as-for, honourable</i><br><i>jama wo itashimashita.</i><br><i>impediment (accus.) have-done.</i>     | Oh! excuse me for<br>having inconvenienced<br>you.<br><i>(Used as a polite phrase on<br/>concluding a visit.)</i> |
| 50. <i>Kore wa, shikkei!</i><br><i>This as-for, rudeness.</i>                                                                         | Oh! pray excuse me<br>for being so rude.                                                                          |
| 51. <i>Kore wa, yoku o</i><br><i>This as-for, well honourable</i><br><i>deki ni narimashita.</i><br><i>eventuation to has-become.</i> | You have done this<br>beautifully.                                                                                |
| 52. <i>Mada yohodo aida ga</i><br><i>Still plenty interval (nom.)</i><br><i>arimasu.</i><br><i>is.</i>                                | There is still plenty<br>of time.                                                                                 |
| 53. <i>Mae ni mo itta tōri.</i><br><i>Before in also said way.</i>                                                                    | As I have already<br>stated.                                                                                      |
| 54. <i>Maido go yakkai</i><br><i>Each-time august assistance</i><br><i>(sama) desū.</i><br><i>(Mr.) is.</i>                           | I am much obliged to<br>you for your constant<br>kindness.                                                        |

45. Supply *de gozaimasu* at the end.—46. For *ja* see p. 64.—47. For the intransitive *dekiru*, corresponding to our passive “is made,” see ¶ 310, p. 202.—50. Supply *itashimashita* at the end.—54. Conf. p. 247.

- |                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>55. <i>Makoto ni mōshi-wake</i><br/> <i>Truth in, excuse</i><br/> <i>ga gozaimasen.</i><br/> <i>(nom.) (there) is-not.</i></p>             | <p>Really I know not<br/>         what excuse to offer.</p>                                       |
| <p>56. <i>Makoto ni shibaraku.</i><br/> <i>Truly some-time (is).</i></p>                                                                      | <p>It is quite a long time<br/>         since we last met.</p>                                    |
| <p>57. <i>Mappira go men</i><br/> <i>Quite-stately august pardon</i><br/> <i>nasai.</i><br/> <i>deign.</i></p>                                | <p>I humbly beg your<br/>         pardon ; or Please be so<br/>         good as to excuse me.</p> |
| <p>58. <i>Maru de betsu nan desū.</i><br/> <i>Completely different indeed is.</i></p>                                                         | <p>It is a totally dif-<br/>         ferent one.</p>                                              |
| <p>59. <i>Mata irasshai.</i><br/> <i>Again deign-to-come.</i></p>                                                                             | <p>Please come again.</p>                                                                         |
| <p>60. <i>Mata o hayaku</i><br/> <i>Again honourably quickly,</i><br/> <i>o kaeri nasaimashi.</i><br/> <i>honourably to-return deign.</i></p> | <p>Please come back soon<br/>         again.</p>                                                  |
| <p>61. <i>Mazu sore-kkiri de</i><br/> <i>Well, that only</i><br/> <i>gozaimasū.</i><br/> <i>(it) is.</i></p>                                  | <p>Well, that is about<br/>         all.</p>                                                      |
| <p>62. <i>Memboku ga nai.</i><br/> <i>Countenance (nom.) isn't.</i><br/> <i>(More politely gozaimasen.)</i></p>                               | <p>I feel ashamed.</p>                                                                            |
| <p>63. <i>Michi wo oshiete</i><br/> <i>Road (accus.) teaching</i><br/> <i>kudasai.</i><br/> <i>condescend.</i></p>                            | <p>Please tell me the<br/>         road.</p>                                                      |
| <p>64. <i>Mina san ni dōka</i><br/> <i>All Messrs. to, please</i><br/> <i>yoroshiku.</i><br/> <i>well (say).</i></p>                          | <p>Please remember me<br/>         kindly to all your people.</p>                                 |

56. See top of p. 269.—58. For the difficult particle *nan* contained in this example and tentatively rendered by “indeed,” see the footnote to pp. 135—6.—61. For *kkiri*, see p. 230—62. Compare our phrase “to be put out of countenance.”—64. At the end supply *itte kudasai*, “please say.”

|                                                                                                                                |                                   |                                            |                             |                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 65. <i>Minai</i><br><i>Seeing-not</i><br><i>doing.</i>                                                                         | <i>furi</i><br><i>manner</i>      | <i>wo</i><br><i>(accus.)</i>               | Pretending not to see.      |                                                                                        |
| 66. <i>Mō</i><br><i>Already</i><br><i>mashita.</i><br><i>become.</i>                                                           | <i>mina</i><br><i>all</i>         | <i>ni</i><br><i>to</i>                     | <i>nari-</i><br><i>has-</i> | It is all done; or<br>There are none left.                                             |
| 67. <i>Mō</i><br><i>Already</i><br><i>narimasen.</i><br><i>is-not.</i>                                                         |                                   | <i>ikanakereba</i><br><i>if-do-not-go,</i> |                             | I <i>must</i> be off now.                                                              |
| 68. <i>Mō</i><br><i>Already</i><br><i>narimasū ka?</i><br><i>becomes ?</i>                                                     | <i>nan-ji</i><br><i>what-hour</i> | <i>ni</i><br><i>to</i>                     |                             | What o'clock is it?                                                                    |
| 69. <i>Mō</i> <i>shimai.</i><br><i>Already end(is).</i>                                                                        |                                   |                                            |                             | I have finished; or<br>They are all done.                                              |
| 70. <i>Mō</i> <i>takusan.</i><br><i>Already plenty (is).</i>                                                                   |                                   |                                            |                             | That is plenty; or I<br>don't want any more.                                           |
| 71. <i>Mō</i><br><i>Any-more,</i><br><i>tachimasen.</i><br><i>stands-not.</i>                                                  | <i>yaku</i><br><i>usefulness</i>  | <i>ni</i><br><i>to</i>                     |                             | It is no longer of any<br>use.                                                         |
| 72. <i>Mō</i> <i>yoroshii.</i> (familiar)<br><i>Already (is) good.</i><br><i>Mō</i> <i>yoroshii</i> <i>gozaimasū.</i> (polite) |                                   |                                            |                             | That will do; or I<br>don't want any more.                                             |
| 73. <i>Mōshi-kanete</i><br><i>To-say-unable</i>                                                                                | <i>orimasū.</i><br><i>am.</i>     |                                            |                             | I can hardly bring<br>myself to say the words.<br>(Said in asking for some-<br>thing.) |

66. We may explain this phrase thus: "It has come to this, that all are gone."—67. This phrase is used only when the necessity is genuine and strong; conf. N. B. at top of p. 175.—68. More literally, "What o'clock is it already becoming?"—69 and 70. Supply *desū*. 72. A highly elliptical phrase, somewhat as if one were to say "It is all right without it."—73. For *kaneru* see ¶ 311, p. 203.



|                                                                                                                                     |                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 74. <i>Motto</i> <i>o</i> <i>make</i><br><i>More,</i> <i>honourably to-cheapen</i><br><i>nasai.</i><br><i>deign.</i>                | Please go down a little more in your price.             |
| 75. <i>Nai</i> <i>koto</i> <i>wa</i> <i>nai</i><br><i>Isn't</i> <i>fact</i> <i>isn't</i><br>( <i>desū</i> ).<br>( <i>is</i> ).      | There is <i>some</i> ; or<br>There is some.             |
| 76. <i>Naka-naka shōchi shimasen.</i><br><i>Positively consent does-not.</i>                                                        | He won't hear of it.                                    |
| 77. <i>Nan de mo yoroshii.</i><br><i>What by even, (is) good.</i><br>(More politely <i>yoroshiū gozaimasū</i> .)                    | Anything will do.                                       |
| 78. <i>Nan desū (ka) ?</i><br><i>What is (it) ?</i>                                                                                 | What is it? or What is the matter? or What did you say? |
| 79. <i>Nan to osshaimasū ?</i><br><i>What that deign-to-say ?</i>                                                                   | What do you say?                                        |
| 80. <i>Nanzo omoshiroi</i><br><i>Something-or-other amusing</i><br><i>hanashi ga gozaimasen ka ?</i><br><i>talk (nom.) is-not ?</i> | Can't you tell us something amusing?                    |
| 81. <i>Nodo ga kawakimashita.</i><br><i>Throat (nom.) has-dried.</i>                                                                | I feel thirsty.                                         |
| 82. <i>O hayō (gozaimasū).</i><br><i>Honourably early is.</i>                                                                       | Good morning.                                           |
| 83. <i>O itoma mōshimashō.</i><br><i>Honourable leave will-probably-say.</i>                                                        | I think I must be going.                                |
| 84. <i>O kage sama de . . .</i><br><i>Honourable shade Mr. by.</i>                                                                  | By your kind influence.                                 |

74. *Makeru* is literally "to lose" (a battle or a game), hence "to come down in price."—75. For the syntax of double negatives, see p. 271.—77. *Nan de mo*, though representing the English word "anything," is not the subject of the sentence. The sentence is subjectless, and *nan de mo* is an indirect object corresponding to the Latin ablative denoting causation or instrumentality.—82. It is of course absurd to use this phrase, as foreigners sometimes do, in the afternoon.

85. *O kage sama, sukkari*  
Honourable shade Mr., quite  
*naorimashite gozaimasū.*  
recovered am.  
I am quite well again,  
thanks for your kind  
enquiries.  
(*More lit. "Thanks to your*  
*influence."*)
86. *O kangae no ue, ina*  
Honourable reflection 's top, nay  
*ya no go hentō wo ukagai-*  
? 's august reply (accus.) (I)will-  
*masū.*  
enquire.  
Kindly think the  
matter over, and let  
me have an answer one  
way or the other.
87. *O kinodoku*  
Honourable poison-of-spirit  
*de gozaimasū.*  
is.  
I am sorry for it on  
your account.
88. *O machi-dō sama.*  
Honourably long-waiting Mr.  
Excuse me for keeping  
you waiting so long.
89. *O matase-mōshi-*  
Honourably having-caused-to-  
*marshite, makoto ni ai-sumi-*  
wait, truth in, mutually-  
*masen.*  
is-not-proper.  
Really I know not  
what excuse to offer  
for having kept you  
waiting so long.
90. *O naka ga sūki-*  
Honourable inside (nom.) has-  
*marshita.*  
become-empty. (familiar)  
I feel hungry.
91. *O tomo itashi-*  
Honourable companion will-  
*marshō.*  
probably-do.  
I should like to go  
with you.
92. *O tōshi mōse.*  
Honourably let-through say.  
Show the guest in.

85. After *sama* one may insert the word *de*, "by," which strict logic and grammar would require. *Naorimashite gozaimasū* is more polite than simple *naorimashita* would be.—86. "Reflection's top" is, after all, not so very different from our phrase "on reflection." Instead of saying "an answer yes or no," the Japanese phrase mentions the negative only.—89. Still more polite than the preceding number. For *mōsu* as a humble auxiliary, see p. 249.—90. For *o naka*, see p. 248.

93. *O tsuide no setsu.*  
Honourable occasion 's opportunity. Whenever it happens to suit your convenience.
94. *O yasumi nasai*  
Honourably to-rest deign. Good night.  
(-mashī).
95. *Okashikute tamaranai.*  
Being-funny, (I)endure-not. It is really too funny.
96. *Ōki ni o sewa sama*  
Greatly honourable help Mr. I am much indebted to you for your kind assistance.  
*ni narimashita.*  
to (I)have-become.
97. *Ōki ni osoku narimashita.*  
Greatly late have-become. Excuse me for being so late.
98. *Ō-sawagi deshita.*  
Great-uproar (it)was. All was bustle and confusion.
99. *Oshii koto desū, ne!*  
Regrettable thing is, eh? Oh! what a pity!
100. *Osoroshii domo michi*  
Frightful really road How frightfully bad  
*ga warui.* (familiar) the road is!  
(nom.) (is)bad.
101. *Osoroshii takai mon' da.*  
Frightful dear thing is. It is frightfully dear.  
(familiar)
102. *Ō-warai shimashita.*  
Great-laughter (we)did. We had a good laugh over it.

92. The use of *mōse* here shows that a person who is your inferior is to do something for one politely considered your superior.—93. I.e., “Don't take trouble about it; but, should the occasion offer... etc.”—94. It is optional to omit the termination *mashī* in all such cases.—95. Conf. ¶ 218.—96. As if one should say, “I have come in for a great deal of your help.” *Ōki ni* means “greatly;” *ōkiku* means “big(ly).” —100. In strict grammar we should have *osoroshiku*, not *osoroshii*; but see first N. B. on p. 124. As shown by this example and the last, the Japanese turn in quite a different manner our exclamatory phrases beginning with “what” and “how.”—101. *Mon'* is familiar for *mono*.

103. *Sakuban wa, yoppite*  
*Last-night as-for, all-night*  
*neraremasen deshita.*  
*cannot-sleep (it)was.* I couldn't sleep all last night.
104. *Sayō de gozaimasū.* (polite)  
*Sō desū* or *Sō da.* (familiar) That is so ; or Yes.
105. *Senjitsu wa, arigatō*  
*Former-day as-for, thankful*  
*gozaimashita.*  
*was.* Many thanks for your kind entertainment the other day.  
*(Always said on first again meet-  
ing the giver of a recent party.)*
106. *Shikata ga nai.* (more  
*Doing-side (nom.) isn't.* ) (more  
*Shiyō ga nai.* ) (politely  
*Doing-way (nom.) isn't.* ) (gozaima-  
sen.) There is nothing to be done ; or It can't be helped.
107. *Shitsurei itashimashita.*  
*Rudeness have-done.* Excuse my rudeness.
108. *Sō desū ka ?*  
*So is ?* Is that so? or Oh ! indeed.
109. *Sō ka mo shiremasen.*  
*So ? even is-unknownable.* Possibly it may be so.
110. *Sō ka to omoeba,*  
*So ? that if-one-thinks,*  
*kaette . . .*  
*contrariwise . . .* One is tempted to think so, and yet on the other hand . . .
111. *Sō shōcha ikenai.*  
*So as-for-doing, cannot-go.*  
*(more politely ikemasen.)* You mustn't do that.
112. *Sō ja gozaimasen.* (polite)  
*So is-not.* That is not so ; or Oh ! no.

103. *Deshita* might be omitted without mutilating either the sense or the grammar ; but the Japanese like thus to round off the sentence with an auxiliary verb, if possible ; conf. p. 197.—104. Conf. pp. 234-5.—109. More literally "One cannot know whether it is so." In vulgar parlance the phrase often runs thus: *Sō ka shira* (for *shiranu*).—110. See bottom of p. 265 for a similar construction.—111. More lit. "It won't do, if you do that."—112. Or *Sō de gozaimasen*.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 113. <i>Sonna mon' desū.</i><br><i>Such thing is.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                   | That is just about it.                                                        |
| 114. <i>Sonnara,</i> <i>o</i> <i>yo-</i><br><i>If-that-is-so, honourably to-de-</i><br><i>shi nasai.</i><br><i>sist deign.</i>                                                                                                                          | Well then, don't do it.                                                       |
| 115. <i>Sono</i> <i>go,</i> <i>hīsashiku</i><br><i>That</i> <i>after.</i> <i>lengthily</i><br><i>o</i> <i>me ni kakarimasen.</i><br><i>honourable eyes in (I)hung-not.</i><br><i>Iisu mo go sōken de....</i><br><i>Always augustly robust being....</i> | It is some time since we last met. I am delighted to see you looking so well. |
| 116. <i>Sono hō wa</i> <i>ō</i><br><i>That side as-for, numerous</i><br><i>gozaimasū.</i><br><i>are.</i>                                                                                                                                                | There are more of that kind than of the others.                               |
| 117. <i>Sore wa sō de gozai-</i><br><i>That as-for, so</i> <i>is.</i><br><i>masū.</i>                                                                                                                                                                   | That is so; or Yes, no doubt.                                                 |
| 118. <i>Sore wa sō desū ga....</i><br><i>That as-for, so is whereas....</i>                                                                                                                                                                             | Yes, but....                                                                  |
| 119. <i>Sude ni mōshi-agemashū</i><br><i>Already</i> <i>tell-lifted-up</i><br><i>tōri.</i><br><i>way.</i>                                                                                                                                               | As I have already had the honour to inform you.                               |
| 120. <i>Sūkoshi mate.</i> (familiar)<br><i>A-little</i> <i>wait.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                    | Wait a minute.                                                                |
| 121. <i>Sūkoshi</i> <i>o</i> <i>machi</i><br><i>A-little honourably to-wait</i><br><i>nasai.</i> (polite)<br><i>deign.</i>                                                                                                                              | Please be so kind as to wait a minute.                                        |
| 122. <i>Taigai wa karimashū.</i><br><i>Mostly</i> <i>have-understood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                               | I understand most of it.                                                      |

115. Supply at the end some such phrase as *o medetō gozaimasū*, "it is a subject for congratulation."—116. See p. 144.—122. The past tense here idiomatically replaces the present; conf. ¶ 274, p. 176.

- |                                                                                                                                  |                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>123. <i>Taisō nigiyaka de go-</i><br/> <i>Very lively</i><br/> <i>zaimashita.</i><br/> <i>was.</i></p>                        | <p>It was very lively.</p>                                             |
| <p>124. <i>Te wo aratte</i><br/> <i>Hands (accus.) having-washed,</i><br/> <i>kimashō.</i><br/> <i>will-probably-come.</i></p>   | <p>I think I'll go and wash my hands.</p>                              |
| <p>125. <i>To mo kaku mo, go-</i><br/> <i>That even, thus even, august-</i><br/> <i>ran nasai.</i><br/> <i>glance deign.</i></p> | <p>At any rate please just look at it.</p>                             |
| <p>126. <i>Tolema ikemasen.</i><br/> <i>Anyhow cannot-go.</i></p>                                                                | <p>It won't do at all.</p>                                             |
| <p>127. <i>Wake no wakaranai</i><br/> <i>Reason of understand-not</i><br/> <i>koto.</i><br/> <i>thing.</i></p>                   | <p>Something I can't at all make out.</p>                              |
| <p>128. <i>Wasure-mono wa nai</i><br/> <i>Forget-thing as-for, isn't</i><br/> <i>ka?</i><br/> <i>?</i></p>                       | <p>Are you sure you have forgotten nothing?<br/> <i>(familiar)</i></p> |
| <p>129. <i>Watakūshi ni kwankei</i><br/> <i>Me to, connection</i><br/> <i>ga nai.</i><br/> <i>(nom.) isn't.</i></p>              | <p>It has nothing to do with me. <i>(familiar)</i></p>                 |
| <p>130. <i>Yō gozaimasū to mo!</i><br/> <i>Good is that even!</i></p>                                                            | <p>Of course it will do quite well.</p>                                |
| <p>131. <i>Yohodo ii kiryō desū.</i><br/> <i>Very good countenance is.</i></p>                                                   | <p>She is very pretty indeed.</p>                                      |
| <p>132. <i>Yoi ambai ni....</i><br/> <i>Good condition in.....</i></p>                                                           | <p>It is fortunate that. . .</p>                                       |

125. *To mo kaku mo* is an idiom meaning "at any rate," "in any case."—127. A good example of the ambiguous relative phrases discussed in ¶ 82, p. 58. It is not the thing that does not understand, but I who cannot understand the thing.—130. *To mo* final= "of course;" conf. p. 85.

133. *Yoi mi-harashi desū, ne!*  
*Good view is,— eh?* What a beautiful view!
134. *Yoi mono wo o*  
*Good thing (accus.) honourably*  
*motome nasaimashita.*  
*to-see-out have-deigned.* What a beautiful thing  
 that is which you have  
 bought!
135. *Yoi tenki de gozaimasū.*  
*Good-weather is.* It is fine weather.  
*(A phrase used on accosting*  
*any one in fine weather.)*
136. *Yoku kega shimasen*  
*Well wound does-not*  
*deshita.*  
*(it) was.* It is lucky he didn't  
 hurt himself.
137. *Yoppodo dōmo omoshiroi*  
*Very indeed amusing*  
*hanashi de gozaimasū.*  
*story (it) is.* It is really a most  
 amusing story.
138. *Yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?*  
*Good is ?*  
 —*Yō gozaimasū.*  
*Good is.* Is it all right?—Yes.
139. *Yosasō ni omoi-*  
*Likely-to-be-good to (I)*  
*masū.*  
*think.* I should think it  
 would do.
140. *Yoshita hō ga yo-*  
*Desisted side (nom.) will-*  
*karō.*  
*probably-be-good.* I think it will be best  
 to give up the idea.
141. *Zōsa ga nai.*  
*Difficulty (nom.) isn't.* There is no difficulty  
 about it. (*familiar*)

136. This sentence illustrates a large number of cases containing the idea "it is fortunate that..." The final *deshita* may be omitted at will.—139. Japanese idiom requires *ni* in such phrases, when the adjective of probability (...*sō na*) is turned into an adverb by the fact of a verb following.—140. Past tense used idiomatically for the present; conf. p. 176.—141. More politely, *Zōsa gozaimasen*.

## PHRASES.

- |                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Ano hito no iu koto wa, mina uso desū.</i>                                                                              | Every word that fellow says is a lie.                                                                                               |
| 2. <i>Ano hito no na wa, nan to iimasū ?</i>                                                                                  | What is his name?<br>( <i>more lit.</i> What do people say that his name is?)                                                       |
| 3. <i>Ashita wa yō ga gozaimasū kara, keiko wo yasumimashō.</i>                                                               | I shall be too busy to study to-morrow.                                                                                             |
| 4. <i>Chitto wa hanashi no tane ni narimashō.</i>                                                                             | It will be something to talk about.                                                                                                 |
| 5. <i>Daibu kata-kage ni natte kimashita kara, soro-soro de-kakemashō.</i>                                                    | There is a good deal of shade in many places; so I shall begin to think of going out.                                               |
| 6. <i>Daibu niwa no sakura ga saki-kakemashita kara, tsugi no Nichiyō atari ni wa, Mukōjima ga chōdo yoroshiū gozaimashō.</i> | A good many cherry-blossoms have begun to come out in the garden; so I suppose Mukōjima will just be at its best about next Sunday. |

1. For a good example of a similar construction with *no*, see p. 76, end of ¶ 110.—2 For *to iu*, see p. 58 and p. 82.—4. Lit. “talk’s seed.”—5. The auxiliary *kimashita* makes the phrase paint or photograph, as it were, the gradual oncoming of the shade. Simple *natta* would be a very flat substitute for compound *natte kimashita*; conf. p. 197. 6. For *kakeru* see p. 219. *Mukōjima* is a part of Tōkyō celebrated for its avenue of cherry-trees. Observe the manner in which the two clauses are connected by *kara*,—lit. “because the cherry-trees have partially blossomed, etc.”



- |                                                                                         |                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7. <i>Dō ka kō ka, tsugō ga deki-masū.</i>                                              | We shall be able to manage it somehow or other.                                                                 |
| 8. <i>Dōka Yokohama made no jōtō ōfūku-gippu wo ichi-mai kudasai.</i>                   | Please give me a first-class return ticket to Yokohama.                                                         |
| 9. <i>Dōmo! ka ni sasarete, nete mo ne-tsūkarenai.</i>                                  | I have lain down, but I can't get to sleep,—I am so terribly bothered by the mosquitoes.                        |
| 10. <i>Furisō desū kara, yoshimashō.</i>                                                | It looks like rain; so I think I will give up (the idea of the excursion, etc.).                                |
| 11. <i>Hidoi furi ni natte kimashita. Shūkashi, yūdachi desū kara, jiki akarimashō.</i> | It has come on to rain hard. Still, as it is only a thunder-shower, I suppose the sky will soon clear up again. |
| 12. <i>Hitori de bon-yari shite orimashita kara, nemuku nari-mashita.</i>               | I was so dull all by myself, that I got quite sleepy.                                                           |
| 13. <i>Ii no ga nakereba, maru de yoshimashō.</i>                                       | If there are no good ones, I won't take any of any kind.                                                        |
| 14. <i>Ii-tsūketa tōri ni shinai no wa, dō shita mon' da?</i>                           | Why didn't you do as I ordered you?                                                                             |

7. *Dō ka kō ka* is an idiom meaning "somehow or other," "by hook or by crook." If for *deki-masū* were substituted *deki-mashō*, the phrase would signify "I think we shall be able," etc.—8. *Kippu*, "a ticket," takes the auxiliary numeral *mai*, because a ticket is a flat thing; see p. 109.—11. For *akarimashō*, many prefer to say *agari-mashō*, "it will probably lift."—13. For *no ga*, conf. ¶ 112 and ¶ 137.—14. *Dō shita mon' da?* here translated "why?" would be more literally rendered by "what sort of conduct is (this)?"

15. *Iki-nari sonna koto wo iu to, dō shite mo wakarimasen.* That couldn't possibly be understood without some previous reference to the subject.
16. *Ikura kake-atte mo, shōchi shimasen.* All my talking hasn't succeeded in getting him to consent.
17. *Ima-doki sono yō na koto wa sūkunai. Yoshi! atta to shīta tokoro ga, tōji no ron ni wa aimasen.* Very little of that sort of thing goes on nowadays; and even supposing there to be instances of its occurrence, it doesn't suit the spirit of the age.
18. *Fikō-gara de, asa-ban wa suzushiku narimashūa.* We are getting on in the season, and so the mornings and evenings have become cool.
19. *Kana wa sūkoshi wakari-masu ga,—ji wa yomemasen.* I understand the *Kana* a little, but I can't read the Chinese characters.

15. *Iki-nari*, "abruptly," "disconnectedly."—17. *Sūkunai*, is always predicative, as here; see pp. 274-5. But it is generally convenient to reverse, as has here been done, the order of the ideas, when translating a clause containing *sūkunai* into English. *Yoshi*, the conclusive form (see pp. 121-2) of the adjective *yoi*, "good," is here used as an exclamation, but forms from the grammatical point of view a sentence by itself. *To shīta tokoro ga* is an idiom meaning "granting that..."—18. *Gara*, suffixed to a noun, indicates "kind," "nature," here "cause," very much like the postposition *kara*, "because," of which it is probably but a *nigori'ed* form.—19. *Kana*, see p. 9. Notice the force of the two *wa*'s, acting like Greek *μέν* and *δέ*: "As for the *Kana*, I understand it a little; but as for the Chinese ideographs, I can't read them at all." A European's instinct would probably lead him to use the accusative particle *wo* in this place,

20. *Kake-ne wo iwanai de, hontō no nedan wo itte kudasai.* Don't ask fancy prices. Tell me the true price, please.
21. *Keiko wo suru ni, dō iu ambai ni hajimetara yokarō?* What is the best way to begin studying?
22. *Ketchaku no tokoro wa, ikura made makarimasū ka?* What is the very lowest price you will go down to?
23. *Kiga ye iku michi wa, dochira de gozaimasū?* Which is the road to Kiga?
24. *Kitto kuru yō ni sō itte koi.* Go and tell him to be sure to come.
25. *Komban wa taisō hie-masū kara, yagu wo mashite kudasai.* It is very chilly to-night; so please put on some more blankets.
26. *Komban wa taisō ka ga dete kila kara, kaya wo tsutte kudasai.* There are lots of mosquitoes to-night; so please put up the mosquito-net.
27. *Komban wa yakwai ni manekareta kara, reifūku no shūlaku wo suru ga ii.* You must put out my dress-clothes, as I am invited out to a party this evening.
28. *Konna tansu wa, doko de kaemasū?* Where can one buy such cabinets as these?

instead of *wa*. Notice how the Japanese construction omits both the nominative "I" and the accusatives "it" and "them."—21. Lit., "in doing practice, it will probably be good if one had begun in what sort of manner?"—22. Lit., "as for the place of decision, etc."—24. For the important subject of the rendering of indirect quotations, see p. 275 *et seq.*, and especially ¶ 436 for the idiom in this phrase.—28. For such intransitives as *kaeru*, "to be buyable," see p. 205 *et seq.*

- |                                                                                 |                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 29. <i>Kono mukō no tsūki-atari wa, doko desū ?</i>                             | Where does this lead to ?                                                               |
| 30. <i>Kore kara saki no michi wa, dō desū ?</i>                                | How is the road ahead ?                                                                 |
| 31. <i>Kore kara undō ni de-kakemasū.</i>                                       | I am going out now to take some exercise.                                               |
| 32. <i>Mada motte kimasen ga, —aru ni wa arimasū.</i>                           | Although they haven't brought them yet, there is no doubt about the things being there. |
| 33. <i>Mazu konnichi wa, kore made ni itashite okimashō.</i>                    | Well, we will leave off here to-day.                                                    |
| 34. <i>Mijikai no mo areba, nagai no mo gozaimasū.</i>                          | Some are short, and some are long.                                                      |
| 35. <i>Moshi! koko wa nan to iu tokoro deshō ?</i>                              | Excuse me, what may be the name of this place ?                                         |
| 36. <i>Nan to mo ii-yō ga gozaimasen.</i>                                       | It is quite indescribable.                                                              |
| 37. <i>Nani ka futsugō ga shōjimashūta to miete . . . . .</i>                   | It would seem that difficulties have arisen, and so . . . . .                           |
| 38. <i>Nan-nen bakari keiko shūtara, hanashi ga dekiru yō ni narimashō ka ?</i> | How many years' study do you think would enable one to talk ?                           |

29. More lit. "As for the abutment-place opposite to this, where is it?"—32. *Aru ni wa arimasū*, "as for their existing, they exist," is an emphatic construction; see p. 88. Any verb may be so used for emphasis' sake.—33. *Oku* is auxiliary; conf. p. 194.—34. Conf. p. 196 for this peculiar construction with the conditional.—35. Instead of *moshi*, one may say *go men nasai*, "deign to pardon me," or *chotto ukagaimasū*, "I just enquire."—36. More lit. "there is no way of calling it even what?"—37. Our phrase "it would seem that," or the adverb "apparently," is generally thus rendered by the gerundial construction *to miete*, the sentence being reversed, and another clause being necessary to clinch it.—38. Lit. "If I did about how many years' study, will it probably become to the forthcoming of talking?"

39. *Natsu to chigatte, fuyu wa ryūkō-byō ga nakute, yoroshiū gozaimasū.*

40. *O kaeri nasaimashī! Sazo soto wa o samū gozaimashitarō.*

41. *Ō! kūlabireta. Omoigakenaku kyō wa aruita kara, gakkari shita.* (familiar)

42. *Oi! nēsan! Bīru ip-pon motte kile o kure. Tsuide ni kanjō no kaki-tsūke wo.*

43. *Omote-muki de naku, nai-nai de kiite kudasai.*

44. *Sakki made wa de-kakeru tsumori datta ga,—yōki no sei ka, kibun ga waruku nalla kara, deru no wa yoshimashō. Kuruma-ya wo kotozvalte kudasai.*

45. *Sensei! kore wa dō iu imi de gozaimashō?*

46. *Sensei ni choito o ide nasaru yō ni sō itte koi.*

47. *Sō iwarete wa, dōmo damatte iraremasen.*

We are better off in winter than in summer; for we have no epidemic diseases in winter.

Welcome back! You must indeed have found it cold out-of-doors.

Oh! I am tired. I walked to-day much further than I had meant to do, and I am quite played out.

I say, waitress! Bring a bottle of beer, please. And let us have the bill at the same time.

Don't ask officially, ask privately please.

Until just now I had intended to go out. But whether it is from the effect of the weather or from something else, I feel quite unwell now, and so shall give up the idea of going out. Please tell the *jinrikisha*-man that he is not wanted.

Teacher! what may be the meaning of this?

Just go and ask my teacher to come here.

It is impossible to hold one's tongue on being spoken to in that way.

40. A phrase used by any of a household to their master, or by hotel people to a guest.—41. *Gakkari* is a sort of onomatopoe for exhaustion.—42. At the end supply *motte kite o kure*, "please bring."—44. *Deru no wa* might be replaced by *deru no wo*.—46. See p. 276.

48. *Soko no dote ye agaru to, junsu ni togameremasū.* The police will find fault with you, if you walk on that embankment.
49. *Sono koto ga shireru to, ōki ni futsugō de gozaimasū.* It will never do for that to get known.
50. *Taisō ase ni natta kara, kimono wo sukkari ki-kaemashō.* I have got into such a perspiration, that I think I will change all my clothes.
51. *Taisō kumotte mairimashūta. Soko-bie no suru toko wo mimasū to, komban atari wa yuki ga furu ka mo shiremasen.* The sky has all clouded over. I feel thoroughly chilled, which makes me think that perhaps it may snow to-night.
52. *Tsugi no shūku made nan ri gozaimasū ?* How many miles is it to the next town ?
53. *Tsumaranai koto wo ū-kakerarete, ōki ni komarimashūta.* I felt much annoyed at being addressed in that manner.
54. *Watakūshi wa achira no hō ye ichi-do mo itta koto ga nai kara, annai wo hitori yatotte kudasai.* As I have never been in that direction before, please engage a guide for me.
55. *Yuki wa kirei desu ga, —ato no michi ni komarimasū.* Snow is pretty to look at, but it puts the roads in a frightful state afterwards.

48. Lit. "the embankment of there."—51. *Toko* is for *tokoro*, "place," hence "fact." *Mimasū to*, "when I see," "when I consider" (the fact that there is, i.e. that I am feeling, an under-chill). For *suru* in the sense of "to be," see ¶ 356, p. 227. *Furu ka mo shiremasen*, lit. "one cannot know whether it will snow."—54. *Itta koto*, conf. ¶ 277, p. 178. 55. More lit. "one is troubled by the after-roads."

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS.

- |                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Mada ma ni aimashō ka ?</i><br>— <i>Mō ma ni aimasen.</i>                                                                  | Shall I still be in time?<br>—No, you won't.                                                                   |
| 2. <i>Mō ma ni aimasūmai ka ?</i><br><i>Mada ma ni aimasū.</i>                                                                   | Don't you think I shall<br>still be in time?—Yes, you<br>will.                                                 |
| 3. <i>Omoshirō gozaimashita ka ?</i><br>— <i>Ie ; amari omoshiroku wa</i><br><i>gozaimasen.</i>                                  | Was it amusing?—No,<br>not very.                                                                               |
| 4. <i>Go byōki wa ikaga de</i><br><i>gozaimasū ka ?—Arigatō go-</i><br><i>zaimasū. Ōki ni kokoro-yoku</i><br><i>narimashita.</i> | How do you feel to-day?<br>—Much better, thank you.                                                            |
| 5. <i>Dō o kangae nasaru ka ?</i><br><i>Kangae ga tsūkimasen.</i>                                                                | What do you think about<br>it?—I can't arrive at any<br>opinion.                                               |
| 6. <i>Watakūshi-domo ni mo mi-</i><br><i>raremashō ka ? — Mirarenai</i><br><i>koto wa arumai.</i>                                | Can I too be allowed to<br>see it, do you think?—I<br>don't think there is any rea-<br>son why you should not. |
| 7. <i>Anata wa, o kodomo-shu</i><br><i>ga gozaimasū ka ? — Ie ;</i><br><i>watakūshi wa dokūshin de</i><br><i>gozaimasū.</i>      | Have you any children?<br>—No, I am a bachelor.                                                                |

3. For *amari*, see p. 148. For the *wa* after *omoshiroku*, conf. p. 88. Such elliptical sentences as "No, not very" in the English version of this example and the answer in the next example, are not admissible in Japanese.—5 The answer is lit. "consideration sticks not."—6. Conf. ¶ 309, pp. 201-2, and ¶ 432, p. 271.—7. More lit. "As for you, are there honourable children?"

8. *Ryokō menjō wo o mochi de gozaimasū ka?*—*He! shoji itashite orimasū.*

9. *Embi-fūku de irasshaimasū ka?*—*Sore de naku mo, fūrokku-kōto de yoroshii.*

10. *O meshi-mono wo o ki-kae nasaimasū ka?*—*Iya! kono mama de, uwagi dake yoi hō to kaeyō.*

11. *Senjitsu wa, kekkō na o shina wo arigatō sonjimasū.*

*Dō itashimashite! Makoto ni somatsu na mono de, shitsurei de gozaimashita.*

Have you got a passport?  
—Yes, I have.

Are you going in evening clothes, Sir?—No, my frock-coat will do well enough.

Are you going to change your clothes, Sir?—No, I shall remain as I am, except that I will put on a better coat.

Many thanks for the beautiful present you made me the other day.

Oh! pray don't mention it. It was really such rubbish, that it was quite rude of me to offer it to you.

8. *Ryokō* may be omitted. The answer to this question is rather high-flown. In simpler parlance it would be *He! motte orimasū.*—9. In Chinese *en*="swallow," *bi*="tail," *fūku*="clothes." *Sore de naku mo*, "even without that." *Fūrokku-kōto* is the nearest approach to "frock-coat," of which Japanese organs are capable.—10. *Meshi-mono* is a very polite term for clothes, used chiefly by servants in addressing their masters. *Yoi hō*="the good one," or "a better one," "my best one." Observe the simple non-honourific *kaeyō*, used by the master in addressing his servant. Between friends it would be *kaemashō*; and the servant in the question uses the still more honourific periphrasis *o ki-kae nasaimasū.*—11. (Answer.) It is the rule to use some such depreciatory phrase as this in speaking of a present made by oneself to another. The self-depreciation does not sound at all excessive to Japanese ears. For the *de* in *somatsu na mono de*, see p. 138, ¶ 2co *et seq.* This method of correlating sentences must be carefully studied.—12. When there is no bell, as in all old-fashioned Japanese houses, the visitor cries out *O tanō' mōshimasū* as in No. 14. The servant here says simply *taku*, rather than *o taku*, in order to avoid applying honorifics to any one connected with the family he himself belongs to, even though it be the lady of the house herself.



12. (Visitor rings the bell,  
and servant appears.)

*Irasshaimashī!*

*Okūsama wa, o uchi de  
gozaimasū ka?*

*He! taku de gozaimasū.*

13. *Rusu-chū ni donata mo  
o ide wa nakatta ka?*

*He! senkoku kono tefuda no  
kata ga irasshaimashite, o kaeri  
ni nattara, "Yoroshiku" to  
mōsaremashita.*

(This last clause is a polite phrase in  
constant use.)

14. *O tano(mi) mōshimasū!*

*Irasshaimashī!*

*Go shujin wa, o taku de  
gozaimasū ka?*

*Tadaima rusu de gozai-  
masū.*

*Sō desū ka? Sore de wa,  
o kaeri ni narimashitara,  
"Smith ga mairimashite,  
'Yoroshiku' mōshimashita" to  
itte kudasai.*

Welcome!

Is Mrs.\*\*\* at home?

Yes, Sir.

Did any one call while I  
was out?

Yes, Sir, a gentleman  
called and left this card;  
and he desired his compli-  
ments to you when you  
came home.

I beg to ask!

(This is the formula used when  
there is no house-bell.)

Welcome!

Is your master at home?

No, Sir, he has gone out.

Indeed? Then please  
tell him, when he comes  
home, that Mr. Smith called  
and desired his compli-  
ments to him.

13. More lit. "Did no one call?" the Japanese usually preferring to turn such questions negatively. The potential *mōsaremashita* at the end is more polite than plain *mōsu* would be; see ¶ 403, p. 250.—

14. The *mi* of *tanomi* is often dropped for brevity's sake. Persons who are not scrupulous about politeness cry out simply "*Tanomiu.*" These little dialogues instance the use of so many honorific idioms, that it might be well to read through the Chapter on Honorifics, p. 244 *et seq.*, in connection with them.

## PROVERBS.

1. *Ame* *fulle,*  
*Rain* *having-fallen,*  
*ji katamaru.*  
*earth hardens.*

2. *Awase-mono* *wa,*  
*Joined-thing* *as-for,*  
*hanare-mono.*  
*separable-thing(is).*

3. *Bō* *hodo* *negat-*  
*Bludgeon* *amount* *having-*  
*le,* *hari* *hodo*  
*requested,* *needle* *amount*  
*kanau.*  
*corresponds.*

4. *Dorobō* *ni* *oi-*  
*Thief* *to,* *pursue-*  
*sen.*  
*money.*

5. *Gō* *ni* *itte*  
*District* *into* *having-*  
*wa,* *gō* *ni* *shūta-*  
*entered,* *district* *to* *con-*  
*gae!*  
*form!*

6. *Haki-dame* *ni* *tsuru.*  
*Sweep-mound* *on,* *stork.*

After rain the ground gets hard.

(“ Good comes out of evil.”)

That which has been artificially joined together is easily separated.

( Said of a husband and wife who disagree.)

To ask for a bludgeon's worth, and to get a needle's worth.

Spending money on the pursuit of a thief.

(“ Throwing good money after bad.”)

When you enter a district, conform to its customs.

(“ When you are in Rome, do as Rome does.”)

A stork on a dust-heap.

(“ A jewel in a dunghill.”)

2. Supply *da*, “ is,” after *hanare-mono*.—4. Supply *wo tsuiyasu* at the end.—5. This *itte* is the gerund of *iru*, “ to enter.”

7. *Hari hodo no koto*  
Needle amount 's thing  
*wo bō hodo ni*  
(accus.) bludgeon amount to  
*iu.*  
to -say.  
To talk of a thing as small  
as a needle as if it were as  
big as a bludgeon.  
( "To make mountains out of  
mole-hills.")
8. *Hito no uwasa mo,*  
People 's rumour even;  
*shichi-jū-go-nichi.*  
seventy-five-days (is).  
Gossip only lasts seventy-  
five days.  
( "The scandal will blow over like  
"a nine days' wonder.")
9. *Hito wo noroeba,*  
Person (accus.) if-one-curses,  
*ana fūatsu.*  
holes two (eventuate).  
Curse a man, and there  
will be two graves.  
(A curse strikes not only him against  
whom it is pronounced, but also him  
who pronounces it.)
10. *Hiza to mo, dan-*  
Knees with even, con-  
*gō.*  
sultation (do).  
Consult any one, even if  
it be only your own knees.  
( "In multitude of counsellors  
there is safety.")
11. *Hotoke no kao mo,*  
Buddha 's face even,  
*san-dō.*  
three-times.  
Even a Buddha's face can  
only be tickled thrice.  
( "The crushed worm will turn.")
12. *I no uchi no kawazu.*  
Well 's inside 's frog.  
Like a frog in a well.  
(Knowing nothing of the world.)
13. *Ichī wo kiite,*  
One (accus.) having-heard,  
*jū wo shiru.*  
ten (accus.) to-know.  
To know all by hearing  
a part.  
(Said of mental acuteness.)
14. *Inu ni nalle mo,*  
Dog to becoming even,  
*ō-doko no inu ni nare!*  
large-place 's dog to become!  
If you become a dog, at  
least be the dog of a great  
house.  
( "Do nothing by halves.")

8. Supply *da*, "is."—9. Supply *ga dekiru*.—10. Supply *shiro!*—11. Supply some such words as *shika naderarenai*<sup>2</sup>, "cannot-stroke<sup>2</sup> but<sup>1</sup> (three-times.)"—12. The complete saying is *I no uchi no kawazu daikai<sup>1</sup> wo<sup>2</sup> shirazu<sup>3</sup>* ("knows-not<sup>3</sup> the ocean<sup>1</sup>"). *Shirazu* here and in No. 30 is a relic of the Book Language, the "conclusive negative present."

15. *Iri-mame ni hana.*  
Parched-peas on, blossoms. Blossoms on parched peas.  
(“Grapes on thorns and figs on  
thistles.”)
16. *Jigoku no sala*  
Hell 's decisions Even hell's judgments  
*mo, kane shidai.* may be swayed by money.  
also, money according(are). (“Money is the key that opens  
all doors.”)
17. *Kai-inu ni te*  
Keeping-dog by, hand To get one's hand bitten  
*wo kamareru.* by one's own pet dog.  
(accus.) to-get-bitten. (“Nursing a viper in one's bosom.”)
18. *Kawai ko ni wa*  
Dear child to A pet child should be  
*tabi wo sase!* made to travel.  
journey (accus.) cause-to-do! (“Spare the rod, and spoil the  
child.”)
19. *Kowashi, mitashi.*  
(Is)afraid; wants-to-see. Afraid, and yet itching to  
peep.
20. *Kyōdai wa ta-*  
Brethren as-for, other- Brotherhood is the first  
*nin no hajimari.* step towards estrangement.  
people of beginning (are). (“The exact reverse of our “Blood  
in thicker than water.”)
21. *Mekura sen-nin,*  
Blind thousand-per- For every thousand blind  
*me-aki sen-* there are a thousand who  
*sons, eye-open thousand-* can see.  
*nin.* (“The world's opinion is so evenly  
balanced, that there is little use in  
striving after unusual and often  
unappreciated excellence.”)
22. *Mitsu-go no tamashii*  
Three-child's soul A three-year-old child's  
*hyaku made.* soul will remain the same  
hundred till (changes not). till he is a hundred.  
 (“The boy is father to the man.”)

16. Supply *da*.—18. *Sase!* = *sasero!* imperative, second conj.—  
19. A good example of the survival of the conclusive form of adjectives,  
each word being here grammatically a complete sentence; see pp. 121-2.  
—20. Supply *da*.—21. Supply *aru*.—22. Supply *kawaranai*.



- |                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                              |                                                                   |                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>29. <i>Oni no rusu ni</i><br/> <i>Demon 's absence in,</i><br/> <i>sentaku.</i><br/> <i>washing (to do).</i></p> | <p>30. "<i>Rongo</i>" <i>yomi no</i><br/> "<i>Analects</i>" <i>reading 's</i><br/> "<i>Rongo</i>" <i>shirazu.</i><br/> "<i>Analects</i>" <i>knows-not.</i></p> | <p>31. <i>San-nin yore-</i><br/> <i>Three-persons if-come-</i><br/> <i>ba, Monju no chie.</i><br/> <i>together, Monju 's cleverness.</i></p> | <p>32. <i>Shaka ni sekkyō.</i><br/> <i>Buddha to, sermon.</i></p> | <p>33. <i>Shinda ko no toshi</i><br/> <i>Died child's ye@rs</i><br/> <i>wo kazoeru.</i><br/> <i>(accus.) to-count.</i></p> | <p>34. <i>Sumeba, miya-</i><br/> <i>If-you-reside, capital-</i><br/> <i>ko.</i><br/> <i>city (it is).</i></p> | <p>Doing the washing when the demons are absent.<br/> ("When the cat's away, the mice will play.")</p> <p>To have read the "Analects," and not to know them.<br/> ("If ye know these things, happy are ye if ye do them.")</p> <p>When three people consult together, there results wisdom worthy of Monju.<br/> ("Two heads are better than one.")</p> <p>Preaching to Buddha.<br/> ("Teaching your grandmother to suck eggs.")</p> <p>To reckon up a dead child's age.<br/> ("Crying over spilt milk.")</p> <p>If you live in a place, it becomes the capital so far as you are concerned.<br/> ("One can make one's home any-where.")</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

29. Supply *wo suru*. *Sentaku* is believed to be a corruption of *tentaku*, "changing house." If so, the original meaning of the proverb was "To change house when the demons are not by to see."—30. The Confucian "Analects" are one of the most venerated of the Chinese Classics, and a committal of them to memory was formerly an essential part of every Japanese gentleman's education. The proverb applies to the failure to put principles into practice, not, as might be supposed, to the non-comprehension of texts. *Yomi*, the indefinite form of *yomu*, "to read," is here equivalent to *yomu hito*. For *shirazu* see p. 311, note to No. 12.—31. *Monju* (Sanskrit *Manjusri*) is the personification of wisdom in the Buddhist mythology.—32. Supply *wo suru*.—34. Supply *da*. This proverb means that a man can accustom himself to any circumstances.

35. *Todai,* *molo* *kura-*  
*Candlestick,* *bottom* *(is)*  
*shi.*  
*dark.* Just below the candlestick is the darkest place of all.  
 ("One has to go abroad to get news of home.")
36. *Tokoro* *kawareba,* *shina*  
*Place* *if-changes,* *kind*  
*kawaru.*  
*changes.* So many places, so many manners.
37. *Ūma* *no* *mimi* *ni*  
*Horse* 's *ear* *in,*  
*nembutsu.*  
*prayer-to-Buddha (to say).* Pouring prayers into a horse's ears.  
 (Taking useless trouble.)
38. *Ushi wa ushi-zure,*  
*Cow as-for, cow-companion;*  
*ūma wa ūma-zure.*  
*horse as-for, horse-companion.* Cows consort with cows, and horses with horses.  
 ("Birds of a feather flock together.")
39. *Ūwasa wo sureba,*  
*Gossip (accus.) if-one-does,*  
*kage ga sasu.*  
*shadow (nom.) strikes.* If you talk of a man, his shadow will fall on you.  
 ("Talk of the Devil, and he'll appear.")
40. *Wataru sekai ni*  
*Cross world in,*  
*oni wa nai.*  
*demon as-for, is-not.* Cross the whole world, and you will find no demons.  
 (There is kindness to be found everywhere.)
41. *Wazawai wa shimo*  
*Calamity as-for, below*  
*kara.*  
*from (arises).* Calamities come from below.  
 (It is not enough to flatter the great. You must ingratiate yourself with the underlings; for the power to hurt you rests chiefly with them.)

35. *Kurashi*, conclusive form of *kurai*, "dark;" conf. pp. 121—2.

—37. Supply *wo iu*.—41. Supply *okoru*.

OF

## CONVERSATION.

1. THE POST.—*Kesa, yūbin wa kimasen ka ?*  
*He ! mairimasen.*  
*Hate-na ! Kinō no asa Hama ye dashīta henji ga mō kuru*  
*wake da ga . . . . .*
2. AN EXHIBITION.—*Tōnen mo Ueno ni hakurankwai ga*  
*arimashō ka ?*  
*Ikaga deshō ka ? Tonto uwasa wo kikimasen.*
3. A REQUEST.—*Dekiru nara, kyō-jū ni kore wo utsushite*  
*kudasai.*  
*Dōmo ! sō wa ikimasen.*
4. ENGAGING A TEACHER.—*Dōzo yoi shishō wo sagashite*  
*kudasai.*  
*Mi-atari shidai, tsurete mairimashō.*
5. WHAT SALARY?—*Hito-tsūki no sharei wa, dono kurai*  
*yallara yokarō ?*  
*Mā ! jū-shi-go-en de jūbun de gozaimashō.*

---

1. For "yes," where "no" would seem more natural, see ¶ 376, pp. 235-6. *Hama* is a familiar abbreviation for *Yokohama*. The last line of the Japanese text is extremely concise:—*Hama ye dashīta henji* may be best construed by expanding it to *Hama ye dashīta tegami no*



FREE  
ENGLISH  
TRANSLATION.

1. THE POST.—Have no letters come this morning?

NO, none have come.

I can't make it out! Why, there ought to be an answer to the letter I sent to Yokohama yesterday morning.

2. AN EXHIBITION.—Is there to be an exhibition at Ueno this year also?

I don't know. I have not heard the slightest rumour on the subject.

3. A REQUEST.—If you can manage it, do please copy this by to-night.

O! really, that is quite impossible.

4. ENGAGING A TEACHER.—Please look out for a good teacher for me.

AS SOON AS I find one, I will bring him to you.

5. SALARY.—How much salary should I give a month (*e.g., to a teacher or clerk*)?

Well, I should say that \$14 or \$15 would be ample.

---

*henji*. The sentence is incomplete; but such incomplete sentences ending in *ga* are of frequent occurrence, the speaker not knowing exactly what to add; conf. p. 186.—2. *Ikaga deshō ka* is more or less equivalent to "I don't know;" see ¶ 375, p. 235.

6. MEAL HOURS.—*Kochira de wa, gozen no jikoku wa, nan-ji to nan-ji desū ka ?*

*He! O hiru wa jū-ni-ji han de, o yashoku ga shūchi-ji han de gozaimasū.*

*Sore de wa, asa-han wa ?*

*He! asa wa, kimari ga gozaimasen. Anata no go tsugō shidai.*

7. AN ENQUIRY.—*Moshi! uke-tsūke wa, kochira desū ka ?*

*Hei! koko wo massugu ni o ide ni naru to, sugu soko desū.*

8. ANOTHER ENQUIRY.—*Koko kara Fuji ga mieru to wa, hontō desū ka ?*

*Mā! mieru to mōsū koto de gozaimasū.*

9. TALKING TO A CHILD.—*Sā, botchan! koko ye o kake nasai. O otonashii koto! O ikutsu desū ka ?*

*Yatsu.*

*Taisō ōkii koto! Gakkō ye o kayoi desū ka ?*

*He! mainichi ikimasu ga,—kyō wa, doyōbi desū kara, o hiru-giri deshita.*

10. TALKING TO A FATHER.—*Kono ko wa, anata no go shisoku de gozaimasū ka ?*

*He! watakushi no sōryō de gozaimasū.*

*Sore wa, taisō o rippa na go shisoku wo o mochi nasaimashite, sazo o tanoshimi de gozaimashō.*

*Ie! dōmo, wampaku de komarimasū.*

6. *Jū-ni-ji han de*: notice how *de*, used predicatively, correlates this clause with the next; conf. ¶ 200, p. 138, and the fourth and fifth examples on p. 139. After *asa-han wa*, supply *itsu de gozaimasū?* After *shidai*, supply *de gozaimasū*.—7. For *koko wo*, conf. p. 232.—8. *To wa* stands for *to iu koto wa*, “the assertion that Fuji can,” etc.—

6. MEAL HOURS.—What are the hours for meals here?

Luncheon is at half-past twelve, and dinner at half-past seven.

Then what about breakfast?

Breakfast? There is no fixed time for it, Sir. You can have it whenever convenient to yourself.

7. AN ENQUIRY.—Please, is this the enquiry office?

No; but you will come to it in a minute, if you go straight on.

8. ANOTHER ENQUIRY.—Is it true that Fuji can be seen from here?

Well, it is supposed to be.

9. TALKING TO A CHILD.—Here, my little man! sit down here. What a good boy you are! How old are you?

Eight.

How big you are for your age! Do you go to school?

Yes, I go there every day. But to-day we only had lessons till noon, because it is Saturday.

10. TALKING TO A FATHER.—Is this little boy your son?

Yes, he is my eldest.

Indeed, you have a fine fellow for an eldest son. What a source of happiness he must be to you!

Oh! no indeed. He is so naughty, I don't know what to do.

9. For *botchan*, see p. 240. *Koto in taisō ōkii koto!* is used exclamationally; see p. 39. The *o* of *o hiru-giri* is meaningless; see p. 248.—

10. Such complimentary and self-depreciatory speeches are customary, quite irrespective of facts, and must not be understood too literally.

11. THE TELEGRAPH.—*Kokoe-ra wa, hempi da kara, denshin ga nakūte, fujiyū desū, ne!*

*Sayō de gozaimasuru. Oi-oi dekimasū de gozaimashō.*

12. SPEAKING JAPANESE WELL.—*Anata wa, yoku Nihon-go ga o wakari ni narimasū.*

*Tonda koto osshaimasū. Dō shite! Naka-naka sosō de gozaimasū.*

*Iya! dō itashimashite! Hontō ni rippa de gozaimasū.*

13. NO THOROUGHFARE.—*Ano hashi wa fushin-chū de, ōrai-dome dasō da.*

*Dōri de, koko ni kari-bashi ga kakatte imasū.*

14. COMPLIMENTS ON MEETING A FRIEND.—*Konaida wa tochū de hanahada shikkei.*

*Ie! dō itashimashite! watakūshi koso. Shikashi, are kara dochira ye irasshaimashita?*

15. A MESSAGE.—*Sakki no tsūkai wa, mada kaette konai ka? Nani wo shite iru ka? Taisō tema ga tozeru.*

*Ōkata saki sama ga o rusu de, matte de mo orimasu n' de gozaimashō.*

12. Lit. "As for you, Japan language becomes well to honourable understanding."—13. *De*, see ¶ 200. *Dasō* is the "adjective of probability" of *da*, "to be." *Dōri de* = "being reasonable," here "that is why."—14. These and similar complimentary speeches are in constant use, and do not sound absurd in Japanese, though the faults apo'logised for on both sides are generally quite imaginary. After *shikkei* supply *itashimashita*. After *koso* supply *de gozaimashita*. Apropos the sentence

11. THE TELEGRAPH.—It is inconvenient—isn't it?—there being no telegraph in this part of the country, on account of its being so out-of-the-way.

Yes. But I suppose we shall have it in time.

12. SPEAKING JAPANESE WELL.—You speak Japanese beautifully.

Nonsense! How *can* you say such a thing? My Japanese is very poor indeed.

Not a bit of it. How can you say so? You really speak splendidly.

13. NO THOROUGHFARE.—It seems that the thoroughfare is closed, because the bridge over there is undergoing repairs.

Ah yes! That is why they have put up a temporary bridge here.

14. COMPLIMENTS ON MEETING A FRIEND.—I beg your pardon for having been so rude to you in the street the other day.

Oh! no, not at all! It was I who was rude. Where did you go after we parted?

15. A MESSAGE.—Hasn't the messenger whom I sent some time ago, come back yet? What is he doing? He is a tremendous time about it.

Probably it is because the gentleman you sent him to is out, so that the messenger is kept waiting.

beginning *Shikashi*, notice that such questions as to where one has been or is about to go are not considered indiscreet by the Japanese, but are, on the contrary, used in the best society.—15. *Sakki* is emphatic for *saki*; conf. ¶ 25, p. 18. *Toreru* is the intransitive corresponding to the transitive verb *toru*, "to take;" conf. p. 206. *Saki sama* "the gentleman in front," i.e. "the gentleman over there." For *n'* see bottom of p. 79.

16. FEELING UNWELL.—*Kyō no shūkwai ni wa, irashaimasen deshita ka?*

*He! kyō wa, nan da ka, kokoro-mochi ga warukūte ikemasen kara, kotowari wo itte yarimashita.*

17. ON BOARD SHIP.—*Kyō wa, yoi nagi de gozaimasū, ne!*

*Sō de gozaimasū. Go dōyō ni shi-awase de gozaimasū.*

*Anata wa, Kōbe ye o ide de gozaimasū ka?*

*Ie. Nagasaki made mairimasū.*

*Ikaga de gozaimasū? Kitsuenjō de ip-puku itashimashō ka?*

*Sa! o tomo itashimashō.*

18. A PICNIC.—*Kyō wa, ii hiyori da kara, undō katagata Ōjigoku wo mite kimasū kara, nani ka mi-tsūkurotte, bentō wo san-nin-mae isoide koshiraete kudasai.*

*He! shōchi itashimashita. Go shu wa, nani-nani wo motasemashō?*

*Sake wa, biiru ip-pon to, fusūke ip-pon ni, sōda-mizu ni-hon de yoroshii.*

*He! kashikomarimashita.*

19. A VISITOR.—*Ima mieta o kyaku wa, mada gozen-mae dasō da kara, nan de mo ari-awase-mono de gohan wo dashite kudasai.*

*He! shōchi itashimashita.*

16. *Warukūte ikemasen*, fairly lit. "being so bad, that it is no go;" more simply "it is too bad." Similarly *tōkute ikemasen*, "it is too far;" *kūtabirete ikemasen*, "I am too tired," etc.; conf. ¶ 218, pp. 147-8.—17. For the *objective* honorifics in *go dōyō* and *o tomo*, see p. 247.—18. *Ōjigoku* ("Big Hell") is the name of a valley near Miyano-shita containing some boiling sulphur-springs. It is also called

16. FEELING UNWELL.—Didn't you go to the meeting to-day?

No. I don't know what it is, but I feel unwell; so I sent an excuse.

17. ON BOARD SHIP.—It is beautifully calm to-day, isn't it?

Yes, indeed. It is lucky for all of us.

Are you going to Kōbe?

No. I am going on to Nagasaki.

What do you say to our going and having a pipe in the smoking-room?

All right, come along!

18. A PICNIC.—As it is fine weather to-day, we are going to Ōjigoku for the sake of a little exercise. So please make haste, and put up something or other as luncheon for three.

All right, Sir. What liquors shall I send?

Liquors?—A bottle of beer, a bottle of whisky, and two bottles of soda-water, will be enough.

All right, Sir.

19. A VISITOR.—It would seem that the visitor who has just arrived has not dined yet. So please give him something to eat. Anything that happens to be ready will do.

All right, Sir.

*Ōwaki-dani*, i.e., "the Valley of the Great Boiling." *Undō katagata*, more lit. "at the same time as exercise." *Mite kimasū*: conf. *kuru*, p. 193. *Go shu* is Chinese for the Japanese *o sake*, and sounds more polite. *Fusūke* is the nearest approach most Japanese can make to the pronunciation of our word "whisky." *Kashikomarimashita*, or *shōchi itashimashita*, as immediately above, is the usual term by which an inferior expresses that he has understood the orders of a superior.

20. ASKING THE WAY.—*Moshi! Hakubutsūkwan wa, dono hen desū ka?*

*Sayō de gozaimasū. Sore wa, koko wo massugu ni iku to, migi no hō ga junsu no kōbansho de, hidari no hō ga Hakubutsūkwan desū. Mon ni "Hakubutsūkwan" to kaita gaku ga agete arimasū kara, jiki shiremasū.*

*Kore wa, dōmo! arigatō zonyimasū.*

21. COMPLIMENTS ON FIRST MEETING.—*Hajimemashite (o me ni kakarimasū). Watakūshi wa Tanaka Tsunemasa to mōshimasū. Nanibun yoroshiku negaimasū.*

*Sayō de gozaimasū ka? Kanete sommei wa uketamawatte orimashita ga. . . . . Watakūshi wa Smith to mōsu mono de, igo o kokoro-yasū. . . . .*

22. TAKING LEAVE OF A FRIEND.—*Taisō chōza wo itashimashita. Konnichi wa mō o itoma (ni) itashimashō.*

*Mā! Yoi de wa gozaimasen ka? Mō shōshō o hanashi nastle irasshaimashī.*

*Arigatō gozaimasu ga,—konnichi wa chito tori-isogimasū kara, izure mata sono uchi ukagaimasū.*

*Sayō de gozaimasū ka? Kore wa taisō shitsurei bakari mōshi-agemashita. Sonnara, mata o chikai uchi ni zehi o tachi-yori wo. . . . .*

---

20. For the active past tense *kaita*, "wrote," where English idiom requires the passive past participle "written," see ¶ 293, pp. 190-1. Similarly in the case of *gaku ga agete arimasū*, lit. "a tablet is raising."—21. The complimentary phrases in this and the next three numbers should be carefully committed to memory, as they are in constant requisition, however queer and stilted the English transla-



20. ASKING THE WAY.—Please, Sir! would you tell me the way to the Museum?

Let me see! Yes! If you go straight on, you will find a police-station to your right, and the building on the left is the Museum. You will know it at once, for there is a tablet over the gate, with the word "Museum" written on it.

Oh! very many thanks, Sir.

21. COMPLIMENTS ON FIRST MEETING.—This is the first time I have had the honour to meet you, Sir. My name is Tanaka Tsunemasa. I beg for your kind friendship.

Oh! indeed? I have had the honour to hear of you before, although (we have never met). My name is Smith. Henceforward I hope you will honour me with your intimacy.

22. TAKING LEAVE OF A FRIEND.—I have paid you an unconscionably long visit, and must now be taking my leave.

Oh! Why hurry so? Do please chat a little longer.

Many thanks, but I am rather pressed for time to-day. I will call again soon.

Must you really go? Well, pray excuse the shortcomings of my imperfect hospitality, and remember that I count upon your visiting me again very soon.

tions may sound. After *uketamawatte orimashita ga*, must be supplied some clause such as has here been rendered in English by "we have never met." After *o kokoro yasū* supply *negaimasū*.—22. *Yō* would be more strictly grammatical than *yoi de wa*, but the latter is often used; conf. N. B. to p. 125. For the *tori* of *tori-isogimasū*, see p. 219. At the end supply *negaimasū*.

23. THANKS FOR ASSISTANCE RECEIVED.—*Sate dan-dan kono tabi wa go shūsen kudasaimashite, arigatō gozaimasū.*

*Ie! iki-todokimasen de, makoto ni . . . . . Shikashi mazu o medetō gozaimasū.*

24. NEW YEAR CONGRATULATIONS.—*Mazu akemashite, o medetō gozaimasū.*

*O medetō gozaimasū. Kyūtō wa iro-iro o sewa sama ni narimashite, arigatō zanjimasū. Nao tōnen mo ai-kawarazu negaimasū.*

25. AN EARTHQUAKE.—*Anata saki-hodo jishin ga gozaimashita no wo go zonji desū ka ?*

*Ie! sūkoshi mo zanjimasen deshita.*

*He-hē! Yohodo hidō gozaimashite, ano tokonoma no hana-ike ga yurete, sunde-no-koto ni taoresō ni naru hodo deshita.*

*Sore wa, naka-naka ōki na jishin de gozaimashita, ne! Nan-ji goro deshita ?*

*Sono toki, tokei wo mimashitara, ichi-ji ni-jip-pun sug deshita.*

*Naruhodo! ha-hā! Sore de wa, shiranai wake desū. Watakūshi wa, ichi-ji ni Tsūkiji wo demashite, kuruma de mairimashita kara, ōkata sono tochū de gozaimashitarō.*

23. *Sate* = "well!" *Dan-dan*, "gradually," which serves to show how long-continued your favours have been, is a word constantly thus used in polite speeches. After *makoto ni* must be supplied some such clause as that which we have translated by "I am ashamed of myself." "Result" is not actually in the original expression; but the idea is more or less pointed at.—24. *Akemashite* refers to the "open-

23. THANKS FOR ASSISTANCE RECEIVED.—I am very much indebted to you for all your kind assistance on this occasion.

Not at all! I am really ashamed of myself for having done so little. Anyhow, I congratulate you on the result.

24. NEW YEAR CONGRATULATIONS.—I beg to offer you my congratulations on the New Year.

The same to you. I trust that you will continue to me throughout the present year those favours by which I have profited in so many ways during the year that has just closed.

25. AN EARTHQUAKE.—Did you feel the earthquake a few hours ago?

No, I didn't feel it at all.

Indeed? It was very violent. It was such that the flower-vase there in the alcove shook so that it seemed likely to fall.

Then it must indeed have been a severe earthquake. About what o'clock did it take place?

I looked at my watch at the time, and it was twenty minutes past one.

Ah, I see. In that case I was bound not to feel it. As I left Tsūkiji at one o'clock, and went in a *jūrikisha*, it doubtless took place while I was on the road.

ing" of the New Year. *Kyūto* is lit. "old winter" in Chinese, hence "last year."—25. *Sunde no koto ni* = "just about to." *Shiranai wake*, not "a reason which does not know," but "a reason why I should not know;" conf. p. 58. *Tsūkiji* is the name of the foreign "concession" (quarter) in Tōkyō. For *sono* = "of that," see p. 54.

26. HIRING A JINRIKĪSHA.—*Kyaku.*—*Oi! kuruma-ya Ueno no Hakubutsūkwan ye itte, ne!—sore kara Asakūsa no kōenchi wo kembutsu shūte, kaeri ni Ginza de kai-mono shūte, mata kono station made kaeru 'n da ga,—ikura de iku ka?*

*Shafu.*—*He! hidoku o tema ga toremashō ka?*

*Kyaku.*—*Iya! sō tema wa toremai,—yūkata made ni kaeru tsumori da kara.*

*Shafu.*—*He! Sore de wa, danna! shīchi-jū-go-sen negatō gozaimasū.*

*Kyaku.*—*H'm! sūkoshi takaku wa nai ka?*

*Shafu.*—*Ie! Yohodo michi-nori mo gozaimasū kara, kesshūte o takai koto wa mōshi-agemasen.*

*Kyaku.*—*Sonnara, sore dake yaru kara, kaeri ni Teikoku Hoteru ye choito yotte kurei,—tazuneru hito ga aru kara. Shīkashi, kore wa tema wa torenai.*

*Shafu.*—*He! Yoroshiū gozaimasū. O meshi nasaimashī.*

27. LETTERS FOR THE MAIL.—*Moshi! O Haru San! Dare ka ni kono tegami wo yūbin-kyoku ye motasete,—Nihon-ji de kaite aru hō wa, kaki-tome ni sasete, uke-tori wo toranakereba naran ga,—yoko-moji no hō wa, gwaikoku-yuki da kara, jis-sen no kille wo hatte, tada sashi-ire-guchi ye irete kureba yoroshii.*

*He! kashikomarimashūta.*

26. *Ueno* and *Asakusā* are districts in Tōkyō, the *Ginza* is a street, and the "Imperial" a large hotel in European style. Notice the correlation of clauses in the first sentence by means of the gerund repeated several times. The clause *tazuneru hito ga aru kara* is inverted; it should properly precede the words *kaeri ni* immediately above.—27. Learn this example thoroughly by heart, parse it, and

26. HIRING A JINRIKISHA.—*Fare.* I say, *jirikī-man!* I want to go to the Museum at Ueno, you know,—from there on to see the Public Garden at Asakūsa, then to make some purchases in the Ginza on the way back, and to return again here to the station. How much will you go for?

*Jinrikīsha-man.* Shall you be long about it, Sir?

*Fare.* No, probably not; for I intend to be back by dusk.

*Jinrikīsha-man.* Well then, Sir, I must ask seventy-five cents.

*Fare.* H'm. Isn't that rather dear?

*Jinrikīsha-man.* No, Sir; I haven't named at all a high price, for the distance is very great.

*Fare.* All right, then; I will give you that much. So just look in at the Imperial Hotel on the way back, as I have some one to call on there. But that won't take long.

*Jinrikīsha-man.* All right, Sir. Please step in.

27. LETTERS FOR THE MAIL.—I say O-Haru! tell some one to carry these letters to the post-office. The messenger must have the one which is addressed in Japanese characters registered, and must get a receipt for it; but in the case of those written in Roman letters, it will be enough if he sticks a ten cent stamp on each, and just drops them into the post-box, as they are to go abroad.

All right, Sir.

---

analyse it, and you will have laid the foundations of a practical mastery of that most difficult portion of Japanese grammar the integration of sentences, which is treated of at the end of the Chapter on Syntax, pp. 280-2. *Shira* is a familiar abbreviation of *shiran*.

28. NEARING YOKOHOMA.—*Ano oki ni daibu shima ga miemasu ga,—are wa, nan to iu shima de gozaimasu?*

*Are ga Izu no Shichi-tō de gozaimasu. Mae no ga Ōshima to iimasū.*

*Hē! are de mo, hito ga sunde imasū ka shira.*

*E! Sunde iru dokoro de wa arimasen. Koko kara miru to, chūsō gozaimasu ga,—Ōshima nazo ni wa, mannaka ni funkwazan ga atte, sono mawari ni mura-kazu ga rok-ka-son mo arimasū. Ato no shima-jima ni mo taigai—mottomo munin-tō mo arimasū keredo,—hito ga sunde imasū.*

*Hē! Sayō de gozaimasū ka?*

29. A CHRISTIAN CHURCH.—*Kono shūku ni wa, Yaso-shū no shinja ga ōi to iu koto desū, ne.*

*He! sō de gozaimasū. Kono hen wa, moppara Yaso wo shinkō itashimasū.*

*Kwaidō ga tatte orimasū ka?*

*He! Kore made wa, kochō san no bettaku wo kari ni kwaidō ni mochiute orimashita ga,—tezema ni tsuite, konda shinki ni waki ye tatte orimasū.*

*Kyōshi wa, Seiyō-jin desū ka?*

*Sō de gozaimasū. Nichiyō-goto ni shusseki shite, sekkyo itasaremasū. Kono goro de wa, senrei wo uketa hito ga yohodo fuemashita sō desū.*

*Sō desū ka? Sore wa, naka-naka na koto desū, ne!*

---

28. For *dokoro* see p. 43. *Nazo*, properly "etcetera," usually tones down a little the force of the preceding word. We have tried to represent this by the term "for instance" in the English version. *Mura*, ("village") has for its auxiliary numeral the word *son*, which is but the Chinese synonym of the word *mura*; hence *rok-ka-son*="six villages." For the sense of *taishita*, and its exclusively attributive use, see p. 141

28. NEARING YOKOHAMA.—I see quite a number of islands out there. What islands are they?

They are the Seven Isles of Izu. The one in front is called Ōshima (“Vries Island”).

Indeed! I wonder whether there are any people living on it?

People living on it? I should just think there were! Why! Small as it looks from here, Vries Island has a volcano in the middle, round the base of which cluster no less than six villages. The other islands too, though doubtless some are uninhabited, mostly have people living on them.

Dear me! You don't say so!

29. A CHRISTIAN CHURCH.—There is said to be a large number of (Protestant) Christians in this town,—isn't there?

Yes. Most of the people in this neighbourhood are Christians.

Is there a church?

Well, hitherto the mayor's villa has done duty as a church. But it is too small, and so they are erecting a new building on another site.

Is the pastor a foreigner?

Yes; he comes and preaches every Sunday. It is said that great numbers of people have been baptised recently.

Indeed! Then Christianity is in a very fair way here.

---

and top of p. 142.—29. Were Roman Catholics intended, the term *Tenshukyō* would be used instead of *Yaso-shū*, and *Tenshu-dō* for *kwaidō*. The *zema* in *tezema* is the stem form of the adjective *semai*, “narrow.” “Going to official business” is *shukkin*; to any other, *shutchō* or *shusseki*. *Naka-naka ni koto*, “a considerable thing.”

30. A FIRE.—*Oya! kwaji to miete, hanshō wo utteru ga :—shirase bakari da kara, daijōbu da ga,—hōgaku wa, dochira ni attate iru ka mile kudasai.*

*He! tadaima soto kara maitta mono no mōshimasū ni wa, sappari miemasen sō desū. Tabun kinzai de gozaimashō.*

31. THE THEATRE.—*Chikagoro Kabuki-za ga aita sō desu ga,—gedai wa, nan de gozaimasū ka?*

*He! Kinō waki de kikimashūtara, kondo wa “Chūshingura” no tōshi dasō de, de-kata mo daibu kao-zoroi dasō desū.*

*Sō desū ka? Sore ia, kyōgen ga ū kara, kitto ataru deshō.*

32. EARLY TO BED.—*Hanahada shisūrei de gozaimasu ga,—watakūshi wa, go men kōmurimashite, fūserimasū,—myōchō wa, yohodo hayaku shuttatsu suru tsumori desū kara.*

*Dōzo watakūshi-domo ni o kamai naku o yasumi nasaimashī. Kōmban wa, zehi kono kaki-mono wo shi-agete shimaimasen-kereba narimasen yue, yo ga fūkemashō to omoimasū kara, myōchō wa, shikkei nagara, o me ni kakarimasen ka mo shiremasen ga, zuibun to go kigen yō.*

30. The “intimation” (*shirase*) of a distant fire, that is, of one not in the same district of the city, consists of two strokes of the fire-bell. *Mōshimasū ni wa* = “he says.” The words *sappari miemasen* are a quotation from the other man, and *sō desū* nearly = “he says,”—the Japanese construction thus being pleonastic, as it contains the equivalent of “he says” both before and after the words quoted; conf. latter part of ¶ 437, p. 278.—31. *Kabuki-za* is the name of the chief theatre in Tōkyō. *Gedai*, “title,” is said to be a corruption of *geidai*, lit. “list of



30. A FIRE.—Halloo! there would seem to be a fire; they are ringing the fire-bell. However, as it is only the “notice-bell,” it is all right. Still, please go and see in what direction the fire is.

Well, Sir! a man who came in a minute ago says there is nothing to be seen. Probably it is in one of the suburbs.

31. THE THEATRE.—I hear that the Kabuki-za Theatre has recently re-opened. What is being acted there?

On enquiring yesterday at a friend’s house, I learnt that it was *The Forty-Seven Rōnins*,—the entire play,—and that most of the best actors are taking part in it.

Indeed? That is a good piece. Doubtless it will be a great success.

32. EARLY TO BED.—Although it is very rude of me to do so, I must ask you to excuse me if I go to bed, as I intend to start very early to-morrow morning.

Oh! pray retire without paying attention to me. I must positively finish this writing to-night. So probably I shall not get to bed till late, and therefore please excuse me if I wish you a prosperous journey now, as I don’t know whether I shall have the honour to see you in the morning.

accomplishments.” For the story of the *Forty-seven Rōnins*, a little epic of loyalty and revenge, see Mitford’s “Tales of Old Japan.” Its Japanese title,—*Chū-shin-gura*,—well describes it; for the tale is indeed a “store” of the feelings and deeds of “loyal retainers.”—

32. The first sentence is inverted; the clause beginning with *myōchō wa* should, properly speaking, come first. The last sentence lacks some such final verb as *o ide nasaimashī*. The phrase *go kigen yō* is often thus used where we should say “goodbye.”

33. DIFFICULTY OF THE JAPANESE LANGUAGE.—*Dōmo! Nihon no kotoba wa, taihen ni iri-kunda mono de,—dōmo! koshi no magaru made manande mo, shosen oboe-tsūkusemasū-mai.*

*Ie! masaka sono yō na muzukashii mono de mo gozaimasen. Keiko sae sureba, nan de mo nai koto desū.*

34. ASKING THE WAY.—*Chotto michi wo ukagaimasū.*

*Kore kara san-chō saki no tokoro ni hidari ye magaru yoko-chō ga aru ga,—soko ye haitte, sore kara mata migi ye magatte, massugu ni iku n' desū.*

*Sonnara, kono tōri to narande orimasū, ne!*

35. THE WAY TO THE BRITISH LEGATION.—*Chotto mono wo o tazune mōshimasū. Igirisu kōshikwan ye wa, dō mairi-mashitara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?*

*He! Sore wa, kono Shimbashi-demae no yoko-dōri wo hidari ye massugu ni o ide ni narimasū to, goku hazure no migi-tte ni Tora-no-mon to iu mitsūke ga arimasū. Sore wo o hairi ni narimashite, doko made mo o ide ni narimasū to, Sakurada-mitsūke to iu mon no mae ye tsūki-atarimasū. Kondo naka ye hairazu ni, o hori ni tsuite, hidari ye doko made mo irasshaimasū to, mukō ni Eikoku kōshikwan no hala ga niemasū kara, jiki shiremasū.*

*Domo, arigatō zonjimasū. O jama wo itashimashita.*

36. A TOAST.—*Aruji, shampān wo tsuida koppu wo mochi-nagara, za wo tatte :*

*Kakū-shinshi wa, yoku komban wa o ide kudastte, makoto ni watakushi wa kinki ni tiemasen. Nao ai-kawarazu shimmitsu naru o tsūki-ai wo negaimasū.*

35. Shimbashi is the name of the quarter of Tōkyō in which the chief railway terminus is situated. *Konda* is a contraction of *kondo wa*.—

36. This example is in the stiff style, bordering on the Written Language, which is usual on such occasions. *Shampān wo tsuida koppu,*

33. DIFFICULTY OF THE JAPANESE LANGUAGE.—Really, Japanese is a terribly complicated language. Even if one were to study till one's back became bent with age, one could not learn it thoroughly.

Oh! no; it is hardly as difficult a thing as that. It is a mere nothing if only you set yourself to it.

34. ASKING THE WAY.—Please tell me the way.

About three hundred and sixty yards further on, there is a turning to the left. You must turn down it, and then turn again to the right, after which you go straight on.

Then it is parallel with this street, isn't it?

35. THE WAY TO THE BRITISH LEGATION.—Excuse my asking you; but would you kindly tell me the way to the British Legation?

Certainly. Look here! If you follow straight along this street branching off to the left in front of Shimbashi, you will come to a gate called Tora-no-mon on the right hand side at the very end. Go through it, and walk on and on, till you come to a gate called the Sakurada gate. Don't go through that, but turn to the left along the moat, and go straight on, and you will at once know which is the British Legation by seeing the flag ahead.

Very many thanks, Excuse me for having trespassed on your valuable time.

36. A TOAST.—*The host, taking a glass of champagne in his hand, rises and says :*

Gentlemen! I am really overwhelmed by your kindness in coming here to-night, and I trust that you will ever continue to favour me with your friendship.

---

lit. "a glass (into which some one) has poured champagne." *Kakūshin-shi*, lit. = each gentleman." *Kinki ni taemasen* lit. = "(I) cannot endure the delight." *Nao ai-kawarazu*, etc., lit. = "I request intimate intercourse still mutually changing not." *Naru* is bookish for *na*; conf. ¶ 197.

37. KEEPING A VISITOR WAITING. — *Hanahada shikkei deshita. Shi-kaketa yō ga atte, o matase mōshimashita. Dō itashimashite! Jitsu wa, sensei ni o negai ga atte deta n' desu ga,—o isogashii tokoro wo,—hanahada sumimasen.*

38. LOOKING IN ON AN INTIMATE FRIEND.

*Kyaku. Konnichi wa! O taku desū ka?*

*Aruji. Dare ka kita. Dete mi-na!*

*Nyōbō. Hai! oya! mā! kochira ye.*

*Kyaku. Kyō wa mō doko ye ka o ide desū ka?*

*Nyōbō. Ie, orimasū. Mā! o tōri asobase. . . Anata! Nakayoshi San ga irasshaimashita yo!*

*Aruji. Sō ka? . . . Sā! kochira ye.*

*Kyaku. Sensei o uchi datta, ne!*

*Aruji. Yoku hayaku o de-kake deshita.*

*Kyaku. Hayaku mo nai. Mō ku-ji sugi da.*

*Aruji. Naruhodo!*

*Kyaku. Kyō wa Sunday da kara, mō o rusu ka to omotta.*

*Aruji. Sunday de mo, betsudan ate-hameta yō ga nai shi, sūkoshi kibun ga warui kara, doko ye mo demasen deshita.*

37. Near the end, viz. after *tokoro wo*, a sentence is left unfinished. *Hanahada sumimasen* = "it is very improper" (for me to have intruded on you).—38. This example and the next are taken from the "*Fude Shashin*." Observe how in Japan it is the husband who orders his wife about, and not *vice versa*. The word *nyōbō* is non-honorific. For the *na* of *dete mi-na*, see p. 167, N. B.—Male speakers should avoid such strings of exclamations as *Hai! oya! mā!* and also the *anata* used as an interjection, and the *yo!* in the good lady's next

37. KEEPING A VISITOR WAITING.—Kindly excuse my rudeness in keeping you waiting ; but I was occupied with something which I could not leave half-finished.

Oh ! pray don't mention it ! To tell the truth, what I have come for is to ask you a favour. But I must apologise for intruding on you when you are so busy.

38. LOOKING IN ON AN INTIMATE FRIEND.

*Visitor.* (at the door) Good day ! Are you at home ?

*Host.* (to his wife) Somebody has come. Go and see who it is.

*Wife.* All right.— (To the visitor) Oh ! is it you ? Please come in.

*Visitor.* Has your husband already gone out to-day ?

*Wife.* No, he is at home. Please come in.— (To her husband). Here is Mr. Nakayoshi.

*Host.* Indeed !— (To the visitor) Oh ! please come in.

*Visitor.* And so you are at home, I see !

*Host.* You are on the move very early.

*Visitor.* Not at all. It's past nine o'clock.

*Host.* You don't say so.

*Visitor.* To-day being Sunday, I thought you might have gone out.

*Host.* True, it's Sunday. But I had no special reason for going out, besides which I am feeling rather unwell. So I was stopping at home.

remarks. After *kochira ye* supply *o tōri nasai*. The English word "Sunday" is paraded by the speakers to show their erudition. Japanese *nichiyōbi* would do just as well. *Betsudan ate-hameta yō*, lit. "specially allotted (but active, not passive verb) business." For *shi* see p. 81. Observe the scantiness of honorifics in this little colloquy, arising from the intimacy of the two men.

## 39. ARRIVING AT A TEA-HOUSE.

*Jochū.* *Irasshaimashī! Makoto ni o atsū gozaimasū.*

*Kyaku.* *Zuibun atsui, nē! Molto suzushii tokoro wa arimasen ka?*

*Jochū.* *Mina san ga sō osshaimasu ga,—kono tōri fū-sagatte orimashite, makoto ni o kinodokū sama desū. Sono uchi yoi tokoro ga akimasū kara, dōka koko ni negaimasū.*

*Kyaku.* *Sō ka? Shikata ga nai.*

40. A MEETING DISPERSED.—*Kono aida chotto o taku ye ukagaimashitara, anata wa go fuzai de gozaimashite, okusan no osshaimashita ni wa, Ibumura-Rō ye enzetsu wo o kiki ni o ide no yō ni uketamawarimashita ga,—nani ka mezurashii enzetsu de mo gozaimashita ka?*

*O! Sono setsu wa, chōdo orimasen de, shitsurei itashimashita. Ano hi wa, ai-niku deshite, ne!—mottomo chito osoku de-kakemashita ga,—Ibumura-Rō no mae made ikimasū to, doya-doya hito ga dete kimasū kara, naze ka to omotte kikimashitara, ni-ban-me no enzetsu-chū nani ka sūkoshi jōrei ni fureta koto ga atta to ka de, keisatsū-kwan ga chūshi wo mejita tame, sude ni kaisan ni natta toko deshite, jitsu ni zannen deshita.*

*Sore wa, oshii koto wo nasaimashita.*

39 Observe how the waitress uses honorifics to the guest, but not the guest to the waitress. There would, however, be no harm in his doing so. *Kono tōri*, "this way," is often equivalent to our phrase "as you see." The words "I cannot accommodate you with one yet" have to be added in the English version, to complete the sense. *Sono uchi*, lit. "meanwhile," hence "soon."—40. *Go fuzai* is a highly cultivated expression. The common people prefer *o rusu*. The *Ibumura-Rō* (*rō*="upper storey") was a tea-house in Tōkyō, where meetings were held and sets of lectures delivered,

## 39. ARRIVING AT A TEA-HOUSE.

*Waitress.* Welcome ! It is very hot to-day, Sir.

*Guest.* Very hot, isn't it? Haven't you any cooler room ?

*Waitress.* All our guests ask for cooler rooms. But we are, as you see, so full that I am sorry to say I cannot accommodate you with one yet. Please sit down here, Sir, until a better room becomes vacant.

*Guest.* Oh ! then there's no help for it.

40. A MEETING DISPERSED.—When I looked in at your house the other day, you were absent, and your wife said that you had gone to listen to a set of lectures at the Ibumura Hall. Were the lectures at all interesting ?

Oh ! it was very rude of me to happen to be out just then. On that day it was unfortunate, you know. To begin with, I was rather late in starting ; and then, when I got as far as the Hall, I found the people all pouring out in confusion. And on enquiring the reason of this, I was told that in the second lecture there had occurred some remarks which slightly infringed the government regulations, or something of that kind, and that the police had ordered the proceedings to be stopped. So when I arrived, the meeting had already broken up, which was a pity.

Oh ! I am sorry for your disappointment.

---

it being the Japanese custom to "make a day of it," and to have one lecture delivered after another for hours at a time, sometimes on the same subject, but very often on different subjects. The Kinki-kwan has now replaced the Ibumura-rō as a favourite place for such meetings. *O ide no yō ni* is an example of indirect quotation. The direct would be *o ide da to* ; conf. pp. 275 5. *Toko* near the end is for *tokoro*.

41. SHOPPING AT MIYANOSHITA.—*Kyaku.*—*Go men nasai!*

*Akindo.*—*He! irasshai! Chito o kake nasaimashī! Nani ka goran kudasaimase! Mada hoka ni iro-iro gozaimasū.*

*Kyaku.*—*Omocha wo sūkoshi misete kudasai.*

*Akindo.*—*He! kashikomarimashīta. Kono te\* no mono de wa ikaga de gozaimasū?*

*Kyaku.*—*Naruhodo! kono uchi kara, iru dake no mono wo yorimashō.*

*Akindo.*—*Danna! kore wa ikaga de gozaimasū? Tabimakura to mōshimashīte,—naka kara, kono tōri, andon ga demasū. Koko ga satsu-ire. Hiki-dashi ga fūtatsu arimasū. Soroban, yōji-ire, kagami, iro-iro shi-konde arimasū. Mada koko ni kō iu mitsu-ire-ko no o bentō ga arimasū. Kore ga fude-sashi, kore wa tabako-ire. Mina daijōbu ni dekite orimasū.*

*Kyaku.*—*Mazu sonna mono wa yoroshii. † Ōku wa, kodomo no miyage ni suru n' da kara, koko ye yori-dashīta omocha ga kore dake to, undō-dāma ga mitsu, mukō ni mieru shūtan-iro no bon ga ni-mai to, kono shashin-basami ga fūtatsu. Kore dake de, ikura ni narimashō?*

*Akindo.*—*He! arigatō zanjimasū. Atari-mae wa, ni-en roku-jū-go-sen ni negaimasu ‡ ga,—ni-en go-jis-sen ni o make-mōshīte okimashō.*

\* The meanings of *te*, properly “hand,” are almost endless. Here it signifies “sort,” “kind.”

† For *sonna mono wa yoroshii*, conf. p. 292, No. 72, and footnote.



41. SHOPPING AT MIYANOSHĪTA. — *Customer*. — Excuse me.

*Dealer*.—Oh! pray come in, Sir. Please sit down a moment. Please inspect my wares. I have others besides, of various descriptions.

*Customer*.—Please show me some toys.

*Dealer*.—All right, Sir! How would this kind of article suit you?

*Customer*.—Let me see! I will set aside from among these the ones that I want.

*Dealer*.—Sir! how would this suit you? It is called a travelling pillow. A lamp comes out of it, like this; also this purse for paper-money. It has two drawers. There are all sorts of other things inside it,—an abacus, a toothpick-holder, and a looking-glass. Here again is a luncheon-box in three parts, which all fit into one. This is a pen-stand, this is a tobacco-pouch. They are all quite solidly made.

*Customer*.—Well, I don't want that sort of thing. Most of the things I want are intended as presents to take home to the children. Here they are:—the toys which I have set aside here, besides three cups-and-balls, two of those sandal-wood-coloured trays over there, and these two photograph-frames. How much may the whole lot come to?

*Dealer*.—Oh! many thanks, Sir. The usual price would be two dollars sixty-five cents; but I will let you have them for two fifty.

---

‡ *Negau*, "to beg," is often used by the lower classes when addressing their superiors, to signify "to say," "to do," even "to sell."

*Kyaku.*—*Sore wa taisō takai. Sonna ni kake-ne wo itcha ikenai. Zutto o make nasai.*

*Akindo.*—*Te! dô itashimashite! Kesshite o takai koto wa mōshi-agemasen. Donō kurai made nara, negawaremashō\* ka?*

*Kyaku.*—*Sō sa! ne! Ichi-en go-jis-sen nara, kaimashō.*

*Akindo.*—*Sore de wa, danna! go muri de gozaimasū. Sonna ni kake-ne wa mōshimasen. Dōzo go jōdan osshaimasen de, mō sūkoshi o kai kudasai.†*

*Kyaku.*—*Sore de wa, ni-en made ni kaimashō.*

*Akindo.*—*Sayō de gozaimasū ka? O yasū gozaimasu ga,—mata negawankereba\* narimasen kara, o make-mōshite okimasū. Zehi o ūme-atvase wo.‡*

\* See footnote to preceding page, and also ¶ 403, p. 250.

† “Deign to buy (it) a little more (dearly),” i e., “Please give me a little more for it.”

*Customer.*—That is awfully dear. You mustn't put on such fancy prices as that. You must go down a great deal.

*Dealer.*—Really Sir, how *could* you expect me to? The things are not at all dear. What would be your idea as to the price, Sir?

*Customer.*—Well, let me see! I'll take them, if you will let me have them for one dollar fifty.

*Dealer.*—Oh! Sir, that is unreasonable. I don't put on such fancy prices as you seem to suppose. Please don't joke in this way, Sir, but give me a little more for the things.

*Customer.*—Well, then, I'll give you two dollars.

*Dealer.*—Only two dollars? That is cheap, Sir. However, as I hope for your custom, I will go down to that price. But do, please, Sir, give me the chance of recouping this alarming sacrifice by buying of me again.

‡ Supply some such final verb as *negaimasŷ*. We have expanded the idea of this phrase in the English translation. *Ůme-awaseru* is lit. "to fill in" (a hole with earth).

# ANECDOTES.

## ¶ 450. MAKOTO NO SEKKEN.<sup>1</sup>

TRUTH 'S ECONOMY.

*Kenchō-goro*<sup>2</sup> *no koto de, Kamakura*<sup>3</sup> *Shikken ni*  
*Kenchō-period* 's *fact being, Kamakura Regent to*  
*tsūkaeta Aoto Saemon Fujitsuna to iu yakunin ga,*  
*served Aoto Saemon Fujitsuna that say official (nom.),*  
*aru yo Nameri-gawa wo wataru toki ni, kerai*  
*a-certain night Nameri-river (accus.) crosses time in, retainer*  
*ga ayamatte zeni jū-mon wo kawa ye otoshimashita no*  
*(nom.) erring, coin ten-cash (accus.) river to dropped(trans.) act*  
*wo*<sup>4</sup>,—*Fujitsuna wa, kyū ni hito wo yatoi,*<sup>5</sup>  
*whereas,—Fujitsuna as-for, suddenly people (accus.) having-hired*  
*taimatsu wo tsūkele, kologotoku hirowasele*  
*torches (accus.) having-lighted, completely having-caused-to-*  
*kaeraremashta.*<sup>6</sup>

*pick-up, deigned-to-return.*

*Kono koto wo, aru hito ga waratte,*  
*This act (accus.) certain people (nom.) laughing-at,*  
*“Wazuka jū-mon no zeni wo oshinde, taimatsu wo*  
*“Trifle ten-cash 's coin (accus.) grudging, torches (accus.)*

1. Students curious of comparing the Colloquial with the Written Language will find this same story told in easy written style, in the present writer's "Romanized Japanese Reader," Vol. I, p. 34.  
 2. For the use of *nengō* or "year-names," see p 116. The best book of reference on the subject of Japanese chronology is Bramsen's "Japanese Chronological Tables."—3. *Kamakura*, two days' journey by road from the site of the modern city of Yedo or Tōkyō, was, during the Middle Ages, the capital of the feudal rulers of Japan. The Hōjō family of *Shikken*, or "Regents," occupied this position during the thirteenth and a portion of the fourteenth centuries, and Aoto Fujitsuna held high judicial office under the fifth ruler of their line. Aoto is the surname, Fujitsuna the personal (equivalent to our

# ANECDOTES.

## TRUE ECONOMY.

The following incident happened about the period styled Kenchō (A.D. 1249—1256). When Aoto Saemon Fujitsuna, an official in the service of the Regent of Kamakura, was crossing the River Nameri one night, a retainer of his let ten cash fall by mistake into the river, whereupon Fujitsuna hastily hired some men, and made them light torches and pick all the money out of the water.

Some one is reported to have laughed at this, and to have said: “Through grudging the ten cash,

---

“Christian”) name, and Saemon a kind of title, which has, however, almost come to form part of the actual name itself. The Namerigawa is a small stream near Kamakura.—4. The whole sentence down to here forms a sort of accusative to the following clause relating Fujitsuna's *action upon* what had happened. “Thereupon” or “whereas” is the nearest approach to a literal English rendering.—5. The indefinite form *yatoi* is here equivalent to a gerund, because correlated with the gerund *tsūkete* immediately below: conf. p. 178, ¶ 278, and p. 264.—6. Observe how the sentence is rounded off by *kaeremashita* (honorific potential for *kaerimashita*; conf. ¶ 403, p. 250. Further examples of such honorific potentials are offered below by *kikaremashita*, *iwaremashita*, and *mōsaremashita*). *Iirowaseta* alone would sound bald to Japanese ears, which generally expect to have the whole action related down to its very end; conf. ¶ 302, p. 197.

*kattari, hito wo yatottari shite, nyūhi ga*  
*now-buying, people (accus.) now-hiring doing, expense (nom.)*  
*taisō kakattarō. Kore koso Ichi-mon oshimi*  
*great-deal has-probably-cost. This indeed one-cash grudging*  
*no hyaku shirazu<sup>1</sup> da” to itta sō desū.*  
*’s hundred ignores is” that said appearance is.*

*Sore wo Fujitsuna ga kikaremashite, “Sō*  
*That (accus.) Fujitsuna (nom.) having-deigned-to-hear, “So*  
*omou mono mo arō ga,—tsuiyashita zeni wa,*  
*think persons also may-be although,—spent coin us-for,*  
*tsūyō shite iru kara, muyō ni wa naran*  
*circulation doing is because, uselessness to us-for becomes-not*  
*ga,—kawa no soko ye shizunda jū-mon wa, ima*  
*whereas,—river ’s bottom to sank ten-cash us-for, now*  
*hirowaneba, tenka no takara wo ushinau kara*  
*if-do-not-pick-up, world ’s treasure (accus.) lose because*  
*da” to iwaremashita.*  
*is” that deigned-to-say.*

*Kore-ra ga, makoto no sekken to iu mono desū.*  
*Such-as-this (nom.), truth ’s economy that say thing is.*

*Ōku wa tori-chigae, sekken wo*  
*Mostly us-for, taking-and-mistaking, economy (accus.)*  
*okonau tame ni rinshoku ni naru mono mo arimasu*  
*practise sake for, parsimony to become persons also are*  
*ga,—sore-ra no hito to dōjitsu no ron ni*  
*whereas,—such like ’s people with, same-day ’s discussion in*  
*wa narimasen.*  
*as-for, becomes-not.*

*Shikashi, tōji no keizai-gakūsha no setsu ni*  
*Nevertheless, present-time ’s political-economists of opinion to*  
*itashitara, ikaga mōsaremashō ka?*  
*if-one-mude, how will-they-probably-deign-to-say ?*

7. In this proverb *oshimi* = *oshimu hito*, “a grudging person.” *Shirazu* is not the negative gerund of *shiru*, but its Classical “conclusive

Fujitsuna must have been put to great expense, what with buying torches and hiring men. This indeed is to be "*Penny wise and pound foolish.*"

Fujitsuna, hearing of this, said: "There may be some folks who think so. But the money spent is not wasted, because it remains in circulation, whereas the ten cash that sank to the bottom of the river would, if not picked up, have been treasure lost to the world. That is why I acted as I did."

Actions of this kind are examples of true economy.

Most people, mistaking one for the other, fall into parsimony while endeavouring to practise economy. But though there are such, Fujitsuna is not to be mentioned on the same day as they.

Still, if one were to ask the opinion of the political economists of the present day, what would *they* say?

---

negative present," which is equivalent to the Colloquial *shiranai*.—8 I. e., "I do this because, if I did not pick it up," etc.

¶ 451. ARIGATA' NO KICHIBEI.  
THANKFUL 'S KICHIBEI.

*Mukashi* “*Arigata no Kichibei*” *to azana wo*  
*Anciently* “*Thankful 's Kichibei*” *that nickname (accus.)*  
*tsūkerareteru*<sup>2</sup> *ojūsan ga arimashite, donna*  
*is-having-got-affixed old-gentleman (nom.) (there) being, what*  
*koto de mo* “*Arigatai! arigatai!*” *to yorokonde*<sup>3</sup>  
*thing soever* “*(I am) thankful! (I am) thankful!*” *that rejoicing,*  
*kurashite iru hito deshite,—natsu hito ga kite,*  
*passing-the-time is person being,—summer, person (nom.) coming,*  
*“Kyō wa, hidoi atsūsa de gozaimasū” to imasū*  
*“To-day as-for, violent heat is” that says*  
*to, kono ojūsan no hentō ni,* “*Atsui jūsetsu wa,*  
*when, this old-gentleman 's answer in: “Hot season as-for,*  
*atsui hō ga arigatai.*<sup>4</sup> *Samui jibun wa, samui no*  
*hot side (nom.) (is) thankful. Cold season as-for, cold fact*  
*ga arigatai” to yorokonde*<sup>5</sup> *orimasū.*  
*(nom.) (is) thankful” that rejoicing is.*

*Mata hito ga Kichibei no bimbō wo sashite,*  
*Again people (nom.) Kichibei 's poverty (accus.) guessing,*  
*“Nani ka to go fujiyū deshō” to*  
*“Something-or-other that august inconvenience must-be” that*  
*imasū to,—* “*Je! watashi wa sai-shi no shimpai*  
*say when,—* “*No! me as-for, wife-child 's anxiety*  
*mo naku, ūmai mono mo tabemasezu; sono sei ka, naga-iki*  
*also is-not, tasty things also eat-not; that cause?, long-life*  
*wo shūte imasū kara, arigatai” to*<sup>5</sup>,—*tada*  
*(accus.) doing am because, (I am) thankful” that,—merely*  
*nan de mo* “*Arigatai*” *to itte imasū.*  
*everything “Thankful” that saying is.*

1. *Arigatai* would be more strictly grammatical; but the stem form *arigata* with *no* is more idiomatic; conf. p. 125—2. For *tsūkerarete*



## THANKFUL KICHIBEI.

Once upon a time there was an old man who had got nicknamed "Thankful Kichibei," and who led a happy existence, always thankful for everything, whatever it might be. When any one came to see him in summer and complained of the excessive heat, the old man would reply: "In the hot season we must be thankful for the heat. In the cold time of year we must be thankful for the cold."—If again any friend should sympathise with his poverty, and remark how inconvenient it must be in every way, he would say: "Oh! no! I am troubled neither with wife nor child, nor do I eat savoury food. Perhaps it is for this reason that I am long-lived, and I am thankful for it." Thus did he use the word "thankful" about everything.

---

*iru* see bottom of p. 192.— 3. *To yorokonde*=*to itte yorokonde*, i.e., "rejoicing, saying that."— 4. *Arigatai* here has a sort of objective sense, i.e., it means not exactly "thankful," but "worthy of being thankful for."— 5. After *to* supply *itte*, "saying."

*Aru toki, yoso no uchi ye ille, kaeri-*  
*A-certain time, elsewhere 's house to having-gone, returning-*  
*gake ni omote no hashira de atama wo kotsun to<sup>6</sup>*  
*while in, front 's post by, head (accus.) bumpingly*  
*buttsükemashita ga,—yahari “ Arigatai! arigatai!”*  
*hit whereas, —also “ Thankful thankful!”*  
*to kuchi no uchi de ille imasu kara, soba ni iru*  
*that mouth 's interior in saying is because, alongside in is*  
*hito ga: “ Kichibei San! anata wa, nan de mo*  
*person (nom.) “ Kichibei Mr! you as-for, everything*  
*ka de mo<sup>7</sup> ‘ Arigatai! arigatai!’ to ii-nasaru ga,—*  
*whatever, ‘ Thankful! Thankful!’ that say-deign whereas,—*  
*hashira de atama wo ulle, sazo itakarō*  
*post at head (accus.) having-hit, indeed must-be-painful*  
*ga,—sore de nani ga arigatai n' desu?” to kiki-*  
*whereas,—that by, what (nom.) thankful fact is?” that when*  
*mashitara,— “ He! kono itai no ga arigatai no*  
*he-hud-heard,— “ Yes! this painful fact (nom.) thankful fact*  
*desu.*  
*is.*

“ *Naze to iimasu to<sup>8</sup>, ima buttsüketa toki, atama ga*  
 “ *Why? that says when, now h't time, head (nom.)*  
*kudakeke, shinde shimaimashita nara, itai koto*  
*having-broken (intrans.), dying had-finished if, painful fact*  
*mo nani mo wakarimasen ga,—inochi mo atama mo,*  
*also anything understand-not whereas,—life also, head also,*  
*o kage sama de<sup>9</sup> buji deshita kara,*  
*honourable influence Mr. by, accidentless has-been because,*  
*itai no ga shiremasu.*  
*painful fact (nom.) is-knowable.*

“ *Sore desu kara, makoto ni arigatai” to kotema-*  
 “ *That is because, truth in (am) than'sful” that answered.*  
*shita.*

---

6. *Kotsun to* is an onomatopoe for the sound of bumping or thumping.—7. An idiom, which is also pronounced *nan de mo, kan de mo*.

One day, when, having gone to a friend's house, he was returning home again, he struck his head a tremendous blow against a post at the entrance. But even then, one who was near him heard him muttering his thanks, and exclaimed: "Mr. Kichibei, you say 'thank you' to everything. But what *can* there be thankful for in hurting yourself by striking your head against a post?"—"Why!" replied Kichibei, "the pain is exactly what I am thankful for. Don't you see that if, when I struck against the post just now, my skull had been fractured and I had died, I should have felt neither pain nor anything else, whereas I now feel the pain because, thanks to your kind influence, my life and my head are both safe? That is why I am truly thankful."

---

This *ka* or *kan* is probably the root of *kare*, "that."—8. *Naze to into* is an idiom meaning "for this reason," more lit. "if you ask why, (then it is as follows.)"—9. The words *o kage sama*, "thanks to your kind influence," are an empty compliment, indeed almost an expletive; conf. p. 294, No. 85.

*Suru to*,<sup>10</sup> *kono koto wo saki-hodo kara koko no*  
*Thereupon, this thing (accus.) previous-period since, here 's*  
*inkyō*<sup>11</sup> *ga kiite orimashite, "Naruhodo!"*  
*retired-old-man (nom.) listening having-been, "Oh!-indeed!"*  
*to*<sup>12</sup> *kanshin shite, "Aa! arigatai, arigatai! Wa-*  
*that admiration doing, "Ah! (I am) thankful. thankful!*  
*takūshi mo, ima wa satori wo hirakimashita.*  
*I also, now us-for, enlightenment (accus.) have-opened.*

"*Iro-iro nani ka no sewa ga yaketari*,<sup>13</sup>  
*"Several-kinds something-or-other 's cares (nom.) sometimes-*  
*sama-zama no tsurai koto ni tabi-tabi*  
*burning, various-sort s' disagreeable things to often*  
*attari shite, "Aa! kurushii, kurushii!*  
*sometimes-meeting doing, "Ah! (it is) distressing, distressing!*  
*Jitsu ni kono yo ga iya ni natta' to*  
*Truth in, this world (nom.) objectionable to has-become' that*  
*omou koto mo arimashita ga,—kore to iu no mo*<sup>14</sup>  
*think fact also has-been veretis,—this that say fact also,*  
*inochi ga aru kara no koto desu.*  
*life (nom.) is because 's fact is.*

"*Shite miru to*,<sup>15</sup> *ima Kichibei San ga iu tōri,*  
*"And-therefore, now Kichibei Mr. (nom.) says way,*  
*naruhodo! watakushi mo banji ga arigatai,*  
*yes-indeed! I also, myriad-things (nom.) (are) thankful,*  
*arigatai!"*<sup>13</sup>  
*thankful!*

10. *Suru to* (short for *sō suru to*) is an idiom which is often used, as here, at the beginning of a sentence, in order to resume, as it were, what has gone before.—11. The term *inkyō* denotes a person who has retired from active life, and has handed over his business and the greater part of his property to his successor.—12. After *to* supply *itte*, "saying," or *omotte*, "thinking."

Hereupon the old father of the master of the house, who had been listening to the conversation from the beginning, was struck with admiration, and said: "Yes, indeed. Thankful, thankful must we be. This has taught me a lesson. Often, when worried by divers cares and confronted by various misfortunes, I have said to myself how wretched, wretched it all is,—and what an odious place the world has become to me. But even all these things exist only because life itself exists. A careful consideration therefore shows that, as Mr. Kichibei has just said, I too have everything, everything to be thankful for."

---

13. *Sewa ga yakeru* (intrans.)="to be busy and anxious." *Sewa too yaku* (trans.)="to take great trouble."—14. *Kore to iu no mo*="this also," more lit. "also that (which people) say (is) this."—15. More lit. "when, having done so, one looks." Conf. *suru to* at top of page.—16. The words *watakūshi mo* are, as it were, hung in the air without reference to any verb, while *banji* is the subject of *arigatai*, here taken in its objective sense (conf. p. 349, note 4).

¶ 452. MATEBA AU TOSHI.  
IF-WAIT, WILL-AGREE YEARS.<sup>1</sup>

*Mukashi, miyako no machi ni Unazūki Babā*  
Anciently, capital 's mercantile-quarter in, Nodding Granny  
to iu kūchi-benkō no ii mono ga arimashite,  
that say mouth-glibness 's good person (nom.) (there) being,  
itsu mo yome ya muko no sewa wo shite, yo wo  
always bride or bridegroom 's help (accus.) doing, life (accus.)  
okutte orimashita ga,— aru toki san-jū-go ni  
passing was whereas,— a-certain time, thirty-five to  
naru<sup>2</sup> otoko no toshi wo kakushite, jū-go no musūme  
becomes man 's years (accus.) having-hidden, fifteen 's girl  
to engumi wo tori-mochi, yuinō made oku-  
with, marriage (accus.) had-arranged, betrothal-gifts even had-  
rasemashita ga,— sono nochi muko no toshi no  
caused-to-send whereas,— that after, bridegroom 's years of  
fūketeru<sup>3</sup>— koto wo musūme no oya ga kiki-tsūkete,  
advanced-are fact (accus.) girl 's parent (nom.) having-heard,  
“ Hoka ni nani mo mōshi-bun wa nai ga,— mu-  
“ Elsewhere in, anything objection as-for, isn't but,— bride-  
ko to musūme to toshi ga ni-jū mo chigatte wa,  
groom and daughter and, years (nom.) twenty even differing as-for,  
ikani shite mo yome ni wa yarenai” to iu.

how doing even, bride to as-for, cannot-send” that says.

Otoko no hō de wa, “ Yuinō made sumashita

Man 's side on, “ Betrothal-gifts even have-concluded  
kara wa, shinrui ye taishite mo, sonna futsugō na  
since as-for, kinsmen to confronting even, such inconvenient  
koto wa kikasarenai kara, zehi mora-  
thing as-for, cannot-cause-to-hear because, positively if-  
wankereba shōchi shinai” to iu kara, nakōdo mo  
receive-not, consent do-not” that says because, match-maker also  
hidoku meiwaku shite, tsui ni kono koto wo  
violently quarrel doing, last at, this affair (accus.)  
o kami ye uttaemashita.  
honourable superiors to appealed.

## IF THEY WAIT, THEIR AGES WILL COME RIGHT.

Once upon a time, in the mercantile quarter of the metropolis, there lived a glib-tongued old woman called Granny Nod, who gained her livelihood by negotiating marriages. Well, she once arranged a match between a man of five-and-thirty, whose age she concealed, and a girl of fifteen, and had gone so far as to make them exchange the gifts customary on betrothal. But afterwards the girl's father, having heard how far advanced the bridegroom was in years, said to the old woman: "I have indeed no other complaint to make about him; but really I cannot think of giving my daughter to one whose age differs from hers by twenty years."—On the bridegroom's side, however, it was urged that he could not consent to forego her, as it was impossible, even *vis-à-vis* his relations, to mention such a difficulty after the ceremony of exchanging gifts had once been concluded. Thus the match-maker was placed in a terrible quandary, and at last she brought the matter before the judge.

---

1. I.e., "years which will agree if one waits."—2. *Naru=natta*, i.e., "had already become (thirty-five years old.)"—3. For *fūkete iru* conf. bottom of p. 192.—4. *O kami de wa*="the judge," more lit. "at the superiors," i.e., "the Government." For *de* thus used, conf. ¶ 90, p. 65. The words immediately following mean

O kami de wa<sup>1</sup>, sō-hō o  
 Honourable superiors at, both-sides honourably  
 yobi-dashi ni narimashite, musūme no oya ni "Sono-hō  
 calling-forth to having-become, girl 's parent to, "You  
 wa, ittan yakūsoku wo shite, ima-sara nan no  
 as-for, once agreement (accus.) having-made, now-again what 's  
 kado wo motte hadan itasū<sup>5</sup>?" to o tazune  
 point (accus.) taking, rupture make?" that honourable enquiry  
 ni narimasū to,—He! kono gi wa, nakōdo no  
 to becomes when,—“Ah! this affair as-for, match-maker 's  
 mono amari itsuwari wo mōshimashite, san-jū-go no  
 person too-much lie (accus.) having-told, thirty-five 's  
 muko ni jū-go no yome de wa, toshi ga ni-jū  
 bridegroom to, fifteen 's bride by us-for, years (nom.) twenty  
 chigaimasū. Sore yue fūshōchi wo mōshimashita.  
 differ. That owing-to, dissent (accus.) (I)said.  
 Semete toshi hambun-chigai nara, musūme wo  
 At-most years half-difference if-were, girl (accus.)  
 tsūkawashimashō.  
 will-probably-send.

Kono toki yakunin no mōshi-watasaremasū ni wa.<sup>5</sup>  
 This time, official 's deigns-to-speak-across in as-for:  
 “Sonnara, sono-hō no nozomi-dōri ni shite tsūkawasū<sup>6</sup>  
 “If-is-thus, you of wish-way in, doing (I)will-give  
 kara, ima yori go-nen tatte musūme wo  
 because, now from, five-years having-clapsed, daughter (accus.)  
 okure. Muko no hō mo, sore made wa kanarazu  
 give. Bridegroom 's side also, that till as-for, positively  
 matanakereba naran. Sono toshi ni nareba, otoko  
 if-waits-not, is-not. That year to when-becomes, man  
 wa shi-jū, onna wa hatachi. Chōdo hambun-  
 as-for, forty; woman as-for, twenty-years. Just half-  
 chigai no toki ni naru” to mōshi-watasaremashita  
 difference 's time to becomes” that deigned-to-speak-across  
 kara, sō-hō osore-ite sagarimashita.  
 because, both-sides fearing-entering descended.

Jitsu ni omoshiroi o sabaki desū.  
 Truth in, amusing honourable judgment is.



The judge, having sent for both parties, asked the girl's father what was his reason for breaking off an engagement to which he had once agreed. The father replied: "You see, my lord, the matter stands thus. The match-maker told too outrageous a falsehood, there being a difference of no less than twenty years between a bridegroom of five-and-thirty and a bride of fifteen. That is why I said I could not consent. I would give him my daughter, if their ages differed at most by half."

Then the judge gave judgment as follows: "As that is how matters stand, I will decide in accordance with your desire. Do you give him your daughter five years hence. The bridegroom, on his side also, must faithfully wait till then. By that time he will be forty, and the girl twenty. It will be the time when their ages will differ exactly by half."—Thus was judgment given, and both parties left the judgment-hall with deep respect.

Truly it was a witty decision.

---

literally "it having come to calling forth both sides."—5. Observe the total absence of honorifics in the judge's address to the litigant parties, who are of course immeasurably his inferiors.—6. Lit. "in his deigning (honorific potential) to give judgment," the verb becoming a sort of noun capable of taking postpositions after it.—7. *Tsūkawasuu* (the final *u* becoming short before *kara*, as in the case of *itasu* a few lines higher up) is here a sort of auxiliary, = *yaru*; see p. 196.

¶ 453. MUHITSU NO KAME.<sup>1</sup>

“*Inu no hoeru toki, tora to iu ji wo te ni kaite nigitte oreba, hoen*” to omae ni kiite, tonda me ni atta.

*Hohō! dō shite?*

*Yūbe, yo fūkete kara kaeru to, kame ga wan-wan to hoe-kakaru yue, nigitta te wo dashitara, kore! konna ni kamareta.*

*Fū! Sōre wa, mada Nihon no ji wo shiran kame darō.*

\* \* \* \* \*

*Nihon-moji wo dashite yomen<sup>2</sup> mono wa, kame bakari de mo arumai.*

## ¶ 454. SAKE NO YUME.

*Sake-zuki ga aru hi futsūka-yoi de zutsū ga shimasū<sup>1</sup> kara, hachi-maki wo shi-nagara nete iru to, yume ni sake wo hito-taru hirotte, ō-yorokobi de, noman<sup>3</sup> saki kara shita-uchi shite, “Kanro! kanro! koitsu hiroi-mono wa!”*

---

NOTES TO ¶ 453.—1. This and the four following anecdotes are taken, with slight alterations to make the phraseology more colloquial, from the “*Fogaku Sōshi*,” or “Ladies’ Journal of Education.” For *kame*, see p. 26. The idea at the bottom of this story as to the magic power of the Chinese character 虎, “tiger,” is one commonly held by the lower classes.—2. Different nominatives must be supplied to the two verbs *dashite* and *yomen*; for it is one person who is supposed to show (lit. put forth) the character, and another who cannot read it when so shown.

## AN ILLITERATE DOG.

You told me that when a dog barked at one, he would leave off doing so if one wrote the Chinese character for "tiger" on the palm of one's hand, and kept one's fist clenched. Well! I have had a rough time of it for having listened to you.

Indeed! How so?

A European dog began barking and flying at me as I was coming home late last night. So I stuck my clenched fist out towards him, and just look how I got bitten!

Oh! Then probably it was a dog who had not yet learnt Japanese writing.

\* \* \* \* \*

Dogs are doubtless not the only creatures incapable of reading Japanese writing when shown it.

## A DREAM OF LIQUOR.

Once upon a time a toper, feeling headachy on the day after a spree, had fallen asleep with a towel wrapped round his head<sup>2</sup>. Then he dreamt that he had found a cask of liquor, which caused him so much joy that he licked his chops before tasting it, and said: "How deli-

---

NOTES TO ¶ 454.—1. See ¶ 357, p. 227.—2. To help to cure the headache.—3. For the negative *noman*, instead of the positive, see bottom of p. 271.—4. Lit. "as for this fellow, the pick-up-thing," freely rendered by "Here's a find!" the *wa* being exclamatory in this case; see ¶ 123, p. 87.—5. Lit. "as for having come as liquor," meant to

*Keisatsū-sho ye todokeru no ga atarimae da ga,—sake to kile wa,<sup>5</sup> mi-nogasenai. Mazu ip-pai yarakasō ka ?—Iya ! onajikuba<sup>8</sup>, kan wo shūte nomu hō ga ii” to itte, kan wo tsūkeyō to suru toki, jū-ni-ji no don no oto ni odorosite, me ga samemashita kara, zannen-gatte : “Aa ! hayaku hiya de nomeba yokatta !”*

## ¶ 455. HAYARI WO OU<sup>1</sup>.

*Wakai otoko ga fūtari Fūkiya-chō no Eri-zen<sup>2</sup> no mise-saki de iki-aimashita tokoro ga, hitori wa awata-dashiku te wo futte, “Kimi ni wa iro-iro o hanashi mo arimasu ga,—ima kyūyō<sup>3</sup> ga dekite, kitaku suru tokoro desū<sup>4</sup> kara, izure kinjitsu o tazune mōshimashō” to iu to,—dōmo sono yōsu ga hen da kara, hitori wa odorosite, “Kyūyō to wa,<sup>5</sup> go byōnin de mo aru n<sup>6</sup> desū ka ?” to kikumashitara,—hitori wa, warai-nagara : “Īe ! kanai ni tanomareta hayari no han-eri wo ima kono mise de kaimashita ga,—<sup>1</sup> tochū de temadotte iru uchi ni ryūkō-okure ni naru to, taihen desū kara, tachi-banashi mo o kotowari mōshimashita no sa !”*

---

convey the meaning of “a windfall of liquor,” this Japanese idiom being used of unexpected events.—6. Lit. “if it is the same (*i.e.* all the same), it is good to drink it having made heating.” Japanese *sake* tastes best hot, and is generally taken so, it being heated by placing the bottle in hot water.—7. Midday is signalled, in modern Tōkyō, by the firing of a gun, which gives the time to the townspeople.

NOTES TO ¶ 455.—1. Lit. “to pursue fashion.”—2. We have rendered *Eri-zen* by “a haberdasher’s.” The name is, however, really a proper noun, compounded of *eri* for *han-eri* (see vocabulary), and *zen* for *Zembei* or some such “personal name,” of the owner of the shop.—3. Observe how the young man, true to the habits of the student class at the present day, interlards his ordinary conversation with such high-sounding Chinese terms as *kyū-yō*, “urgent business ;” *ki-taku*, “returning home ;” *kin-jitsu*, lit. “near days,” *i.e.*, “in a few days.”—4. *Kitaku suru tokoro desū* = “I am just on my way home ;”

cious! how delicious! Here's a find! It ought to be reported to the police-office. But a windfall like this liquor!—no! I cannot let it escape me. Well! shall I take a glass?—No, no! There will be nothing lost by waiting till I warm it." So he was just going to set it to warm, when the midday gun<sup>7</sup> wakened him with a start, whereupon he ruefully exclaimed: "Oh! what a pity it was that I did not make haste to drink it cold!"

## THE PURSUIT OF FASHION.

Two young men having come across each other in front of a haberdasher's shop in Fūkiya Street, one of them waved his hand hurriedly, and cried out: "I have a lot to say to you; but as urgent business calls me home at present, I must put off the conversation for a few days, when I will come and see you at your house." The other, astonished at his friend's strange excitement, asked him what this urgent business might be,—whether he meant to say, for instance, that any of his family had been taken ill. "Oh! no," replied the first young man with a laugh; "I have just been getting at this shop a kind of kerchief which my wife commissioned me to buy for her. The reason why I said I couldn't stop and talk to you now, is that it would be an awful thing for her to fall behind the fashion while I was loitering on the way."

---

conf. p. 42.—5. Lit. "as for (your saying) that (there is) urgent business"—6. *N*, see p. 79.—7. From here to the end is lit. "because (it) is terrible if (she) becomes to fashion-lateness, while (I) am time-taking in the road-middle, (I) refused (honor.) even standing talk." *No* is here emphatic (conf. ¶ 113, p. 79); *sa* is emphatic and exclamatory.

## ¶ 456.

DAIKON.<sup>1</sup>

*Mommō na ō-byakūshō ga daikon wo tsūkuraseru ni, ni-san-nen omou yō ni dekinai<sup>3</sup> kara, “ Ōkata otoko-domo no sewa no warui no darō ” to<sup>4</sup>, jibun de hatake ye dete, tsūchi wo hotte iru tokoro ye<sup>5</sup>,—kosaku-nin ga tōri-kakatte, “ Kore wa, kore wa! Danna Sama! otoko-shū ni o sase nasaranai de<sup>6</sup>, go jishin de nasaru to wa<sup>7</sup>, o habakari de gozarimasu ” to eshaku<sup>8</sup> wo suru to,—danna wa hara wo talete, “ Ore ga daikon wo tsūkuru ni, ha bakari to wa<sup>9</sup> fū-todoki da ” to<sup>10</sup> okoru tokoro ye, mata hitori ki-kakatte, “ Kore wa! Danna Sama no go rippuku wa go mottomo. Shikashi-nagara, kare wa nan no fumbetsu mo nashi ni mōshūta no de<sup>11</sup>, ne mo ha mo nai koto de gozaimasū.”*

*Ato-saki no kangae no nai mono wa, haji no ue ni haji wo kaku mono da.*<sup>12</sup>

---

NOTES TO ¶ 456.—1. This story and the next may serve as specimens of the *jeux-de-mots* in which the Japanese sometimes indulge. Here the play is on the word *habakari*, and on the phrase *ne mo ha mo nai*, “insignificant,” but more lit. “without either root or leaf,” as fully explained in the portions of the English translation between square brackets.—2. More lit. “having radishes grown,” “*tsūkuraseru* being the causative of *tsūkuru*,” “to make,” hence “to grow” (trans.).—3. Lit. “do not forthcome according to (his) way of thinking.”—4. Supply *omotte*.—5. For *tokoro ye*, here rendered by “in this situation,” see p. 42.—6. *O...de*, lit. “not deigning honourably to cause to do.”—7. This clause is lit. “as for (the fact) that (you) deign (to do so) by (your) august self.”—8. We have very freely rendered *eshaku wo suru* by the word “politely.” It properly signifies

## RADISHES.

An ignorant farmer had been growing radishes<sup>2</sup> for two or three years with indifferent success. So, attributing the failure to his men having scamped their work, he went out into the field himself and began digging. In this situation he was seen by a labourer who happened to pass by. "Oh Sir! Oh Sir!" cried the labourer politely, "it is dreadful to find you working like this yourself, instead of letting your men work for you." [*Or, "If you work like this yourself, instead of letting your men work for you, you will get leaves only,"* ha bakari meaning "leaves only," while habakari is a polite phrase here rendered by "it is dreadful."] The farmer, angered by this remark, exclaimed: "You are an insolent fellow for daring to tell me that, when I grow radishes, I shall get nothing but leaves." Just at that moment another labourer happened to come up, and said: "No doubt, Sir, you are quite right to be angry. Still he did not mean what he said, and so it is not worth taking any notice of it." [*Or, "It is a thing having neither roots nor leaves."* This second outsider's and would-be peacemaker's remark, thus interpreted, is more sweeping even than the first man's; for it denies the production, not only of radish roots (ne), but even of the leaves (ha).]

The thoughtless have to suffer perpetual humiliations.

---

"to apologise," "to make excuses."—9. *To wa = to iu no wa*, "the fact of your saying that."—10. After *to*, supply *itte*, "having said."—11. The sentence, down to here, is lit. "Nevertheless, as for him, it being the fact that he spoke without any discrimination."—12. Lit. "As for people without consideration of after and before, they are people who get shame on the top of shame."

¶ 457. ATAMA NI ME.<sup>1</sup>

*O tera no oshō san ga aru toki go-zuki no kyaku wo yonde, ichi-men<sup>2</sup> uchi-hajimemasū to, “sūki koso mono no jōzu nare<sup>3</sup>” de, kyaku wa sumi-jimen mo doko mo kotogotoku tori-kakomimashita kara, oshō san ga kuyashi-gatte, semete ip-pō dake de mo ikasō<sup>4</sup> to, shikiri ni me wo koshiraeru koto ni kōfū wo shite orimasū to,—atama no ue ye hai ga takatta kara, urusagatte, go-ishi wo motta te de atama wo kaki-nagara, “Kono hen ni hitotsu me ga dekitara, ōkata ikiru de arō.”*

*Atama no ue ni mata hitotsu me ga dekitara, “mitsu-me nyūdō<sup>5</sup>” desū.*

---

NOTES TO ¶ 457.—I. To appreciate the point of this story, one should know the game of *go* (“checkers” or “go-bang,” the latter word being a corruption of the Japanese *goban*, “a checker-board”). In one variety of this game the chief object is, by establishing “eyes,” i.e., spaces surrounded by not less than four of one’s own counters, to stop the spread of the opponent’s counters over the board. Remember, too, that *me* means both “eye” and “open space.” At the end of the story a ludicrous effect is produced by the alternative idea suggested of an open space, or of an eye, on the top of the priest’s head, the suggestion being equally funny



## AN EYE ON THE TOP OF THE HEAD.

Once upon a time, the priest of a Buddhist temple invited a friend who was fond of playing checkers, and the two sat down to a game. But, as the proverb says, "fondness gives skill." So it came about that the friend blocked every single corner of the board, to the priest's great mortification. "If only," said the latter, "I could but get one side free!" And with these words, he made constant efforts to open up some spaces [*in Japanese*, "eyes"]. Just then some flies collected on the top of his head, causing him annoyance. So he scratched his head with the hand that held one of the pieces, saying: "If I could get an open space [*in Japanese*, "an eye"] here, probably the corner would be freed."

Another eye on the top of his head would have turned him into [*the sort of hobgoblin known as*] a "three-eyed friar."

---

whichever way you take it.—2. Lit. "one surface," i.e., "one game" (on the flat *surface* of the board).—3. Lit. "(a) fond (person) indeed is skilful of (the) thing (he likes)." This proverb is in the Written Language, where the emphatic particle *koso* causes the verb following it to take the termination *e*. This peculiarity has died out of the Colloquial.—4. *Ikasō* is the probable future of *ikasu*, the transitive corresponding to the intransitive *ikiru*, "to live." Thus it means "shall perhaps make alive," hence "in order to free."—5. Or *mitsu-me kozō*, "the three-eyed acolyte," one of the supernatural terrors of Japanese youth.

¶ 458.

BOTAN-DŌRŌ.<sup>1</sup>

## DAI IK-KWAI.

*Kwampō*<sup>2</sup> san-nen no shi-gwatsu jū-ichi-nichi, mada Tōkyō wo Edo to mōshimashūta koro, Yushima Tenjin<sup>3</sup> no yashiro de Shōtoku Taishi<sup>4</sup> no go sairei wo okonaimashūte, sono toki taisō sankei no hito ga dete, kunjū itashimashūta.

Koko ni, Hongō San-chō-me ni Fujimura-ya Shimbei<sup>5</sup> to iu katana-ya ga gozaimashūte, sono mise-saki ni wa yoi shiromono ga narabete aru tokoro wo,—tōri-kakarimashūta hitori no o samurai wa, toshi no koro ni-jū-ichi-ni gurai de, iro no shiroi, me-moto no kiriritto shūta, sūkoshi kanshaku-mochi to miete, bin no ke wo gullo agele yuwase, rippa na o haori ni kekkō na o hakama wo tsūke, setta wo haite, saki ni tachi; ushiro kara asagi no happi ni bonten-obi wo shimete, shinchū-zukuri no bokūtō wo sashūteru chūgen ga tsūki-sotte, kono Fuji-Shin no mise-saki ye tachi-yorimashūte, koshi wo kake, narabete aru katana wo hito-tōri nagamete,—

NOTES.—1. This piece consists of the first two chapters of the *Botan-Dōrō* (see p. 10), slightly edited in order to make them more genuinely colloquial, and to remove a few expressions which English standards of propriety condemn.—The title of the novel alludes to an incident in a later portion of the story, which it would take too long to relate here.

2. *Kwampō* is the *nengō*, or “year-name,” which lasted from A.D. 1741-4; conf. p. 116.

## THE PEONY LANTERN.

## CHAPTER I.

On the 4th May, 1743, in the days when Tōkyō was still called Yedo, the festival of Prince Shōtoku was celebrated at the Shintō temple of Tenjin in Yushima, and the worshippers assembled in great crowds on the occasion.

Now in Third Street, Hongō, there was a sword-shop known as Fujimura-ya Shimbei, the fine articles exposed for sale in which were seen by a *samurai* who happened to pass by. He appeared to be about one or two-and-twenty years of age, had a fair complexion, a vivacious expression in his eyes, and a cue tightly bound up,—indicative of slight quickness of temper. He wore a splendid coat, a beautiful pair of trowsers, and sandals soled with leather. Behind him, as he strode along in front, there followed a servant in a blue coat and striped sash, with a wooden sword having brass fastenings. The *samurai* looked in at the shop, sat down, and, glancing round at all the swords that lay there, said :

3. *Tenjin* is the posthumous name, under which the famous and unfortunate court noble, Sugawara Michizane (died A.D. 903), is worshipped as the god or patron saint of letters.

4. *Shōtoku Taishi*, the great imperial patron of Buddhism in Japan, lived from A.D. 572 - 621.

5. Strictly speaking, *Fujimura-ya* is the name of the shop, and *Shimbei* the personal ("Christian") name of the shopkeeper. But Japanese idiom does not clearly distinguish between a shop and its owner. Conf. ¶ 55, p. 40.

*Samurai* : “ *Teishu ya! Soko no kuro-ito da ka, kon-ito da ka shiren ga,—ano kuroi iro no tsūka ni namban-tetsu no tsuba no tsuita katana wa, makoto ni yosasō na shina da ga, chotto o mise.*”

*Teishu* : “ *Hei, hei!—Korya! O cha wo sashi-age-na! Kyō wa, Tenjin no go sairci de, taisō hito ga demashita kara, sadameshi ōrai wa hokori de, sazo o komari asobashimashitarō*” *to,—katana no chiri wo harai-nagara,* “ *He! goran asobashimase*” *to sashi-dasu no wo,—samurai wa te ni totte, mimashite,—*

*Samurai* : “ *Tonda yosasō na mono. Sessha no kantei suru tokoro de wa, Bizen-mono<sup>6</sup> no yō ni omowareru ga,—dō da, na?*”

*Teishu* : “ *Hei! Yoi o mekiki de irasshaimasuru. Osore-irimashita. Ōse no tōri, watakushi-domo nakama no mono mo, Tenshō Sūkesada<sup>1</sup> de arō to no hyōban de gozaimasu ga,—oshii koto ni wa, nanibun mumei de, zannen de gozaimasū.*”

*Samurai* : “ *Go teishu ya! Kore wa dono kurai suru, na?*”

*Teishu* : “ *Hei! Arigatō gozaimasū. O kake-ne wa mōshi-agemasen ga,—tadaina mo mōshi-agemashita tōri, mei sae gozaimasureba, tabun no ne-uchi mo gozaimasu ga,—mumei no tokoro de, kin jū-mai de gozaimasū.*”

---

6. *Bizen* is the name of a province in Central Japan, famous for its swords.—

“Mine host! That sword over there with the iron guard to the dark-coloured hilt,—I don’t know whether the braid is black or dark blue,—looks like a good one. Just let me have a look at it.”

“All right, Sir,” said the shopkeeper. (*Then aside to the shop-boy:*) “Here! you offer the gentleman some tea!” (*Then again to the samurai:*) “To-day, owing to the crowds gone out to see the festival, the roads are sure to have been dusty, which must have been a great nuisance to Your Honour.” Then, dusting the sword, he said: “Here! pray look at it, Sir!” With these words, he handed it to the *samurai*, who, taking it up and inspecting it, said:

“It’s an awfully good one. So far as I can judge, I should incline to consider it a Bizen.”

“Ah!” replied the shopkeeper, “Your Honour is a real connoisseur. I am overpowered with admiration. It is just as you say. The other dealers in the trade make no doubt of its being the handiwork of Sūkesada in the sixteenth century. But unfortunately it bears no maker’s name, which is a great pity.”

“Mine host! What is the price of it, eh?”

“You are very kind, Sir. I ask no fancy prices; and, as I have just had the honour to tell you, the sword would be an extremely valuable one, if only it had the maker’s name engraved on it. But as it is anonymous, the price is ten dollars.”

---

7. *Sūkesada* was a famous swordsmith of the Tenshō period, A.D. 1573 - 1592.

*Samurai* : “ *Nani ? Jū-ryō to ka ? Chitto takai yō da ga, shīchi-mai han ni wa makaran ka, ē ?* ”

*Teishu* : “ *Dō itashimashite ! Nanibun, sore de wa son ga mairimashite,<sup>8</sup> hei ! Naka-naka mochimashite, hei !* ” *to, — shīkiri ni samurai to teishu to katana no nedan no kake-hiki wo itashite orimasū to, ushiro no hō de tōri-gakari no yopparai ga kano samurai no chūgen wo toraete, —*

*Yopparai* : “ *Yai ! Nani wo shiyāgaru ?* ” *to ii-nagara, hyoro-hyoro to yorokete, patatto shiri-mochi wo tsūki, yō-yaku oki-agatte, hitai de nirami, iki-nari genkotsu wo furui, chō-chō to buchimashita ga, —*

*Chūgen wa, “ Sake no toga da ” to kannin shite, sakarawazu ni daichi ni te wo tsūki, atama wo sagele, shīkiri ni wabite mo, yopparai wa mimi ni mo kakezu, nao mo chūgen wo nagulle imasū tokoro wo, — samurai wa, fūto mimasū to, kerai no Tōsūke da kara, odorokimashite, yopparai ni mukatte eshaku wo shite, —*

*Samurai* : “ *Nani wo kerai-me ga buchōhō wo itashimashita ka zanjimasen ga, tōnin ni nari-kawatte, watakūshi ga o twabi wo mōshi-agemasū. Dōzo go kamben wo.* ”

*Yopparai* : “ *Nani ! Koitsu wa, sono-hō no kerai da to ? Keshīkaran burei na yatsu. Bushi no tomo wo suru nara, shujin no soba ni chiisaku natte iru ga tōzen. Sore ni, nan da ? Tensui-oke<sup>9</sup> kara san-jaku mo ōrai ye de-shabatte,*

---

8. This sentence is incomplete ; the next also, the worthy tradesman being too much excited to speak grammatically. *Mochimashite* is polite for *motte*, the postposition.

“What? you say ten dollars? That’s rather too dear. But I suppose you’ll go down to seven and a half,—won’t you?”

“Oh! really,” said the shopkeeper; “why! I should lose at that rate. Indeed, indeed I should.”

So, while the *samurai* and the sword-dealer went on bargaining about the price of the sword, a drunkard, who happened to pass by at the back, caught hold of the *samurai*’s servant, and, calling out “Hey! what are you up to?” staggered, and came down plump in a sitting posture. Then, managing to get up again, he glared at the fellow sideways, abruptly shook his fist at him, and began to pommel him. The servant, laying the fault on the liquor, took the beating patiently, and, without offering any resistance, put his hands on the ground, and apologised over and over again with downcast head. But the drunkard would not so much as give ear to his apologies, and only thrashed him the more. The *samurai* suddenly happened to look round; and, as the fellow being thrashed was his own retainer Tōsūke, he was taken aback, and made excuses to the drunkard, saying:

“I know not of what rude act that man of mine may have been guilty towards Your Honour; but I myself beg to apologise to you for him. Pray be so kind as to pardon him.”

“What?” said the drunkard, “you say that this creature is your servant, this outrageously rude fellow? If he goes out as a gentleman’s retainer, it would be but proper for him to keep himself in the background near his master. But no! what does he do? He sprawls out into the road

---

9. Rain-tubs or water-buckets stand in certain places along the streets in Tōkyō, as a provision against fire.

*tsūkō no samatage wo shīte, sessha wo tsūki-ataraseta kara, yamu wo ezu chōchaku itashīta.*"

*Samurai* : "Nani mo wakimaen mono de gozaimasū kara, hitoe ni go kamben wo. Temae nari-kawatte o wabi wo mōshi-agemasū."

*Yopparai* : "Ima kono tokoro de temae ga yoroketa tokoro wo tonto tsūki-atatta kara, inu de mo oru ka to omoeba, kono gerō-me ga ite, jibeta ye hiza wo tsūkasete, mi-nasaru tōri, kore! kono yō ni irui wo dorō-darake ni itashīta. Burei na yatsu da kara, chōchaku shīta ga,—dō shīta? Sessha no zombun ni itasū kara, koko ye o dashi nasai."

*Samurai* : "Kono tōri, nani mo wake no wakaran mono, inu dōyō no mono de gozaimasū kara, dōzo go kamlen kudasaimashī."

*Yopparai* : "Korya omoshiroi! Hajimete uketamawatta! *Samurai* ga inu no tomo wo meshi-tsurete aruku to iu hō wa arumai. Inu dōyō no mono nara, temae mōshi-ukete kaeri, machin de mo kuwashīte yarō. Dō wabite mo, ryōken wa narimasen. Kore! kerai no buchōhō wo shujin ga wabiru nara, daichi ye ryō-te wo tsūki, 'fū-jū osore-itta' to, kōbe wo tsūchi ni tataki-tsūkete, wabi wo suru no ga atarimae. Nan da? Kala-te ni katana no koi-guchi wo kitte i-nagara, wabi wo suru nado to wa, samurai no hō de arumai. Nan da? Temae wa sessha wo kiru ki ka?"<sup>10</sup>

---

10. Observe the extreme rudeness of the style of address,—the insulting pronoun *temae*, "thou," and the absence of all honorifics. The commonest courtesy would require *ki desū ka* for *ki ka*. The sober *samurai* answers politely, the verb *makaru* three lines lower down being peculiarly courteous.



a good three feet beyond the water-barrel, and prevents people from passing, and so made me stumble up against him. That's why I couldn't help giving him a thrashing."

"He is a thoughtless fellow," replied the *samurai*, "whom I earnestly entreat Your Honour to pardon. I beg to apologise for him to you myself."

"Just now," continued the drunkard, "as something came bang up against me when I staggered, I thought that perhaps there was a dog there. But no! it was this ruffian, and he made my knee hit the ground. Here, just look! he has made my clothes all muddy like this. I gave him a thrashing, because he was an insolent fellow. What do you think of that? I'm going to do what I want with him; so be good enough to hand him over to me."

"You see, Sir," replied the *samurai*, "that he is too stupid to know what he is doing. He is no better than a dog. So do pray be kind enough to pardon him."

"Well! that's good!" retorted the drunkard. "I never heard of that sort of thing before. Is it etiquette for a *samurai* to go out walking with a dog for a retainer? If he is no better than a dog, I'll take charge of him and poison him with strychnine. You may apologise as you like, I won't take your apologies. Gracious goodness! If a master wanted to apologise for his servant's insolence, the natural thing for him to do would be to put both hands on the ground, and to express his regret over and over again, apologising and striking the earth with his head. But what do *you* do? While you are apologising, you are busy with one hand loosening your sword for use,—pretty manners indeed for a *samurai*! What do you mean? Is it your intention to kill me, you low knave?"

*Samurai*: “*Iya! kore wa, temae ga kono katana-ya de kai-torō to zonjimashite, tadaima kanagu wo mite imashita tokoro ye, kono sawagi ni tori-aezu makari-demashita no de...*”

*Yopparai*: “*Ei! sore wa, kau to mo kawari to mo, anata no go kalle da*<sup>11</sup>” *to nonoshiru no wo,—samurai wa shikiri ni sono suikyō wo nadamete iru to,—*<sup>12</sup>

*Ōrai no hito-bito wa*, “*Sorya! kenkwa da! abunai zo!*” —“*Nani? kenkwa da to, ē?*”—“*Sō sa! aite wa samurai da.*”—“*Sore wa kenon da!*” *to iu to,—mata hitori ga*: “*Nan de gesū, ne?*”—“*Sayō sa! katana wo kau to ka, kawarai to ka no machigai dasō desū. Ano yopparatte iru samurai ga hajime ni katana ni ne wo tsūketa ga, takakūte kawarenai de iru tokoro ye,—kotchi no wakai samurai ga mata sono katana ni ne wo tsūketa tokoro kara, yopparai wa okori-dashite, ‘Ore ga kaō to shita mono wo, ore ni busata de ne wo tsūketa’ to ka, nan to ka no machigai-rashii*” *to ieba,—mata hitori*: “*Nani sa! sō ja arimasen yo! Are wa inu no machigai da, ne! ‘Ore no uchi no inu ni machin wo kuwaseta kara, sono kawari no inu wo watase. Mata machin wo kuwasete korosō’ to ka iu no desu ga,—inu no machigai wa, mukashi kara yoku*

11. Here the drunkard uses honorifics, but ironically.

12. Observe the incorporation into one gigantic sentence of all the various dialogues of the bystanders, from here to the end of

“By no means,” replied the *samurai*. “It is only that I had thought of purchasing this sword of the dealer here, and was just inspecting the metal-work, when all of a sudden I got in for this row, and. . . .”

“Oh!” laughed the drunkard, “whether you buy the sword or don’t buy the sword, that’s your affair;”—whereupon, as the *samurai* continued to endeavour to appease his drunken frenzy, the passers-by put in their word, saying :

“Look out! there’s a quarrel! take care!”

“What? you say there’s a quarrel?”

“Yes; the parties to it are *samurai*.”

“That’s a bad look out.”

Then, as another asked what it was, somebody replied :

“Well, you see, it appears it’s a misunderstanding about the purchase of a sword. That drunken *samurai* there first priced the sword, and was just refusing to buy it on account of its being too dear, when the younger *samurai* here came up and also priced it. This angered the drunkard, who found fault with him for pricing, without reference to him, an article which he himself had been intending to buy. That’s more or less what the misunderstanding sprang from.”

But another broke in, saying, “Oh dear no! that’s not it at all. The misunderstanding is about a dog. One of the two said to the other: ‘As you killed my dog with strychnine, you must give me yours in return, and let me poison it with strychnine too. Disputes about dogs have always been common; for you know how, in Shirai<sup>13</sup>

---

the paragraph on p. 378, and conf. ¶¶ 442-4.

13. The touching story of Shirai Gompachi and of his lady-love, Komurasaki, is to be found in Mitford’s “Tales of Old Japan,” Vol. I., p. 35 *et seq.*

*arimasū yo! Shirai Gompachi nado mo, yahari inu no kenkwa kara anna sōdō ni natta no desū kara, nē!*" to iu to,—mata soba ni iru hito ga: "Nani sa! sonna wake ja nai. Ano futari wa oji oi no aida-gara de, ano makka ni yopparatte iru no wa oji san de, wakai kirei na hito ga oi dasō da. Oi ga oji ni kozukai-zeni wo kurenai to iu tokoro kara no kenkwa da" to ieba,—mata soba ni iru hito wa: "Nani! are wa kinchakū-kiri da," nado to,—ōrai no hito-bito wa iro-iro no hyōban wo shite iru uchi ni, hitori no otoko ga mōshimasū ni wa: "Ano yopparai wa, Maruyama Hommyōji naka-yashiki<sup>14</sup> ni sumu hito de, moto wa Koide Sama no go kerai de attu ga,—mimochi ga warukūte, shu-shoku ni fūkeri, ori-ori wa suppa-nuki nado shite hito wo odokashi, rambō wo hataraite shichū wo ōgyō shi, aru toki wa ryōri-ya ye agari-komi, jūbun sake sakana de hara wo fūkurashita ageku ni, 'Kanjō wa, Hommyōji naka-yashiki ye tori ni koi!' to, ōhei ni kui-taoshi nomi-taoshite aruku Kurokazwa Kōzō to iu waru-zamurai desū kara, toshi no wakai hō wa mi-komarete, tsumari sake de mo kawaserareru no deshō yo."—"Sō desu ka? Nami-taitei no mono nara, kittle shimaimasu ga,—ano wakai

14. Each of the larger *daimyōs* usually possessed three mansions in Yedo, respectively distinguished by the titles of *kami* or "upper," *naka* or "middle," and *shimo* or "lower."

Gompachi's case, too, it was a quarrel about a dog which grew into all that trouble."

"Oh dear no!" said another onlooker at the side of him who had just been speaking, "that's not it in the least. It seems that the two *samurai* are relations,—one the uncle, the other his nephew. It is the drunkard with the scarlet face that is the uncle, and the handsome young fellow that is the nephew. The quarrel between them arose from the nephew's refusing to give his uncle some pocket-money."

But another man, standing by, said "Oh! no, he is a pickpocket."

And then, among the various comments which were made by the passers-by, one man delivered himself of the information that the drunkard was a swashbuckler of a *samurai* called Kurokawa Kōzō, who was living in the middle mansion of Hommyōji at Maruyama, and who had originally been a retainer of my lord Koide, but who, being ill-behaved, had sunk into debauchery, used often to frighten folks by drawing his sword at random, and used to roam through the streets in a violent and disorderly manner, sometimes forcing his way into eating-houses, and then, when he had had his fill of victuals and drink, telling the eating-house-keeper to come for payment to the middle mansion of Hommyōji, thus ruining people by his violence and riotous living, so that the present row would doubtless end in the younger *samurai* getting bullied into treating him to liquor.

"Oh! is that it?" said a voice. "Any average man would cut the ruffian down. But I suppose the young *samurai* won't be able to do so,—will he?—for he looks weakly."

*hō wa, dōmo byōshin no yō da kara, kiremai, nē!*"—

*"Nani! Are wa, kenjutsu wo shiranai no darō. Samurai ga kenjutsu wo shiranakereba, koshi-nuke da," nado to sasayaku koe ga chira-chira wakai samurai no mimi ni hairu kara, gutto komi-age, kampeki ni sawarimashita to miete, kao ga makka ni nari, ao-suji wo tatele, tsume-yori,*

*Samurai: "Kore hodo made ni o wabi wo mōshite mo, go kamben nasaimasen ka?"*

*Yopparai: "Kudo! Mireba, rippa na o samurai,—go jikisan ka, izure no go hanchū ka wa shiranai ga,—o-ha uchi-karashita rōnin!" to anadori; "Shitsurei shigoku! Iyo-iyō kamben ga naranakereba, dō suru ka?" to itte, katto tan wo waka-zamurai no kao ni haki-tsūkemashita kara, sasuga ni kamben-zuyoi waka-zamurai mo, korae-kirenaku narimashita to miete, "Onore! shita kara dereba tsūke-agari, masu-masu tsunoru bari bōkō, bushi taru mono no kao ni tan wo haki-tsūkeru to wa, fū-todoki na yatsu!"<sup>15</sup> Kamben ga dekinakereba, kō suru" to ii-nagara, ima katana-ya de mite ita Bizen-mono no tsūka ni te wo kakeru ga hayai ka, surari to hiki-nuki, yopparai no hana no saki ye pikatto dashita kara, kembutsu wa odoroki-awate, yowasō na otoko da kara, madu hikko-nuki wa shimai to omotta no ni, pika-pika to shita kara, "Sora! nuita!" to, ko no ha ga kaze ni chiru yō ni, shi-hō hap-pō ni bara-bara to*

15. A subjectless and highly irregular sentence, lit. "You! when I come out from underneath (i.e., am conciliating), you are puffed up with pride;—abuse and violence accumulating more and more;—as

“Don't you believe it!” whispered another. “It must be because he doesn't know how to use a sword. A *samurai* who doesn't know how to use a sword is a coward.”

And the buzz of these whispered insinuations found its way to the young *samurai's* ears, and he flared up, and, evidently flying into a passion, his face became scarlet, and the blue veins stood out on his forehead, and he drew close to the drunken wretch, and said :

“Will you not excuse my retainer, even after all the apologies I have offered?”

“You wordy idiot!” laughed the other. “To look at you, you are a mighty fine gentleman, of whom one might suppose that he either was one of the Shōgun's great vassals, or else belonged to one of the clans. But you are a shabby, disreputable vagrant. Nothing could be ruder than your conduct. I am less than ever disposed to excuse you;—and now what will you do?” and with these words he spat in the young *samurai's* face.

This was too much for the patience even of one so long-suffering as the younger man. “Impudent wretch that you are!” cried he, “to presume thus upon my forbearance, to continue getting more and more abusive and violent, and actually to spit in a gentleman's face! As you won't accept apologies, here's what I'll do to you!” And with these words, and almost before he could be seen to have placed his hand on the hilt of the sword which he had just been inspecting in the shop, he out with it and flashed it in the drunkard's face. Thereupon the bystanders took fright. “Oh! he has drawn his sword!” cried they, as they saw it flash in the hands of him, who,

---

for your spitting saliva into the face of a person who is (*taru*, for *to aru*) a warrior, what an impudent fellow !”

*nigemashite, machi-machi no kido wo toji, roji wo shime-kiri, akindo wa mina to wo shimeru sawagi de, machi-naka wa hissori to narimashita ga,—Fuji-Shin no teishu hitori wa nige-ha wo ushinai, tsūkunen to shite, mise-saki ni suwatte orimashita.*

*Sate Kurokazwa Kōzō wa, yopparatte wa orimasuredo, Nama-yoi honshō tagawazu<sup>16</sup> de, ano waka-zamurai no kemmaku ni osoremashite, hyorotsūki-nagara ni-jū-ashi bakari nige-dasu no wo,—samurai wa: “Onore kūchi hodo de mo nai. Bushi no aite ni ushiro wo miseru to wa, hikyō na yatsu! Kaere! kaere!” to, setta-baki de ato wo okkake-masū to,—Kōzō wa mohaya kanawan to omoimashite, hyoro-tsūku ashi wo fumi-shimete, katana no tsūka ni te wo kakete, konata wo furi-muku tokoro wo,—waka-zamurai wa “Ei!” to hito-koe, kata-saki fūkaku buttsuri to kiri-komu to,—kirarete, Kōzō wa, “A!” tto<sup>17</sup> sakebi, kata-hiza wo tsūku tokoro wo noshi-kakatte, “Ei!” to hidari no kata yori munamoto ye kiri-tsūkemashita kara, hasu ni mitsu ni kirarete shimaimashita. Waka-zamurai wa sugu to rippa ni todome wo sashite, chi-gatana wo furui-nagara, Fuji-Shin no mise-saki ye tachi-kaerimashita ga,—moto yori kiri-korosu ryōken de gozaimashita kara, chitto mo dōsuru keshiki mo naku, waga gerō ni mukatte:*

*Samurai: “Kore! Tōsūke! sono tensui-oke no mizu wo kono katana ni kakero!” to ii-tsūkemasū to,—*

16. A proverb. Classical *tagawazu* = Colloq. *chigawanai*.

17. Pronounce *atto* as a single word, *tto* standing by emphasis for *to*, the postposition; conf. bottom p. 82.



taking him for a weakling, they had imagined would not draw. And then, like leaves scattered by the wind, off they fled helter-skelter in every direction ; and the ward-doors were made fast, and the barriers of every lane were closed, and the shop-keepers all shut up their shops, so that the whole street was deserted, the old sword-dealer alone continuing to sit listlessly in his shop-front, simply because he was too much dazed to run away.

Well, drunk as Kurokawa Kōzō was, he,—on the principle that ‘a tipsy man follows his natural bent,’—scared at the rage that was painted on the young *samurai's* face, tried to escape, and had gone some twenty paces with a staggering gait, when his antagonist pursued him with his sandals on and cried out, “Wretch! your conduct does not bear out your insolent words. You are a coward, you are, for showing your back to a gentleman whom you are disputing with. Come back! come back!”

Then Kōzō seeing it was no longer any good, steadied himself on his staggering legs, put his hand on the hilt of his sword, and was turning to face the young *samurai*, when the latter, with the single exclamation “Ha!” slashed deep into his shoulder, cutting him down, so that the man fell on to one knee with a cry, when his opponent, springing on him again, cut at his chest in such wise that he fell sliced obliquely into three pieces. The young *samurai* then dexterously gave him the coup-de-grâce, and returned to the sword-shop, shaking the blood from off his blade. As he had from the beginning intended to cut the swashbuckler down, he was not flurried in the slightest, but turned to his servant, and said :

“Here, Tōsūke! pour some water on this sword from

*Saizen yori furuete orimashita Tōsūke wa :* “*Hei! ton-demonai koto ni narimashita. Moshi kono koto kara Ōtono Sama no o namae de mo demasū yō na koto ga gozaimashite wa, ai-sumimasen. Moto wa, mina watakushi kara hajimatta koto. Dō itashitara, yoroshiū gozaimashō ?*”

*Samurai :* “*Iya! Sayō ni shimpai suru ni wa oyoban. Shichū wo sawagasu rambō-nin, kiri-sūtete mo kurushikunai yatsu da.*<sup>18</sup> *Shimpai suru-na!*” *to, gerō wo nagusame-nagara, yūyū to shite, akke ni torarete iru Fuji-Shin no teishu wo yobi :*

“*Korya! Go teishu ya! Kono katana wa, kore hodo kireyō to wa omoimasen datta ga, naka-naka kiremasū. Yohodo yoku kireru*” *to iu to,—*

*Teishu wa, furue-nagara :* “*Iya! Anata sama no o te ga saete oru kara de gozaimasū.*”

*Samurai :* “*Iya! iya! Mattaku hamono ga yoi. Dō da, na ? Shichi-ryō ni-bu ni makete mo yokarō*” *to iu kara, Fuji-Shin wa kakari-ai wo osorete, “Yoroshiū gozaimasū.”*

*Samurai :* “*Iya! Omae no mise ni wa, kesshite meiwaku wa kakemasen. Tomokaku kono koto wo sugu ni jishimban ni todokenakereba naran. Nafuda wo kaku kara, chotto suzuri-bako wo kashite kurero!*” *to icwarete mo, teishu wa jibun no soba ni suzuri-bako no aru no mo me ni tsūkazu ni, furue-goe de,*

---

18. This sentence excellently illustrates the manner in which Japanese sentences sometimes fail to hang together logically. The first

that water-tub;”—whereupon Tōsūke, who had been trembling all the while, exclaimed :

“Oh! Sir, it *has* come to a pretty pass. It will be dreadful if our master, your father, gets his name dragged through the mud because of this. And I was the cause of it all. What *shall* I do?”

“Nay,” said the *samurai*, to comfort him, “you need not fret like that. A disorderly fellow who goes about disturbing all the town! there is no harm in cutting down a creature of that sort. Don’t fret about it.”—And with these words, he called out nonchalantly to the terror-stricken shop-keeper: “Ha! ha! mine host! I never thought this sword of yours would cut as well as that. But it *does* cut. It cuts first-rate.”

To which the shop-keeper, trembling the while, made answer: “Nay! it was because Your Honour’s arm is skilful.”

“Not at all,” replied the *samurai*. “The blade is really a good one. And how now? I hope you’ll go down to seven dollars and a half.”

So the sword-dealer, anxious not to get implicated in the affair, said that it was all right.

“And mind,” continued the *samurai*, “that in no case will I allow your establishment to be put to any inconvenience on account of what has happened. Of course I must report the matter at once to the warden of the ward. Just let me use your writing-box a minute to write a card.”

---

clause is, so to speak, suspended in the air, as if followed by *etc.*:—“(As for) a disorderly person who disturbs the town-middle, he is a person whom even cutting down is not bad.”

“*Kozō ya! Suzuri-bako wo motte koi!*” *to yonde mo,—*  
*kanai no mono wa, sakkī no sawagi ni doko ye ka nigete*  
*shimai, hitori mo orimasen kara, hissori to shīte, henji ga*  
*nai kara,*

*Samurai:* “*Go teishu! Omae wa sasuga ni go shōbai-*  
*gara dake atte, kono mise wo chitto mo ugokazu ni gozaru*  
*wa, kanshin na mono da, na!*”

*Teishu:* “*Iye, nani! O home de osore-irimasū. Saki-*  
*hodo kara haya-goshi ga nukete,*<sup>19</sup> *tatenai no de. . . .*”

*Samurai:* “*Suzuri-bako wa, omae no waki ni aru ja*  
*nai ka?*” *to ūvarete, yōyō kokoro-zuīte, suzuri-bako wo samurai*  
*no mae ni sashi-dashimasū to,—samurai wa suzuri-bako no*  
*fūta wo hiraite, fude wo tori, sura-sura to namae wo “Iijima*  
*Heitarō” to kaki-owari, jishimban ni todokete oki, Ushigome*  
*no o yashiki ye o kaeri ni narimashīta.*

*Kono shimatsu wo go shimpu Iijima Heizaemon Sama*  
*ni o hanashi wo mōshi-agemasū to, Heizaemon Sama wa*  
*“Yoku kitta” to ōse ga atte, sore kara sugu ni kashira no*  
*Kobayashi Gondaiyū Donō*<sup>20</sup> *ye o todoke ni narimashīta ga,*  
*—sashitaru o togame mo naku, kiri-doku kirare-zon to*  
*narimashīta.*

---

19. We have freely rendered this clause by “unable to stir through fright.” But the popular Japanese idea on the subject is that one of the bones actually gets put out of joint through fright.

20. *Godayū*, here rendered as part of this personage’s name, was originally a title indicative of a certain rank; but it came to be used more or less at will among the *samurai* class. It is to be supposed that this Kobayashi Godayū was an official entrusted with certain

But the shop-keeper, never noticing that the writing-box was close beside him, called out in a tremulous voice: "Boy! bring the writing-box!"—a command to which nothing but silence responded; for all the people in the house had fled none knew whither when the row began, and there was no one present.

So the *samurai* exclaimed: "Mine host! I really admire your courage,—the courage proper in the owner of a sword-shop,—sitting here in your shop without moving an inch, notwithstanding this affray."

"Nay! Sir," gasped the tradesman. "Your praise covers me with confusion. I have been unable to stir through fright ever since the beginning of it, and....."

"Why!" said the *samurai*, "isn't the writing-box there at your side?"

These words at last brought the shopman to his senses, and he pushed the writing-box towards the *samurai*, who, lifting off the lid, took up a pen and quietly wrote his name, "Iijima Heitarō," then reported the matter to the warden of the ward, and went home to his lord's mansion at Ushigome.

On his relating the whole affair to his father, Iijima Heizaemon, the latter praised him for his manly deed; nor was the young man specially blamed when the report was sent in to their superior, Kobayashi Gondagū. It all simply ended by being so much the better for the slayer, and so much the worse for the slain.

---

affairs of the clan to which the Iijimas belonged, and who happened to be their immediate superior. The title of *Dono*, "Mr.," though still often used in writing, is rarely if ever heard in actual speech.

¶ 459.

## DAI NI-KWAI.

*Sate Iijima Heitarō Sama wa, o toshi ni-jū-ni no toki ni waru-mono wo kiri-koroshite, chitto mo osoreru keshiki mo naku, kishō na o kata de gozaimashita kara,—toshi wo toru ni ojite, masu-masu chie ga susumimashite, sono nochi go shimpu sama ni naku nararete, go katoku wo o tsugi asobashi, Heizaemon to na wo aratame,<sup>1</sup> Suidō-bata<sup>2</sup> no Miyake Sama to mōshimasū o halamoto<sup>3</sup> kara okūsama wo o mukae ni narimashite,—hodo naku go shusshō no o nyoshi wo O Tsuyu Sama to mōshi-age, sūkoburu yoi go kiriyō de,—go ryōshin wa te no uchi no tama no yō ni aishite, o sodate ni narimashita ga,—sono o ato ni o kodomo ga dekimasezu, hito-tsubu-dane no koto desū kara, nao-sara go hisō ni nasaru uchi, ‘kōin ni sekimori nashi’<sup>4</sup> de, o jōsama wa kotoshi tote jū-roku ni narare, o ie mo masu-masu go sakan de gozaimashita ga,—‘mitsureba kakuru yo no narai’<sup>4</sup> to iu tate no tōri, okūsama wa sūkoshi no yamai ga moto to nalle, tsui ni o naku nari nasaimashita.*

*Sono nochi kaji-muki go fujiyū no tokoro kara, O Kuni to iu nochi-zoi wo o mukae ni narimashita ga,—tokaku o jōsama to O Kuni to no aida ga nan to naku ori-aimasen de, Iijima Sama mo kore wo mendō ni omoimashite, Yanagi-shima ye bessō wo ko-*

1. A change of name on some important event was a common practice in Old Japan.

2. I.e., the bank of the aqueduct in Koishikawa, Yedo.

## CHAPTER II.

Now Iijima Heitarō, having, at the age of two-and-twenty, cut down a ruffian, and being an energetic young *samurai* who knew not what fear was, grew wiser and wiser as he advanced in years. Later on, having lost his father, he inherited the patrimony and changed his name to Heizaemon, and then married a wife from the family of a *hatamoto* called Miyake residing at Suidō-bata. After a little while, there was born to them a daughter, whom they named O Tsuyu, and who was so beautiful that her parents doted on her as if they had held a jewel in their hand. As they had no other children after her, their only pet, their care for her increased all the more; and meanwhile, there being, as the proverb says, "no barrier-keeper to keep time back," the young girl was now in her sixteenth year, and the family was more prosperous than ever, when, as an exemplification of the saying that "in this world what waxeth waneth," some ailment, quite slight at first, attacked the mother and ended by carrying her off.

Afterwards Iijima, finding that the household would not work smoothly without a mistress, took to himself a second wife named O Kuni. But somehow or other, the daughter and O Kuni did not get on well together. This was a trouble to the master of the house, who thereupon

---

3. See vocabulary.

4. Both these sayings are inherited from the Book Language. *Kakuru* is equivalent to Colloquial *kakeru*, 2nd conj.

*shirae, o jōsama ni O Yone to iu jochū wo tsūkete, betsu-zumai wo sashite okimashita ga,—kore ga Iijima Sama no o ie no kuzureru hajime de gozaimasū.*

*Sate sono toshi mo tachi, akuru<sup>5</sup> toshi wa o jōsama wa jū-shichi-sai ni o nari asobashimashita.*

*Koko ni kanete Iijima Sama ye o de-iri no isha ni Yamamoto Shijō to mōsu mono ga gozaimashite—jitsu wa o taiko-isha no o shaberi de, shonin tasūke no tame ni saji wo te ni toranai<sup>6</sup> to iu jimbutsu de gozaimasū kara,—nami no o isha nara, chotto kami-ire no naka ni mo gwan-yaku ka ko-gusuri de mo haitte imasu ga,—kono Shijō no kami-ire no naka ni wa, tezuma no tane yara, hyaku-manako nado ga irete aru gurai na mono de gozaimasū.*

*Sate kono isha no chikazuki de, Nezu no Shimizudani ni dembata ya kashi-nagaya wo mochi, sono agari de kurashi wo tatete iru rōnin no Hagūwara Shinzaburō to mōsu mono ga arimashite, ūmare-tsūki kirei na otoko de,—toshi wa ni-jū-ichi de gozaimasu ga, mada nyōbō mo motazu, goku uchiki de gozaimasū kara, soto ye mo demasezu, shomotsu bakari mite orimasū tokoro ye,—aru hi Shijō ga tazunete mairimashite,—*

*Shijō : “Kyō wa, tenki ga yoroshiū gozaimasū kara, Kameido no Gwaryōbai<sup>1</sup> ye de-kakete, sono kaeri ni boku no chikazuki Iijima Heizaemon no bessō ye yorimashō.—‘Ie’ sa? Kimi wa ittai uchiki de irasharu kara, fujin ni o kokoro-gake nasaimasen ga,—*

5. This is Classical for *akeru*, 2nd conj., “to open,” hence “to begin,” hence used to signify “next” in “next year.”

6. The spoon (with which medicines are mixed) is the physician's special emblem. In the free translation we have used the phrase



built a villa in the neighbourhood of Yanagi-shima, and sent his daughter to reside there separately, attended by a maid called O Yone. And this it was which was the beginning of the downfall of the house of Iijima.

Well, that year too passed by, and in the following one O Tsuyu entered her seventeenth year.

Now there was a man named Yamamoto Shijō, who had long been the family physician of the Iijimas. In reality he was a chatterbox and a quack,—one of those doctors of whom it is said that they write no prescriptions out of regard for the welfare of their patients,—a man who carried about in his pocket-book such things as the wherewithal for conjuring tricks, or else paper-masks for acting the mimic, instead of the pills or powders of which any ordinary physician has a little store by him.

Well, this doctor had a friend, an unattached *samurai* called Hagiwara Shinzaburō, who lived on the income derived from fields and house property which he owned at Shimizu-dani in Nezu. He was naturally a handsome man, still unmarried though already twenty-one years of age, and so shy that he would not go out, but occupied himself with nothing but reading.

Shijō came to call upon him one day, and said: "As it is such fine weather to-day,—let us go and see the plum-blossoms at Kameido, and, on our way back, look in at the villa of a friend of mine, Iijima Heizaemon.—What? you say no? You are altogether so shy, that you

---

"writing prescriptions" as our nearest equivalent to the Japanese "taking the spoon in hand."

7. A garden in Tōkyō, celebrated for the picturesque beauty of its fantastic old plum-trees, lit. the "recumbent dragon plum-trees."

*danshi ni totte wa, fujin no tsūki-ai hodo tanoshimi na mono wa nai. Ima mōshūta Ijima no bessō ni wa, fujin bakari de,—sore wa! sore wa! yohodo beppin no o jōsama ni shinsetsu na jochū to tada fūtari-giri desū kara, jōdan de mo itte kimashō. Honō ni jōsama miru dake de mo kekkō na kurai de,—ūme mo yoroshii ga, ugoki mo shinai, kūchi mo kikimasen. Fūjin wa, kūchi mo kiku shi, ugoki mo shimasū. Tomokaku ki-tamae!” to sasoi-dashimashite, fūtari-zure de Gwaryōbai ye mairi, kaeri ni Ijima no bessō ye tachi-yorimashite,—*

*Shijō* : “Go men kudasai! Makoto ni shibaraku!”  
to iu koe wo kiki-tsūkemashite,—

*O Yone* : “Donata sama? Oya-oya! irasshaimashi!”

*Shijō* : “Kore wa! O Yone San! Sono nochi wa, tsui ni nai go busata itashimashita. O jōsama ni wa o kawari mo gozaimasen ka?—Sore wa, sore wa! kekkō, kekkō! Ushigome kara koko ye o hiki-utsuri ni narimashite kara wa, dōmo empō na no de, tsui tsui go busata ni narimashite, makoto ni ai-sumimasen.”

*O Yone* : “Mā! anata hisashiku o mie nasaimasen kara, dō nasatta ka to omotte, maido o uzewasa wo itashite orimashita. Kyō wa dochira ye?”

*Shijō* : “Kyō wa Gwaryōbai ye ūme-mi ni de-kakemashita ga,—‘Ūme mireba, hōzu ga nai’ to iu tatoe no tōri, mada mi-tarinai no de, o nizeva no ūme wo haiken itashitakūte mairimashita.”

---

8. *Shijō* is joking. The real saying is *Ue mireba, hōzu ga nai*, “If one looks upwards, there is no limit,” i.e., “there is no limit to the possibility of aping one’s superiors.”

take no interest in ladies' society, whereas there is nothing so delightful for a man as that society. In the villa which I have just mentioned there are none but ladies, and oh! dear me! there are only two of them,—a perfectly lovely young girl and a good-natured maid-servant, so that we can have some fun. The young lady is really a treat just simply to look at. Doubtless the plum-blossoms are beautiful too; but then they don't move, they can't speak, whereas women possess both motion and speech. Anyhow, please come along!"

So saying, he led him off, and they went together to see the plum-blossoms, and then, on the way home, looked in at Iijima's villa.

"Excuse me!" called out Shijō. "Here I am, after all this long time."

"Who is it?" answered O Yone. "Oh, really! pray come in!"

"Ah! O Yone!" cried Shijō. "It is really an unconscionable time since my last visit. I hope the young lady is quite well.—Well, well! this is splendid.—But you do live so far off since you moved here from Ushigome, that I have become quite remiss in calling, which is really too bad of me."

O Yone: "Why! it's so long since we last had the pleasure of seeing you, that we wondered what had become of you, and have been constantly talking about you.—Where have you been to-day?"

Shijō: "To see the plum-blossoms at Kameido. But, as the saying is, 'When one looks at the plum-blossoms, there is no end to it.' So we don't yet feel that we have seen enough, and have come hoping to get a sight of the plum-blossoms in your garden."

O Yone : “Sore wa ! yoku irasshaimashita. Mā ! dōzo kochira ye o hairi asobase !” to,—kirido wo akemashita kara, “Go men kudasai !” to, niwa-guchi kara zashiki ye tōrimashita.

O Yone : “Mā ! ip-puku meshi-agare ! Kyō wa yoku irasshite kudasaimashita. Fudan wa, watakūshi to o jō-sama bakari desū kara, samishikutte komatte orimasū tokoro de gozaimashita.”

Shijō : “Kekkō na o sumai desū. Sate, Hagiwara Uji ! Kyō kimi no go meigin ni osore-irimashita.<sup>9</sup> Nan to ka mōshimashita, ne, ē ?

‘Tabako ni wa,  
Suri-bi no ūmashi  
Ūme no naka’<sup>10</sup>

deshita ka, nē ? Kampuku, kampuku ! Boku no yō na ōchaku-mono wa, deru ku mo ōchaku de,

‘Ūme homete,  
Magirawashī-keri,  
Kado-chigai’<sup>11</sup>

ka, nē ?

“Kimi no yō ni shoken bakari shite ite wa, ikemasen yo ! Sakki no sake no nokori ga koko ni aru kara, ip-pai agare-yo ! Nan desū,—ne ? Iya desū ? Sore de wa, hitori de chōdai itashimashō” to ii-nagara, hyōtan wo dashi-

9. Every Japanese of education is supposed to be able to compose in verse ; but the so-called verses here given are of course only Shijō's chaff, invented on the spur of the moment. This particular kind of stanza is termed *hokku*, and consists of three lines of respectively five, seven, and five syllables. Japanese prosody knows nothing either of rhyme or of quantity. Conf. ¶ 465 *et seq.*

10. The words lit. mean “As for tobacco (-smoking), within the plum-trees, is delicious of striking-fire,” i.e., “How delicious it is to light

*O Yone* : “Well, well ! and a good welcome to you ! Oh ! please come in this way !”—and so saying, she opened the wicket, so that the visitors, with a “By your leave,” passed through the garden entrance into the house.

*O Yone* : “Oh ! please smoke ! It is exceedingly kind of you to have come to-day. We are generally very dull, because there are only the two of us,—my young mistress and I.”

*Shijō* : “This is a splendid house.—Well, Mr. Hagiwara ! I was quite taken aback by that beautiful stanza of yours to-day. What was it again ?

‘To the smoker

How sweet for striking a match

Is the entourage of the plum-blossoms !’

“That was it, wasn’t it ? Admirable ! admirable ! In the case of a villain like me, the verses that come out of his mouth are villainous too. My stanza was :

‘In belauding the plum-blossoms

I got confused,

And belauded a lovely girl instead.’

“I think that was it.—It doesn’t do to be always reading as you are,—indeed it doesn’t. As we have the remains of the liquor we took with us on our picnic, just have a glass of it.—What ? you say no ? Well then, I’ll drink alone ;”—

a pipe among the plum-blossoms !” The second and third lines are inverted. Note the conclusive form of the adjective *īmashi*, “is delicious,” equivalent to the more genuinely Colloquial *īmai*, and conf. p. 121.

11. *Keri* is a Classical termination of verbs and adjectives. In Colloquial the word would be *magirakashita*. *Kado-chigai*, lit. a “mistake of gates,” refers to Shijō’s preferring the house where the young lady lives to the celebrated garden with the plum-trees. We have represented this meaning very freely in the third line of the translation.

*kakeru tokoro ye, O Yone ga cha to kwashi wo motte mairimashite,*

*O Yone: "Socha de gozaimasu ga, o hitotsu meshi-agare!"*

*Shijō: "Dōzo mō o kamai kudasaru-na! Toki ni, kyo wa o jōsama ni o me ni kakaritakūte mairimashita. Koko ni iru no wa, boku no goku shitashii hōyū desū. Sore wa sō to, kyō wa o miyage mo nani mo jisan ilashimasen<sup>12</sup>.—E, he, he! arigatō gozaimasū. Kore wa, osore-irimashita. O kwashi wa yōkan. Kekkō! Sā! Hagiwara Kun, meshi-agare-yo!" to,—*

*O Yone ga kibisho ye yu wo sashi ni itta ato de, "futsu ni koko no uchi no o jōsama wa, tenka ni nai bijin desū. Ima ni irassharu kara, goran nasai!" to hanashi wo shite orimasū to, mukō no yo-jō-han no ko-zashiki de Iijima no o jōsama, O Tsuyu Sama ga, hito-mezurashii kara, shōji wo sūkoshi akete nozoite miru to, Shijō no soba ni suwatte iru Hagiwara Shinzaburō no otoko-buri to ii, hito-gara to ii<sup>13</sup>, "Onna ni shitara donna darō?" to omou hodo no ii otoko desū kara, hito-me mimasū to zotto shite, dō shita kaze no fūki-mawashi de anna kirei na tonogo ga koko ye kila no ka to omou to, katto nobosele, makka na kao ni nari, nan to naku ma ga warukūte, pata to shōji wo shime-kitte, uchi ye*

12. It is a graceful Japanese custom to bring a present with one when coming to pay a visit.

13. *To ii* is often thus used in enumerations. It may be most easily parsed as equivalent to *to itte mo*, "whether saying that."

and with these words, he was just bringing out his wine-gourd, when O Yone came in with tea and cakes, saying :

“It is poor tea, but pray take a cup of it.”

“Please don't take any more trouble about us,” replied Shijō. “By the way,” continued he, “we have come here to-day in hopes of seeing your young mistress. This gentleman here is an extremely intimate friend of mine.—Oh! by the bye, that reminds me that I have forgotten to bring you any present to-day.—Oh! thank you! I am really quite overcome by your kind attentions.—The sweetmeats are bean paste.—Delicious!—Come along, Mr. Hagiwara, do take some.—Really,” continued he, after O Yone had gone to pour some hot water into the tea-pot, “the young lady of the house is one who has not her equal for beauty in the world. She'll be coming now; so look at her.”

While he was thus speaking, Iijima's daughter, Miss O Tsuyu, in the small four and a half mat room opposite, curious to see the rare visitors, had opened one of the sliding paper doors a little and peeped out; and, as she did so, her glance fell on Hagiwara Shinzaburō seated at Shijō's side,—so manly, so distinguished-looking, handsome to the pitch of making one think what a beautiful woman he would have made. And she started, and wondered what stroke of fortune had brought hither so handsome a fellow. Then, the blood rushing to her cheeks, she became scarlet, and, overcome by a feeling of awkwardness, shut the paper slide with a *click*, and retired within it. But, as she could not see his face when shut up in the room, she again gently slid the door open, and, while pretending

*hairimashita ga,—uchi de wa otoko no kao ga mirarenai kara, mata sotto shōji wo akete, niwa no ūme no hana wo nagameru furi wo shi-nagara, choi-choi to Hagiwara no kao wo mite wa, hazukashisō ni shōji no uchi ye hairu ka to omou to, mata dete kuru. Detari hikkondari, hikkondari detari, moji-moji shūte iru no wo Shijō ga mi-tsūkemashite,*

*Shijō :* “*Hagiwara Kun! Kimi wo o jōsama ga sakki kara tsūku-zuku mite imasū, yo! Ūme no hana wo miru furi wo shūte ite mo, me no tama wa maru de kotchi wo mite iru, yo! Kyō wa, tonto kimi ni kerareta, nē!*”—*to uwasa wo shūte iru tokoro ye,*

*Gejō no O Yone ga dete mairimashite :* “*O jōsama kara ‘Nani mo gozaimasen ga, hon no inaka-ryōri de ik-kon sashi-agemasū. Dōzo go yururi to meshi-agarimashite, aikawarazu anata no go jōdan wo ukagailai’ to osshaimasū.*”

*Shijō :* “*Dōmo! osore-irimashita. Kore wa, kore wa! o suimono! kekkō! arigatō gozaimasū. Sakki kara reishu wa motte orimasu ga, o kanshu wa mata kakubetsu. Arigatō gozaimasū. Dōzo o jōsama ni mo irassharu yō ni. Kyō wa ūme ja nai. Jitsu wa, o jōsama wo... Iya! nani?*”



to gaze at the plum-blossoms in the garden, cast sly glances from time to time at Hagiwara's face. Then again, apparently overcome with bashfulness, she withdrew within the sliding door, but had hardly done so when once more her face popped out. And so she went on fidgeting,—out and in, in and out, which Shijō perceiving said :

“Mr. Hagiwara! I say! the young lady has been staring at you all the time. She may pretend to be looking at the plum-blossoms; but for all that, her eyes are turned completely in this direction,—indeed they are. To-day I have been quite thrown into the shade by you, eh?”

While he was thus chattering away, the maid O Yone came into the room and said :

“My young mistress bids me say that, though she has nothing worthy your acceptance, she begs you to take a glass of wine accompanied by a snack of our poor rustic fare. She hopes you will take your own time over it, and give her the benefit of your amusing conversation, as on previous occasions.”

“Really,” replied Shijō, “I am confounded by so much civility. Dear me! dear me! Here is soup! Delicious! Thank you! Cold liquor we already had with us; but this hot wine of yours is quite a special treat. Many thanks! Please ask your young mistress if she too won't favour us with her company. It was not for the plum-blossoms that we came to-day. In reality it was the young lady whom....Why! what is the matter?”

*O Yone*; “*Ho-ho-ho!*—*Tadaima sayō mōshi-agemashīta ga, o tsure no o kata wo go zonji ga nai mono desū kara, ‘Ma ga warui’ to osshaimasū kara,—‘Sonnara, o yoshi asobase!’ to mōshi-agemasū to,—‘Sore de mo, ilte mitai’ to osshaimasū no!*”<sup>14</sup>

*Shijō*: “*Iya! kore wa boku no shin no chikazuki de, chikuba no tomo to mōshite mo yoroshii kurai na mono de, go enryo ni wa oyobimasen. Dōzo chotto jōsama ni o me ni kakaritakūte mairimashīta*” *to iu to,—O Yone wa yagate o jōsama wo tsurete mairimasū to,—o jōsama wa hazukashisō ni O Yone no ushiro ni suwatte, kūchi no uchi de “Shijō San! irasshaimashī!” to itta-giri de,—O Yone ga kochira ye kureba, kochira ye iki; achira ye ikeba, achira ye iki; shijū O Yone no ushiro ni bakari kuttsuite orimasū to,—*

*Shijō*: “*Kore wa! kore wa! Jōsama! Sono nochi wa, zonji-nagara go busata itashimashīta. Itsu mo o kawari mo gozaimasen de, kekkō de gozaimasū. Kono hito wa, boku no chikazuki de, Hagiwara Shinzaburō to mōshimasū. Dokūshin-mono de gozaimasū. Kyō wa hakarazu tsuremashite, go chisō ni nari, osore-irimasū. Chotto o chikazuki no tame, o sakazuki wo chōdai itasasemashō.—Oya! nan da ka? Kore de wa, go konrei no sakazuki no yō de gozaimasū*”<sup>15</sup>—*to, sūkoshi mo togire naku tori-maki wo itashite orimasū to,—o jōsama wa, hazukashii ga, mata ureshikūte, Hagiwara*

14. Notice the force of this final particle *no*, half exclamatory, half expressive of helplessness to deal with the situation. See p. 79, ¶ 113.

15. *Sake*-drinking is a notable feature of a Japanese wedding.

O Yone (laughing) : “ I told her so just now ; but she said she felt it awkward, because she doesn't know the gentleman whom you have brought with you. But when I thereupon said ‘ Then refuse to see him,’ she said ‘ But I do want to see him all the same.’ ”

Shijō : “ Nay! nay! there is no reason for her to feel shy. This gentleman is a most intimate friend of mine. It would hardly be too much to say that we played about as children together ; and we have come with the most earnest desire to see her just for a minute or two.”

After this speech of Shijō's, O Yone led in her young mistress, who was, however, evidently so bashful that, after whispering a welcome to Shijō from the place where she sat behind O Yone, she said no more, but constantly stuck close behind O Yone, edging hither when O Yone came hither, and edging thither when O Yone went thither.

“ Well! well! Miss O Tsuyu!” cried Shijō, “ I know that I have been an unconscionable time in coming to see you. It is delightful to find you in the same excellent health as ever. This gentleman is my friend, Hagiwara Shinzaburō. He is a bachelor. Happening to bring him with me to-day, we have been hospitably feasted, and are overcome with gratitude. Let me offer you the wine-cup, just to drink to the making of a new acquaintance. — Ha! ha! ha! what *is* this? At this rate, it looks as if we were celebrating a wedding! ”

And as he thus went on ceaselessly keeping the ball rolling, the young lady, though bashful, was glad too, and, while pretending *not* to look at Hagiwara Shinzaburō, was casting furtive side-glances at him ; and, as an illustration of the saying that “ when the intention is there,

*Shinzaburō wo yokome de jiro-jiro minai furi wo shi-nagara mile orimasū to,—‘ki ga areba, me mo kūchi hodo ni mono wo iu’ to iu tate no tōri, Shinzaburō mo jōsama no yoi kiryō ni mi-torete, muchū ni natte orimasū. Sō kō suru uchi ni, yūkei ni narimashita kara,*

*Shinzaburō : “Kore wa hajimete ukagaimashite, hakarazu go chisō ni narimashita. Mō o itoma itashimasū.”*

*O Yone : “Anata! mada o hayō gozaimasū. Mo sotto go yururi asobashimase”—to, o jōsama no kokoro-arige na yōsu wo sasshi, iro-iro to todomete orimasū to, Shinzaburō mo, kokoro no uchi wa omoi wo kakele orimasu ga, mada seken naremasen yue, moji-moji shite :*

*“Arigatō zonjimasū. Shikashi yo ni irimasū to, taku no mono mo anjimasū yue, mata kasanete ukagaimasū” to, kotoba wo nokoshite, tachi-kakemashita kara,*

*Shijō : “Sayōnara<sup>16</sup>, o itoma mōshimasū. Kyō wa iro-iro go chisō ni narimashite, arigatō gozaimasū. Izure kinjitsu, o rei kata-gata, o ukagai mōshimasū.—Sā! Hagiwara Kun, o tomo itashimashō” to,—jibun wa katte narete orimasū kara, O Yone to jōdan ii-nagara, genkwa no hō ye mairimasū to,*

*O Yone : “Shijō San! Anata no tsumuri ga taisō pika-pika to hikatte mairimashita yo!”*

*Shijō : “Nani sa! Sore wa, akari de miru kara,*

---

16. Here used half in its original and proper sense of “if that is so,” half in its newer sense of “goodbye.”

the eyes can say as much as the mouth,' Shinzaburō too, captivated by the girl's beauty, felt as if he were in a dream.

Well, what with one thing and another, the evening was drawing in. So Shinzaburō said :

"Many thanks for your kind hospitality on this my first visit. I think I must now be taking my leave."

"Oh!" cried O Yone, who had guessed her young mistress's tender passion, and who therefore did her best to detain the young man, "it is still early. Please don't be in such a hurry."

Shinzaburō, too, in his heart of hearts, was in love, but as he was still ignorant of the world, he was embarrassed and said :

"Many thanks. But when it gets dark, my people will become anxious about me; so I will call again another day instead."

With these parting words, he made to go. So Shijō said :

"Well then, we will take our leave. Many thanks for all your kind hospitality to us to-day. We will certainly come in a few days to call and thank you.—Come along, Mr. Hagiwara! let us go!"

And with these words, knowing, as he did, his way about the house, he went in the direction of the entrance, joking with O Yone all the while.

"Mr. Shijō," said O Yone, "your head has become perfectly shining."

"Nonsense!" retorted Shijō, "you only think it shines, because you are looking at it under the light,—ha! ha!"

*hikaru no desū wa, nē!*" to,—*fūtari wa ki wo kikashi, o jōsama to Shinzaburō wo ato ni nokoshi, jōdan-majiri ni iro-iro no hanashi wo shi-nagara, saki ye mairimashita.*

*Ato ni Shinzaburō wa o jōsama ni okurare-nagara, hito-me no nai no wo sawai ni, hazukashisa wo koraete, kogoe de nani ka kūchi-yakūsoku wo itashimashita kara, O Tsuyu Sama wa hazukashisō ni :*

*"Anata! Sore de wa, mata kitto o ide kudasaremashī! Kite kudasaranakereba, watakūshi wa shinde shimaimasū yo!"* to,—*muryō no jō wo fūkunde, omoi-kitte mōshimashita.*

*O Yone: "Sayōnara! konnichi wa makoto ni o sōsō sama. Sayōnara!"* to,—*Shiyō, Shinzaburō no ryō-nin wa, uchi-tsuredatte kaerimashita.*

*Sono nochi Shinzaburō wa, o jōsan no kotoba ga mimi ni nokori, shibashi mo wasureru hima wa arimasenanda.*

---

Thus did these two display their tact as they walked on towards the entrance, talking and joking about all sorts of subjects, and leaving the young lady of the house and Shinzaburō behind. Shinzaburō, to whom the young lady showed the way, was only too glad to find that no one was by to see. So, overcoming his shyness, he whispered some vow into O Tsuyu's ear, thereby making her look bashful and answer :

“Oh ! then, do please come again ! If you don't come, I shall die,—indeed I shall.” In this decided manner did she speak, with infinite love in her words.

“Goodbye !” cried O Yone. “Pray excuse the poorness of our entertainment to-day. Goodbye !”—and thereupon Shijō and Shinzaburō went off together.

From that day forward the young girl's words remained in Shinzaburō's ears, and he never forgot them even for a moment.

---

*Eigo no Why, sunawachi naze to iu koto wa, hanahada taisetsu de aru no ni, Shina ya Nihon no mukashi no hito-bito wa metta ni kono kotoba wo tsūkawazu<sup>2</sup>, “Kōshi no setsu da” to ka, “Mōshi no jiron da” to ka iu toki wa, mohaya betsu ni sono rikutsu wo sensaku suru koto mo naku, tada gaten shīte shimau no ga tsūrei de ari; soko de motte, “Utagai wa bummei shimpo no ichi dai gen-in da” to iu ron mo dekita wake de, ima wa yaya mo sureba Seiyō-jin wa “Utagai wa taisetsu na mono da; bummei shimpo no gen-in da. Sono shōko ni wa, Shina-jin ya Nihon-jin wa, mono-goto wo utagau to iu koto wo shinai ni yotte, itsu made tatte mo shimpo shinai de wa nai ka?” to ronji-lateru koto de aru ga,—kō iu rei nado ni hīkareru to iu wa, o tagai sama ni<sup>3</sup> amari zotto itasan shidai to iwanakereba narimasen.*

*Utagai to wa, tori mo naosazu naze to iu kotoba no hitsuyō ni natte kuru gen-in de,—tatoeba, kodomo no jibun, “Uso itte wa, ikenai yo!” to obāsan nado ni ii-kikasareru de arō. Sono toki*

---

1. This piece is a leading article taken from the columns of one of the cheaper Tōkyō newspapers, the *Kaishin Shimbun*, several years ago. It has been retained in this edition, though its point of view is somewhat antiquated, because of its representatively idiomatic style. Speak thus, and you will be intelligible to any audience, however uncultivated.



## W H Y ?

What is termed *why* in English and *naze* in our language, is a very important thing. Nevertheless, the Chinese and Japanese of olden times hardly ever used the word. When told perhaps that such and such was the doctrine of Confucius or the opinion advocated by Mencius, they habitually acquiesced without further enquiry into the rights of the question. Now, therefore, when the theory has arisen that doubt is one of the greatest sources of enlightenment and progress, and when, consequently, Europeans are apt to assert the importance of doubt and its services to the cause of civilisation, and to prove this their assertion by pointing to the Chinese and Japanese as instances of nations forever unprogressive, owing to their neglect to subject all things to the scrutiny of doubt,—when we hear such opinions ventilated, and find ourselves quoted in such a connection, we all must agree that it is by no means a pleasant state of affairs.

It is exactly this thing called doubt that causes the word *why* to become an indispensable one. Take a child, for instance. Probably its grandmother or somebody

---

2. The word *naze* is little used even now, except in anger. The circumlocution *dō iu wake de?* “for what reason?” is generally preferred.

3. *O tagai sama ni*, “mutually,” “for you and me,” the honorific *o* giving a half-polite, half-comical tinge to the expression.

ni, "Naze uso wo itte wa, warui no de gozaimasū ka?" to ulagai wo ii-dashite goranjiro!—"Naze datte!<sup>4</sup> Sonna kotoba wo kaesu mono de wa arimasen.<sup>5</sup> Ningen wa, uso wo itte wa, warui mono ni kimatte orimasū" to atama-kabuse<sup>6</sup> ni ii-tsūkerareru ga tsūrei de arō.

Naruhodo! ningen wa, uso wo itte wa, warui ni kimatte oru ni chigai nai ga,—sono warui rikutsu<sup>7</sup> wo shitte gaten suru no to, tada bon-yari to gaten suru no to de wa, onaji gaten suru no de mo, gaten no wake ga taisō chigau de arō to zanjimasū. Naze ni kuni ni wa seifu to iu mono ga aru no ka? Naze ni jimmīn wa sozei wo osameru mono ka? Mazu ulagai wo okoshite, sono rikutsu wo sensaku shite koso, hajimele jiyū-seido-ron mo okotte kuru to iu mono de,—tada rikutsu nashi ni, "Kuni ni wa seifu ga aru mono<sup>8</sup>, jimmīn wa sozei wo osameru mono" to gaten shite itte wa, shidai ni hikutsu ni naru bakari de, kesshite shimpo suru koto wa arimasen.

Naze no hitsuyō na no wa, hitori dōtoku ya seiji nomi ni kagirazu, sono<sup>9</sup> ja, sekai ni arayuru<sup>9</sup> mono goto ni wa, donna sasai no ten ni itaru made mo, subete hitsuyō na koto de,—yoku seken no hito-bito ga "Gakumon ga taisetsu da, taisetsu da" to iu ga,—tsumari nan no gakumon mo, ulagai wo moto

4. Datte is from *da to itte*, "saying that;" but it has become a sort of interjection.

5. *De wa arimasen*, lit "is not," is occasionally thus used in the sense of "must not."

6. *Atama-kabuse ni* = "with a snub." The kindred expression *atama kara kogoto wo iu* is a common phrase for "unreasonable

says to it: "Mind you mustn't tell stories!" Then let the following doubt be expressed in reply: "Why is it wrong to tell stories?" and it will generally happen that the enquirer will be snubbed with a " 'Why?' indeed! None of your pert retorts for me! Every one agrees that it is wrong for people to tell stories."

Yes, indeed! no doubt every one agrees that it is wrong to tell stories; and to acquiesce in this principle with a knowledge of the reasons why story-telling is wrong, or to acquiesce in it unintelligently, is equally to acquiesce. But surely there is a great difference between the two modes of acquiescence. Why is it that there is what is termed a government in the country? Why do the people have to pay taxes? It is only by raising such questions and searching for reasons, that liberal political opinions get started. When people simply go on unreasoningly, accepting as ultimate facts the existence of government and the obligation to pay the taxes, they merely sink deeper and deeper into servility, and never make any progress.

Doubt is indispensable, not in morals and in politics only. It is indispensable in other things also, in every single thing in the world, down to the very smallest. People often say and repeat that learning is important. But after all, in no branch of learning is there any fruitful course to be pursued, unless we make doubt the founda-

---

scolding."

7. *Warui rikutsu* does not mean "a bad reason," but "the reason why it is bad;" *conf. p. 60.*

8. Supply *da*, "it is (a fact that there is a government, etc)."

9. *Arayuru* is an exceptional verbal form derived from *aru*, "to be," and meaning "all that there are."

*ni shi, naze naze !de motte oku no oku made rikutsu wo sensaku suru to iu koto ni hoka wa nai. Shi-sho Go-kyō<sup>10</sup> ni kaite aru mono-goto ni kesshite machigai wa nai to, tada rikutsu nashi ni galen shite shimatte ita<sup>11</sup> hi ni wa, yo no naka wa Shi-sho Go-kyō inai no yo no naka de owaru no de, itsu made tatte mo susumu kizukai wa nai ga,—mottomo “Sore dake de, takusan da” to iu ki naraba, suman koto mo arumai keredomo, naze wo mochiite, rikutsu wo sensaku shita<sup>12</sup> hi ni wa, rikutsu kara rikutsu to, shidai ni rikutsu ni hana ga saki, mi ga nari, kwairaku no shurui ga ōku mo ōkiku mo naru to wakari-kitte iru to shite mireba<sup>13</sup>, naze wa mochiite mitai mono de wa nai ka?*

*Ningen ga hikutsu no kyokūtan ni tasshireba, zuibun omoi mo yoran fūzoku nado ga shōjiru mono de,—mugaku no kyokūtan, sunawachi mono-goto no rikutsu wo shiran to iu koto no kyokūtan mo, zuibun myō na mono de,—jū-ku-seiki no konnichi de mo, yaban no shakwai ni iri-konde miru to, ki-ō no senzo no koto ya, mirai no shison no koto nado wa, sūkoshi mo omowazu ; tada ichi-dai-kiri ni owaru to iu yō na jinshu ga naka ni wa arimasū. Ina!<sup>14</sup> ki-ō no senzo ya mirai no shison wa, iu made mo nashi. Hanahadashii no*

10. *Shi-sho Go-kyō*, “the Four Books and the Five Canons,” is the name given to the sacred Classics of China, which form the basis of the Chinese polity and of the Confucian morality.

11. Substitute the present tense *iru*, “to be,” for the past *ita* in order to understand this passage. Strange as it may appear, Japanese idiom always employs the past in such contexts ; conf. ¶ 275, p. 176.

tion, and, with a perpetual *why*, search for reasons into every nook and corner of the subject. So long as folks simply acquiesce, without reasoning, in the infallibility of every word that stands written in the Chinese Classics, the world will remain a Chinese Classic world, without a chance of progressing, however many centuries may roll by. Of course, too, it may be quite possible for those to exist thus, whose spirit is satisfied with such a state of things. But when people have once come to a clear understanding of how, if they use the word *why* and search for reasons, they will go on from reason to reason, so that the reasons will first bear blossoms and then fruit, and that more numerous and more intense kinds of happiness will be attained to, will not *why* then become a thing which they will like to try their hand at using?

When human beings reach the *ne plus ultra* of servility, somewhat unexpected manners and customs are the result. Somewhat strange, too, are the results of the *ne plus ultra* of ignorance,—in other words, of a lack of knowledge of the reasons of things. Penetrate into savage societies at this very day, in this nineteenth century of ours, and you will find among them races that show an utter disregard both for departed ancestors and for unborn descendants,—races that live for their own generation only. Nay! what need to talk of departed ancestors and of unborn descendants? Why!

12. Similar remark to the preceding: substitute the present *suru* for the past *shita* in order to understand the clause.

13. *To shite mireba = da ni yotte*, "in consequence of which."

14. A classical word for "nay," used emphatically by contemporary writers in imitation of English idiom.

*ni natte wa, genzai no oya-ko kyōdai no aida-gara ni sūkoshi mo kwankei wo tsūkete, shin-ai suru no, nan no<sup>15</sup>, to iu yō na koto mo naku, tada jibun is-shin ga dō ni ka kō ni ka romei wo tsunagu koto ga dekireba, sore de manzoku shūte iru to iu jinshu mo ma<sup>16</sup> ni wa arimasū.*

*Shokun! inu wo mi-tamae,—inu wo!<sup>17</sup> E! Ikaga de gozaru? Oya-ko-rashiku omowareru wa, chichi wo nomu aida, wazuka bakari no koto de,—chi-banare wo suru to, mohaya tanin,—otto!<sup>18</sup> mattaku taken<sup>19</sup> ni natte shimau de wa nai ka? Shikaraba, ima iu tokoro no yaban-jinshu no gotoki wa, iwayuru<sup>20</sup> “Kin-jū wo saru koto tōkarazu<sup>21</sup>” no renjū de arō. Oya-ko kyōdai yori shūte, shidai ni shin-ai wo rinjin ni oyoboshi, ichi-gun ni oyoboshi, is-shū ni oyobosu no ga aikoku-shin no genso da keredomo,—genzai no oya-ko de sae betsu ni shin-ai sen to iu yō de wa, totemo aikokū-shin nado no arō hazu wa nai.*

*Shikashi Nihon-jin nado wa, shi-awase to sore hodo mugaku de mo naku; shūtagatte sōō ni aikokū-shin mo aru n' da ga,—sude ni aikokū-shin ga aru naraba, kano naze wa iyo-iyō*

15. For *no* thus used enumeratively or to indicate a sort of pause, see ¶ 115, p. 80. *Shin-ai suru no, nan no* is, as literally as possible, “loving or anything-(else-) ing.”

16. *Ma ni wa* = *tama ni wa* or *naka ni wa*, “among the rest.” *Ma* originally meant “space,” “room.”

17. The emphatic repetition of the accusative after the verb is rather common, especially in the mouths of the lower classes.

18. *Otto* is an interjection, which we have very freely rendered by “excuse me.”

there are among the number, when you get to the very lowest of them, races of men who pay not the slightest heed to the ties of kindred, who show no trace of family affection or of anything of that sort, but who are quite contented if, by hook or by crook, they can, each on his own account, scrape together a livelihood.

Gentlemen! just look at the way dogs live. What is it like, let me ask? Is it not true that the fondness between the parent and her young endures but for a brief season, while the puppies are sucking? Wean them, and at once they become strangers—excuse me, strange-curs—to one another. This being so, I take it that such creatures as the savage races just referred to belong to the category described as “not far removed from the birds and beasts.” To begin by parental, filial, and fraternal love, gradually to extend such kindly feelings to neighbours, then to all the people of a district, and next to those of a province is the origin of patriotism. But there can never be any such thing as patriotism in the absence of even the love between living parents and children.

However, we Japanese are fortunately not so ignorant as all that, and accordingly we have a fair share of the patriotic spirit. But having this patriotic spirit, the *why* of which I have spoken becomes all the more indispens-

---

19. *Tanin* and *taken*, lit. “other-person” (or “stranger”) and “other-dog,” make a sort of pun, which we have endeavoured to render in the English version by “strangers” and “strange curs” (!)

20. An exceptional verbal form meaning “what is called,” and derived from *iu*, “to say,” like *arayuru* from *aru* (see foot-note 9, p. 407).

21. This quotation is in the Written Language, where *tōkarazu* is the “negative conclusive present” of the adjective *tōi*, “far,” and is equivalent to the Colloquial *tōku nai*.

*hītsuyō ni natte kuru shidai de,—Shi-sho Go-kyō wo rikutsu nashi ni gaten shīte, Shi-sho Go-kyō inai no yo no naka de owarō to omotte mo, kochira wa kore de manzoku shīte mo, Ō-Bei shoshū wa manzoku sezu ; shidai ni naze wo mochiite, shin-kwairaku wo shōjiru to sureba<sup>22</sup>, yūshō-reppai shizen no ikioi de, betsu ni Ō-Bei-jin ni Nihon wo horobosō to iu kokorozashi nashi to suru mo, hūori-de ni horobite shimau kara, shiyō ga nai. Nihon bakari, hoka ni kuni wa nai to iu koto naraba, go chūmon-dōri<sup>23</sup> Shi-sho Go-kyō inai no yo na naka de itsu made mo irareru keredomo, hoka ni kuni ga takūsan atte wa, sō wa ikazu ; mendo-kūsakeredomo, naze wo mochiite, mono-goto no sensaku wo seneba narimasen.*

22. *To sureba* = "if it should come to pass that."

23. *Go chūmon-dōri*, lit. "according to (your) august orders," here used half-jokingly in the sense of "if you please." This half-polite



able. Even should we, acquiescing unreasoningly in the dicta of the Chinese Classics, think to live on in a Chinese Classic world, the satisfaction with such a state of things would be for ourselves alone. None of the nations of Europe and America will be satisfied with it. They will go on using the word *why*, they will go on inventing new sources of happiness. This granted, there will be no help for it but that Japan must perish naturally, without the necessity for assuming any special intention on the part of foreign nations to destroy her, but by the mere working of the law of the survival of the fittest. If Japan were the only country in the world, then, gentlemen, you might continue forever to please yourselves by living on in a Chinese Classic world. But this plan will not do when there are so many other countries besides ours. Troublesome though it be, we are bound to use the word *why*, and to search to the root of everything.

---

half-joking use of the honorifics is by no means uncommon, and is used to give many a sly tap under cover of an apparently polite style of address.

¶ 461. KENKYŪ NO HANASHI.

(NAKAZAWA IWATA SHI GA DAIGAKU TSŪZOKU  
KŌDANKWAI NI OITE NOBERARETARU  
ENZETSU NO UCHI'.)

*Doitsū-koku no tofu de, Heidelberg to iu tokoro ni, dai-gakkō ga arimashite, soko ni kotoshi hachi-jū-roku ka shūchi ni narareru toshi no yotta sensei ga hitori oraremasū<sup>2</sup>. Kakūshaku<sup>3</sup> taru rōjin de, sono na wo Bunsen to iimashite, sono hito no semmon kara ieba, watakūshi-domo<sup>4</sup> no nakama de arimasu ga,—nenrei no chōyō<sup>5</sup> to, chishiki no tashō kara mōshimasū to, ware-ware no dai-sensei de arimasu ga,—sono hito ga seinen no koro, aru beppin<sup>6</sup> to kon-in no yakūsoku ga dekite, nan-getsu ik-ka ni wa, gozen no jū-ichi-ji goro ni, tera ni oite kon-in no shiki wo okonaō to ilte, yakūsoku wo shimashita ga,—fujin no hō de wa, rippa na yosooi wo shite, “Osoku naru to ikenai” to ilte, jū-ji goro kara tera ni haitte, Bunsen no kuru no wo matte imashita ga,—jū-ichi-ji ni natte mo, jū-ni-ji ni natte mo, san-ji ni natte mo, yoji ni natte mo, Bunsen sensei yatte<sup>7</sup> konai kara,*

1. *Shi* is book language for “Mr.” *Noberaretaru* is book language for *nobereareta*, honorific potential for *nobeta*; conf. ¶ 403, p. 250. *Ni oite* is a somewhat stiff equivalent of *ni*, “in.”—2. *Narareru* is honorific potential for *naru*; *oraremasū* is similarly for *orimasū*. Instead of saying “is eighty-six years old,” Japanese idiom prefers to say “becomes eighty-six years old.”—3. 饜飩, a learned Chinese word for “hale.” The following particle *taru* is a book language form, a contraction of *to aru*, “being (that);” *na* would here be the true Colloquial equivalent. *De* = “being.”—4. A humble term; see top of

## A TALK ABOUT INVESTIGATION.

(EXTRACTED FROM A LECTURE DELIVERED BEFORE THE  
IMPERIAL UNIVERSITY POPULAR LECTURE SOCIETY  
BY MR. NAKAZAWA IWATA.)

At Heidelberg, a town in Germany, there is a university, where lives an old professor now eighty-six or seven years of age. He is a hale old man, and his name is Bunsen. He and I are colleagues, in the sense that we are both specialists in the same field. But the difference of our respective ages and of our talents makes of me his very humble follower.—Well, this old gentleman, in his younger days, had engaged himself to a beautiful girl. It had been settled that the wedding should take place at the church at about eleven o'clock in the morning of a certain day in a certain month. So the bride, anxious not to be late, reached the church about ten in brilliant array, to find, however, that Bunsen had not yet arrived. Eleven o'clock came, twelve o'clock came, three o'clock, four o'clock,—still no sign of the Professor. A

---

p. 49. *Ware-ware*, a little lower down, is humble too. The lecturer and Dr. Bunsen are both chemists.—5. *Chō-yō* = “old young;” hence “age.” *Ta-shō* = “much little,” hence “amount;” conf. ¶ 48, p. 34, for the “synthesis of contradictories,” which these terms exemplify.—6. This word is used half-jokingly. Indeed there is a touch of raillery in all this passage, especially in the bride’s words “*Osoku naru to ikenai*.”—7. A somewhat slangy substitute for the proper verb, which would here be *dete* or *miete*. Conf. *yarakashite*, so often used by the lowest classes as a substitute for all sorts of verbs. The *yatte* just below has its usual sense of “sending.”

*uchi ye hito wo yatte ukagawaseru to, sensei wa doko ye itta ka? inai to iu no de,*<sup>8</sup> *fujin no hō de wa taisō hara wo tatele, sugu uchi ni kaette shimatta to iu koto.*<sup>9</sup>

*Sate Bunsen sensei wa, sono hi no asa kara jikken-shitsu de chiisa na shiken wo hajimete ita ga,—sono shiken ni omoshiromi ga tsuite, jikan no sugiru no ni mo kokorozukazu, yagate tokei wo miru to, gogo no roku-ji de atta kara, ki ga tsuite, odorote, tera ye ilte miru to, fujin no hō wa, okotte kaette shimatta ato de arimashita. Soko de, Bunsen sensei no iwaku*<sup>10</sup> : “*Kon-in to iu mono wa, mendokusai mono da*” *to,—sore-giri sono go wa kon-in wo sezu ni, konnichi de mo kakūshaku taru rōjin de, musai de orimasū.*

<sup>11</sup> *Kore wo mite mo, gakumon no kenkyū no omoshiroi koto wa o wakari ni narimashō.*

8. There is not any intention of quoting words actually used. *Iu* has here little signification. *To iu no de* = “it being the fact that...”—9. *Koto* is here a sort of expletive. *To iu*, “it is said that,” does not require to be represented in the English transla-

N. B. Apropos of these lectures, we take the opportunity to remind students of the fundamental difference between English and Japanese in the matter of the length and complication of sentences, brought about by that system of syntactical “integration,” which we have explained in ¶ 442—4, p. 280 *et seq.* No foreigner will

messenger was sent to the house to make enquiries. Where was he? Nowhere to be seen! Thereupon, home went the bride in a fury.

The fact was that the Professor had instituted some small experiment in his laboratory on the morning of the day in question, and had become so deeply interested in it as to fail to notice the flight of the hours. By and by, on looking at his watch and finding that it was six o'clock in the afternoon, he recollected the situation with dismay, and hurried off to the church to see what could be done. But the bride had already departed in her wrath. Thereupon, the Professor came to the conclusion that marriage was a bother. So he remained unmarried from that day forward, and he still lives on as a hale old man, but wifeless.

This example may suffice to show you the attraction which scientific investigation is capable of exercising.

---

tion.—10. *No iwaku*, lit. "the speech of," is a Classical equivalent for the Colloquial *ga iimashita*.—11. The original wording of this last paragraph has been slightly altered, to suit the purposes of the present work.

---

attain to a good Japanese style, unless he learns how to concatenate his thoughts into long and complicated periods, just as no Japanese will express himself clearly in English unless he learns to be short and simple. The English translation of the above lecture has no less than eighteen sentences. The Japanese original has but five.

¶ 462. TOKUIKU NI TSUITE NO ICHI-AN.<sup>1</sup>

(KATŌ HIROYUKI SHI GA DAI-NIHON KYŌIKU-  
KWAİ DE ENZETSU SARETA<sup>2</sup> UCHI.)

*Yo no naka ni wa, "me-aki sen-nin, mekura sen-nin<sup>3</sup>" to iu koto ga aru. Tsugō ni-sen-nin no uchi, me-aki to mekura ga sen-nin-zutsu aru to iu no de arimasu ga,—watakūshi wa, me-aki to mekura wa totemo hambun-zutsu arō to wa omowanai. Ni-sen-nin no uchi ni, sen ku-hyaku ku-jū shīchi-hachi-nin made wa mekura de, sono ato no ni-san-nin ga me-aki de,—sore mo me-aki ni naren kurai de aru. Sore-hōdo yo no naka ni wa mekura ga ōi. Sore wa hontō no mekura de wa nai. Rigaku tetsūgaku ga mekura na no da. Shin ni gakumon-jō kara ieba, sen ku-hyaku ku-jū shīchi-hachi-nin wa mina mekura de aru. Sore dake ni ōi mekura no yo no naka de areba<sup>4</sup>,*

1. The lecture from which these few pages have been extracted has been reprinted by its learned and eloquent author in pamphlet form, under the title of "*Toku-iku Hōhō An.*" Dr. Katō, in granting the present writer permission to make use of the composition in question, suggested that it would be best to take the text of the pamphlet, as having been touched up, and hence showing a better style. After some consideration, this advice has been disregarded, it seeming more interesting, and also probably more profitable from the point of view of a student of the Colloquial, to print the words exactly as taken down by the short-hand reporter from the accomplished

## A POINT OF MORAL CULTURE.

(EXTRACTED FROM A LECTURE DELIVERED BEFORE  
THE EDUCATIONAL SOCIETY OF JAPAN  
BY DR. KATŌ HIROYUKI.)

---

The proverb tells us that “for every thousand with eyes, there are a thousand without.” That is to say that, out of a total of two thousand persons, there are a thousand who can see and a thousand who cannot. In my opinion, however, the proportion of those who can, to those who cannot, see is by no means equal. Out of every two thousand persons, no less than one thousand nine hundred and ninety-seven or eight are blind, leaving but two or three with sight, while even those two or three cannot see properly. Thus enormous, in this world of ours, is the proportion of blind folks. I do not mean to say that they are blind physically. They are blind

---

speaker's lips, and published in the “Journal of the Educational Society of Japan,” No. 68, and also in the “*Taika Ronshū*,” No. 7, the text of which latter periodical has here been followed. The *an* of *ichi-an* is lit. “an opinion,” hence “a case,” here rendered “a point.”—2. Observe the potential used honorifically.—3. For this proverb, see p. 312, No. 21. Observe, here and elsewhere, how we anglicise the style by turning the phrase personally (“the proverb tells us,” etc.), and conf. ¶ 440, p. 279. If all the sentences were left impersonal as in the Japanese original, the translation would never read like genuine English.—4. The conditional mood here has its original Classical sense of “since,” “when,” or “as,” . . . .,” not “if . . . .;” conf. p. 184.

*mekura wo osamete<sup>5</sup> iku dōgu to iu mono ga nakereba naran. Ni-san-nin no me-aki wo osameru dōgu yori wa, sen ku-hyaku ku-jū shīchi-hachi-nin made aru mekura wo osameru no ga hitsuyō de aru. Sore yue ni, watakūshi wa sen ku-hyaku ku-jū shīchi-hachi-nin no mekura no tame ni hitsuyō de aru kara, sono hō no dōri kara ieba, watakūshi wa shūkyō to iu mono ga taihen sūki ni naru. Doitsu no tetsūgakū-sha Schopenhauer to iu hito no iūta<sup>6</sup> kotoba ni, “Shūkyō wa hotaru no yō na mono<sup>7</sup>. Kurai tokoro de nakereba, hikaru koto ga dekinai<sup>8</sup>” to mōshimashita ga,—watakūshi no kangae ga, ima mōshita tōri ni, yo no naka no ni-sen-nin no uchi, sen ku-hyaku ku-jū shīchi-hachi-nin made wa mekura de aru to sureba<sup>9</sup>, maru de yami no sekai de aru. Yami no sekai de areba, hotaru ga hikaranakereba narimasen.*

*Auguste Comte to iu hito no kotoba ni, “Kono yo no naka no susumu wa, shūkyō-tetsūgaku kara sōzō-tetsūgaku no sekai<sup>10</sup>; sore kara susunde, jikken-tetsūgaku ni naru” to iu koto wo mōshimashita ga,—watakūshi no kangae de wa, shūkyō no sekai wo hanarete shimau koto wa yōi ni dekinai. Ippan no jimmin ga shūkyō no sekai ni iru mono de aru to kangaeru. Sō iu yō ni kangaereba, sunawachi shūkyō to iu mono wa, rigaku ya tetsūgaku no me kara mireba, makoto ni kūri wo*

5. *Osameru*, “to pacify,” “to govern,” hence here “to guide.”—6. *Iūta* is “a westernism,” see p. 163.—7. Supply *da*, “is.”—8. Observe the double negative, used in Japanese to express the sense



scientifically and philosophically. One thousand nine hundred and ninety-seven or eight of them are blind, if regarded from the standpoint of the truly educated. Since, then, this world is one in which the blind so greatly predominate, we need something wherewith to guide them. Far more indispensable than the machinery wherewith to guide the two or three who can see, is that required for the guidance of the one thousand nine hundred and ninety-seven or eight who cannot. Thus does it come about that a consideration of the subject from our present point of view makes me quite a friend to religion, as the thing needed for the guidance of the one thousand nine hundred and ninety-seven or eight who cannot see. The German philosopher Schopenhauer has said: "Religion is like a firefly. It can shine only in dark places." Now, if I am right in thinking, as I said just now, that out of every two thousand persons in the world, no fewer than one thousand nine hundred and ninety-seven or eight cannot see, ours is indeed a world of total darkness. And if it is so dark a world, the light of the fireflies must not be dispensed with.

Auguste Comte has said that the stages of the world's development are first from the theological order of ideas to the metaphysical, and thence on to that of the positive philosophy. But in my opinion it is an infinitely difficult matter for the world to pass out of the theological stage. I think that the mass of mankind are in this theological stage. And to one who thinks thus, religion, though unacceptable,—indeed unworthy of mention,—from the scientific or philosophical standpoint, because dealing

---

which we render by the word "only."—9. *To sureba*="if one assumes that.....," hence "if I am (allowed to be) right in thinking that...."

—10. Supply *ni nari*, correlated with *ni naru* in the next clause.

*toite, toru ni taran, shiga ni kakuru ni taran*<sup>11</sup> *to iu yō na mono de aru keredomo, sono uchi sen ku-hyaku ku-jū shichi-hachi-nin no mekura no tame ni wa makoto ni hitsuyō naru mono. Sore da kara, konnichi ippan no tokuiku to iu mono wa, dō shite mo shūkyō de nakereba, yaku ni tatan. Arigatai to ka, osoroshii to ka iu Kami Sama*<sup>12</sup> *to ka, Hotoke Sama to ka, Fōtei to ka iu Honzon Sama ga atte, sore wo tayori ni shite, kuntō shite iku oshie de nakereba, ippan no gumai na sekai ni wa kiki-me ga nai. Rigaku tetsūgaku wa kōshō na mono da keredomo, kore wa gakūsha-shakwai ni hitsuyō na mono de, sono hoka ni nani ni mo yō wo nasu koto wa dekinai. Sono hoka, ippan no hito ni wa, shūkyō no hō kara deta tokuiku de nakereba, sūkoshi mo yō wo nasan mono de arō to iyo-iyō watakūshi no kangae ja omou.*

*Sore nareba, shūkyō wa dō iu shūkyō ga yokarō to iu mondai ga sono tsugi ni dete kuru. Donna shūkyō wo mochiitaraba, kōnō ga arō ka to iu mondai ga dete kuru ga,—watakūshi wa shūkyō no fūkai tokoro wo shiran. Daitai no seishitsu wa, dōtoku-tetsūgaku kara mireba, shinri ni kanawan mono to minakereba*<sup>13</sup> *naran. Kurwashii koto wa shirimasen kara, dono shūkyō ga yokarō to watakūshi ga kesshite sadameru koto wa dekin. Tada konnichi made no sekai ni kōnō no atta tokoro no ato ni tsuite, jijitsu no ue yori kangaete mireba*<sup>14</sup> *, Yaso-kyō ga ichiban kōseki ga atta yō ni kangaeraruru. Bukkyō no hō wa, ittai no yōsu wo kan-*

---

11. Lit. "not sufficient to place on the teeth," i.e., "unworthy of mention." For the negative *taran*, 1st conj., instead of *tarin*, 3rd conj., see p. 164.—12. *Kami*, though adopted by the Protestant missionaries to denote the Christian God, here has its proper original sense, i.e., it denotes the gods and goddesses of Shintoism. *Fōtei*, lit. "the Supreme Emperor," is here the Christian God. For the sake of making a distinction, we have rendered *Kami* by "a deified hero," that being a fair approach to the status of many of the gods of Shintoism. *Honzon*, ori-

with gratuitous fancies,—religion, I say, is indispensable for the sake of the one thousand nine hundred and ninety-seven or eight who cannot see. For this reason moral culture in general, inculcate it as you will, is of no avail in our day unless associated with religion. No system of training will produce practical results in this universally stupid world of ours, unless it possess, and use as its lever, some object of worship either beneficent or redoubtable, be it a deified hero, a Buddha, or a supreme God. Science and philosophy are sublime things. But they are needed only by the learned world, beyond the limits of which they are powerless. I grow daily more fully convinced that, beyond those limits, among mankind at large, no moral training that does not start from religion is likely to have the least effect.

Supposing this position granted, there next arise the questions :—Which religion is probably the best? Which religion will probably, if adopted, be most fertile in results? In the presence of such questions, I feel my own ignorance of the profounder aspects of religion. Nevertheless, the general character of religion is known to me, and this general character must be pronounced to be in disagreement with truth as deduced from moral philosophy. My ignorance of details incapacitates me altogether from deciding which religion is the best. But

---

ginally a Buddhist term, means lit. “the chiefly revered,” i.e., “the (chief) object of worship.” The many *Sama's* here are slightly ironical.—13. *Miru*, “to see,” here and often elsewhere=“to consider,” “to regard as.”—14. Lit. “If, following after the traces of that which (*tokoro*) has been of effect in the world of till to-day, and looking, one considers from the top of facts, one may think (potential *kangaeraruru* ; also to be rendered “I am inclined to think”) in such wise that Christianity has been of the most deeds.” For *kangaeraruru*, instead of *kangaerareru*, see N.B. to p. 165.

gaete mireba, tetsūgaku made mo haitte iru yō de<sup>15</sup>, fūkai dōri made toite aru. Naka-naka Yaso-kyō nado no yō na asai mono de nai. Yohodo kōshō na mono de arimasū keredomo, shīkashi<sup>16</sup> shūkyō to shīta kōnō de wa<sup>17</sup>, Yaso-kyō hodo no kōnō wa nakarō to kangaemasū. Shīkashi-nagara, mukashi wa Bukkyō mo kōnō ga atta de arimashō<sup>18</sup> ga,—konnichi de wa, kōnō ga usui yō ni kangaeru. Kono Bukkyō no kōnō no usui no wa, shūkyō ga warui no de naku, shūkyō wo tsūkasadoru hito ni jūbun tekītō shīta hito ga takūsan nai tame ni, Bukkyō no kōnō ga nai no ka mo shiremasen<sup>19</sup>. Sore wa dō da ka shirimasen ga,—Yaso-kyō wa konnichi Yōroppa ni jūbun kōnō ga aru. Mottomo, mukashi yori kōnō ga otoroete iru keredomo, konnichi de mo zuibun aru. Yōroppa de wa, jōtō-shakwai de mo Yaso-kyō wo shinzuru<sup>20</sup> hito ga ōi. Yōroppa no kifū ya shisō no dai-bubun wa, Yaso-kyō ga moto ni natte, sō shīte sono kuni no kifū ya shisō ga sore kara umi-dasarete iru. Sore hodo kōnō no aru mono<sup>21</sup>. Shīkashi gakūsha no setsu de wa, “Shūkyō wa kōnō ga nai. Jimmin no kifū ya shisō wo umi-dasu kōnō wa nai mono de aru” to iu ga,—watakūshi wa

15. Lit. “being (de) the appearance that even philosophy is inside.”—

16. *Shīkashi* followed by *keredomo* may seem tautological. Such combinations are, however, not infrequent, though the present writer does not undertake to recommend them to the imitation of foreign students.—

17. Lit. “with regard to its efficacy as being a religion,” *suru* here resembling our verb “to be;” conf. ¶ 356—7, p. 227.—18. *Atta de arimashō* = “it probably is a fact that there was.”—19. According to European notions of logic, the last clause of this sentence is superfluous, because reiterating the ideas of the first, and we should incline to make the sentence end after *tame* with some such words as *takū-*

a practical consideration of the effects produced on the world by various religions down to the present day leads me to look on Christianity as probably the one that has made most proof of efficiency. Buddhism, indeed, considered theoretically and in its totality, with the philosophy which is apparently contained in it and the profoundness of its reasoning, rises far superior to any such shallow doctrines as Christianity has to offer. Buddhism is sublime in the extreme. Nevertheless, I venture to think that its influence as a religious system has been inferior to that of Christianity. No doubt it may have been influential in olden times; but I do not think it has much influence in our own day. Perhaps this insufficiency arises, not from any defect in Buddhism itself, but from a paucity of suitable men among those who direct its affairs. How this may be, I know not. But this I know:—Christianity has enormous influence in Europe at the present day. True, this influence is no longer what it once was, but it is still great. Most Europeans, even those belonging to the upper classes, still believe in Christianity. Christianity is the foundation on which the sentiments, the thoughts of Europeans mostly rest,—the mother by whom those sentiments, those thoughts were given birth to. Thus

---

*san nai tame ka mo shiremasen.* But thus to repeat in a final clause the idea of the first clause (here, *Kono Bukkyō no kōnō no usui no wa*) is quite consonant to Japanese methods of thought and expression. In such cases, either the first clause or the last must be dropped from the English translation. Observe the difference between *ka mo shiremasen* at the end of this sentence, meaning “one cannot know whether,” here freely rendered “perhaps,” and *ka shirimasen* immediately below, meaning “I know not.”—20. *Shinzuru* is slightly bookish for *shinjiru*. Similarly below we find *benzuru* for *benjiru*; conf. ¶ 353, p. 226.—21. Supply *desū*, “it is.”

*sonna chikara no usui mono to wa minai. Shikashi, chikara ga usui to ka, takusan aru to ka iu koto wa, konnichi koko de benzuru koto wa dekimasen kara, okimashite<sup>22</sup>, tada watakushi wa shūkyō wa zuibun chikara no aru mono; sō shite kokumin no kifū ya shisō no ōi naru genso ni natte iru mono to kangaeru. Yōroppa de wa, jōtō-shakwai to iedomo<sup>23</sup>, konnichi seiryoku wo motte iru. Sō iu tokoro no keiben kara<sup>24</sup>, Yaso-kyō ga ichiban kōnō ga<sup>25</sup> aru mono de aru to watakushi wa omou.*

---

22. *Okimashite* = "leaving that aside."—23. *To iedomo* here = *de mo*, "even (in)." This is an idiom borrowed from the Written Language.—24. "(Judging) from the convenience of such things" (*tokoro*).

great has been its influence. It is true that the learned deny this influence, and assert that religion is powerless to produce thoughts and sentiments. But I, for my part, cannot regard it as so powerless a thing. Be this as it may, I cannot at this time and in this place discuss the question as to the degree of power which it may or may not possess. I will, therefore, only advance my personal opinion, which is that religion has considerable power, that it is indeed a prime factor of national sentiment and national thought. Its force is felt in Europe at the present day, even in the upper classes of society. These advantages it is that lead me to regard Christianity as, of all religions, the one that produces the greatest effects.

---

25. *No* would here be more regular, as the phrase is an attributive one; see ¶ 206, p. 141. *Ga* is, however, sometimes exceptionally used in such contexts.

¶ 463. "SHINREI-JŌ NO KYŌGŪ."<sup>1</sup>

(YOKOI TOKIO SHI NO SEKKYŌ  
NO UCHI.)

*Chikagoro Seiyō ni shinkwa-ron ga sakan ni okotte, kono tenchi bambutsu ga deki, kono yo no naka ga deki-agattaru hō-hō wo toki-akashimasuru. Sono setsu ni yotte mireba, kono sekai ni wa hajime wa shigoku tanjun naru seibutsu shika arimasenanda ga,—sore ga tekitō no kyōgū no hataraki wo uke, ima no fūkuzatsu naru kono uruwashiki sekai wo tsūkuri-dashimashita. Kono tekitō no kyōgū to wa, sunawachi shizen-tōta jano<sup>2</sup>, shiyū-tōta jano to iu mono<sup>3</sup> ga arimasū. Yūshō-reppai, tekishu-seizon to iu koto ga arimasū. Subete kore-ra seibutsu no hattatsu, shinkwa ni tekitō naru kyōgū to iu koto wo komaka ni setsumei shitaru mono<sup>4</sup> de arimasū. Ima kono kyōgū no hataraki wa, tada dō-shoku-butsum<sup>5</sup> no nikūtai no ue nomi narazu, mata watakūshi-domo no chishiki no ue ni totte kangaete mo,*

1. Written with the Chinese characters 心靈上の境遇. This sermon was printed in a Christian magazine (now extinct) entitled "Hankyō," or "The Echo." It somewhat approaches the Written Language in its style. Thus we find: in line 2, *agattaru* for *agatta*; lines 4 and 6, *naru* for *na*; line 6, *uruwashiki* for *uruwashii*; line 6 of p. 430, *shishimeta* for *saseta*, etc.; furthermore the constantly recurring use of the indefinite form at the end of clauses, as *deki* in line 2, correlated with *deki-agattaru* in the next clause. Here are (for the benefit of the student's Japanese teacher) the Chinese characters with which the most difficult words in this sermon are written:—*shin-kwaron*, 進化論, "the doctrine of evolution;"; *fūkuzatsu*, 複雜, "complicated;"; *shizen-*



## SPIRITUAL ENVIRONMENT.

(EXTRACT FROM A SERMON BY THE  
REV. YOKOI TOKIO.)

---

Of late years wide credence has been given in Western countries to the doctrine of evolution, which explains the method whereby heaven and earth and all that therein is arose,—the way in which the world was finished. According to this theory, the world at first contained none but the simplest types of life, which, thanks to the action of a suitable environment, resulted in the formation of our present complicated and beautiful world. The suitable environment in question includes such things as natural selection and sexual selection, such facts as the struggle for existence and the survival of the fittest. The theory explains in detail the conditions of environment which are favourable to the development and evolution of living beings. Now, this action of the environment is exercised not only on the bodily frames of animals and plants. It is as clearly to be traced in the develop-

---

*tōta*, 自然淘汰, “natural selection;” *shiyū-tōta*, 雌雄淘汰, “sexual selection;” *yūshō-reppai*, 優勝劣敗, “the struggle for existence” (including the idea of the survival of the fittest); *tekishu-seizon*, 適種生存, “the survival of the fittest;” and, close to the end, *jika-dōchaku*, 自家撞着, “self-confutation.”—2. *Fano* is the Kyōto equivalent of the *dano* explained on p. 80.—3. *Mono* in this sentence is equivalent to *koto* in the next. The author was perhaps led to this somewhat exceptional use of *mono* by an instinctive dislike to the repetition of too many *koto*'s in succession.—4. This *mono* denotes the doctrine of evolution.—5. Short for *dōbutsu shokubutsu*.

*hanahada akiraka ni wakarimasū. Gakūsha to gujin ga dekiru no mo, sono kyōgū ikan ni yotte ōi ni sadamaru koto de, ima koko ni onaji saichi onaji rikiryō wo motte oru kodomo wo totte, hitori wa goku inaka no shimbun wo miru koto mo nai chihō ni oki; mata hitori wa, kore wo totte<sup>6</sup>, bummei no chūshin to iu Tōkyō ni oki, tsui ni daigaku ni irete shūgaku seshimeta naraba, go-nen ka roku-nen no nochi ni wa, kono futari no chishiki-jō hotondo ten-chi no chigai ga dekiru koto de arimasū. (Chūryaku<sup>7</sup>.)*

*Yo no naka no hito ga mōshimasuru ni, watakūshi wa yoi koto wo shūtai to iu kangae ga jūbun ari; watakūshi ni wa zen wo nashūtai to iu negai ga jūbun ari; watakūshi no okonai wo mite mo, watakūshi wa kakubetsu warui koto wo shūte oru to wa omoimasen. Sude ni watakūshi no kokoro ni ryōshin ga atte, watakūshi ni zen wo susume, aku wo imashimemasū kara, sono ryōshin no sashizu wo motte ikeba, betsu ni Seisho wo yomazu, betsu ni inori wo shinakūte mo yoroshi to iu is-shu no kangae ga gozaimasū. Sate kono kangae wa, Nihon nomi ni okonawarete oru chūsai mono ka to iu ni, Seiyō no mottomo bummei naru Doitsu, Igrisu ni oite mo okonowaruru tokoro no mono de aru. Shūkyō wa iranai, sekkyō wo kiku koto wa iranai, Seisho wo yomu koto wa iranai, tada watakūshi no kokoro de warui koto wo shinakereba yoroshii to mōshimasū. Dō de arimashō ka? Koko ni goku chūsai hito-tsubu no shii no mi ga dete kite mōsu ni, “Watakūshi wa, watakūshi no uchi ni kano kōdai naru sora ni sobiyuru shii no ki to naru no chikara wo motte ori, kore to naru keikwaku wo sonaete oru ga yue ni,*

6. Lit. “as for again one, having taken him” (*kore*).—7. This word is

ment of our intelligences. The environment it is, which chiefly determines whether a man shall be learned or ignorant. Take two children of equal intelligence and ability. Set down one of them in a place where there is not so much as the poorest provincial newspaper to be seen. Take the other, and set him in Tōkyō, the centre of enlightenment; let him finish his studies at the university, and in five or six years there will result, in the intellects of these two youths, a difference almost as great as that which divides heaven from earth.....

People declare themselves to be full of good resolves, full of yearnings after virtue, and incapable, on self-examination, of discovering anything particularly reprehensible in their actions. Their hearts, say they, have a good conscience, which recommends virtue to them and restrains them from vice,—a conscience which, if they follow its dictates, obviates all special need of reading the Bible and engaging in prayer. Nor is such a way of thinking an insignificant exception confined to Japan. It is to be found in the most civilised countries of the West,—in Germany and in England. There, too, men are apt to say that there is no use in religion, no use in hearing sermons preached, no use in reading the Bible, and that nothing is required beyond good intentions. Now, my brethren, how would it strike you, if a tiny acorn were to come and tell you that it contained in itself the capacity for growing into one of those gigantic oaks which rear their heads to the skies, and that, as its design was to become such a one, it had no special need of

---

used, as a row of stars or dots is with us, to show that a passage has been omitted. It signifies literally “abbreviating” (i. e., dispensing with), *ryaku*; “the middle,” *chū*.

*betsu ni taiyō ni terasarenai de mo yoroshii, ame ni awazu to mo yoroshii, tsūchi no naka ni ne wo habikorasenai de mo yoroshii*" to iwaba, mina sama wa kore wo motte ika naru koto to nasaruru ka? Sadamele "Kōman ni mo hodo ga aru. Negau dake de wa, mokūteki wa tasserarenai" to ōseraruru ni chigai nai.

Oyoso hito wa, ika naru hito nite mo, toki to shite zen wo nashitai to iu negai wo okosan mono wa arimasen. Ano Ishikawa Goemon<sup>8</sup> mo, issō no uchi ni wa, kanarazu zen wo nashitai to iu nen wo okoshita koto ga aru ni chigai nai. Shikashi kanji ga okotta kara to itte,<sup>9</sup> zennin to wa mōsaremasen. Ware-ware mo, toki to shite wa, hijō ni shinkōshin ga okori, Seisho wo yomazu ni oraren koto ga arimasū; shinja no hito to majiwarazu ni oraren to iu koto ga arimasū. Shikashi kanji ga okotta kara to itte<sup>9</sup>, rippa naru Kami no shinja to wa mōsaremasen. Tada ni kokorozashi dake de wa yaku ni wa tatan; kanji dake de wa mokūteki wa tasseraren. Kore wo yōsei shi, kore wo hattatsu seshimuru ni tekito naru kyōgū ga hanahada hitsuyō de arimasū. Shūkyō wa iranai, Seisho wa iranai to iu hito-bito wa, dare ka to iu ni,—sono hito ga mottomo shinkwa-ron wo tonaete, yoki kyōgū ga nakereba dōbutsu mo shokubutsu mo ningen mo dekinai to iu hito de, gakkō wo omonji, shomotsu mo omonzuru tokoro no hito de arimasū. Kare-ra wa tada dōtoku-jō, shinkō-jō no koto ni kagiri, zenryō naru kyōgū wa iranai to iimasū. Yo no naka ni jika-dōchaku to iu koto ga ōku arimasu ga,—kore yori hanahadashiki osoroshiki jika-dōchaku wa arumai to omoimasū.

---

8. A notorious highwayman of the latter part of the sixteenth century. He suffered the penalty of his innumerable crimes by being boiled to death in a cauldron of oil. The scene of the execution was

being shone on by the sun, no need of being moistened by the rain, no need of spreading its roots into the soil? What would you think of this? Most assuredly you would say that even conceit has its limits, and that the forming of a wish by no means entails reaching the goal.

There are none among the sons of men who do not occasionally form virtuous resolves. Doubtless Ishikawa Goemon himself formed virtuous resolves some time during the course of his life. But good impulses cannot be said to constitute a virtuous man. We ourselves occasionally experience an extraordinary ardour of belief, an extraordinary craving to read the Bible, an irresistible attraction towards the society of believers. But such good impulses cannot be said to constitute us exemplary Christians. A mere intention is of no use. A mere intention will not make us attain to the goal. It is essential that we should be placed in an environment calculated to foster our good intentions and develop them. Who are the men who say that religion and the Bible are useless? They are those self-same ones, who, holding firmly to the doctrine of evolution, and asserting that neither animals, plants, nor human beings can develop without a favourable environment, lay the greatest stress on schools and on book-learning. It is only in matters of faith and morals that they assert the uselessness of a virtuous environment. Numerous as are the instances which the world affords of self-confutation, surely there never was a more extreme, a more terrible instance of self-confutation than this.

---

the dry bed of the river Kamo at Kyōto.—9. For this idiom see ¶ 118, p. 83.

(Mr. Komuro Shigehiro presented a formal "question," calling on the Matsükata Cabinet—that now at the head of affairs—to declare whether it intended to redeem its promise of governing constitutionally in accordance with the national desire, and of purifying the public service. Such were not the appearances that presented themselves to the public eye, but on the contrary, jobbery and corruption everywhere, even to the extent of buying up members of the Diet. He then went on to make a long and violent speech, alleging that this same prime minister, when in office some years ago, had misused his power by interfering in the general elections, and had even caused the burning of houses and the murder of many innocent people. But now His Excellency resorted to subtler means,—to the corrupting influence of gold, to the sale of offices, and the purchase of members. What was the use of Japan's victories in war, if her honour in peace was thus to be sullied by a "trading cabinet," whose millionaire supporters were nothing better than loafers in frock-coats and thieves in tall hats?

When Mr. Komuro had sat down, the proceedings continued as follows :—)

*Kudō Kōkan Kun (hyaku ku-jū shīchi-ban<sup>2</sup>) :—Watakūshi ga Komuro Kun ni taishite shitsumon ga arimasū. Dōzo o kotae wo negaitai. To in mono wa, hōka de nai :—tadaima Komuro Kun no chō-chō iwaruru tokoro ga, watakūshi ga Komuro Kun*

NOTES.—1. This piece is taken from the verbatim report of the proceedings of the Imperial Diet on March 3rd, 1897, printed in the Supplement to the *Kwampō*, or "Official Gazette," of the following day. Of Mr. Komuro's speech we have given only a very brief summary ; but the subsequent debate is reproduced in full. On such occasions, speaking as they do on the spur of the moment, the members fall into almost pure Colloquial. Set speeches, prepared beforehand, are far more

## A SCENE IN THE DIET.

---

\* \* \* \*

\* \* \*

\* \* \* \*

---

Mr. Kudō Kōkan (No. 197) [then rose and said]':—I have a question to address to Mr. Komuro, and should be glad of an answer. What I refer to is simply this :—observing what Mr. Komuro asserts to be going on, as he has just

---

deeply tinged with the influence of the book language, and are proportionately harder of comprehension by foreigners. Motions, addresses, etc., presented in writing, are all in the book language.—2. There are three hundred members in the (Lower House of the) Diet, and to each a number is officially allotted. They sit in the order of their numbers, each at a separate desk. This arrangement of course precludes the local grouping of partisans.

*no sude ni okonau tokoro to mireba,—sore kara kono koto ni tsuite tou koto ga aru.*

*Gichō (Hatoyama Kazuo Kun) :—Kudō Kun ni mōshimasu ga,—shitsumon no bemmei ni taishūte wa, yurushimasen.<sup>4</sup>*

*Kudō Kōkan Kun :—Watakūshi wa Komuro Kun ni tou koto ga arimasū.*

*Komuro Shigehiro Kun (ni-hyaku ku-jū roku-ban) :—Shitsumon ni taisuru shitsumon no tōben wa, itashimasen.*

*Kashiwada Seibun Kun (ni-hyaku ku-jū hachi-ban) : Hon-in wa kinkyū-dōgi ga arimasū.*

*Gichō :—Kudō Kun ni wa, mada hatsugen wa yurushūte arimasen. Shitsumon no bemmei ni taisuru shitsumon wa, yurushimasen.*

*Kudō Kōkan Kun :—Komuro Kun no enzetsu wa, gijō wo kegashīta mono to omoimasū. Sore ni tsuite nobeyō to omou. Kore wo o yurushi nasaran to iu koto wa nai.*

*Gichō :—Dōgi nara, yoroshii. Shitsumon nara, ikemasen.*

*Kudō Kōkan Kun :—Sore nara, kinkyū-dōgi to shūte, . . .*

*Gichō :—Kinkyū-dōgi nara, yoroshii.*

*Kashiwada Seibun Kun :—Gichō! Gichō!*

*Gichō :—Sude ni Kudō Kun ni hatsugen no kenri wo atae-mashīta kara, sono ato ni negaimasū.*

*Kudō Kōkan Kun endan ni noboru :—Watakūshi wa Komuro Kun no enzetsu ni tsuite,—Komuro Kun no enzetsu wa kesshūte sono mama ni shūte okaruru mono ja nai. Yue ni ichi-ō watakūshi wa Komuro Kun no tōben wo ete, watakūshi wa tadachi ni dōgi wo teishutsu shītai to omoimasū. To iu mono wa, hoka de wa nai :*

---

3. Such would seem to be Mr. Kudō's meaning; but he is a bad, obscure speaker. Japanese speeches, more perhaps than any others, suffer from being reported exactly, as oratory is not this nation's forte.



explained to us at great length, I now have something to ask him concerning it.<sup>3</sup>

The President (Mr. Hatoyama Kazuo) :—I must inform Mr. Kudō that I cannot allow one question to be elucidated by another.

Mr. Kudō Kōkan :—I have something to ask Mr. Komuro.

Mr. Komuro Shigehiro (No. 296) :—I will not reply to a question asked about a question.

Mr. Kashiwada Seibun (No. 298) :—I have an urgency motion to propose.

The President :—Mr. Kudō has not yet been given the right to speak. I cannot allow the elucidation of one question by means of another.

Mr. Kudō Kōkan :—I consider Mr. Komuro's speech a disgrace to this House. It is on that I would speak. You cannot refuse me permission to do so.

The President :—It will do as a motion, but not as a question.

Mr. Kudō Kōkan :—Well then, as an urgency motion, . . . .

The President :—If it is an urgency motion, it will do.

Mr. Kashiwada Seibun :—Mr. President ! Mr. President !

The President :—I must ask you to wait, as I have already given Mr. Kudō the right to speak.

Mr. Kudō Kōkan then ascended the rostrum, and spoke as follows :—Referring to Mr. Komuro's speech, that speech of Mr. Komuro's is one which I can by no means let pass unnoticed. For this reason, what I desire is, once for all, to get an answer from him and thereupon to bring in a motion.

Written composition has alone been honoured in the Far-East, while the spoken speech has been left unpruned and unkempt.—4. Before *yurashimaseu*, add *ta no shitsumon wo* in order to make the sense clear.

—kono “*giin baishū, giin baishū*” to *iu koto wa, kōshū no mitomete oru koto de aru to iu koto de aru.*<sup>5</sup> *Iyashiku mo ware-ware wa kono rippō-fu ni talle, giin no ichi-nin to natte oru mono de gozarimasū*<sup>6</sup>. *Giin wo baishū shīta,*—kono koto no tame ni *iu no de wa nai. Baishū serareta mono ga, moshi kono sambyaku-nin no uchi ni ari to suru nara, jitsu ni kono gikwai no shinsei wo midashīta mono de aru. Tadaima no enzetsu to iu mono wa, sude ni kono gikwai—giin no uchi ni baishū serareta mono ga aru, sore wo meigen shītai keredomo, ima koko de wa meigen senu to iu ga gotoki i wo iūta no de aru. Hatashite sono koto ga aru naraba, Komuro Kun ga jūbun ni nanigashi ga baishū serarete, dore-dake no jijitsu ga aru to iu koto wo akiraka ni watakūshi wa uketamawaritai. Nan no nanigashi,*—*nam-ban no nan no nanigashi, kin nani-hodo wo motte, dō iu te-tsuzuki de baishū serareta (taishō),—kore wo uketamawaritai. O kotae aran koto wo kibō itashimasū.* (“*Sonna shitsumon wa muyō*” to *yobu mono ari.*) *Moshi Komuro Kun ga kotaeru naraba, watakūshi wa dōgi wo teishutsu itashimasū. Moshi Komuro Kun ga kono koto wo—sono jitsu wo—iwazu shīte, baishū serareta to iu koto wo iu naraba*<sup>7</sup>, *kono gikwai wo hazukashimeta mono de aru. Yue ni kore wo chōbatsu-in ni fushite, sōtō no shobun aran koto wo kibō suru to iu dōgi wo watakūshi wa teishutsu itashimasū.*

---

5. Signification fairly clear, though the style is slovenly with its repetition of *koto* and *aru*. Lit. “as for the fact of saying ‘member purchase, member purchase,’ it is a fact that he says that it is a fact that the public are noticing it.”—6. The force of *iyashiku mo*, a difficult term conveying the idea of being “trifling” or “temporary,” is here sought to be rendered by “I have the honour.” *Fu* is 府, a “hall” or “place.”—7. *I.e.*, the places they occupy in the Diet; *conf.* Note 2.—8. Lit. “if he

What I refer to is simply this :—he says that the purchase of members of the Diet, on which he continues harping, is a matter of public notoriety. Now, I too have the honour to sit in this legislative hall, and to be numbered among its members. That any one should have purchased members,—that is not the reason for my speaking thus. But that members *should have allowed themselves to be purchased*,—if any such there be thought to be among our three hundred members,—then truly are they creatures who have profaned the sacred character of this assembly. The drift of the speech we have just listened to is more or less this,—that in this assembly, among our members, are men who have been purchased, that the speaker intends to declare this fact plainly, but will not do so now in this place. Well! if such is really the case, I want to hear from Mr. Komuro in clear terms exactly who it is that has been purchased, and to what the circumstances really amount. The names of the members in question, their names together with their numbers<sup>7</sup>, the sums they were purchased for, and the manner in which the transaction was arranged (*loud laughter*),—that is what I want to hear. I desire Mr. Komuro kindly to answer this query. (*A voice : “Such questions are useless.”*) If he replies, I will offer a motion. If, without actually stating it,—without adducing facts,—he leaves the members of the Diet under the imputation of having been purchased, then he has insulted this assembly. I therefore offer a motion that Mr. Komuro be handed over to the Disciplinary Committee, with a request that suitable punishment be meted out to him.

---

says that they have been purchased.” We have rendered the phrase by “if he leaves them under the imputation of having been purchased,” because English usage demands stricter logic and finer distinctions than so poor a speaker as Mr. Kudō has at his command.

*Komuro Shigehiro Kun* :—*Shitsumon no shitsumon ni taishite wa, watakushi wa toben wo itashimasen ga,—ta no dōgi de gozaimasuru nara, uketamawatte mo yoroshii ga,—watakushi wa iken wo nobete, kaku no gotoki koto ga atte wa ikan to iu koto wo seifu ni tadashita ni sugimasen.*

*Kudō Kōkan Kun* :—*Watakushi no dōgi no yuen to iu mono wa, nanigashi ga baishū serareta to iu koto wo meigen suru koto ga dekinai naraba, sono koto ga nai no ni sōi nai. Nai no wo motte, giin ga baishū serareta to iu koto wo iu no wa, kono gikwai wo hazukashimuru mono<sup>9</sup> de aru. Sunawachi, kore ga<sup>10</sup> chōbatsu-iin ni fūsanakūcha naran. Yue ni chōbatsu-iin ni fushite, hatashite kono koto ga aru ka ina ya wo torishirabete, izure baishū serareta mono<sup>11</sup> wa, baishū serareta mono ; baishū serareta mono ga nakereba, hatsugen-ja wo chōbatsu ni fūsanakūcha naran. Yue ni watakushi ga kono dōgi wo teishutsu itashimasū. Negawaku wa, go sansei aran koto wo kibō itashimasū. (“Sansei ! sansei !” to yobu mono ari.)*

*Kashiwada Seibun Kun* :—*Tadaima Kudō Kun no iwareta kinkyū-dōgi wa, ketsu wo o tori ni naru no desū ka ?*

*Gichō* :—*Mochiron, sono tsumori desū.*

*Kashiwada Seibun Kun* :—*Shikaraba, sansei de arimasū.*

*Inoue Kakugorō Kun (ni-hyaku hachi-jū ban)* :—*Kore ga dōgi de aru naraba, ichi-ō tashikamete okimasū. Dōgi no shui wo tashikameru tame ni, hon-in wa hatsugen wo motomemasū.*

9. *Mono* here stands by exception for *koto*. *Conf.* ¶ 54, p. 39.—  
10. This *ga* is curious, for one would have expected *wo* before the transitive verb *fūsuru*. Probably Mr. Kudō had some other end to the sentence in his mind. Here, as elsewhere, one could wish that the

Mr. Komuro Shigehiro :—Though I cannot reply to a question about a question, I may listen to it if it takes the shape of another motion. [I would, however, draw Mr. Kudō's attention to the fact that] what I have done has been simply to express my views, and to warn the government that such conduct was not permissible.

Mr. Kudō Kōkan :—The rationale of my motion is that if Mr. Komuro is unable to give the names of the members alleged to have been purchased, the statement as to their purchase is indubitably contrary to fact. To make an allegation as to the purchase of members in contradiction to the facts, is to insult this assembly,—conduct which must be submitted to the Disciplinary Committee. It must be submitted to the Disciplinary Committee, and the question as to the occurrence of these malpractices must be investigated. If any members have been purchased, then they have been purchased; but if none have been purchased, then the utterer of the libel must be punished. Therefore do I bring forward this motion. I beg that you will be so good as to second it. (*A voice [or voices:] "I second it! I second it!"*)

Mr. Kashiwada Seibun :—Are you going to take a vote on the urgency motion just brought forward by Mr. Kudō?

The President :—Of course that is my intention.

Mr. Kashiwada Seibun :—In that case, I beg to second the motion.

Mr. Inoue Kakugorō (No. 280) :—If this is a motion, there is something I should like first to ascertain. I ask to be allowed to speak, in order to ascertain the sense of the motion.

---

speeches were revised before being sent to the press. *Samawachi* here has the force of a weak "therefore," and is sufficiently indicated by the apposition of the two clauses of the sentence.—II. Here *mono* reverts to its proper material signification, and in this case means "persons."

*Gichō* :—*Yoroshii*.

*Inoue Kakugorō Kun* :—*Tadaima Kudō Kun ga Komuro Shigehiro Kun wo chōbatsu-iin ni fūsuru to iu no de aru ga,—chōbatsu-iin ni fūsuru to iu no wa, dō iu tsumi wo motte chōbatsu-iin ni fūsuru no de aru ka ?*

*Kudō Kōkan Kun* :—*Gikwai wo bari shīta mono de aru kara.*

*Inoue Kakugorō Kun* :—*Yoroshii. Komuro Shigehiro Kun wa, tashika ni san-jū-mei no sanseisha ga atte, shitsumon-sho wo teishutsu shīta mono de aru to omoimasū. Chōbatsu-iin ni fūsuru wa, dare-dake wo chōbatsu-iin ni fūsuru no de arimasū ka ?*

*Kudō Kōkan Kun* :—*Watakūshi wa hatsugen-ja wo—ima itta mono<sup>12</sup> wo—chōbatsu-iin ni fūsuru no de aru,—sunawachi Komuro Shigehiro Kun wo.*

*Inoue Kakugorō Kun* :—*Komuro Kun no tadaima no enzetsu wa, hon-in mo yaya kiki-gurushiku kanjite orimashīta keredomo, kō iu jijitsu ga aru to iu ga, dō de aru ka to iu utagai de aru. Kono giin no uchi ni baishū serareta mono ga aru to iu koto wa, shinbun mo mina sō itte oru. Sō itte oru ga,—are ga hontō desū ka, watakūshi wa dōmo hontō to mo uso to mo wakaran. “Omae wa dorobō da, Kudō Kun wa dorobō da” to iūtara, “Watakūshi wa dorobō ja nai.” Sō darō. Dorobō de aru hazu wa nai. (Kassai.) <sup>14</sup>Kore ga chōbatsu mondai ni natte wa,—ware-ware genron no jiyū wo motte, kono giyō ni shusseki*

12. In Mr. Kudō's peculiar phraseology, *ima itta mono* is equivalent to *ima enzetsu shīta hito*,—no very civil way of referring to another “honourable member.”—13. More lit. “but there is a doubt as to the how of his assertion that such facts exist,” i.e. whether they may not exist after all. The *de* near the close of this sentence may sound queer to many, who would rather expect *ga* in such a context. But *de* is sometimes so used, though scarcely by natives of Tōkyō.—14. This complicated sentence is not only apparently, but really, obscure. The

The President :—All right.

Mr. Inoue Kakugorō :—Mr. Kudō has just spoken to us of handing over Mr. Komuro Shigehiro to the Disciplinary Committee. But what is the offence for which he is to be handed over to that Committee?

Mr. Kudō Kōkan :—For having slandered this assembly.

Mr. Inoue Kakugorō :—Good. Mr. Komuro Shigehiro had, I believe, thirty members to support him when he brought forward his question. Now, exactly whom do you propose to hand over to the Disciplinary Committee?

Mr. Kudō Kōkan : I propose to hand over the utterer of the libel, the man who spoke just now,—I mean Mr. Komuro Shigehiro.

Mr. Inoue Kakugorō :—Mr. Komuro's speech made a more or less unpleasant impression on myself as well. But the question is, what degree of accuracy may there be in his assertion that such facts exist<sup>13</sup>? As for the statement that among our members are men who have been purchased, all the newspapers are saying so. They are all saying so. But is it true? I really cannot make up my mind as to whether it is true or false. If any one were to say, "You are a thief," or "Mr. Kudō is a thief," the reply would be, "I am no thief." No doubt. There is no reason why you should

---

first part of it may best be understood by supplying *komaru* after *natte wa*, and assuming *ware-ware* to begin a new sentence. *Mono ni = mono de aru no ni*. *Kō iu giron* refers to Kudō's contention. *Ware-ware* is the subject of *kanzuru*. *Jiyū ni omoki wo kanzuru* = "to set store on liberty." The *mintō*, or so-called "popular party," is that to which Count Matsūkata and his followers belong. The orator (Inoue) did not originally belong to it:—he (as stated just below) only gave in his adhesion to it, in the hope of obtaining a reform of the press laws.

*shūte oru mono ni, kō iu giron wo dasu no wa, hon-in wa teikoku gikwai no tame, ware-ware jiyū no,—kono genron no jiyū ni mottomo omoki wo kanzuru ga tame ni, nakanzuku mintō, jūrai genron no jiyū wo moppara sakan ni tonae-kitatta kono naikaku wo sansei suru no wa, shimbunshi no hakkō-teishi wo yameru ga tame ni sansei suru no de aru. Hitori jiyū wo tonae-kitatta Kudō Kun mizukara seigen suru nado wa, jitsu ni gailan kiwamaru. Negawaku wa, Kudō Kun,—hon-in wa Kudō Kun ni shūte nozomu :—dōka waga Nihon-koku to iu mono<sup>15</sup>—jimmin ni—kaku made jiyū wo omonjite oru to iu koto wo shirashimeru tame ni, kono gidai wo o hiki ni naru koto wo kibō suru no de arimasū.*

*Kudō Kōkan Kun :—Kesshūte hīku koto wa dekimasen. Inoue Kun no gotoku, harawata no fuhai shūte oru mono to wa chigau no de aru. Kono shitsumon de arimasureba, kotaemasū.*

*Inoue Kakugorō Kun :—Shitsumon itashimasū.*

*Gichō :—Inoue Kun no shitsumon no shui wa ?*

*Inoue Kakugorō Kun :—Shitsumon no shushi wa kayō de arimasū. Kudō Kun wa, jiyū wo omonjite, kore wo o hiki ni naru wake ni wa ikimasen ka ? Kore ga shitsumon desū. (“Muyō ! muyō !” to yobu mono ari. “Yare ! yare !” to yobu mono ari. Gijō sōzen.) Sūkoshi shizuka ni shūte o kiki ni naranai to, wakaranai. Naruhodo, jiyū wa taisetsu na mono de aru . . .*

15. After *mono* supply *ni*, thus putting *Nihon-koku* in apposition with *jimmin* in the next clause. 16. The original Japanese expression



be. (*Applause.*) It is a pity that the question of punishment should have been raised. We bring to this assembly the right of free speech, when, lo and behold! Mr. Kudō springs these questions on us. It is for the sake of the Imperial Diet, for the sake of our liberty of speech—that liberty by which we set more store than on aught else—that I have supported the Popular Party rather than any other, and the Cabinet which had hitherto so strenuously championed the cause of free speech, hoping thereby to put a stop to the suspension of newspapers. That only Mr. Kudō, who had hitherto been preaching liberty, should himself now do such a thing as call out for the punishment of others, is truly the height of sadness. I beg of you, Mr. Kudō!—it is my earnest entreaty to you, Mr. Kudō!—do please withdraw this subject from discussion, in order to show to Japan, to our people, the extent to which we respect liberty. Such is my request to you.

Mr. Kudō Kōkan :—I certainly cannot withdraw it. I am of a different sort from the insincere trimmers<sup>19</sup> like Mr. Inoue. If you have any question to ask me about this, I will answer it.

Mr. Inoue Kakugorō :—I have a question.

The President :—And the purport of Mr. Inoue's question is . . . ?

Mr. Inoue Kakugorō :—The aim of my question is as follows. Could not Mr. Kudō be persuaded to withdraw his motion, out of respect for liberty? That is my question. (*Some voices, "No good! no good!" Other voices, "Go on! go on!" The chamber is in an uproar.*) You won't understand me, if you don't listen a little more quietly. Yes, indeed, liberty is an important thing. . . .

---

is coarser; see Vocabulary.

*Kudō Kōkan Kun* :—*Hiku ka hikanai ka to iu nara, hikanai. Mata go shitsumon ga aru nara . . .*

*Inoue Kakugorō Kun* :—*Mizukara jihaku suru nara, nanzo aete kotoba wo tsuiyashimasen.*<sup>17</sup> *Fiyū wo shiran hito to anata ga iu mono ni, tare ga shitsumon wo suru mono wa nai.*<sup>18</sup>

*Kudō Kōkan Kun* :—*Shitsumon ga nakereba, yoroshii.*

*Gichō.* *Kinkyū-dōgi to mi-tomeru ya ina ya to iu koto ni tsuite, saiketsu shiyō to kangaemasū. Kudō Kun no dōgi wo kinkyū-dōgi to mi-tomuru*<sup>19</sup> *to iu koto ni dōi no shokun no kiritsu wo motomemasū. (Kiritsu-sha shōsū.) Shōsū to mi-tome-masū. (Hakushu okoru.)*

17. This is almost book language. The actual literary idiom would be *Nanzo aete kotoba wo tsuiyasan ya?* an oratorical question which the English version closely follows. For the future in *n*, see ¶ 257, p. 168. For *ya* interrogative, see ¶ 133, p. 93. The use of the Colloquial negative phrase, in lieu of the Classical interrogative, takes all the point out of the expression.—18. *Ni* in this sentence = *no ni*, "whereas,"

Mr. Kudō Kōkan :—If you want to know whether I shall or shall not withdraw, I [may tell you that] I shall not. If you have any other question . . .

Mr. Inoue Kakugorō :—If you yourself confess [that you despise liberty], why should I waste any more words? If you [show by what you] say that you don't know what liberty is, who would think of addressing any questions to you?

Mr. Kudō Kōkan :—If you have no question to put, well and good.

The President :—I intend to take a vote on the question as to whether this is to be considered an urgency motion. I request all those gentlemen who think that Mr. Kudō's motion should be considered an urgency motion to stand up. (*A minority stood up.*) I find there to be a minority. (*Clapping of hands.*)

“since.” The rest of the construction closely resembles that explained in the preceding note. In true book language it would read thus, *Tare ka shitsumon suru mono aran ya?*—19. *Mi-tomuru* here, immediately above *mi-tomeru*, shows how even the same speaker will hesitate between the use of the true Colloquial and the book form; *conf.* N.B. to ¶ 240, p. 165.

## A WORD ABOUT POETRY.

---

¶ 465. With very few exceptions, all the Japanese poetry that is esteemed by the educated is written in the Classical language of a thousand years ago. Even the ditties sung by singing-girls to the twanging of the *samisen* are usually more or less Classical in diction. Hence it is difficult to find verses written in the Colloquial that shall be worthy to place before the student. The following specimens are therefore offered with some diffidence. The chief positive characteristics of Japanese poetry are :

I. Its lines of five syllables and seven syllables. This is the basis on which all the existing varieties of the stanza are raised.

II. Its extreme shortness,—three, four, or five lines constituting an entire poem.

III. The terseness of the style, the poetical sentence often having no verb and being in fact rather an exclamation than an assertion. These liliputian poems remind a European of the sketches in which a Japanese artist will represent a flight of cranes passing before the moon, or a bamboo swaying in the wind, with but half-a-dozen bold touches of the pencil.

The chief negative feature of Japanese poetry is the absence of rhyme and of quantity. Long vowels, diphthongs, and syllables ending in *n* or *m* do indeed count double ; but that is because they were originally pro-

nounced separately, and are still figured separately in the *Kana* writing.

¶ 466. Here is a miniature ode,—what is called a *hokku*,—by the poetess Chiyo, who flourished in the last century :—

- (5) *Asagao ni*  
 (7) *Tsurube torarete,*  
 (5) *Morai-mizu!*

lit. “Having had my well-bucket taken away by the convolvuli,—gift-water!” The meaning is this :—Chiyo, having gone to her well one morning to draw water, found that some tendrils of the convolvulus had twined themselves around the rope. As a poetess and a woman of taste, she could not bring herself to disturb the dainty blossoms. So, leaving her own well to the convolvuli, she went and begged water of a neighbour,—a pretty little vignette, surely, and expressed in five words. Whether the circumstance actually occurred or not, we cannot undertake to say; for Japanese poets are as much given to the invention of apocryphal esthetic incidents, as our own rhymesters of an earlier generation were to the invention of non-existent Chloes and Amelias.

¶ 467. Here is a *hokku* by the most famous of all *hokku*-writers, Bashō, a poet of the latter part of the seventeenth century. It is entitled *Getsu-zen no Hotologisu*, or “The Cuckoo in Front of the Moon,” and is as follows :—

- (5) *Hito-koe wa,*  
 (7) *Tsūki ga naita ka?*  
 (5) *Hotologisu!*

lit. “As for the single note, did the moon sing?—Cuckoo!” The poet means that, startled by the note of the cuckoo,

he looked up in the direction whence it came,—to see, however, no cuckoo, but the brightly shining moon. Could it then be the moon that was the songstress? No, it must be the cuckoo after all.

¶ 468. Japanese poets are fond of jokes, puns, and whimsical notions. The already-mentioned Bashō was riding along a country lane one day, when his groom, who afterwards rose to be the well-known poet Kikaku, espied a red dragon-fly, and cried out in verse

- (5) *Aka-tombo*—  
 (7) *Hane wo tottara,*  
 (5) *Tō-garashi!*

i. e., “Pluck off the wings of a red dragon-fly, and you have a cayenne pepper-pod.” But Bashō reproved him for so cruel a fancy, and corrected the verse thus :

- (5) *Tō-garashi*—  
 (7) *Hane wo tsūkelara;*  
 (5) *Aka-tombo!*

i. e., “Add wings to a cayenne pepper-pod, and you have a red dragon-fly.”

¶ 469. The following *kyōka*, or “comic poem,” of thirty-one syllables, contains a pun on the words *go-bu go-bu*, “five parts and five parts,” i. e., “half and half,” and *gobu-gobu*, an onomatopoeia for the gurgling sound made by a liquid in issuing from a bottle :—

- (5) *Kimi mo nomi,*  
 (7) *Boku mo nomu kara,*  
 (5) *Wari-ai mo*  
 (7) *Go-bu go-bu to tsugi-*  
 (7) *Dasu taru no sake!*

This may mean either : “ Oh ! the liquor from the cask, poured out in equal halves, because, as you are drinking and I too am drinking, proportion must be observed,” or “ Oh ! the liquor from the cask poured out gurgle-gurgle, because, etc.”

¶ 470. The following contains no pun, but has a delicate touch of satire :—

- (5) *Hototogisu*  
 (7) *Fiyū jizai ni*  
 (5) *Kiku sato wa,—*  
 (7) *Saka-ya ni san-ri,*  
 (7) *Tōfu-ya ni ni-ri !*

i. e., “ The village where one may list undisturbedly to the cuckoo’s song is——three leagues from the grog-shop, and two from the bean-curd shop ! ”—Notice in passing that this stanza of thirty-one syllables is the vehicle of the greater portion of the Classical poetry of Japan.

¶ 471. The *dodoitsu* generally consists of three lines of seven syllables and one of five. Take, for instance,

- |                                         |                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (7) <i>Hito wa sūki-zuki.</i>           | { So many men, so many tastes.<br>To blame is clownish. He who<br>is in love is blind, though<br>possessed of eyes. |
| (7) <i>Soshiru wa yabo yo !</i>         |                                                                                                                     |
| (7) <i>Horete iru uchā,<sup>1</sup></i> |                                                                                                                     |
| (5) <i>Aki-mekura.</i>                  |                                                                                                                     |

- |                              |                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (7) <i>Shote wa jōdan,</i>   | { At first 'twas a joke, in the<br>mid-time a duty, but now it is<br>true love on both sides. <sup>2</sup> |
| (7) <i>Nakagora giri de,</i> |                                                                                                            |
| (7) <i>Ima ja tagai no</i>   |                                                                                                            |
| (5) <i>Fitsu to jitsu.</i>   |                                                                                                            |

- |                               |                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (7) <i>Konna kokoro ni</i>    | { You it is who have put my<br>heart in this state. For you<br>to weary of me now is cruel. <sup>3</sup> |
| (7) <i>Shita no mo omae.</i>  |                                                                                                          |
| (7) <i>Ima-sara akite wa,</i> |                                                                                                          |
| (5) <i>Kawaisō.</i>           |                                                                                                          |

1. For *uchi wa*. Such contracted forms in *a* are common in the popular poetry. In the next poem we find *nakagora* for *nakagoro wa*.

¶ 472. Occasionally the *dodoitsu* has five lines, thus :—

- |                                        |                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (5) “ <i>Kono hana wo</i>              | { Even a board stuck up and<br>inscribed with the words “ It is<br>strictly prohibited to pluck these<br>blossoms ” is useless as against<br>the wind, which cannot read. |
| (7) <i>Kataku oru-na!</i> ” <i>to</i>  |                                                                                                                                                                           |
| (7) <i>Iu Tate-fuda mo,</i>            |                                                                                                                                                                           |
| (7) <i>Yomenu kaze ni wa</i>           |                                                                                                                                                                           |
| (5) <i>Zehi mo nashi.</i> <sup>5</sup> |                                                                                                                                                                           |

¶ 473. We will end up by a longer poem of a form called *Sendai-bushi*, which, though containing two or three Book Language forms, is otherwise easy. It is put into the mouth of one who was exiled to a small island beyond the stormy reach of sea called the Genkai-nada, to the north-west of Kyūshū :—

- |                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (7) <i>Tori mo kosanai</i>                   | { I care not for myself, who am<br>sent across the Genkai Sea<br>over which even the birds do<br>not pass. But the wife and<br>children who have remained<br>behind,—how may they be<br>spending the months and days? |
| (7) <i>Genkai-nada wo</i>                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (8) <i>Yarareru kono mi wa,</i> <sup>6</sup> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (5) <i>Ilowanedo,</i> —                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (7) <i>Ato ni nokorishi</i> <sup>7</sup>     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (5) <i>Tsuma ya ko wa,</i>                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (7) <i>Dō shūe tsūki-hi wo</i>               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (5) <i>Okuru yara</i> <sup>8</sup> ?         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

2. It is to be understood that, though no longer enamoured of his choice, the lover had remained faithful to her through a feeling of honour,—a feeling which was rewarded by the eventual growth of solid mutual affection.—3. In the little book from which this verse is taken, there is, opposite the lines, a picture of a girl weeping and stretching out imploring hands to a man who is turning his back on her.—4. Lit. “positively break not!” *kataku* being equivalent to *kesshite*.—5. Equivalent to *shūkata ga nai*.—6. This line has eight syllables instead of seven, by a poetical license.—7. *Nokorishi* is Classical for *nokotta*.—8. *Yara* comes from Classical *ya aran*, which is equivalent to the Colloquial *de arō ka?*



## ANGLO-JAPANESE VOCABULARY

OF

OVER 1700 USEFUL WORDS.

(Remember that this is only a vocabulary, not a dictionary. The fundamental differences of conception and expression which separate English idiom from Japanese, render it an impossible task to assign equivalents that shall be satisfactory in all contexts. The student is accordingly referred for details to Messrs. Satow and Ishibashi's excellent little "English-Japanese Dictionary of the Spoken Language.")

## A

- abdomen, *hara*.  
 able (can), *dekiru*.  
 about (approximately), *kurai* (*gu-rai*), *hodo*.  
 above, *no ue*.  
 absent (to be), *rusu da*, *inai*.  
 absurd, *tondemonai*, *bakarashii*.  
 according to, *ni yotte*.  
 account (bill), *kanjō*.  
 ache (to), *itamu*.  
 across, *no mukō ni*.  
 actor, *yakūsha*.  
 add (to), *kuwaeru*, *awasaru*.  
 address (written), *tokoro-gaki*, *uwagaki* (on a letter).  
 adopted son, *yōshi*.  
 advantage, *ricki*, *toku*.  
 advertisement, *kōkoku* (in a newspaper); *hiki-fuda*.  
 afraid, *kowai*.  
 after, *no nochi ni*.  
 afternoon, *hiru-sugi*.  
 afterwards, *nochi ni*.  
 again, *mata*.  
 against, no satisf. equiv.  
 ago, *mae*.  
 air (atmosphere), *kūki*.  
 alive (to be), *ikite iru*.  
 all, *nina*, *nokorazu*.  
 allow (to), *yurusu*.  
 almanac, *koyomi*.  
 alone, *hitori*.  
 along, no satisf. equiv.  
 already, *mohaya*, *sude ni*.  
 also, *yahari*, *mo*.  
 always, *itsudemo*.  
 America, *Amerika*, *Beikoku* (learned style).  
 among, *no uchi ni*.  
 amount (whole), *sō-daka*, *tsugō*.  
 amuse oneself (to), *asobu*.  
 amusing, *omoshiroi*.  
 ancestor, *senzo*.  
 anchor, *ikari*.  
 and, see p. 242.  
 angry (to be), *hara wo tateru*, *rip-puku suru* (learned).  
 animal (quadruped), *kedamono*.  
 another, *mō hitotsū*, *hoka no*.  
 answer, *henji*, *hentō*.  
 answer (to), *hentō suru*, *kotaeru*.  
 answer for (to), *uke-au*.  
 ant, *ari*.  
 anxious (to be), *shimpai suru*.  
 any body, *dare de mo*.  
 „ how, *dō de mo*.  
 „ thing, *nani de mo*.  
 „ time, *itsu de mo*.  
 „ where, *doko de mo*.  
 apple, *ringo*.  
 apricot, *anzu*.  
 April, *shi-gwatsu*.  
 arm (of body), *te*, *ude*.

arm (weapon), *buki*.  
 armour, *yoroi*.  
 army, *rikugun*.  
 around, *no mawari ni*.  
 arrive (to), *tōchaku suru*.  
 art, (fine) *bijutsu*.  
 artizan, *shokunin*.  
 as, see pp. 70, 184, 243.  
 ashamed (to be), *haji wo kaku*.  
 ashes, *hai*.  
 ask (to), *kiku* (lit. to hear); *tau*.  
 at, *ni*.  
 attention (to pay), *ki wo tsūkeru*.  
 auction, *seri-uri*.  
 August, *hachi-gwatsu*  
 aunt, *oba*.  
 autumn, *aki*.  
 average, *heikin*.  
 away, no satisf. equiv.  
 awkward, *heta (na)*.  
 azalea, *tsutsuji, satsūki*.

## B

baby, *akamō*.  
 back (of body), *senaka*.  
 bad, *warui*.  
 bag, *fūkuro*.  
 baggage, *nimotsu*.  
 bake (to), *yaku*.  
 baker, *pan-ya*.  
 ball (for throwing, shooting, etc.),  
*tama, mari*.  
 bamboo, *take*.  
 bamboo grass, *sasa*.  
 band (of music), *gakūtai*.  
 banjo, *samisen, shamisen*.  
 bank (for money), *ginkō*.  
 bank-note, *ginkō-shihei*.  
 bankrupt (to become), *shindai-*  
*kagiri ni naru*.  
 baptism, *senrei*.  
 bargain (to), *negiru*: bargain-  
 money, *te-tsūke-kin*.  
 bark (of a tree), *kawa*.  
 bark (to), *hoeru*.  
 barley, *ōmugi*.  
 barometer, *sci-u-kei*.  
 bat (animal), *kōmori*.  
 bath, *furo*.

bay, *iri-umi, wan*.  
 be, *aru*; but see p. 221.  
 beach (sea-), *hamabe, umibe*.  
 beans, *mame*.  
 bear (quadruped), *kuma*.  
 bear (to), *koraeru*.  
 heard, *hige*.  
 beat (to), *butsu, utsu* (more pol-  
 ished).  
 beautiful, *utsūkushii, kirei (na),*  
*migoto (na)*.  
 because, *kara*.  
 become (to), *naru*.  
 bed, *nedai, nedoko*.  
 bed-clothes, *yagu, fūton*.  
 bedroom, *nema, nebeya*.  
 bee, *hachi*.  
 beef, *ushi, gyūniku*.  
 beer, *biiru* (from English).  
 before, *no mae ni, saki*.  
 beggar, *kojiki*.  
 begin (intrans.), *hajimaru*.  
 begin (trans.), *hajimeru*.  
 behind, *no ushiro ni, no ura ni*.  
 believe (to), *shinjiru, omou*.  
 believer, *shinja*.  
 bell, *kane*.  
 belt, *obi*.  
 bend (intrans.), *magaru*.  
 bend (trans.), *mageru*.  
 beneath, *no shita ni*.  
 berry, *ichigo*.  
 besides, *no hoka ni*.  
 between, *o aida ni*.  
 beyond, *no saki ni, no mukō ni*.  
 Bible, *Seisho*.  
 big, *ōkii, ōki (na)*.  
 bill (at a hotel, etc.), *kanjō*.  
 bill of exchange, *kawase-tegata*.  
 bill of fare, *kondate*.  
 bird, *tori*.  
 bit (little), *sūkoshi, kire, kake*.  
 bite (to), *kui-tsūku, kamu*.  
 bitter, *nigai*.  
 black, *kuroi*.  
 blind, *mekura (no)*.  
 blister, *hatsubo*.  
 blood, *chi*.  
 blotting-paper, *oshi-gami*.  
 blow (to), *fūku*.

blue, *sora-iro* (*no*), *ai*, *asagi*, *aoi*.  
 boat, *fune*; *kobune*.  
 body, *karada*.  
 boil (to...food), *niru*.  
 boil (to...water), *wakasu*.  
 boiling water, *ni-tatta yu*.  
 bore, *hono*.  
 book, *hon*, *shomotsu*.  
 hook-keeping, *boki*.  
 bookseller, *hon-ya*.  
 boot, *kutsu*.  
 born (to be), *umareru*.  
 borrow (to), *kariru*.  
 both, *ryōhō*, *dore mo*.  
 bothered (to be), *komaru*.  
 bottle, *tokkuri*.  
 bottom, *shita* (*no hō*).  
 bow (to), *o jigū wo suru*.  
 bow and arrows, *yumi-ya*.  
 box, *hako*.  
 boy, *otoko no ko*, *musūko*.  
 branch, *eda*.  
 brass, *shinichū*.  
 brazier, *hibachi*.  
 bread, *pan*.  
 break (intrans.), *oreru*, *kowareru*.  
 break (trans.), *oru*, *kowasu*.  
 breakfast, *asa-han*.  
 bribe, *mainai*, *wairo*.  
 brick, *renga*.  
 bride, (*hana-yome*).  
 bridegroom, (*hana-muko*).  
 bridge, *hashi*.  
 bridle, *tazuma*.  
 bring (a person), *tsurete kuru*.  
 bring (a thing), *motte kuru*.  
 broad, *hiro*.  
 broker, *nakagai*.  
 bronze, *karakane*.  
 brother (elder), *ani*. } but see  
 brother (younger), *otōto*. } p. 256.  
 brown, *akai*, *kuri-iro* (*no*).  
 Buddhism, *Buppō*, *Bukkyō*.  
 build (to), *tateru*.  
 building (a), *tate-mono*.  
 business, *yō*, *yōmuki*, *shōbai*.  
 busy, *isogashii*.  
 but, see pp. 242-3.  
 butcher, *niku-ya*.  
 butter, *bata* (from English).

butterfly, *chō*, *chōchō*.  
 button, *botan* (from English).  
 buy (to), *kau*.  
 by, *ni*, *de*.

## C

cabin (on board ship), *heya*.  
 cabinet (furniture), *tansu*.  
 cake, *kwashi*.  
 calculate (to), *kanjō suru*.  
 call (to), *yobu*.  
 call (= to rouse), *okosu*.  
 camellia, *tsubaki*.  
 can, *dekiru*: see also pp. 201-3.  
 canal, *hori*.  
 candle, *rōsoku*.  
 cannon, *taihō*.  
 cape, *misaki*.  
 capital (city), *miyako*.  
 capital (funds), *motode*, *shūhon*.  
 captain (merchant), *senchō*; (naval),  
*kwanchō*; (army), *tai-i*.  
 card (playing), *karuta* (from the  
 Spanish *carta*).  
 card (visiting), *nafuda*, *mcishi*.  
 care (to take), *ki wo tsūkeru*.  
 cargo, *tsumi-ni*.  
 carpenter, *daiku*.  
 carpet, *shiki-mono*.  
 carriage, *basha*.  
 carrot, *ninjin*.  
 carry, (to), *hakobu*.  
 cash, (ready money) *genkin*.  
 castle, *shiro*.  
 castor-oil, *himashi no abura*.  
 cat, *neko*.  
 catch (to), *tsūkamaeru*.  
 caterpillar, *komushi*.  
 Catholicism (Roman), *Tenshū-kyō*.  
 cause, *wake*, *gen-in*.  
 cave, (*hora-ana*).  
 ceiling, *tenjō*.  
 centipede, *mukade*.  
 certain, *tashika* (*na*).  
 certainly (of course), *mochiron*.  
 certificate, *shōsho*.  
 chain, *kūsari*.  
 chair, *isu*.  
 chairman, *kwaiichō*, *gichō*.

change (a), *kawari*, *henkwa*.  
 change (intrans. verb), *kawaru*.  
 change (trans. verb), *kaeru*, *tori-kaeru*.  
 change (money), *tsuri*.  
 character (Chinese), *ji*, *moji*.  
 character (nature), *seishitsu*.  
 charcoal, *sumi*.  
 cheap, *yasui*.  
 cheat (to), *damasu*.  
 cheeks, *hō*, *hōpeta*.  
 cheque (bank), *kogitte*.  
 cherry-tree, *sakura*.  
 chest (breast), *mune*.  
 chicken, *niwa-tori*.  
 child, *ko*, *kodomo*.  
 chin, *ago*.  
 China, *Shina*, *Kara*, *Nankin* (vulg.).  
 cholera, *korera-byō* (from English).  
 choose (to), *erabu*.  
 chopsticks, *hashi*.  
 chrysanthemum, *kiku*.  
 cigar, *ha-maki* (*tabako*).  
 cigarette, *kami-maki-tabako*.  
 circumstance, *baai*, *koto*, *kotogara*.  
 civilisation, *bummei*, *kaikwa*.  
 class (1st), *jōtō*.  
 „ (2nd), *chūtō*.  
 „ (3rd), *katō*.  
 clean, *kirei* (*na*).  
 clever, *rikō* (*na*).  
 climb (to), *noboru*.  
 clock, *tokei*.  
 cloth (woollen), *rasha*.  
 clothes, *kimono*, *ifuku*.  
 cloud, *kumo*.  
 club, *kurabu* (from English).  
 coal, *sekitan*.  
 coat, *uwagi*.  
 cocks and hens, *niwa-tori*.  
 cod-fish, *tara*.  
 coffee, *kōhi*, *kafe* (from the English or French word).  
 cold (to the touch), *tsumetai*.  
 cold (of the weather), *samui*.  
 cold (to catch), *kaze wo hiku*.  
 collar, *eri*; dog—, *kubi-za*.  
 collect (intrans. verb), *atsumaru*, *tsumaru*.  
 collect (trans. verb), *atsumeru*, *yoseru*.

college, *gakkō*.  
 colloquial, *tsūzoku*.  
 colonel, *taisa*.  
 colour, *iro*.  
 comb, *kūshi*.  
 come (to), *kuru*; see p. 158 and p. 193.  
 come in (to), *hairu*.  
 commission (brokerage), *kōsen*.  
 confusion, *konzatsu*, *ō-sawagi*.  
 conjuror, *tezuma-tsūkai*.  
 consent (to), *shōchi suru*.  
 consul, *ryōji*.  
 consulate, *ryōji-kwan*.  
 consult (to), *sōdan suru*.  
 contained (to be), *haitte iru*.  
 contented (to be), *manzoku suru*.  
 convenient, *benri* (*na*), *tsugō no yoi*.  
 cool, *suzushii*.  
 coolie, *ninsoku*.  
 copper, *akagane*.  
 corkscrew, *sen-nuki*.  
 corn (callosity), *tako*.  
 corn (Indian), *tōmorokoshi*.  
 corn (wheat), *mugi*, *ko-mugi*.  
 corner, *kado*.  
 corpse, *shūgi*.  
 cost (how much does it?), *ikura?*  
 cotton, *momu*.  
 cough (to), *seki ga deru*.  
 count (noble), *hakū* (*-shaku*).  
 count (to), *kazoeru*.  
 country (not the town), *inaka*.  
 country (native), *waga kuni*, *hon-goku*.  
 course (of), *mochiron*, *moto yori*.  
 cow, (*uc*-) *ushi*.  
 crab, *kani*.  
 crape, *chirimu*.  
 credit, no satis. equiv.  
 creditor, *kashi-nushi*.  
 crooked (to be), *magatte iru*.  
 cross (a mountain), *kosu*.  
 cross (a river), *wataru*.  
 crow (a), *karasu*.  
 crowd, *ōzei*.  
 cry (to), *naku*.  
 cryptomeria, *sugi*.  
 cuckoo, *hototogisu*.  
 cucumber, *ki-uri*.

cup, *chawan*.  
 cupboard, *todana*.  
 curio, *furu-dōgu*.  
 curio-dealer, *dōgu-ya*.  
 curtain, *mado-kake*.  
 cushion (to sit on), *zabuton*.  
 custom, *fūzoku*, *shī-kitari*.  
 customer, *tokui*, *kyaku*.  
 custom-house, *zeikwan*.  
 cut (to), *kiru*.

## D

damp, *shimeppoi*.  
 dance (to), *odoru*.  
 dangerous, *abunai*, *kenmon (na)*.  
 dare (to), no satsif. equiv.  
 dark, *kurai*.  
 date, *tsūki-hi*, *gwappi*, *hizuke*.  
 daughter, *mūsume*; but see p. 256.  
 daughter-in-law, *yome*.  
 dawn, *yo-ake*.  
 day, *hi*; conf. p. 117.  
 day after to-morrow, *myōgonichi*,  
*asatte* (less polite).  
 day before yesterday, *issakujitsu*,  
*ototoi* (less polite).  
 day-time, *hiru*.  
 dead (to be), *shinde iru*.  
 deaf, *tsunbō (no)*.  
 dear (in price), *takai*.  
 debt, *shakkin*.  
 debtor, *kari-nushi*.  
 December, *jū-ni-gwatsu*.  
 decide (to), *kimeru*, *kettei suru*.  
 deck (of a vessel), *kampan*.  
 deep, *fūkai*.  
 deer, *shika*.  
 dentist, *ha-isha*.  
 depend (to), *yoru*, *kwankai suru*.  
 devil, *oni*.  
 dew, *tsuyu*.  
 diarrhoea (to have), *hara ga kudaru*.  
 dictionary, *jibiki*, *jisho*.  
 die (to), *shinuru*.  
 different, *betsu (no)*, *chigatta*.  
 difficult, *muzukashii*.  
 dig (to), *horu*.  
 dimensions, *sumpō*.  
 dining-room, *shokuma*, *shokudō*.

dinner (late), *yūshoku*, *bam-meshi*.  
 dirty, *kitanai*, *kitanarashii*.  
 dirty (to), *yogosu*, *dainashi ni*  
*suru*.  
 disappear (to), *mienuku naru*.  
 discount, *wari-bike*.  
 disease, *byōki*, *yamai*.  
 dish (large plate), *ōzara*.  
 dislike (to), *kirau*.  
 dismiss (to), *hima wo yaru*.  
 distance, *nichi-nori*, *risū*.  
 distant, *tōi*, *empō (na)*.  
 ditch, *dobu*.  
 do (to), *suru*, *itasu*, *nasu*.  
 doctor, *isha*.  
 dog, *inu*.  
 door, *to*; next—, *tonari*.  
 doubt (a), *utagai*, *ginen*.  
 doubt (to) *utagai*, *fūshin ni omou*.  
 down, *shita (ye)*.  
 downhill (to go), *kudaru*.  
 downstairs, *shita*.  
 draft (bill of exchange), *karwaise-*  
*tegata*.  
 dragon, *ryō*, *tatsu*.  
 draught (of wind), *sūkima-kaze*.  
 drawer, *hiki-dashi*.  
 drawers (garments), *shita-zubon*.  
 drawing-room, *kyakuma*.  
 dream (to), *yume wo miru*.  
 dreary, *sabishii*.  
 drink (to), *nomu*.  
 drive (in a carriage), *noru*.  
 drive away (trans.), *oi-yaru*, *harau*.  
 driver, *gyōsha*.  
 drop (a), *shizuku*, *teki*.  
 drop (intrans. verb), *ochiru*.  
 drop (trans. verb), *otosu*.  
 dry (to.....trans.), *hosu*.  
 dry (to be), *karwaite iru*.  
 duck, *ahiru*.  
 duke, *kō(-shaku)*.  
 dull, (of weather), *uttōshii*, *kumotta*.  
 dust (flying), *hokori*.  
 dust (on things), *goni*.  
 duster, *zōkin*.  
 Dutch, *Oranda no*.  
 duty (obligation), *gimu*.  
 duty (tariff), *zei*.  
 dye (to), *someru*.

## E

ear, *mimi*.  
 early, *hayai*.  
 earth, *tsūchi*.  
 earthquake, *jishin*.  
 east, *higashi*.  
 easy, *yasashii, zōsa mo nai*.  
 eat (to), *taberu*; but see p. 251.  
 eel, *umagi*.  
 egg, *tamago*.  
 eight, *yatsu*; but see p. 101.  
 eighteen, *jū-hachi*.  
 eighty, *hachi-jū*.  
 either ..... or, see p. 243.  
 elbow, *hiji*.  
 eleven, *jū-ichi*.  
 embankment, *dote*.  
 embroidery, *nuimono*.  
 emperor, *tenshi, tennō, kōtei*.  
 empress (consort), *kisaki, kōgō*.  
 empty, *kara (na)*.  
 end, *shimai, owari*.  
 enemy, *kalaki, teki*.  
 engage (to), *yatou, tanomu* (more polite).  
 engineer, *kikwanshi*.  
 England, *Igirisu, Eikoku*.  
 English (language), *Igirisu no kotoba, Eigo*.  
 enough (to be), *tariru*.  
 envelope, *jō-bukuro*.  
 estimate (written), *tsumori-gaki*.  
 et-cetera, *nado, tō*.  
 eucharist, *seibansan, shu no bansan*.  
 Europe, *Yōroppa, Seiyō*.  
 even (smooth), *tsura (na)*.  
 even (adverb), *sae, sura, de mo*.  
 evening, *yūgata, ban*.  
 ever (at any time), no satisf. equiv.  
 every body, *dare de mo*.  
 every day, *mainichi*.  
 every time, *maido*.  
 everywhere, *doko de mo, hōbō*.  
 examination (school), *shiken*: to pass an examination, *shiken wo ukeru*.  
 examine (to investigate), *shiraberu, tadasu, aratameru*.

example (for), *tatoeba*.  
 except, *no hoka ni*.  
 exchange (to) *tori-kaeru*.  
 excuse (please.....me), *gomen nasai*.  
 excuse (to ..... oneself), *ii-wake wo iu, kotowaru*.  
 exhibition, *hakurankwai*.  
 expense, *nyūhi, nyūyō*.  
 explain (to), *toki-akasu*.  
 export (to), *yushutsu suru*.  
 eye, *me*:—of needle, *medo*.

## F

face, *kao*.  
 fail (to), *sokonau, hazureru*.  
 fail (without), *machigai naku, kitto*.  
 faint, (to), *me wo mawasu, kizetsu suru*.  
 fair (a), *ichi, emichi*.  
 fall (to), *ochiru*.  
 false, *uso (no), hontō de nai*.  
 famous, *nadakai*.  
 fan (that does not shut), *uchiwa*.  
 fan (that opens and shuts), *ōgi, sensu*.  
 far, *tōi, empō (na)*.  
 farmer, *hyakūshō*.  
 fashion, *ryūkō, hayari*.  
 fast, (quick), *hayai*.  
 fat, (to be), *fūtotte iru*.  
 father, *chichi*; but see pp. 256-7.  
 father-in-law, *shūto*.  
 feast, *gochisō*.  
 feather, *hane*.  
 February, *ni-gwatsu*.  
 feel (to), *kanjiru, oboeru*.  
 female, *mesu*.  
 fern, *shida*.  
 ferry, *funa-watashi*.  
 ferry-boat, *watashi-bune*.  
 festival, *matsuri*.  
 fetch, (to), *totte kuru*.  
 fever, *netsu*.  
 few, *sūkunai*; see p. 274.  
 field (rice), *ta*.  
 field (vegetable,) *hatake, hata*.  
 fifteen, *jū-go*.  
 fifty, *go-jū*.  
 fig, *ichijiku*.

fill (to) *ippai ni suru*.  
 find (to), *mi-dasu*, *mi-ataru*, *mi-tsūkeru*.  
 fine (good), *yoi*, *rippa (na)*.  
 finger, *yubi (vulg. ibi)*.  
 finger-bowl, *kūchi-yusugi*.  
 finish (to), *shimau*.  
 fire (conflagration), *kwaji*.  
 fire (flame), *hi*.  
 fire-wood, *maki*.  
 first, *dai-ichi*, *hajime no*.  
 fish (alive), *uwo*.  
 fish (used as food), *sakana*.  
 fish (to), *uwo wo tsuru*; (with a net), *ami wo utsu*.  
 five, *itsūtsu*; but see p. 101.  
 flag, *hata*.  
 flame, *honō*, *hi*.  
 flat, *hirattai*, *taira (na)*.  
 flea, *nomi*.  
 flesh, *niku*.  
 floor, *yuka*.  
 flour, *kona*, *udonko*.  
 flow (to) *nagareru*.  
 flower, *hana*.  
 flower-bed, *kwadan*.  
 fly (insect), *hai*.  
 fly (to), *tobu*.  
 follow (to), *tsuite iku*.  
 food, *tabemono*, *shokumotsu*.  
 fool, *baka*.  
 foot, *ashi*.  
 foot-warmer, *yu-tampo*.  
 for, *no tame ni*.  
 forbid (to), *kinjiru*.  
 forehead, *hitai*.  
 foreign, *gwaikoku (no)*.  
 foreign (article), *haku ai-hin*.  
 foreigner, *gwaikokujin*, *ijin*.  
 forest, *hayashi*, *mori*, *yama* (properly "mountain").  
 forget (to), *wasureru*.  
 forgive (to), *yurusu*.  
 fork (eating), *nikū-sashi*.  
 forty, *shi-jū*.  
 four, *yotsu*, but see p. 101.  
 fourteen, *jū-shi*.  
 fowl, *tori*.  
 fox, *kitsune*.  
 France, *Fūransu*, *Futsūkoku*.

free, *jiyū (na)*.  
 freight (money for), *unchin*.  
 fresh (cool), *suzushii*.  
 fresh (new), *atarashii*, *shinki na*.  
 Friday, *kin-yōbi*.  
 friend, *tomodachi*, *hōyū*.  
 frightful, *osoroshii*.  
 frog, *kaeru*.  
 from, *kara*, *yeri*.  
 front, *omote*.  
 fruit (for eating), *misu-gwashi*.  
 fruit (on a tree), *(ki no) mi*.  
 full, *ippai (na)*.  
 funeral, *tomurai*.  
 funny, *omoshiroi*, *okashii*.  
 furniture, *dōgu*, *kazai*.

## G

gain (to), *mōkeru*.  
 gambling, *bakūchi*.  
 game, *asobi*.  
 garden, *niwa*.  
 gardener, *uchi-ya*.  
 gate, *mon*.  
 general (usual), *ippan no*, *futsū no*.  
 general (full), *taishō*; (lieut.-) *chūjō*, (major-), *shōshō*.  
 Germany, *Doitsu*.  
 get (to ..... down), *oriru*.  
 get (given to one), *morau*.  
 get in, *hairu*.  
 get off, no satisf. equiv.  
 get out, *deru*.  
 get up (rise), *okiru*.  
 ghost, *bakemono*, *yūrei*, *o bake*.  
 girl, *onna no ko*, *musūme*.  
 give (to), *yaru*, but see p. 251.  
 give away, *yatte shimau*.  
 give back, *kaesu*.  
 give in (yield), *makeru*.  
 give up (leave off), *yesu*.  
 glad, *ureshii*.  
 glass (a), *koppu*.  
 glass (the material), *giyaman*.  
 glove, *te-bukuro*.  
 glue, *nikawa*.  
 go (to), *iku*; but see p. 251.  
 go away (to), *kaeru*, *itte shimau*.  
 go down (to), *kudaru*, *oriru*.

go in (to), *hairu*.  
 go out (to), *deru*.  
 go up (to), *noboru*.  
 goblin, *tengu*.  
 God (Buddhist), *Hotoke*.  
 God (Catholic), *Tenshu*.  
 God (Shintō and Protesant), *Kami*.  
 godown, *kura*.  
 gold, *kin*.  
 goldfish, *kingyo*.  
 good, *yoroshii*, *yoi*, *ii*.  
 good (of children), *otonashii*.  
 good (to eat), *umai*.  
 goodbye, *sayōnara*.  
 goods, *shina-mono*.  
 goose (tame), *gachō*.  
 goose (wild), *gan*.  
 government, *seifū*, *seiji*.  
 graduate (to), *sotsūgyō suru*.  
 grammar, *bumpō*.  
 grand, *rippa* (*na*).  
 grandchild, *mago*.  
 grandfather, *ojiisan*.  
 grandmother, *obāsan*.  
 grass (turf), *shiba*.  
 gravel, *jari*.  
 grease, *abura*.  
 green, *aoi*, *midori*, *mocgi*.  
 green-grocer, *yayya*.  
 grey, *nezumi-iro* (*no*), *hai-iro* (*no*).  
 groom, *bettō*.  
 grown-up person, *otona*.  
 guarantee (to), *uke-au*.  
 guard (to), *mamoru*.  
 guest, *kyaku*.  
 guide, *annai* (*no mono*).  
 gun, *teppō*.  
 gunpowder, *kwayaku*.

## H

habit, *narai* ; (bad)—, *kūse*.  
 had better, see p. 177.  
 hail, *arare*, *hyō*.  
 hair, *ke* ; (specifically of the head)  
*kanu*, *kami no ke*.  
 hairdresser, *hami-yui*.  
 hair-pin, *kanzashi*.  
 half, *hambun*, *han*.  
 hand, *te*.

hand (to), *watasu*.  
 handkerchief, *hanafūki*, *hankechi*  
 (from English).  
 hang (intrans. verb), *kakaru*.  
 hang (trans. verb), *kakeru*, *tsuru*,  
*tsuri-ageru*.  
 harbour, *minato*.  
 hard, *katai*.  
 hardly, no satisf. equiv.  
 hare, *usagi*.  
 hat, *bōshi*, *shappo* (from the French).  
 have (to), *motsu*, *motte iru*.  
 he, *ano hito*, *ano otoko*.  
 head, *atama*.  
 headache, *zutsū*.  
 hear (to), *kiku*.  
 heart, *kokoro*.  
 heat, *atsūsa*, *danki*.  
 heat (to), *atataneru*.  
 heaven *ten* (Confuc.), *gokuraku*  
 (Buddh.), *ten*(*kokū*) (Christ.).  
 heavy, *omoi*, *omotai*.  
 heel, *kakato*.  
 hell, *jigoku*.  
 help (to), *sewa wo suru*, *tetsudau*.  
 hen, *mendori*.  
 henceforward, *kono nochi*, *kore kara*.  
 here, *koko*, *kochi*(*ra*).  
 high, *takai*.  
 hill, *yama* ;—(on a road), *saka*.  
 hinge, *chō-tsugai*.  
 hire (a house), *kariru*.  
 hire (a servant), *yatou*.  
 history, *rekishi*.  
 hitherto, *ima made*, *kore made*.  
 hold (to), *te ni motsu*, *motsu*.  
 hold (to be contained), *hairu*.  
 hole, *ana*.  
 holiday, *yasumi-bi*, *kyūjitsu*.  
 Holland, *Oranda*.  
 home, *uchi* ; (country), *kuni*.  
 honest, *shōjiki* (*na*).  
 horn, *tsuno*.  
 horrid, *osoroshii*.  
 horse, *uma*.  
 horsefly, *abu*.  
 hospital, *byōin*.  
 host (master), *aruji*.  
 hot (like pepper), *karai*.  
 hot (not cold), *atsui*.



hotel, *yadoya*.  
 hotel-keeper, *yadoya no teishu*.  
 hour, *toki, jikan*.  
 house, *ie, uchi, taku*.  
 how? *dō? dō shite? ikaga?*  
 how long? *itsu made?*  
 how many? *ikutsu? iku-mai?*  
 etc.; conf. p. 113.  
 how often? *iku tabi?*  
 hundred, *kyaku*.  
 hungry (to be), *haraga hern, o naka ga sūku*.  
 hunt (to), *kari suru*.  
 hurry (to be in a), *isogu*.  
 hurt (intrans. verb), *itamu*.  
 hurt oneself (to), *kaga wo suru*.  
 husband, *otto*; but see p. 256.  
 hut, *koya*.

## I

I, *watakūshi*; but see p. 46.  
 ice, *kōri*.  
 idle (to be), *namakete iru*.  
 if, see p. 243.  
 ignorant (illiterate), *mugaku na*;  
 (unacquainted with), *fu-annai*.  
 ill (sick), *byōki (na)*.  
 illness, *byōki, yamai*.  
 immediately (at once), *sassoku, sugu ni*.  
 impertinence, *shitsurui, burui*.  
 import (to), *yunyū suru*.  
 impossible, *dekina*.  
 in, *ni*.  
 included (to be), *haitte iru*.  
 inconvenient, *fuben (na), tsugō no warai, futsugō (na)*.  
 indeed, *jitsu ni*.  
 indeed! *naruhodo!*  
 India, *Tenjiku, Indo*.  
 Indian corn, *tōmorokoshi*.  
 indoors, *ie no uchi*.  
 infectious disease, *densembyō*.  
 ink (Indian) *sumi*.  
 inn, *yadoya*.  
 insect, *mushi*.  
 inside, *no naka, ni*.  
 inside (a person's), *o naka*.  
 instead, *no kawari ni*.

insurance (fire), *kwasai hoken*.  
 insurance (marine), *kaijō hoken*.  
 interpret (to), *tsūben wo suru*.  
 interpreter, *tsūben, tsūji*.  
 into, *no naka ye, ni*.  
 invalid, *byōnin*.  
 investigate (to), *tori-shiraberu*.  
 invite (to), *maneku*.  
 invoice, *okuri-jō*.  
 iron, *tetsu*.  
 island, *shima*.  
 it, *sore, ano mono* (little used).

## J

January, *shōgwatsu*.  
 Japan, *Nippon, Nihon* (more elegant).  
 jar (a), *tsubo*.  
 jealousy, *yakimochi, netami*.  
 jewel, *tama*.  
 join (trans. verb), *awaseru; tsugu*.  
 joke, *jōdan*.  
 jug, *mizu-tsugi*.  
 jugglery, *tezuma*.  
 July, *shichi-gwatsu*.  
 June, *roku-gatsu*.  
 just (fair), *tadashii, kōhei na*.  
 just (exactly), *chōdo*.

## K

keep (things in general), *tamotsu, motte iru*.  
 keep (pet animals), *katte oku*.  
 kettle, *tetsubin*.  
 key, *kagi*.  
 kick (to), *keru*.  
 kill (to), *korosu*.  
 kind (sort), *shurui, yō*.  
 kind(-hearted), *shinsetsu (na)*.  
 king, *ō, kokūō*.  
 kitchen, *dai-dokoro, katte*.  
 kite (bird), *tombi*.  
 kite (toy), *tako*.  
 knee, *hiza*.  
 knife, *hōchō*.  
 knock (to), *tataku*.  
 knock down (to), *buchi-taosu*.  
 know (to), *shiru, shitte iru*.  
 Korea, *Chōsen*.

## L

lacquer, *urushi*.  
 lacquer-ware, *nuri-mono*.  
 lady, *okūsan*.  
 lake, *mizu-umi*, *kosui*.  
 lame, *bikko*, *chimba*.  
 lamp, *rampu* (from English).  
 land, *riku*, *oka*.  
 land (intrans. verb), *jōriku suru*.  
 land (trans. verb), *riku-age suru*.  
 language, *kotoba*.  
 lantern, *chōchin*.  
 last (at), *tsui ni*, *yōyaku*.  
 last (the), *sue no*, *ato no*, but no really satisf. equiv.  
 last (to), *motsu*.  
 late, *osoi*.  
 laugh (to), *warau*.  
 law, *kisoku*, *hōritsu*.  
 lawyer, *daigen-nin*.  
 lazy (to be), *namakeru*.  
 lead (metal), *namari*.  
 lead (to), *hiku*, *anna suru*.  
 leaf (of a tree), *ha*.  
 learn (to), *narau*, *manabu*.  
 least (at), *sūkunakute mo*.  
 leave (of absence), *hima*.  
 leave (of depart), *tatsu*.  
 leave behind (to), *nokosu*.  
 leave off (to), *yameru*, *yosu*.  
 leave out (to), *habuku*, *yosu*.  
 lecture, *enzetsu*.  
 left (-hand), *hidari*.  
 leg, *ashi*.  
 legation, *kōshikwan*.  
 lemon, *yuzu*.  
 lemonade, *ramune* (from English).  
 lend (to), *kasu*.  
 length, *nagasa*, *take*.  
 let (to allow), *saseru*, *yurusu*.  
 let (a house), *kasu*.  
 letter (of alphabet, etc.), *moji*.  
 letter (correspondence), *tegami*.  
 liar, *uso-tsūki*.  
 lid, *futa*.  
 lie down (to), *neru*.  
 lie (to tell a), *uso wo iu*.  
 life, *inochi*.

lift (to), *mochi-ageru*.  
 light (not heavy), *karui*.  
 light (not dark), *akarui*.  
 light (to . . . the fire), *hi wo taku*.  
 light (to . . . the lamp), *rampu wo tsūkeru*.  
 light (a), *akari*, *hikari*.  
 lightning, *inabikari*.  
 like (to), *sūki*, see p. 65; *kononnu*.  
 like (to be), *nite iru*.  
 lilac, *murasaki (no)*.  
 lily, *yuri*.  
 lime, *ishi-bai*.  
 line, *suji*.  
 lion, *shishi*.  
 lips, *kuchibiru*.  
 list, *mokuroku*.  
 little (small), *chiisai*, *chiisa (na)*.  
 little (a), *sūkoshi*.  
 live (to dwell), *sumau*.  
 lively, *nigiyaka (na)*.  
 lock (to), *jō wo orosu*.  
 lonely, *sabishii*.  
 long, *nagai*.  
 look at (to), *miru*.  
 look for (to), *sagasu*.  
 loose, *yurui*.  
 lose (not to win), *makeru*.  
 lose (something), *ushinau*, *nakusu*.  
 loss (pecuniary), *soushitsu*, *son*.  
 lottery, *mujin*, *fūku-biki*.  
 lotus, *hasu*.  
 loud, *takai*, *ōki (na)*.  
 love (to be in), *horeru*.  
 low, *hikui*.  
 lucky, *un no yoi*.  
 luggage, *nimotsu*.  
 lukewarm, *nirui*.  
 luncheon, *hiru-gozen*.

## M

mad, *kichigai (no)*.  
 maid-servant, *jochū*; *gejo* (less polite).  
 mail (steamer), *hikyakū-sen*.  
 make (to), *koshiraeru*.  
 male, *osu*.  
 man, *otoko*.  
 manage (to), *tori-atsūkau*.

manager (of a bank, etc.), *shihai-nin*.  
 manager (head clerk), *bantō*.  
 mankind, *ningen*.  
 man-of-war, *gunkan*.  
 manufacture (to), *seizō-suru*.  
 manure, *koyashi*.  
 many, *ōi* (see p. 274); *ōku no*.  
 map, *chizu*.  
 March, *san-gwatsu*.  
 mark, *shirushi*, *ato*.  
 market, *ichiba*.  
 market price, *sōba*.  
 marquis, *kō(-shaku)*.  
 mast, *ho-bashira*.  
 master (of a house), *aruji*.  
 mat, *tatami*.  
 match (lucifer), *haya-tsūkegi*.  
 matter (what is the?), *dō shimashita*.  
 matter (it doesn't), *kamaimasen*.  
 matting, *usuberi*, *goza*.  
 may, see pp. 69, 174, 188, 207.  
 May (month), *go-gwatsu*.  
 meaning, *imi*.  
 meanwhile, *sono uchi*.  
 measure (to), *sumpō wo toru*.  
 meat, *niku*.  
 medicine, *kūsuri*.  
 meet (to), *au*.  
 meeting (a), *kwai*, *shūkwai*.  
 melon, *uri*.  
 melon (musk-), *makurwa-uri*.  
 melon (water-), *suikwa*.  
 member (of a society), *kwai-in*.  
 mend (to), *tsūkurou*, *naosu*.  
 merchant, *akindo*, *shōnin*.  
 message, *kozojike*.  
 messenger, *tsūkai (no mono)*.  
 middle, *mannaka*.  
 midnight, *yonaka*.  
 milk, *chichi*.  
 minister (of religion), *kyōshi*.  
 minister (of state), *daijin*.  
 minister (plenipotentiary), *kōshi*.  
 minute (one), *ip-pun*.  
 mirror, *kagami*.  
 Miss, see p. 258.  
 missionary, (protest.), *senkyōshi*;  
*Yaso-kyōshi*; (cath.) *Tenshū-kyōshi*.

mist, *kiri*, *moya*.  
 mistake, *machigai*.  
 mix (intrans. verb), *mazaru*.  
 mix (trans. verb), *mazeru*.  
 money, *kan*, *kinsu*.  
 money (paper), *shihci*.  
 money-changer, *ryōgae-ya*.  
 Monday, *getsuyōbi*.  
 monkey, *saru*.  
 month, *tsūki*.  
 moon, *tsūki*.  
 moor, *no(-hara)*.  
 more, *motto*.  
 morning, *asa*.  
 mortgage, *shūchi-motsu*.  
 mosquito, *ka*.  
 mosquito curtain, *kaya*.  
 mother, *haha*, but see p. 256.  
 mother-in-law, *shūtome*.  
 motion, *undō*, (at a meeting) *dōgi*.  
 mountain, *yama*.  
 mouth, *kūchi*.  
 move (intrans. verb), *ugoku*.  
 move (trans. verb), *ugokasu*.  
 Mr., *Sama*, *San*.  
 Mrs., see p. 258.  
 much, *takusan*.  
 mud, *doro*.  
 murder(er), *hito-goroshi*.  
 mushroom, *shitake*, *matsūtake*.  
 music (classical), *ongaku*.  
 must, see pp. 174-5; 122, 132, 183.  
 mustard, *karashi*.

## N

nail (finger-), *tsume*.  
 nail (metal), *kugi*.  
 naked, *hadaka*.  
 name (personal), *na*.  
 name (family), *sei*, *myōji*.  
 napkin, *kūchi-fuki*.  
 narrow, *semai*.  
 nasty (to eat), *mazui*.  
 navy, *kaigun*.  
 near, *chikai*.  
 nearly, *mo sūkoshi de*.  
 necessary, *hitsuyō (na)*.  
 neck, *nodo*.  
 need, see p. 188.

needle, *hari*, *mi-bari*.  
 needlework, *nuimono*.  
 neighbour, *kinjo no hito*.  
 neighbourhood, *kinjo*, *kimpen*.  
 neither...nor, see p. 72.  
 nephew, *oi*.  
 net (fishing), *ami*.  
 never, see p. 272.  
 new, *atarashii*, *shinki (na)*.  
 news, *shimbun*.  
 newspaper, *shimbunshi*.  
 next, *tsugi no*.  
 niece, *mei*.  
 night, *yoru*, *ban*.  
 night-clothes, *nemuki*.  
 nightingale, *uguisu*.  
 nightmare (to have a), *unasareru*.  
 nine, *kokonotsu*; but see p. 101.  
 nineteen, *jū-ku*.  
 ninety, *ku-jū*.  
 no, *ie*; but see pp. 234-5.  
 nobody, }  
 none, } see p. 272.  
 nothing, }  
 nowhere, }  
 noise, *oto*.  
 noisy, *sōzōshii*.  
 north, *kita*.  
 north-east, *higashi-kita*.  
 north-west, *nishi-kita*.  
 nose, *hana*.  
 not, rendered by negative verbal terminations.  
 notwithstanding, *ni kamawazu*.  
 novel (romance), *shōsetsu*.  
 November, *jū-ichi-gwatsu*.  
 nuisance (troublesome), *urusai*.  
 number, *kazu*.  
 nun (Buddhist), *ama*.  
 nurse (governess), *ko-mori*.  
 nurse (wet-) *uba*, *omba*.

## O

oak, *nara*, *kashiwa*.  
 oar, *ro*.  
 oats, *karasū-nugi*.  
 oblige (force), *shiite saseru*.  
 oblong, *chōhō-kei*.  
 obscure, *bon-yari shita*.

observe, *mi-akeru*, *ki ga tsūku*.  
 o'clock (what)? *nan-ji?* *nan-doki?*  
 October, *jū-gwatsu*.  
 of, *no*.  
 off, no satisf. equiv.  
 offer (to), *susumeru*.  
 office, *yakūsho*, *jimusho*.  
 official (an), *shikwan*, *yakumin*.  
 often, *tabi-tabi*.  
 oil, *abura*.  
 old, (of people) *toshiyori (no)*.  
 old (of things), *furui*.  
 omelet, *tamago-yaki*.  
 on, *ni*, *no ue ni*.  
 once, *ichi-do*.  
 one, *hitotsu*; but see p. 101.  
 onion, *negi*.  
 only, (adv), *bakari*, *tada*.  
 open (trans. verb), *akeru*.  
 open (to be), *aite iru*.  
 opinion, *ryōken*, *zonjiyori*.  
 opposite, *no mukō ni*.  
 orange (hard-skinned), *daidai*.  
 orange, (mandarin), *mikan*.  
 order (sequence), *jun*, *junjo*.  
 order (to command), *ii-tsūkeru*,  
*meijiru*.  
 orphan *minashi-go*.  
 other, *hoka no*, *ato no*.  
 ought, *hazu*, *beki*; see pp. 41, 57,  
 177.  
 out (to go), *deru*.  
 out-of-doors, outside, *soto*, *omote*.  
 over, *no ue ni*.  
 overcharge, *kakene*.  
 overcoat, *gwaitō*.  
 owe (to), no satisf. equiv.  
 own (one's), *jibun no*.  
 owner, *mochi-nushi*.  
 oyster, *kaki*.

## P

pack (to), *ni-zukuri wo suru*.  
 package, *tsutsumi*.  
 pagoda, *tō*.  
 pain, *itami*.  
 painful, *itai*.  
 paint (to pictures), *egaku*.  
 painter, *ekaki*.

- palace, *goten, goshō*.  
 pale, *ao-zameta*.  
 paper, *kami*.  
 parasol, *higasa*.  
 parcel, *ko-zutsumi*.  
 parent, *oya*.  
 park, *kōenchi*.  
 parliament, *kokkōwai*.  
 part (intrans. verb), *wakareru, hanareru*.  
 part (subst.), no satisf. equiv.  
 partner (business), *shain*.  
 party (entertainment), *kyakura*.  
 pass (across mountains), *tōge*.  
 pass (to), *tōru, suguru*.  
 passage (in a house), *rōka*.  
 passport, (*ryokō-*) *menjō*.  
 pastor, *bokūshi*.  
 patient (to be), *gaman suru*.  
 patient (sick person), *byōnin*.  
 pattern, *moyō*.  
 pay (to), *harau*.  
 payment, *harai*.  
 peach, *momo*.  
 pear, *nashi*.  
 peas, *endō-mame*.  
 peasant, *hyakūshō*.  
 pen, *fude*.  
 pencil, *empitsu*.  
 peninsula, *hantō*.  
 penknife, *ko-gatana*.  
 peony, *botan*.  
 pepper, *koshō*.  
 per cent, see page 119.  
 perhaps, ...*ka mo shiran*; see also pp. 69 and 72.  
 permit (a) *menjō*.  
 permit (to), *yurusu, shōchi suru*.  
 persimmon, *kaki*.  
 person, *hito, jin*.  
 perspiration, *ase*.  
 pheasant, *kiji*.  
 phoenix, *hōō*.  
 photograph, *shashin*.  
 physician, *isha*.  
 pick (to), *tsumu*.  
 pick up (to), *hirou*.  
 picnic, *yusan*.  
 picture (oblong and scroll), *kakemono*; (square), *gaku*.  
 pierce (to), *tsūki-tōsu*.  
 pig, *buta*.  
 pigeon, *hato*.  
 pill, *guan-yaku*.  
 pillow, *makura*.  
 pin, *hari, tome-bari*.  
 pine-tree, *matsu*.  
 pink, *momo-iro no*.  
 pipe (smoking), *kiseru*.  
 pity ! (what a), *oshii koto*.  
 place, *basho, tokoro*.  
 planet, *yūsei, wakūsei*.  
 plant (in a general), *kūsa*.  
 plant (in garden), *ueki*.  
 plant (to), *neru*.  
 plate, *sara*.  
 play (drama), *kyōgen*.  
 play (to), *asobu*.  
 please, *dōzo, dōka*.  
 pleasure, *tanoshimi*.  
 plenty, *jūbun*.  
 plum (large red), *botankyō*.  
 plum (small red), *sumomo*.  
 plum-blossom, *ume no hana*.  
 pocket, *kakūshi, fūtokoro*.  
 pocket-handkerchief, *hanafūki*.  
 poem, (Jap.) *uta*; (Chin.) *shi*.  
 policeman, *jūsa*.  
 polish (to), *migaku*.  
 polite, *teinei (na)*.  
 pond, *ike*.  
 poor, *bimbō (na)*.  
 porcelain, *setomono, tōki* (learned).  
 port (harbour), *minato*.  
 post (letter), *yūbin*.  
 postage, *yūbin-zei*.  
 postage stamp, *inshi, yūbin-gitte*.  
 post-card, *hagaki*.  
 post-office, *yūbin-kyoku*.  
 postman, *haitatsu-nin*.  
 potato (ordinary), *imo*.  
 potato (sweet), *Satsuma-imo*.  
 pottery, *tsūchi-yaki*.  
 pour (to), *tsugu*.  
 powder, *ko, kona*.  
 powders (medicine), *ko-gusuri*.  
 power of attorney, *dairi ininjō*.  
 practise (to), *keiko wo suru*.  
 praise (to), *homeru*.  
 pray (to), *ineru*.

prawn, *ebi*.  
 preach (to), *sekkyō suru*.  
 precipice, *gake*.  
 prepare (to,) *koshiraeru*; *shūtake*  
*wo suru*.  
 prescription (doctor's), *hōzai-*  
*gaki*.  
 present (gift), *miyage*, *shinjō-mono*,  
*okuri-mono*.  
 president (of a society), *kwaichō*,  
*gichō*.  
 president (of United States, etc.),  
*daitōryō*.  
 pretty, *kirei (na)*, *utsūkushii*.  
 prevent (to), *samatageru*, *sasenai*  
 (neg. causative of *suru*, to do).  
 price, *nedan*, *ne*, *atai*.  
 prickly heat, *asemo*.  
 priest (Buddhist), *bōzu*, *bōsan*  
 (polite), *shūkke*, *oshō*.  
 priest (Shintō), *kannushi*.  
 prince (Imperial Jap.), *miya*  
*sama*.  
 prince (in general), *kōzoku*.  
 prison, *rōya*.  
 probably, *tabuu*.  
 profit, *rieki*, *mōke*.  
 promise (to) *yakūsoku suru*.  
 proper, *sōō (na)*, *sōtō (na)*.  
 property, *mochimono*; (immovable)  
*judōsan*.  
 proportion, *wari-ai*.  
 Protestantism, *Yaso-kyō*.  
 provide (to), *sonaeru*.  
 provided, see p. 242.  
 pudding, (o) *kwashi*.  
 pull (to), *hiku*.  
 punish (to), *tsumi suru*, *bassuru*.  
 pupil, *deshi*.  
 purple, *murasaki*.  
 purpose (on), *waza-waza*.  
 purse, *kane-irc*, *kinchaku*.  
 push (to), *osu*.  
 put (to), *oku*, *sueru*.  
 put away (to), *katazukeru*.  
 put in (to), *ireru*.  
 put off (to), *nobasu*.  
 put on (clothes), *kiru*.  
 put out (a light), *kesu*.  
 put up with, *korawru*.

## Q

quadruped, *kemono*, *kedamono*.  
 quail, *uzura*.  
 quandary (to be in a), *mayou*.  
 quantity, *kasa*, *taka*.  
 quarrel, *kenkwa*.  
 quarter ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), *shi-bun no ichi*.  
 queen (regnant), *nyotci*.  
 queer, *kitai (na)*.  
 question, *gimon*, *toi*.  
 quick, *hayai*.  
 quiet, *shizuka (na)*.  
 quite, *mattaku*, *jūbun*.

## R

race (horse-), *keiba*.  
 railroad, *tetsūdō*.  
 railway carriage, *kisha*.  
 rain, *ame*.  
 rainbow, *niji*.  
 raise (to lift), *ageru*.  
 rare, *mare (na)*.  
 rascal, *berabō*, *waru-mono*.  
 rat, *nezumi*.  
 rather (somewhat), *zuibun*; (on the  
 contrary) *kaette*.  
 raw, *nama (na)*.  
 reach (intrans. verb), *todoku*, *oyobu*.  
 read (to), *yomu*.  
 ready (to be), *shūtake shite oru*.  
 ready money, *genkin*.  
 real, *makoto (na)*, *hontō (na)*.  
 reason (of a thing), *wake*, *dōri*.  
 rebel, *chōteki*, *muhon-nin*, *zoku*.  
 receipt, *uke-tori*.  
 receive (to), *uke-toru*.  
 red, *akai*.  
 refuse (to), *kotowaru*.  
 relations (kinsfolk), *shinrui*.  
 religion, *shūkyō*, *shūshi*, *oshie*.  
 remain (to), *nokoru*, *amaru*.  
 remainder, *nokori*.  
 remember (to), *obowru*.  
 rent (house-), *yachin*.  
 rest (to), *yasumu*.  
 restaurant, *ryōri-ya*.  
 return (intrans.), *kaeru*.

return (trans.), *kaesu*.  
 revenge, *kataki-uchi*.  
 rice (boiled), *meshi*, *gozen*, *gohan*,  
     *o manma*.  
 rice (growing), *ine*.  
 rice (hulled), *kome*, *hakumai*.  
 rich, *kanu-mochi (no)*.  
 ride (to), *noru*.  
 ridiculous, *okashii*.  
 right (hand), *migi*.  
 right (proper), *ii*, *hontō (no)*.  
 ring (for finger), *yubi-wa*.  
 ring (intrans. verb), *naru*.  
 ring (trans. verb), *narasu*.  
 river, *kawa*.  
 road, *michi*.  
 roast (to), *yaku*.  
 rock, *iwa*.  
 roll (intrans. verb), *korobu*.  
 roll (trans. verb), *korobasu*.  
 roof, *yane*.  
 room (a), *heya*, *zashiki*.  
 root, (*ki no*) *ne*.  
 rope, *nawa*.  
 rotten (to be), *kūsatte iru*.  
 rough, *arai*.  
 round, *marui*.  
 row (to), *kogu*.  
 rub (to), *kosuru*.  
 rub out (to), *kesu*.  
 rudder, *kaji*.  
 rude, *shikkei (na)*, *shitsurui (na)*.  
 rug, *ketto*.  
 ruins, *koseki*.  
 rumour, *hyōban*, *fūsetsu*, *uwasa*.  
 run (to), *kakeru*, *hashiru*.  
 run away (to), *nigeru*.  
 rush (to), same as the preceding.  
 Russia, *Oroska*.  
 rust (to), *sabiru*.

## S

sacrament, *seirciten*.  
 sad (to be), *kanashimu*.  
 saddle, *kura*.  
 safe, *daijōbu (na)*.  
 sail, *ho*.  
 sail (to start), *shuppan suru*.  
 sailor, *sendō*, *suifu*.

saint (Buddhist), *shōnin*.  
 salary, *gekkyū*.  
 salmon, *sake*, *shake* (more colloq.).  
 salt, *shio*.  
 same, *onaji*.  
 sample, *mihon*.  
 sand, *sūna*.  
 sandals (used indoors), *zōri*.  
 sandals (used out-of-doors), *waraji*.  
 sash, *obi*.  
 Saturday, *Doyōbi*.  
 saucepan, *nabe*.  
 saucer, *shita-zara*.  
 save (to), *tasūkeru*.  
 say (to), *iu*, *hanasu*.  
 school, *gakkō*.  
 science, *rigaku*.  
 screen, *byōbu*.  
 screw, *neji*.  
 sea, *umi*.  
 sea-sick (to be), *fune ni you*.  
 second a motion, (to) *sansai suru*.  
 secret, *naisho (no)*, *himitsu (na)*.  
 secretary, *shoki*.  
 sect, *shūshi*, *shūmon*.  
 see (to), *miru*; but see p. 251.  
 seed, *taue*.  
 seem (to), *mieru*.  
 self, *jibun*, *jishin*, *onore*.  
 sell (to), *uru*.  
 send (to), *tsūkawasau*, *yarau*.  
 send hither (to), *yokosu*.  
 separately, *hanarete*, *betu-betsu ni*.  
 September, *ku-gwatsu*.  
 sermon, *sekkyō*, *seppō*.  
 servant, *hōkōnin*, *meshi-tsūkai*.  
 seven, *nanatsu*; but see p. 101.  
 seventeen, *jū-shichi*.  
 seventy, *shichi-jū*.  
 sew (to), *nuu*.  
 shade, shadow, *kage*.  
 shampooed (to be), *monde morau*.  
 shampooer, *amma*.  
 shape, *katachi*.  
 share (a), *wari-mae*;—in banking  
     business, etc., *kabu*.  
 share (to), *wakeru*, *bumpai suru*.  
 shareholder, *kabu-nushi*.  
 shave (to), *hige wo suru* (or *soru*).  
 she, *ano hito*, *ano onna*.

- shelf, *tana*.  
 shell, *kai*.  
 shine (to), *teru*.  
 ship, *fune*.  
 shipwreck, *hasen, nansen*.  
 shirt, *shatsu* (from English).  
 shoe, *han-gutsu, kutsu*.  
 shoe-horn, *kutsu-bera*.  
 shoemaker, *kutsu-ya*.  
 shoot (to ..... with a gun), *teppō wo utsu*.  
 shooting (sport), *jūryō, kari*.  
 shop, *mise*.  
 short (not long), *mijikai*.  
 short (of stature), *sei no hikui*.  
 shoulder, *kata*.  
 show (to) *miseru*; but see p. 251.  
 shut (trans. verb), *shimeru*.  
 sick (to feel), *mune ga warui*.  
 sick (to be; vomit), *haku, modosu*.  
 side, *hō, kata*.  
 sights (of a place), *meisho koseki*.  
 sign, *shirushi*.  
 signboard, *kamban*.  
 silent (to be), *damaru*.  
 silk, *kinu*.  
 silkworm, *kaiko*.  
 silly, *baka (na)*.  
 silver, *gin*.  
 simple, *tegarui, wakari-yasui*.  
 since, *kara*.  
 sing (birds), *naku*.  
 sing (human beings), *utau*.  
 singing-girl, *geisha*.  
 sir, see p. 258.  
 sister (elder), *ane*.  
 sister (younger), *imōto*.  
 sit on a chair (to), *koshi wo kakeru*.  
 sit (to squat à la Jap.), *suwaru*.  
 six, *mutsu*; but see p. 101.  
 sixteen, *jū-roku*.  
 sixty, *roku-jū*.  
 size, *ōkisa*.  
 skin, *kawa*.  
 sky, *sora*.  
 sleep (to), *neru*.  
 sleepy, *nemui*.  
 slide (to), *suberu*.  
 slipper, *uwagutsu*.  
 slow, *osoi*.
- small, *chiisai, chiisa (na)*.  
 small-pox, *hōsō, temmentō*.  
 smell (a), *nioi*.  
 smelly, *kūsai*.  
 smoke, *kemuri*.  
 smoke (to ...), *tabako wo nomu*.  
 smoothie, *sube-sube shita*.  
 snail, *maimai-tsuburu*.  
 snake, *hebi*.  
 sneeze (to), *kūshami wo suru*.  
 snipe, *shigi*.  
 snow, *yuki*.  
 so, *sō, sonna ni*.  
 soap, *shabon* (from Spanish *jabon*).  
 socks, *kutsū-tabi*.  
 soda-water, *sōda-mizu*.  
 soft, *yawarakai, yawaraka (na)*.  
 soldier, *heikai, heishi, heisetsu*.  
 some, no satisf. equiv.  
 somebody, *dare ka*.  
 something, *nani ka*.  
 sometimes, *ori-fūshi, toki-ori*.  
 somewhere, *doko ka*.  
 son, *musūko*; but see p. 256.  
 son-in-law, *muko*.  
 song, *uta*.  
 soon, *jiki ni*.  
 sorry (for another), *kinodoku*; (for one's own sake), *zannen*.  
 soup, *soppu* (from English).  
 sour, *suppai*.  
 south, *minami*: south-east, *higashi-minami*; south-west, *nishi-minami*.  
 sow (to), *maku*.  
 soy, *shōyu shūtaiji*.  
 sparrow, *suzume*.  
 spectacles, *megane*.  
 speculator (dishonest), *yamashi*.  
 spend (to), *tōshōkai, tsuiyasu*.  
 spider, *kumo*.  
 spinach, *hōrensō*.  
 spine, *sebone*.  
 spit (to), *haku*.  
 spitoon, *tan-haki*.  
 spoil (to), *sonjiru*.  
 spoon, *saji*.  
 spring (jump), *tobu*.  
 spring (of water), *izumi*.  
 spring(-time), *haru*.



springs (of a carriage, etc.), *banc*.  
 square, *shikaku (na)*.  
 stable, *umaya*.  
 staircase, *hashigo-dan*.  
 stand (intrans. verb), *tatsu*.  
 star, *hoshi*.  
 start (to depart), *tatsu, shuttatsu suru*.  
 state (condition), *yōsu, arisama*.  
 station, *teisha-ba*.  
 steal (to), *nusumu*.  
 steam, *yuge, jōki*.  
 steamer, *jōkisen*.  
 steel, *hagane*.  
 stepmother, *mama-haha, keibo*.  
 stick (to adhere), *kuttsūku*.  
 stiff, *katai*.  
 still (quiet), *shizuka (na)*.  
 still (yet), *nada, nao*.  
 still (even more), *motto*.  
 sting (to), *sasu*.  
 stink (to), *kūsai (adj.)*.  
 stomach-ache (to have a), *hara ga itai*.  
 stone, *ishi*.  
 stop (intrans. verb), *tomaru*.  
 stop (trans. verb), *tomeru*.  
 store (shop), *mise*.  
 store-house, *kura*.  
 storm, *arashi, shike*.  
 story (narrative), *hanashi*.  
 straight, *massugu (na)*.  
 strange, *fūshūgi (na)*.  
 stranger, *shiranai hito*.  
 straw, *wara*.  
 strawberry, *ichigo*.  
 street, *machi, tōri*.  
 strength, *chikara*.  
 strike (heat), *utsu, butsu*.  
 string, *ito*.  
 strong, *tsuyoi*.  
 student, *shōsei*.  
 stuff (for clothes, etc.), *kiru-ji*.  
 stumble, *tsumazuku, fumi-hazusu*.  
 stupid, *baka (na)*.  
 suck (to), *suu*.  
 sugar, *satō*.  
 sugar-plum, (o) *kwashi*.  
 suit (to) *kanau, ki ni iru*.  
 sum (total), *shime-daka*.

summer, *natsu*.  
 sun (the actual luminary), *hi, taiyō, o tentō sama (vulgar)*.  
 sun (i.e. sunlight), *hinata*.  
 Sunday, *nichiyōbi, dontaku* (a vulg. corrupt. of Dutch *Zondag*).  
 sunrise, *hi no de*.  
 sunset, *hi no iri*.  
 supper, *yūmeshi*.  
 suppose (to), *no satisf. equiv.*  
 sutra (Buddhist), *bukkyō, o kyō*.  
 sweep (to), *haku*.  
 sweet, *amai*.  
 swim (to), *oyogu*.  
 sword, *katana*.

## T

table, *tsūke, dai, teifuru* (from Dutch).  
 tack (nail), *byō*.  
 tail, *shippo*.  
 tailor, *shūtate-ya*.  
 take (to), *toru*.  
 take time (to), *tema-doru*.  
 talk (to), *hanasu, hanashi wo suru*.  
 tall (of stature), *sei no takai*.  
 taste, *ajiwai*.  
 tax, *zei, nengu*.  
 tea, *cha*.  
 tea-cup, *cha-nomi-jawan*.  
 tea-house, *chaya*.  
 tea-pot, *kibisho*.  
 teach (to), *oshieru*.  
 teacher, *shishō, kyōshi, sensei*.  
 tear (trans. verb), *saku, yabuku*.  
 tears, *namida*.  
 telegram, *dempō*.  
 telegraph-office, *denshin-kyoku*.  
 telegraphy, *denshin*.  
 telephone, *denwa*.  
 telescope, *tō-megane, bōenkyō*.  
 tell (to), *iu, hanasu, kataru*.  
 temple (Buddhist), *tera*.  
 temple (Shintō), *yashiro, jinja, miya*.  
 ten, *tō*; but see p. 101.  
 Testament (New), *Shinyaku Zensho*.  
 Testament (Old), *Kyūyaku Zensho*.  
 than, *yori*.

- thank (to), *rei wo iu*.  
 thank you, *arigatō*.  
 that, *are, ano, etc.*; see p. 52.  
 theatre, *shibai*.  
 then, *sono toki*.  
 there, *soko, asūko, achira*.  
 therefore, *da kara, desū kara* (polite).  
 thermometer, *kandankei*.  
 they, *kare-ra, ano hito-tachi*.  
 thick (of solids), *atsui*.  
 thick (of liquids), *koi*.  
 thief, *dorobō*.  
 thimble, *yubi-nuki*.  
 thin (to be), *yasete iru*.  
 thing, see pp. 38—9.  
 think (to), *omou, zanjiru*.  
 thirsty (to be), *nodo ga kawaku*.  
 thirteen, *jū-san*.  
 this, *kore, kono*; but see p. 52.  
 though, see p. 186.  
 three, *mitsu*; but see p. 101.  
 throat, *nodo*.  
 through, *tōshite, tōtte*.  
 throw (to), *nageru, hōru*.  
 thunder, *kaminari, rai*.  
 Thursday, *mokuyōbi*.  
 ticket, *kippu*.  
 ticket (return), *ōfuku-gippu*.  
 tide, *shio*: high—, *michi-shio*;  
     low—, *hiki-shio*.  
 tie (to), *shibarau*.  
 tiger, *tora*.  
 tight, *katai*.  
 till, *made*.  
 time, *toki*; (to take time), *tema-doru*.  
 tin (the metal), *suzu*.  
 tin (a), *burikkī* (from Dutch *blek*).  
 tinned provisions, *kansume(-mono)*.  
 tip (to a servant), *sakate*.  
 tipsy (to get), *sake ni you*.  
 tired (to get), *kūtabireru*.  
 to, *ye, ni*.  
 to-day, *konnichi, kyō* (famil.).  
 to, (*ashi no*) *yubi*.  
 together, *issho ni*.  
 to-morrow, *myōnichi, ashita* (famil.).  
 tomato, *aka-nasu*.  
 tomb, *haka*.  
 tongs (fire-), *hūbashi*.  
 to-night, *kon-ban, kon-ya*.  
 too (also), *yahari, mo*; (excess),  
     *amari*.  
 tool, *dōgu*.  
 tooth, *ha*.  
 toothache (to have a), *ha ga itai*.  
 tooth-brush, *yōji*.  
 tooth-pick, *koyōji*.  
 tooth-powder, *ha-migaki*.  
 top, *ue* (*no hō*).  
 torch, *taimatsu*.  
 tortoise, *kame* (*no ko*).  
 tortoise-shell, *bekkō*.  
 total (sun), *sō-daka, tsugō*.  
 touch (to), *fureru, sawaru*.  
 towards, *no hō ye*.  
 towel, *te-nugui*.  
 town (capital), *miyako*.  
 town (post-), *shūku*.  
 town (seaport), *minato*.  
 toy, *omocha*.  
 trade, *akinai, hōeki*.  
 tradesman, *akindo*.  
 tradition, *ii-tsūtae*.  
 train (railway), *ressha, kisha*.  
 traitor, *chōteki*.  
 tram, *tetsudō-basha*.  
 translate (to), *hon-yaku suru*.  
 transport (to), *hakobu*.  
 travel (to), *ryokō suru*.  
 traveller, *tabi-bitō*.  
 tray, *ban*.  
 tread (to), *fumu*.  
 treasure, *takara-mono*.  
 treat (to), *tori-atsūkau*.  
 treaty, *jōyaku*.  
 tree, *ki, jumoku* (learned).  
 tremble (to), *furueru*.  
 triangle, *san-kaku*.  
 trick (habit), *kūse*.  
 trick (juggler's), *tezuma*.  
 trick (dog's, etc.), *gei*.  
 trouble, *tekazu*.  
 trouble (to be in), *komaru*.  
 troublesome, *urusai, mendō* (*na*).  
 trout, *ai, yamame*.  
 trousers, *zubon*.  
 true, *hontō* (*no*), *makoto* (*no*).  
 trust (to), *shinjiru, shin-yō suru*.  
 try (to), *yatte miru, tamesu*.  
 Tuesday, *kwayōbi*.

tumbler (glass), *mizu-nomi-gofpu*.  
 tunnel, *ana*.  
 turkey, *shichimenchō*.  
 turn (intrans. verb), *murawaru*.  
 turn (trans. verb), *murwasu*.  
 turnip, *kabu*.  
 turret, *yagura*.  
 twelve, *jū-ni*.  
 twenty, *nijū*.  
 twice, *ni-do*, *fūta-tabi*.  
 twilight (evening), *kure-gata*.  
 twine (intrans. verb), *karamu*.  
 twins, *fūtago*.  
 twist (to), *nejiru*, *hineru*.  
 two, *fūtatsu* ; see p. 101.  
 typhoon, *arashi*, *ō-arashi*.

## U

ugly (to see), *migurushii*.  
 umbrella, *kōmori-gasa*.  
 unable (to be), *dekinai*.  
 unavoidable, *yondokoronai*.  
 uncle, *oji*.  
 uncomfortable, *fujiyū (na)*.  
 under, *no shita ni*.  
 under-clothing, *shūtagi*.  
 understand (to), *wakaru*, *shōchi suru*.  
 underwriter, *hoken-nin*, *uke-oi-nin*.  
 undress (to.....oneself), *kimono wo nugu*.  
 unfortunately, *ai-niku*.  
 unhappy, *fu-shiwase*.  
 uniform (military), *gumpuku*.  
 United States, *Gasshūkoku*.  
 university, *daigaku*, *daigakkō*.  
 unkind, *funinjō*, *fūshinsetsu (na)*.  
 unwholesome (to be), *doku ni naru*.  
 up, no satisf. equiv.  
 uphill, *saka-nichi*.  
 upon, *no ue ni*.  
 upright (erect), *massugu (na)*.  
 upset (trans. verb), *hikkuri-kaesu*.  
 upside down, *sakasama*.  
 upstairs, *nikai*.  
 urine, *shōben*, *shōmben (vulg.)*.  
 use (to), *tsūkau*, *mochiuru*.  
 useful, *chōhō (na)*, *yaku ni tatsu*.  
 useless, *yaku ni tatanai*.

usher (school), *jokyōshi*.  
 usual, *tsune (no)*, *heizei (no)*.

## V

vaccination, *uebōsō*, *shūtō*.  
 vain (conceited), *nama-iki (na)*, *kō-man (na)*.  
 valley, *tani*.  
 value, *atai*, *ne-uchi*.  
 various, *iro-iro (no)*, *ironna*.  
 varnish, *urushi*.  
 vary, *kawaru*.  
 vase, *hana-ike*.  
 vegetables, *yasai(-mono)*.  
 vegetation, *sōmoku*.  
 vein, *myaku*.  
 velocipede, *jitensha*.  
 velvet, *birōdo*.  
 verandah, *engawa*.  
 very, see pp. 147-8.  
 vice, *fu-mimochi*, *akuhei*.  
 victory, *shōri*, *kachi-ikūsa*.  
 victuals, *tabemono*.  
 view (prospect), *mi-harashi*, *keshiki*.  
 village, *mura*, *sato*.  
 vinegar, *su*.  
 violent, *te-arai*.  
 violet (a), *sumō-ori (-gusa)*.  
 viper, *mamushi*.  
 virgin, *ki-musūme*.  
 virtue (goodness), *zen*.  
 viscount, *shi(-shaku)*.  
 visit (to pay a), *tazunete kuru*.  
 visitor, *kyaku*.  
 voice, *ko*.  
 volcano, (*fun-*)*kwazan*.  
 volume (book), *satsu*.  
 vomit, *hedo wo haku*.  
 vulgar, *gehin (na)*.

## W

wadding, *wata*.  
 wager, *kake(-mono)*.  
 wages, *kyūkin*.  
 waistcoat, *chokki*.  
 wait (to), *matsu*.  
 wait (at table), *kyūji wo suru*.  
 waiter, *kyūji*, *boy* (from English).

waiting-room, *machi-ai-ba*.  
 wake (intrans. verb), *me ga sameru*.  
 wake (trans. verb), *okosu*.  
 walk (to), *aruku*.  
 wall (mud), *kabe*; (stone), *ishibei*.  
 want (to), *hoshii* (adjective).  
 war, *ikūsa*.  
 warehouse, *kura, dozō*.  
 warm, *ataakai, atataka (na)*.  
 warn (to), *inwashimeru*.  
 wash (to), *arau*.  
 washerman, *sentaku-ya*.  
 wash-hand-basin, *chōzu-darai*.  
 washing (of clothes), *sentaku*.  
 wasp, *hachi*.  
 waste (trans. verb), *tsuiyasu, muda ni tsūkau*.  
 watch (clock), *tokai*.  
 watch (to), *ban wo suru, ki wo tsūkeru*.  
 water (cold), *mizu*.  
 water (hot), *(o) yu*.  
 water (mineral spring), *onsen*.  
 water-closet, *benjo, chōzuba, haba-kari*.  
 waterfall, *taki*.  
 wave, *nami*.  
 way (manner), *yō, shūkata, ambai*.  
 way (road), *michi*.  
 way in, *hairi-kūchi*.  
 way out, *de-guchi*.  
 we, *watakūshi-domo*, but see p. 48.  
 weak, *yowai*.  
 weapon, *buki, heiki*.  
 wear (intrans. verb), *motsu*.  
 wear (trans. verb), *kiru*.  
 weather, *tenki, yōki*.  
 weave (to), *oru*.  
 Wednesday, *suiyōbi*.  
 weed, *waru-kūsa*.  
 week, *shūkan*.  
 weigh (trans. verb), *hakaru*.  
 weight, *mekata*.  
 well (a), *ido*.  
 well (bodily), *jōbu (na)*.  
 well (to get), *naoru*.  
 well! *mazu, sate*.  
 west, *nishi*.  
 wet (to be), *nurite iru*.  
 whale, *kujira*.

wharf, *ageba*.  
 what? *nani? dō?*  
 wheat, *komugi*.  
 wheel, *wa, kuruma*.  
 when, *toki*, but see pp. 41—2, 84, 184.  
 when? *itsu?*  
 where, *tokoro*.  
 where? *doko?*  
 which? *dore?*  
 while; *aida*, but see pp. 41—2, 242—3.  
 whip, *muchi*.  
 whiskers, *hō-hige*.  
 whistle, *kūchi-bue wo fūku*.  
 white, *shiroi*.  
 who? *dare? donata?* (polite).  
 whole, *mina, sōtai (no)*.  
 wholesome (to be), *kūsuri ni naru*.  
 why? *naze? dō iu wake de?*  
 wick, *shin*.  
 wicked, *warui, aku* (in compounds).  
 wide, *(haba no) hiroi*.  
 widow, *goke, yamome*.  
 width, *haba*.  
 wife, *tsumai*; but see p. 256.  
 wild, rendered by *no* or *yama* prefix-  
 ed to the next word.  
 wild-goose, *gan*.  
 will (testament), *yuigon, yuisho*.  
 willow-tree, *yanagi*.  
 win, (to) *katsu*.  
 wind, *kaze*.  
 wind (to), *maku, kuru*.  
 window, *mado*.  
 wine, *budōshu, sake*.  
 wing, *hane*.  
 winter, *fuyu*.  
 wipe (to), *nuguu, fūku*.  
 wire, *harigane*.  
 wisdom, *chie*.  
 wise, *kashikoi, rikō (na)*.  
 wish (to), *hoshii* (adjective).  
 wistaria, *fuji*.  
 with (by), *de, de motte*.  
 with (together), *to isshe ni*.  
 withdraw (intrans. verb), *shirizoku*.  
 wither (to), *shibowu, kareru*.  
 witness, *shōko-nin*.  
 without, see pp. 129, 188.

wolf, *ōkami*.  
 woman, *onna*, *fujin* (polite).  
 wonder (to), no satisf. equiv.  
 wonderful, *myō (na)*, *fūshigi (na)*,  
*mezurashii*.  
 wood (the substance), *ki*.  
 wood (forest), *mori*.  
 wool, *ke*, *rasha*.  
 word, *kotoba*.  
 work, *shigoto*.  
 work (to), *hataraku*.  
 workman, *shokunin*.  
 workmanship, *deki*, *saiku*.  
 world, *sekai*.  
 worm (earth-), *mimizū*.  
 worth, *atai*, *ne-uchi*.  
 worthless, *tsumaranai*.  
 wound, *kega*, *kizu*.  
 wrap up (to), *tsutsumu*.

wrestle (to), *sumō wo toru*.  
 write (to), *kaku*.  
 wrong (adj.), *warui*, *machigatta*.

## Y

year, *toshi*.  
 yellow, *ki-iroi*.  
 yes, see p. 233.  
 yet (not), *mada*.  
 yesterday, *sakujitsu*, *kinō* (less  
 polite).  
 you, *anata*, *omae*; but see p. 46.  
 young, *wakai*.

## Z

zeal, *nesshin*.  
 zinc, *totan*.

OF

## ALL THE JAPANESE WORDS

## OCCURRING IN THIS WORK.

(All verbs are of the 1st. conjugation, unless marked 2, 3, or irregular. Compound verbs are given under their first member, as *mi-sokonau* under *miru*. When several references to pages are given, the most important reference is placed first.)

A

AI

## A

**a**, like that, in that way : *ā iu*, that kind of, such as that.

**aa!** or **ā!** ah!

**abayo**, goodbye (in baby language).

**abiru** (3), to bathe.

**abu**, a horsefly.

**abunai**, dangerous.

**abura**, a general name for all oil, grease, and fat.

**achi** or **achira**, there.

**aete**, venturing (the present *aeru* is not in use); but sometimes a mere expletive belonging to the written style.

**agari**, ascent, produce.

**agaru**, to rise; to get clear (said of the weather); also to take, to eat or drink (honor.): *agarikomū*, to force one's way up into; *agari-sagari suru*, to go up and down. For *agaru* honorific, see pp 251, 202.

**ageba**, a wharf.

**ageku ni**, as a final result, at last.  
**ageru** (2), to raise, hence to give to a superior. For honorific use of *ageru*, see pp. 250—1.

**ago**, the chin.

**ahiru**, a tame duck.

**ai**, a verbal prefix; see p. 73.

**ai**, indigo, dark blue.

**ai** (properly *ayu*), a kind of trout.

**aida**, an interval, time, while (see p. 41): *aida-gara*, connection, relationship: *aida ga ori-aimasen*, do not get on well together.

**ai-kawarazu**, without change, the same as heretofore.

**aikokū-shin**, patriotism.

**ai-nikui**, coming inopportunistly, happening at an unlucky moment

**aisatsu**, salutation, acknowledgment, response, answer; *aisatsu suru*, to salute, to answer.

**ai-suman**, to be unpardonable, there is no excuse to offer.

**aisuru** (irreg.), to love.  
**aita!** or **aitata!** oh! how painful;  
 see p. 237.  
**aite**, a party (to a transaction), an  
 antagonist (at a game), a com-  
 panion.  
**ajiwai**, taste, flavour.  
**akagane**, copper.  
**akai**, red, brown: *aka-nasu*, a  
 tomato.  
**akambō**, a baby.  
**akami**, a tinge of red.  
**akari**, a light.  
**akarui**, light (not dark).  
**ake-gata**, dawn.  
**akeru** (2), to open (trans.); to  
 begin (intrans.),—said of the New  
 Year.  
**aki**, autumn.  
**aki-mekura**, one who is blind,  
 but has his eyes open.  
**akinai**, trade, commerce.  
**akinau**, to trade.  
**akindo**, a merchant, a dealer.  
**akippoi**, easily wearied, fickle.  
**akiraka** (**na**), clear, evident:  
*akiraka ni*, clearly.  
**akke ni torareru** (2), to be  
 amazed, thunder-struck.  
**akkō**, bad or scurrilous language,  
 abuse.  
**aku**, evil, vice.  
**aku**, to open (intrans.), to  
 become vacant: *aite iru*, to  
 be open, to be unoccupied, not  
 used.  
**aku-hei**, vicious habits.

**akuru**, the Classical form of  
*akeru*, to open, still used colloqu-  
 ially in such expressions as *akuru*  
*hi*, the next day.  
**akūtō**, a villain.  
**ama**, a (Buddhist) nun.  
**amai**, sweet.  
**amami**, a tinge of sweetness.  
**amari**, too much, too; (with a  
 negative) not very, see p. 148.  
**amaru**, to exceed, to remain  
 over.  
**ambai**, way, manner, bodily  
 feelings: *ambai ga warui*, I feel  
 unwell; *dō iu ambai?* how? *yoi*  
*ambai ni*, fortunately.  
**ame**, rain; *ame ga furu*, to rain;  
*ame ni naru*, to come on to rain.  
**ame**, a kind of sweetmeat made of  
 fermented grain.  
**Amerika**, America, the United  
 States: *Amerika-jin*, an Ame-  
 rican; *Amerika no*, American.  
**ami**, a net: *ami wo utsu*, to net  
 (fish).  
**amma**, a shampooer.  
**an**, an opinion, a case, a point,  
 a draft, a bill.  
**ana**, a hole, a cave, a tunnel.  
**anadoru**, to jeer, to revile.  
**anata**, you; see pp. 46—8, 239.  
**andon**, a lamp (of the old-fashioned  
 Japanese style with paper sides).  
**ane**, an elder sister.  
**ani(ki)**, an elder brother; conf.  
 p. 256.  
**ani**, a negative particle; see p. 169.

**anjiru** (3), to be anxious.  
**anna**, that kind of, such as that.  
**annai**, guidance, knowing one's way about, a guide: *annai suru*, to guide.  
**ano**, that (adj.) *ano hito*, he, she; *ano ne!* see p. 239.  
**anshin**, mental ease: *anshin suru*, to feel at ease.  
**an-yo**, the feet, to walk (in baby language).  
**anzu**, an apricot.  
**aoi**, green, blue.  
**aoru**, to slam backwards and forwards (intrans.);—said of a door.  
**ao-suji**, blue lines, e. g., on the forehead.  
**ara!** see p. 237.  
**arai**, rough.  
**arare**, hail.  
**araserareru** (2), to be, hence to go (very honorific); conf. p. 150.  
**arashi**, a storm, a typhoon.  
**arasoi**, a dispute.  
**arasou**, to dispute.  
**aratamaru**, to be renewed, overhauled, altered, rectified.  
**aratameru** (2), to renew, overhaul, examine, alter, rectify.  
**arau**, to wash.  
**arawareru** (2), to show or reveal oneself, to appear.  
**arawasu**, to show, to reveal.  
**arayuru**, see p. 407, note 9.  
**are**, that (subst.); see pp. 53, 48: *are hodo*, as much as that; *are kara*, after that.

**ari**, an ant.  
**ari-awase-mono**, anything that there may happen to be.  
**ari-gachi**, apt to be.  
**arigatai**, thankful (said both of the person who feels thankful, and of the thing for which he is thankful); hence sometimes beneficent: *arigatō (gozaimasū)*, thank you; conf. p. 255.  
**arimasū**, see pp. 221-2.  
**arisama**, a state, a condition.  
**ari-tei**, the facts of a case.  
**aru**, (irreg.) to be; see pp. 170, 190, 221, 129, 210, 223: *de aru*, see p. 216: *ari no mama*, see p. 76. Sometimes *aru* means a certain, some, as in *aru toki*, on a certain occasion, sometimes.  
**aruji**, the master of a house, a host.  
**aruku**, to walk.  
**aru-nashi**, see p. 34.  
**asa**, the morning: *asa-gao*, the morning glory, or convolvulus; *asa-han*, breakfast.  
**asagi**, light blue, light green.  
**asatte**, the day after to-morrow.  
**ase**, perspiration: *ase ga deru*, to perspire; *ase ni naru*, to get into a perspiration.  
**asemo**, prickly heat.  
**ashi**, the foot, the leg; *ashi no yubi*, the toes; *o mi ashi*, see p. 240.  
**ashita**, to-morrow; *ashita no asa*, to-morrow morning.



**asobasu**, an honorific equiv. of the verb *suru*, to do; see p. 250.

**asobi**, a game.

**asobu, asubu**, to play, to amuse oneself.

**asūko**, there: *asūko kara*, thence; *asūko ye*, thither.

**asūkoera**, thereabouts.

**ataeru (2)**, to give, to grant.

**atai**, price, value.

**atama**, the head: *atama-kabuse*, and *atama kara kogoto wo iu*, see p. 406, note 6.

**atarashii**, new, fresh.

**atari**, neighbourhood, hence near, on or about.

**atarimae**, ordinary, generally: *atarimae no*, usual, proper.

**ataru**, to hit the mark, also to be near, as *hi ni ataru*, to sit near the fire: *ni atatte*, just at; *dochira ni atatte?* where?

**atatameru (2)**, to warm (trans.).

**ate**, reliance: *ate ni naru*, to be reliable; *ate ni suru*, to rely on.

**ateru (2)**, to apply one thing to, or use it for, another; to hit: *ate-hameru*, to allot, to assign; *kaze wo ateru*, to have it windy.

**ato**, traces, effects, a sign, behind, afterwards, the rest: *ato de*, or *sono ato*, afterwards; *ato no*, the remaining, other: *ato-saki*, the context, circumstances.

**atsui**, hot.

**atsui**, thick (said of solids).

**atsūkau**, to manage, to undertake.

**atsūsa**, heat, the degree of heat.

**atsūsa**, thickness, the degree of thickness.

**atsumaru**, to collect (intrans.).

**atsumeru (2)**, to collect (trans.).

**atsuraeru (2)**, to order (e. g. things at a shop).

**au**, to meet, to agree, to suit; see also p. 251: *ame ni au*, to get rained upon; *hidoi me ni au*, to experience cruel treatment: *hidoi me ni awaseru*, to treat cruelly.

**awa**, millet.

**awase-mono**, something artificially joined together.

**awaseru (2)**, to cause to meet, hence to add, to join.

**awatadashii**, flurried.

**awateru (2)**, to be flurried,—especially from fright.

**ayamatsu**, to make a mistake.

**ayu**, a species of trout.

**azana**, a nickname.

## B

**ba**, a place;—used only in composition, as *furo-ba*, a bath-place.

**ba**, (auxil. numeral), see p. 110.

**ba**, (conditional suffix) see p. 167.

**babā**, an old woman (rude).

**bai**, double; see also p. 118.

**baishū**, purchase: *baishū suru*, to purchase.

- baka**, a fool; *baka na*, or *baka-rashii*, foolish, absurd; *hito wo baka ni suru*, to make a fool of a person.
- bakarashii**, absurd, foolish.
- bakari**, about, only.
- bake(-mono)**, any supernatural and uncanny creature, a ghost, a goblin.
- bakūchi**, gambling.
- bambutsu**, all things, nature.
- bamme**, a word used to form ordinal numbers; see p. 115.
- bam-meshi**, supper, (late) dinner.
- ban**, a myriad, ten thousand; also used as a pluralising prefix, as *ban-ji*, all things.
- ban**, an evening, a night.
- ban**, number (so-and-so); see p. 115.
- ban**, watch, guard: *ban wo suru*, to keep watch.
- banchi**, the number (of a house in a street).
- bane**, the springs (of a carriage, etc.).
- banji**, all things, everything.
- bankoku**, all countries, international; *bankoku kōhō*, international law.
- bantō**, a head clerk or manager.
- banzuke**, a programme.
- bara**, a thorny bush, hence a rose-bush.
- bara-bara**, helter-skelter.
- bari**, an insult, abusive language: *bari suru*, to revile, to slander.
- basha**, a carriage.
- basho**, a place.
- bassuru** (irreg.), to punish.
- bata**, butter (from English).
- bāya**, an old lady, grandmamma (in baby language).
- bebe**, clothes (in baby language).
- bei** (vulg. for **beshi**), see p. 122.
- Beikoku**, America, the United States (learned style).
- beki**, see pp. 121-2, 132.
- bekkō**, tortoise shell.
- bemmei**, elucidation, explanation: *bemmei suru*, to elucidate.
- benjiru** (3), to discuss.
- benjo**, a water-closet.
- benkō**, eloquence: *benkō no yoi*, eloquent, glib.
- benkyō**, diligence.
- benri**, convenience: *benri no yoi* or *benri (na)*, convenient, *benri no warui*, inconvenient.
- ben-tō**, food carried with one, e. g. luncheon for a picnic.
- beppin**, lit. another quality; hence a superior article, (hence metaph.) a pretty girl. In this last sense the word is familiar or slangy.
- berabō(-me)**, a scoundrel.
- beshi**, see p. 122.
- betsu**, a difference; *betsu ni*, differently, specially; *betsu no*, different, other; *betsu-zumai*, living apart.
- betsudan (no,)** special.
- bettaku**, a villa.

- bettō**, a groom.  
**biiru**, beer (from English).  
**bijin**, a belle.  
**bijutsu**, the fine arts.  
**bimbō**, poverty : *bimbō na*, poor.  
**bin**, a bottle.  
**bin**, the Japanese cue.  
**birōdo**, velvet.  
**bō**, a bludgeon, a stick.  
**bōeki**, trade.  
**bōenkyō**, a telescope.  
**boki**, book-keeping.  
**bōkō**, violent conduct.  
**boku**, a servant, hence I.  
**bokūshi**, a pastor, a clergyman.  
**bokūtō**, a mock sword made of wood.  
**bon**, a tray.  
**bonten-obi**, cheap striped belt worn by coolies and servants.  
**bon-yari**, an onomatopoe for obscurity, tedium, dullness : *bon-yari shīta* dull, dazed, obscure.  
**bōsan**, a Buddhist priest.  
**bōshi**, a hat, a cap.  
**botan**, a peony.  
**botan**, a button (from English).  
**botankyō**, a species of large red plum.  
**botchan**, a little boy ; see p. 240.  
**boy**, a house-servant, a valet (from English).  
**bōzu**, a Buddhist priest (rude).  
**bu**, a copy of a book.  
**bu**, a part, see pp. 118-119.  
**buchōhō**, awkwardness : *buchōhō na*, awkward.
- budō**, grapes : *budō-shu*, wine.  
**buji**, no accident, safe and sound.  
**buki**, a weapon.  
**bukku**, a European book, conf. p. 6.  
**Bukkyō**, Buddhism.  
**Bukkyō**, a Buddhist sutra. (The *kyō* of this word is written with a different Chinese character from the *kyō* of the preceding one.)  
**bummei**, enlightenment, civilisation : *bummei na*, civilised, cultured.  
**bumpai suru**, (irreg.) to distribute.  
**bumpō**, grammar.  
**bun**, a part.  
**Buppō**, Buddhism.  
**ura-ura**, in a sauntering manner.  
**burei**, rudeness ; *burei na*, rude, impertinent ; *go burei*, see p. 247.  
**huri**, a suffix signifying gait, demeanour.  
**busata**, failure to give notice, remissness in paying a visit : *go busata*, see p. 247 ; *watakūshi ni busata de*, without letting me know.  
**bushi**, a warrior.  
**bushō (na)**, indolent, slovenly, lazy.  
**buta**, a pig.  
**butsu**, to beat, to strike : *buchi-korosu*, to beat to death ; *buchi-toosu*, to knock down.

**buttsukeru** (2), (for *buchi-tsūke-ru*) to bump.

**buttsuri to**, slashingly.

**byō**, a tack (nail).

**byōbu**, a screen.

**byōin**, a hospital.

**byōki**, a disease: *byōki (na)*, ill, sick.

**byōnin**, an invalid, a patient.

**byōshin**, a weakling.

## C

**cha**, tea; *cha-nomi-jawan*, a tea-cup; *cha-ya*, a tea-house; *cha wo ireru*, to make tea.

**cha**, (termination of the emphasised gerund), see pp. 166, 182.

**chakūsuru**, (irreg.) to arrive.

**chan**, baby language for *San*, Mr., Mrs., or Miss.

**chanto**, quietly: *chanto shita*, quiet.

**chawan**, a tea-cup, a bowl.

**chaya**, a tea-house.

**chi**, blood: *chi ga deru*, to bleed (intrans.); *chi-gatana*, a blood-stained sword.

**chi-banare**, weaning (of an infant).

**chichi**, a father; but see p. 256.

**chichi**, the breasts, hence milk.

**chie**, intelligence, wisdom.

**chifusu**, typhus; see p. 26.

**chigai**, a difference, a mistake: *chigai nai*, there is no doubt.

**chigau**, to differ, hence to be mistaken, to be the wrong one.

**chihō**, a direction, a district, a locality.

**chiisai** or **chiisa na**, small: *chiisaku naru*, to crouch.

**chikagoro**, recently.

**chikai**, near: *chikai uchi*, soon.

**chikara**, strength: *chikara wo tsūkusu*, to do one's best, to endeavour.

**chikazuki**, friendship, an intimate friend.

**chikuba**, a sort of toy stick on which children ride a-cock-horse: *chikuba no tomo*, a friend from childhood upwards.

**chikushō**, a brute animal, a beast.

**chin**, a Japanese pug. (Pugs are not included under the generic term *inu*, dog.)

**chira-chira**, flutteringly.

**chirasu**, to scatter (as the wind does dead leaves).

**chiri**, dust.

**chirimen**, crape.

**chiru**, to fall (as leaves or as the petals of flowers).

**chishiki**, talent, wisdom.

**chishitsu-gaku**, geology.

**chisō**, (generally with the honorific *go* prefixed) a feast.

**chi(t)to**, see *choito*.

**chizu**, a map.

**chō**, an auxiliary numeral; see p. 108.

**chō**, a butterfly.  
**chō**, a measure of distance equivalent to about 120 yards English. There are 36 *chō* in the official *ri* or league. *Chō* also means street or ward: *ni-chō-me*, the second ward (of such and such a street).  
**chō**, a million.  
**chōai**, love: *chōai suru*, to love.  
**chōbatsu**, punishment: *chōbatsu suru*, to punish.  
**chōchaku suru** (irreg.), to give a thrashing, to beat.  
**chōchin**, a lantern.  
**chōchō**, a butterfly.  
**chō-chō**, an onomatopoe for the sound of beating.  
**chō-chō**, garrulously.  
**chōdai suru** (irreg.), to receive respectfully; conf. p. 251.  
**chōdo**, just, exactly.  
**chōhō**, convenience: *chōhō na*, convenient, useful.  
**choi-choi (to)**, little by little, just a little.  
**choito, choto, chotto, chito**, or **chitto**, just a little, a trifle: *choito shīta*, slight, trifling; **chotto** is also used to signify about, as in *chotto ichi-nen*, just about a year.  
**chōjō**, the summit of a mountain.  
**chokki**, a waistcoat.  
**Chōsen**, Korea.  
**chōteki**, a rebel, a traitor.  
**chō-tsugai**, a hinge.  
**cho(t)**, see *choito*.

**chōyō**, age; see p. 415, note 5.  
**chōza**, sitting long, paying an interminable visit: *chōza suru*, to pay too long a visit.  
**chōzu**, water to wash the hands with: *chōzu-ba*, a water-closet; *chōzu-bachi* or *chōzu-darai*, a washhand-basin.  
**chū**, in; conf. p. 146.  
**chū**, loyalty (to a superior): *chū wo tsūkusu*, to behave with perfect loyalty.  
**chūgen**, a *samurai's* retainer of the lower sort.  
**chūgi**, loyalty; conf. *chū*.  
**chūi**, attention, care: *chūi suru*, to pay attention.  
**chūjō**, a lieutenant-general, a vice-admiral.  
**chūko**, the Middle Ages.  
**chūmon**, an order (e. g. at a shop: *chūmon-dōri*, as ordered).  
**chūryaku**, see p. 430, note 7.  
**chū(shaku)**, commentary.  
**chūshi**, cessation, stoppage.  
**chūshin**, the centre.  
**chūshin**, a loyal retainer.  
**chūtō**, second class, middling.

## D

**da**, see pp. 62, 222.  
**dai**, great, big, very. Used in compounds, as *dai-kirai*, greatly disliking.  
**dai**, a word used to form ordinal numbers, see p. 115; *dai ichi ni*, in the first place.

**dai**, a table.  
**dai**, a reign, a generation.  
**dai**, the auxiliary numeral for vehicles.  
**daibu**, a good deal.  
**daichi**, the ground.  
**daidai**, an orange (hard-skinned sort).  
**dai-dokoro**, a kitchen.  
**daigakkō**, } a university.  
**daigaku**, }  
**dai-gennin**, a lawyer.  
**daiji**, importance: *daiji na*, important; *daiji ni suru*, to take great care of.  
**daijin**, a minister of state.  
**daijōbu (na)**, all right, safe and sound.  
**daikai**, the ocean.  
**daikon**, a large species of radish.  
**daiku**, a carpenter.  
**daimyō**, the title of a class of nobles in feudal times; conf. p. 7.  
**dairi**, a substitute: *dairi-ininjō*, a power of attorney.  
**dai-sūki**, very fond.  
**daitai**, the general character of a thing, its main features.  
**daitōryō**, a president,—of the United States, etc.  
**dajaku (na)**, indolent.  
**dake**, only, about, as... as.  
**damaru**, to keep silence.  
**damasu**, to cheat.  
**dampān**, deliberation, consultation.

**dan**, a step: *dan-dan*, gradually; see also p. 326, note 23.  
**dangi**, a speech, a sermon, advice.  
**dango**, a kind of dumpling.  
**dangō**, consultation: *dangō suru*, to take counsel.  
**danjiru (3)**, to consult.  
**danki**, heat.  
**danna**, a master: *danna san* sometimes means you or he, see p. 47.  
**dano**, a postposition; see p. 80.  
**danshi**, a male child, a man.  
**darake**, a suffix meaning smeared or covered with, as *chi-darake*, blood-smeared; *doro-darake*, all covered with mud.  
**dare?** who?—*dare ka*, *dare mo*, *dare de mo*, see p. 52; *dare-dake?* exactly who?  
**darō**, see p. 222.  
**dasu**, to take out, to put outside; see also p. 218.  
**dashi-mono**, something put forth, a show.  
**datta**, see p. 222.  
**datte!** see p. 406, note 4.  
**de**, a postposition; see p. 62: *de aru*, *de arimasū*, and *de gozaimasū*, see p. 222; *de gozaimasū no*, see p. 80; *de mo*, see pp. 55, 95; *de motte*, see p. 73; *de wa*, see pp. 64, 97.  
**de-guchi**, an exit, the way out.  
**de-iri**, the *entrée* to a house: *de-iri no isha*, a family physician.  
**de-kakeru (2)**, to start off.  
**de-kata**, a troupe of actors.

**deki** (generally with honorific prefix (*o*), or **dekimono**, any thing which *comes out* on the skin, as a boil, a sore; *deki* also means workmanship, produce.

**dekiru** (3), to come out, etc.; see p. 202: *deki-agaru*, to be finished, ready.

**dempata**, landed property.

**dempō**, a telegram.

**densembyō**, an infectious disease.

**denshin**, telegraphy: *denshin-kyoku*, a telegraph-office.

**deru** (2), to come out of, to issue forth, to go out: *de-au*, to meet out of doors, to encounter; *de-kakeru*, to go out.

**de-shabaru**, to stick out, to obtrude (intrans.).

**deshi**, a pupil, a disciple.

**deshita**, see p. 223.

**deshō**, see p. 223.

**desū**, see pp. 64, 223: *desu ga*, see p. 286.

**do**, (concessive suffix), see p. 167.

**do**, a time (*une fois*): *ichi-dō*, once.

**dō**, same, e.g. *dōjitsu*, the same day; *dōyō*, the same manner.

**dō?** how?—*dō de mo*, anyhow; *dō itashimashite*, see p. 285, No. 3; *dō iu?* what kind of? what like? *dō (ni) ka*, *kō (ni) ka*, see p. 301, No. 7; *dō suru?* what shall you do? *dō shite?* how? *dō shite mo*, do what you will, in any case; *dō shita mon' da?* see bottom of p. 301.

**dobu**, a ditch.

**dōbutsu**, an animal.

**dochi?** or **dochira**, where? sometimes which?—for this word with *ka*, *mo*, or *de mo* added, see p. 52.

**dodoitsu**, a kind of popular song; see p. 451.

**dōgi**, a motion (at a public meeting, etc.).

**dōgu**, a utensil; *dōgu-ya*, a second-hand shop, a dealer in second-hand wares.

**dōi**, the same opinion.

**Doitsu**, Germany; *Doitsu-jin*, a German; *Doitsu no*, German.

**dōka**, please; but see p. 255.

**dokkoisho!** see p. 237.

**doko?** where? *doko ka*, *doko mo*, *doko de mo*, see p. 52; *doko kara?* whence? *doko made?* how far? *doko made mo*, see p. 71.

**dokoera?** whereabouts?

**dokoro**, see p. 43.

**doku**, poison: *doku ni naru*, to be unwholesome.

**dokūshin(-mono)**, a bachelor.

**domo**, a pluralising suffix; see p. 29.

**do(mo)**, (concessive suffix), p. 167.

**dōmo!** see p. 237.

**don**, bang: *don to*, with a banging noise.

**donata?** who?—*donata ka*, *donata mo*, *donata de mo*, see p. 52.

**donna?** what kind of? what like? *donna ni...mo*, however much.

**dono** ? which ? (adj.): *dono kurai* ?  
how much ?  
**dono**, Mr. (in book language).  
**dore** ? which ? (subst.): *dore-dake* ?  
what amount ? *dore ka*, *dore mo*,  
*dore de mo*, see p. 52 ; *dore hodo* ?  
how much ?  
**dōri**, reason.  
**doro**, much : *doro-ashi*, muddy  
feet ; *doro-darake*, all muddy ;  
*doro-michi*, a muddy road.  
**dorobō**, a thief.  
**dōsuru** (irreg.), to be agitated.  
**dote**, an embankment, a bank.  
**dōtoku**, morality : *dōtoku-tetsuga-*  
*ku*, moral philosophy.  
**doya-doya**, tumultuously.  
**doyōbi**, Saturday.  
**dozō**, a mud godown.  
**dōzo**, please ; but see p. 255.

## E

**e!** eh ! eh ?  
**e**, a picture.  
**e**, an inlet with a stream running  
into it.  
**ebi**, a prawn.  
**eda**, a branch of a tree, river, etc.  
**egaku**, to paint (pictures).  
**ei!** ah ! oh !  
**Eigo**, the English language.  
**Ei(koku)**, England.  
**ekaki**, a painter.  
**embi-fūku**, a swallow-tail coat.  
**empitsu**, a pencil.  
**empō**, a long way off : *empō na*,  
distant, far.

**en**, a *yen* or Japanese dollar =  
about fifty cents of American  
money.  
**endan**, a rostrum.  
**endō-mame**, peas.  
**engawa**, a verandah.  
**engumi**, marriage.  
**en-kin**, distance, how far ?  
**enko**, to sit (in baby language) ;  
see p. 240.  
**ennichi**, a festival day ; hence a  
fair.  
**enryo**, diffident : *enryo suru*, to be  
diffident.  
**ensoku**, an excursion, a picnic.  
**enzetsu**, a lecture, a speech : *en-*  
*zetsu suru*, to lecture.  
**erabu**, to choose.  
**erai**, wonderful, able, very.  
**eri**, a collar.  
**eru** (2), to get ; conf. p. 199.  
**eru**, to choose : *eri-dasu*, to select  
from among several.  
**eshaku**, an apology, a bow :  
*eshaku wo suru*, to bow, to  
apologise.  
**Ezo**, the island of Yezo.

## F

**fu**, a negative prefix.  
**fū**, two (in enumeration).  
**fū!** oh !  
**fu-annai**, ignorant of, unac-  
quainted with.  
**fuben**, inconvenience : *fuben na*,  
inconvenient.  
**fuda**, a ticket.



**fudan**, the ordinary routine: *fudan no*, usual, common.

**fude**, a pen: *fude-sashi*, a pen-stand.

**fudōsan**, immovable property (for instance, land).

**fueru** (2), to increase (intrans.).

**fūfu**, husband and wife: *fūta-fūfu*, two married couples.

**fuhai**, putrefaction: *fuhai suru*, to rot.

**fuji**, the wistaria plant.

**fujin**, a lady.

**Fuji(-san)**, Fusiyama.

**fujiyū**, inconvenience, discomfort: *fujiyū na*, inconvenient.

**fūkai**, deep.

**fūkeiki**, hard times, depression of trade.

**fūkeru** (2), properly to deepen, but scarcely used except in *yo ga fūkeru*, to become late at night; *toshi ga fūkeru*, to grow old. Also to be steeped in (e.g. in wine and lust).

**fūku**, an auxiliary numeral; sec p. 108.

**fūku**, to blow (e.g. the wind): *fūki-mawasu*, to blow round.

**fūku**, to wipe.

**fūku-biki**, a species of lottery or raffle in which every one draws some prize.

**fūkumu**, to contain, to include.

**fūkurasu**, to distend, to swell (trans.).

**fūkuro**, a bag: *o fūkuro*, a mother, but see p. 256.

**fūkuzatsu**, a medley, a complication: *fūkuzatsu na*, disorderly, complicated.

**fumbetsu**, discrimination.

**fu-mimochi**, vice, immorality.

**fumu**, to tread (on): *fumi-hazusu*, to stumble; *fumi-shimeru*, to tread firmly.

**fun**, a fraction, a tenth part, a minute: *jū-go-fun*, a quarter of an hour.

**funa-watashi**, a ferry.

**fune**, any kind of boat or ship: *fune ni you*, to be sea-sick.

**funinjō**, unkindness.

**funkwazan**, a volcano.

**Fūransu**, France: *Fūransu-jin*, a Frenchman; *Fūransu no*, French.

**fureru** (2), to touch; hence to infringe.

**furi**, a fall (of rain or snow).

**furi**, airs, gait, pretence.

**furo**, a bath: *furo-ba*, a bath-place.

**furokku-kōto**, a frock-coat (from the English word).

**furoshiki**, a cloth used to wrap up parcels.

**furu**, to fall,—said only of rain, snow, hail, etc.: *furi-dasu*, to come on to rain, etc.; *furi-komerareru*, to be kept indoors by rain or snow; *furi-komu*, to come into the house (said of rain, etc.).

**furu**, to brandish, to wave: *furi-muku*, to turn and face.

**furue-goe**, a quivering voice.

**furueru** (2), to quiver, to tremble.  
**furui**, old (said only of things):  
*furui-dōgu*, an old utensil or curio.  
**furuu**, to shake (trans.).  
**fūsagaru**, to be obstructed, to be quite full.  
**fūseru** (2), to lie down, to go to bed.  
**fūsetsu**, rumour, report.  
**fū-shi-awa-se na**, unhappy.  
**fūshigi**, a strange thing, a miracle: *fūshigi na*, strange.  
**fūshin**, doubt: *fūshin ni omou*, to consider suspicious, to doubt.  
**fūshin**, building: *fūshin-chū*, while building, while undergoing repairs.  
**fū-shinsetsu (na)**, unkind.  
**fūshōchi**, dissent, objection: *fūshōchi wo iu*, to object.  
**fusūke**, whisky (from English).  
**fūsuru**, to submit (trans.), to hand over.  
**fūta**, a lid.  
**fūtago**, twins.  
**fūtari**, two persons: *fūtari-mae*, portions for two.  
**fūta(tsu)**, two: *fūtatsu-me*, second; *fūtatsu mitsu*, two or three; *fūtatsu oki*, every third (lit. leaving out two).  
**fūto**, suddenly, accidentally.  
**fūtodoki (na)**, insolent.  
**fūtokoro**, properly the bosom of a dress, but used to signify a breast pocket.  
**fūton**, a bed-quilt.

**fūtoru**, to grow fat; *fūtotta*, fat.  
**futsū (no)**, usual, general.  
**futsugō**, inconvenience: *futsugō na*, inconvenient; less often improper.  
**futsūka**, two days, the second day of the month: *futsūka-me*, the second day; *futsūka-yoi*, the day after a carousal.  
**Futsūkoku**, France.  
**fuyasu**, to increase (trans.).  
**fuyu**, winter.  
**fuzai**, not at home, absent.  
**fūzoku**, manners, customs.

## G

**ga**, a postposition; see pp. 65, 89-91, 140-1.  
**gachō**, a tame goose.  
**gaitan**, lamentation.  
**gake**, a talus, a precipice.  
**gake**, while, during, as *kaeri-gake*, while returning, on the way back.  
**gakkari**, a sort of onomatopoe for bodily exhaustion.  
**gakkō**, a school.  
**gakkwa**, a subject, or line of study.  
**gaku**, science, learning.  
**gaku**, a tablet, a picture (oblong and hard).  
**gakumon**, study, learning: *gakumon suru*, to study.  
**gakūsha**, a learned man.  
**gakūshi**, a graduate

**gakūtai**, a band of music.  
**gaman**, patience: *gaman suru*, to be patient.  
**gan**, a wild-goose.  
**gara**, a suffix; see p. 312, footnote 18.  
**garasu**, glass (from the Dutch).  
**garu**, a verbal suffix; see p. 130.  
**Gasshūkoku**, the United States.  
**gasū**, (for *gozaimasū*) see p. 64.  
**gata**, a pluralising particle; see p. 29.  
**gaten**, comprehension, acquiescence: *gaten suru*, to comprehend, to acquiesce; *gaten no ikanu*, incomprehensible.  
**gatera**, while, as, by way of.  
**gedai**, a title; conf. p. 333, footnote 31.  
**gehin (na)**, vulgar, base.  
**gei**, an accomplishment, a trick.  
**geisha**, a singing-girl.  
**gejo**, a maid-servant.  
**genan**, a man-servant.  
**gen-an**, the draft of a document.  
**gen-in**, cause, origin.  
**genkin**, ready money, cash.  
**genkotsu**, the knuckles.  
**genkwa(n)**, the entrance to a house, a porch.  
**genron**, speech, discussion.  
**genso**, an essence, an element, a factor, an atom.  
**genzai**, the present time.  
**gerō**, a (low-class) man-servant.  
**gesū**, (for *gozaimasū*) see p. 64.

**getsu**, a month;—used only in compounds, as *ik-ka-getsu*, one month.  
**getsuyōbi**, Monday.  
**gi**, duty, signification, affair.  
**gichō**, a chairman, a president.  
**gidai**, a subject of discussion.  
**gijō**, also **gi-jidō**, the hall in which the Diet meets.  
**giin**, a member of an assembly.  
**gikwai**, a public assembly, the Imperial Diet.  
**gimon**, a question.  
**gimu**, duty, an obligation.  
**gin**, silver.  
**ginen**, doubt, suspicion.  
**ginkō**, a bank, (for money): *gin-kō-shihai*, a bank-note.  
**giri**, duty, right or proper feeling.  
**giri**, only; see *kiri*.  
**giron**, argument.  
**giyaman**, glass (the material).  
**go**, five.  
**go**, an honorific prefix; see pp. 143, 245-7.  
**go**, after: *sono go*, since then.  
**go**, the game of checkers: *go wo utsu*, to play at checkers.  
**gō**, a designation, a name, a number.  
**gō**, a district.  
**gobu-gobu**, an onomatopoeia for the gurgling sound made by a liquid when poured out.  
**gochisō**, a feast.  
**gogo**, the afternoon.  
**go-gwatsu**, May.

**gohan**, rice, food.

**go-ishī**, a counter at checkers.

**go-jō** (五常), the five cardinal virtues according to Confucius, viz., *jin*, *gi*, *rei*, *chi*, *shin*, i.e., benevolence, righteousness, propriety, wisdom, and sincerity.

**go-jū**, fifty.

**goke**, a widow.

**goku**, extremely, very.

**gokuraku**, paradise.

**Go-kyō**, see p. 408, note 10.

**gomen**, (properly **go men**), lit. august pardon; *gomen nasai*, please excuse me.

**gomi**, dust (on things).

**godayū**, the title of a high official of former times, a kind of vice-minister.

**Go-on**, see p. 7.

**goran nasaru** (irreg.), to deign to look; conf. pp. 11 and 251. Occasionally *goranjiru* (3) occurs in the same sense.

**go-ri muchū**, great perplexity (see p. 123).

**goro**, time, about, as *kono goro*, now; *san-ji-goro*, about three o'clock.

**go-roku**, five or six.

**gosho**, a palace.

**gosū**, see p. 64.

**goten**, a palace.

**gotoki**, like, such as; see p. 121.

**goto** (*ni*), a suffix meaning each, every.

**Gotto**, God; see p. 6.

**goza**, rush-matting.

**gozaimasū**, { to be; see pp. 64,  
171, 221-3, 242:  
**gozarimasū**, { *de gozaimasū*, see  
**gozaru**, { pp. 64, 138, 222.

**gozen**, boiled rice, (hence) a meal.

**gozen**, the forenoon.

**gu**, stupid; *gufu*, my father (see p. 257).

**gujin**, a dolt, an ignoramus.

**gumai**, stupid and ignorant.

**gumpuku**, military uniform.

**gun**, a district.

**gunkan**, a war-vessel.

**gurai**, about, approximately.

**gururi**, around.

**gusai**, my wife; see p. 257.

**gushi**, (with honorific prefix *o*), the Court word for hair.

**gutto**, tightly, suddenly.

**guzu-guzu**, a word descriptive of the sound or act of complaining or scolding.

**gwaikoku**, foreign countries, abroad; *gwaikoku-jin*, a foreigner; *gwaikoku no*, foreign.

**gwaimushō**, the foreign office.

**gwaitō**, an overcoat.

**gwanko** (*na*), obstinate, inveterately prejudiced.

**gwan-yaku**, a pill.

**gwappi**, the day of the month, a date.

**gwatsu**, a month; see p. 116.

**gyō**, work, business.

**gyōsha**, the driver of a carriage.

**gyū(-niku)**, beef.

## H

- ha**, a leaf (of a tree).  
**ha**, a tooth: *ha-migaki*, tooth-powder; *ha ga itai*, I have a toothache.  
**haba**, width: *haba no hiroi*, wide.  
**habakari**, shamefacedness, diffidence, (hence) a water-closet.  
**habakaru**, to be ashamed, to dread.  
**habikoru**, to spread (intrans.); to get disseminated.  
**habuku**, to abridge, hence to omit.  
**hachi**, a bee, a wasp.  
**hachi**, a pot.  
**hachi**, eight.  
**hachi-gwatsu**, August.  
**hachi-jū**, eighty.  
**hachimaki**, a handkerchief tied round the head:—*wo suru*, to tie handkerchief, etc.  
**hadaka** (**na**), naked.  
**hadan**, breaking off: *hadan suru*, to break off (e.g. intercourse).  
**haeru** (2), to grow (intrans.).  
**hagaki**, a post-card.  
**hagane**, steel.  
**hagi**, the lespedeza shrub.  
**haha**, a mother; but see pp 256—7.  
**ha-ha**! ho! ho! I see.  
**hai**, the auxiliary numeral for cupfuls of liquid.  
**hai**, a fly.
- hai**, ashes.  
**hai!** same as *hei!*  
**haiken suru** (irreg.), to look respectfully at something belonging to a superior; conf. pp. 11 and 251.  
**hairi-kūchi**, an entrance, the way in.  
**hairu**, to go in, to enter: *haitte iru*, to be inside, to be contained.  
**ha-isha**, a dentist.  
**haishaku suru** (irreg.), to borrow, see p. 251.  
**haitatsu-nin**, a postman.  
**haji**, shame, humiliation: *haji wo kaku*, to be put to shame.  
**haji**, the edge, ledge, or end of anything.  
**hajimari**, the beginning.  
**hajimaru**, to begin (intrans.).  
**hajime**, the beginning.  
**hajimeru** (2), to begin (trans.); conf. bottom of p. 92.  
**hajimete** (gerund of *hajimeru*), for the first time, never before: conf. p. 324, No. 21.  
**haka**, a tomb.  
**hakama**, a kind of wide trousers worn in half full dress.  
**hakaru**, to weigh, to estimate, to plot: *hakarazu*, unintentionally.  
**haki-dame**, a dust-heap.  
**hakkiri** (to), clearly.  
**hakkō**, issuing, publication:  
**hakkō-teishi**, suspension (of a newspaper by the authorities).  
**hako**, a box.

- hakobu**, to transport, to convey.  
**haku**, a count (noble).  
**haku**, to spit, to vomit: *tan wo haki-tsūkeru*, to spit on a person.  
**haku**, to sweep.  
**haku**, to wear or put on the feet or legs.  
**hakubutsu-kwan**, a museum.  
**hakumai**, hulled rice.  
**hakurai**, imported from abroad: *hakurai-hin*, an imported article.  
**hakurankwai**, an exhibition.  
**hakūshaku**, the title of count.  
**hakūshu**, clapping of hands.  
**hama**, the sea-beach, the strand: *hama-be*, ditto.  
**hambun**, half: *hambun-chūgai*, a difference of half.  
**ha-migaki**, tooth-powder.  
**hamono**, a blade.  
**han**, a clan (in feudal Japan).  
**han**, half: *han-nichi*, half the day, *han-nigori*, see p. 22 and conf. p. 20; *jū-ichi-ji han*, half-past eleven.  
**han**, rice, a meal.  
**hana**, a flower, a blossom: *hana-ike* or *hana-tate*, a flower-vase; *hana-mi*, going to see the blossoms; *hana-nūko* a bridegroom; *hana-yome*, a bride.  
**hana**, the nose: *hana-fūki*, a pocket-handkerchief; *hana no saki*, the tip of the nose.  
**hanahada**, very; *hanahada motte*, see p. 73.  
**hanahadashii**, excessive, extreme.  
**hanare-mono**, a separate or separable thing.  
**hanareru** (2), to separate from, to part with.  
**hanashi**, a story, a talk, something said or told: *hanashi no tsuide*, apropos of something said.  
**hanasu**, to speak, to tell: *hanashi-kakeru*, to break off in the middle of saying something.  
**hane**, a feather, a wing.  
**han-eri**, a kind of kerchief used by women to trim the front part of a dress near the neck.  
**haneru** (2), to splash,—as mud (intrans.); to cut off,—as a head (trans.).  
**hankyō**, an echo.  
**hanshi**, a common kind of writing-paper.  
**hanshō**, a fire-bell.  
**hantō**, a peninsula.  
**haori**, a sort of coat worn by the upper and middle classes as half full dress.  
**happi**, a kind of cheap livery-coat worn by servants and coolies.  
**hara**, a moor.  
**hara**, the abdomen: *hara ga heru*, to be hungry; *hara ga itai*, to have a stomach-ache; *hara wo kiru*, to commit *harakiri*; *hara wo lateru*, to get angry.  
**harai**, a payment.  
**hara-kiri**, see p. 34.

- haran**, surging billows, hence any tumultuous scene.
- harau**, to clear away (trans.); hence to pay.
- hara-wata**, the intestines; *hara-wata ga fuhai suru*, (lit. the intestines rotting), metaph. for insincerity and inconsistency.
- hareru** (2), to clear (intrans.),—said of the sky or clouds.
- hari**, a pin, a needle.
- hari-gami**, a paper label; *hari-gami wo suru*, to paste on a label.
- harigane**, wire.
- hari-tsūke**, crucifixion: *hari-tsūke ni suru*, to crucify.
- haru**, to stick (trans.).
- haru**, spring(-time).
- haruka**, afar.
- hasami**, scissors.
- hasamu**, to cut with scissors.
- hasen**, shipwreck: *hasen ni au*, to be shipwrecked.
- hashi**, chopsticks.
- hashi**, a bridge.
- hashigo**, a ladder: *hashigo-dan*, a staircase.
- hashira**, a post; also the auxiliary numeral for Shintō gods and goddesses.
- hashiru**, to run.
- hasu**, a lotus.
- hasu ni**, obliquely.
- hata**, the side,—e.g. of a canal or of a well.
- hata**, a flag.
- hatachi**, twenty years of age.
- hatake**, a vegetable field.
- hatamoto**, one of a rank in feudal Japan which came next to that of *daimyō*.
- hataraki**, work, action.
- hataraku**, to work.
- hatashite**, after all, really.
- hate-na!** well I never! how extraordinary!
- hateru** (2), to finish (intrans.).
- hato**, a pigeon.
- hatsubo**, a blister.
- hatsugen**, speech: *hatsugen no kenri*, the right of speech; *hatsugen-ja*, a speaker, a propounder.
- hatsūka**, twenty days, the twentieth day of the month.
- hatsumeï**, an invention, a discovery, inventive genius.
- hattatsu**, development, progress: *hattatsu suru*, to develop (intrans.).
- hatto**, an onomatopoeia for starting,—as with fright or sudden recollection of something forgotten.
- haya-goshi**, see *koshi*.
- hau**, to creep.
- hayai**, quick, early.
- hayari**, a fashion: *hayari no*, fashionable; *hayari-gi*, a fashionable craze.
- hayaru**, to be wide-spread (e.g. a disease), to be fashionable.
- hayashi**, a forest.
- hayasu**, to grow (trans.),—e.g. a beard.

**haya-tsūkegi**, a lucifer match.  
**hazu**, necessity, should, ought ;  
 conf. p. 41.  
**hazukashii**, bashful,  
**hazukashimeru** (2), to put to  
 shame, to insult.  
**hazukashisa**, bashfulness.  
**hazure**, the end (e.g. of a village).  
**hazureru**(2), to come out of its  
 proper place, to miss, to fail.  
**he!** **hei!** or **hai!** yes; but see  
 bottom of p. 234.  
**hebi**, a snake.  
**hedo**, vomit: *hedo wo haku*, to  
 vomit.  
**hei!** same as *he!*  
**hei**, a hedge, a fence.  
**hei**, broken down, effete; see p.  
 257.  
**Heika**, Your, His, or Her Majesty.  
**heiki**, a weapon.  
**heikin**, an average.  
**heisha**, our firm; see p. 257.  
**heishi**, a soldier, troops.  
**heisotsu**, a common soldier.  
**heitai**, a soldier, troops.  
**heizei** (no), usual.  
**hempī**, out-of-the way.  
**hempō**, requital; *hempō-gaeshi*,  
 tit for tat.  
**hen**, a change: *hen na*, odd, queer.  
**hen**, a neighbourhood, a locality.  
**hen**, a time (*une fois*).  
**hen**, a section of a book, a  
 treatise.  
**henji**, an answer.  
**henkwa**, a change.

**hentō**, an answer: *hentō suru*, to  
 answer.  
**herasu**, to diminish (trans.).  
**heru**, to diminish (intrans.).  
**heru** (2), to pass through.  
**heta** (na), a bad hand at, un-  
 skilful.  
**heya**, a room, a cabin.  
**hi**, the sun, hence a day: *hi ga ku-  
 reru*, the day is waning, dark-  
 ness approaching; *hi no de*, sun-  
 rise; *hi no iri*, sunset.  
**hi**, fire.  
**hī**, one (in enumeration).  
**hibachi**, a brazier.  
**hibashi**, fire-tongs.  
**hidari**, the left (side).  
**hidoi**, harsh, cruel: *hidoi me ni  
 au*, to experience harsh treat-  
 ment; *hidoi me ni awaseru*, to  
 treat harshly.  
**hieru** (2), to be cold.  
**higasa**, a parasol.  
**higashi**, east: *higashi-kita*, north-  
 east; *higashi-minami*, south-  
 east.  
**hige**, the beard: *hige wo hayasu*,  
 to grow a beard.  
**hiji**, the elbow.  
**hijō** (na), unusual, extraordinary.  
**hikari**, light (in the abstract).  
**hikaru**, to shine, to glitter.  
**hiki**, an auxiliary numeral; see p.  
 109.  
**hiki-dashi**, a drawer.  
**hiki-fuda**, a circular, an adver-  
 tisement.



**hiki-shio**, low tide.  
**hikkomu**, to retire inside.  
**hikkonuki suru** (irreg.), to draw (a sword).  
**hikkuri-kaesu**, to upset.  
**hīku**, to pull, to draw, to withdraw, hence to quote: *hiki-dasu*, to draw out; *hiki-nuku*, to draw (e.g. a sword); *hiki-utsuru*, to remove (intrans.), to change house.  
**hīkui**, low.  
**hikutsu**, servility: *hikutsu na*, servile.  
**hīkyaku-sen**, a mail steamer.  
**hīkyō**, cowardice: *hīkyō na*, cowardly.  
**hima**, an interval, leisure: *hima wo yaru*, to dismiss, also to allow to go on leave.  
**himashi no abura**, castor-oil.  
**himitsu (na)**, secret.  
**hinata**, the sun (only in the sense of sunlight): *hinata ye hosu*, to dry in the sun.  
**hineru**, to twist (trans.).  
**hinkō**, conduct: *hinkō no ii*, well-conducted, moral.  
**Hiragana**, the cursive form of the Japanese syllabary.  
**hirakeru (2)**, to be opened out, to become civilised.  
**hiraku**, to open, to civilise.  
**hirattai**, flat.  
**hiroi**, broad.  
**hiroi** (with prefix *o*), see p. 241.  
**hiroi-mono**, something picked up, a find.

**hiromaru**, to spread (intrans.).  
**hiromeru (2)**, to spread (trans.).  
**hirou**, to pick up, hence to find.  
**hiru (3)**, to dry (intrans.).  
**hiru**, day-time, noon; *hiru (-go-zen)*, the midday meal, luncheon.  
**hiru-sugi**, the afternoon.  
**hisashii**, long (of time).  
**hisō suru** (irreg.), to guard jealously, to treasure up.  
**hisuru** (irreg.), to compare.  
**hissori to**, quiet, deserted.  
**hītai**, the brow, the forehead.  
**hīto**, a person, a human being; conf. p. 48: *hīto-gara*, personal appearance, a distinguished air; *hīto-goroshi*, murder, manslaughter, a murderer; *hīto-me*, public notice; *hīto-mezurashii*, rare (of visitors, etc.); *ano hīto*, he, she.  
**hītoe**, properly one fold; hence single. *Hītoe ni*, sometimes means earnestly, only, please.  
**hītori**, one person, hence alone: *hītori-de ni*, of itself, spontaneously.  
**hīto(tsu)**, one; sometimes whole, all, same: *hīto-ban*, all night long; *hīto-me*, one look; *hīto-tōri*, generally; *hītotsu michi*, the same road; *hītotsu oki*, alternate.  
**hitsuyō (na)**, indispensable.  
**hiya**, cold; hence, with the honorific prefix *o*, cold water (so called at Court and by women).  
**hiyo**, the Court word for a shirt.

**hiyori**, the weather.  
**hiza**, the knee; *hiza wo tsūku*, to fall on one's knees.  
**hizuke**, a date (of the month, etc.).  
**ho**, a sail; *ho-bashira*, a mast.  
**hō**, a law, a rule, a usage.  
**hō**, side; but see p. 144; *hō ga yoi* (or *ii*), see pp. 177, 255.  
**hō**, the cheeks.  
**hōbō**, on all sides, everywhere.  
**hōchō**, a knife.  
**hodo**, degree, quantity, proper limit, about, as *nan-ri hodo?* about how many miles?—Also as much as, conf. pp. 113, 145, 147; *hodo naku*, forthwith.  
**hoeru** (2), to bark; *hoe-kakaru*, to spring at with a bark.  
**hōgaku**, a direction (point of the compass).  
**hō-hige**, whiskers.  
**hohō**! oh!  
**hōhō**, manner, way, rule.  
**ho-ho-ho**! the sound of laughter.  
**hoka**, another place, besides, except: *no hoka ni*, besides; ... *suru ni hoka wa nai*, there is nothing for it but to; ... *hoka de mo nai ga*, see p. 287, No. 26.  
**hokennin**, an underwriter.  
**hokku**, a stanza of seventeen syllables; see p. 449.  
**hoko**, a fork (from the English).  
**hōkō-nin**, a servant.  
**hokori**, dust (in the air).  
**homburi**, regular rain,—not a mere shower.

**home**, praise.  
**homeru** (2), to praise.  
**hon**, a book.  
**hon**, an auxiliary numeral; see p. 109.  
**hone**, a bone: *hone ga oreru* or *hone wo oru*, to take a great deal of trouble.  
**hongoku**, one's native country.  
**hon-in**, lit. the present member, used by members of the Diet or other assemblies in the sense of I, me.  
**honō**, a flame.  
**honshō**, the original and true character.  
**hontō**, truth: *hontō no*, true, real.  
**hon-ya**, a book-store, hence a bookseller.  
**hon-yaku**, a translation: *hon-yaku suru*, to translate.  
**honzon**, see p. 422, foot-note 12.  
**hōō**, a phoenix.  
**hōpeta**, the cheeks.  
**hora(-ana)**, a cave.  
**hōrensō**, spinach.  
**horeru** (2), to be in love.  
**hori**, a canal, a moat.  
**horimono**, a carving.  
**hōritsu**, a law: *hōritsu-gaku*, legal studies.  
**horobiru** (3), to be overthrown or ruined.  
**horobosu**, to overthrow, to ruin.  
**horu**, to dig, to excavate, to carve.  
**hōru**, to throw.

**hoshi**, a star.  
**hoshii**, desirous; see p. 65, and conf. *oshii*.  
**hosoi**, narrow: *hoso-nagai*, slender.  
**hōsō**, small-pox.  
**hossuru** (irreg.), to wish.  
**hosu**, to dry (trans.).  
**hotaru**, a fire-fly.  
**hotoke**, a Buddha.  
**hotondo**, almost; (with a negative) hardly.  
**hototogisu**, a cuckoo.  
**hōyū**, a friend.  
**hōzai-gaki**, a doctor's prescription.  
**hōzu**, an end, a limit.  
**hyaku**, a hundred: *hyaku-man*, a million.  
**hyaku-manako**, a sort of game or show in which a number of masks are used.  
**hyakūshō**, a peasant, a farmer.  
**hyōban**, rumour, report: *hyōban wo suru*, to gossip.  
**hyōgi**, a conference.  
**hyoro-hyoro**, an onomatopoeia for staggering.  
**hyorotsūku**, to stagger.  
**hyōtan**, a gourd.

## I

**i** (oftener *ido*), a well.  
**i**, signification, intent.  
**ibi**, vulg. for *yubi*, a finger.

**ichi**, one: *ichi-nim-biki*, pulled by one man; *ichi-nin-nori*, accommodating one person.—*Ichī* is used idiomatically, e. g. in *ichi-ban*, number one, but also first, most (see p. 145); *ichi-nichi*, one day, but also the first of the month, all day long; *ichi-nichi oki*, alternate days.  
**ichi(-ba)**, a market(-place), a fair.  
**ichi-ban**, number one, first; hence used as a prefix to indicate the superlative.  
**ichi-gai**, altogether.  
**ichigo**, a strawberry.  
**ichijiku**, a fig.  
**ichi-ō**, once, once for all.  
**ido**, a well.  
**ie**, a house: *ie no uchi*, indoors.  
**ie**, no; see p. 234.  
**iedomo**, though; sometimes even.  
**iezuto**, presents brought to those at home by one returning from a journey.  
**ifuku**, a garment.  
**Igirisu**, England: *Igirisu-jin*, an Englishman; *Igirisu no*, English.  
**igo**, henceforward.  
**ii**, a corruption of *yoi*, good.  
**iin**, a committee, a committee-man.  
**ii-tsūtae**, a tradition.  
**ii-wake**, an excuse: *ii-wake wo iu*, to excuse oneself.  
**ii-yō**, a way of saying.  
**ijiru**, to meddle, to tease.

**ittai**, altogether; but sometimes almost an expletive.

**it-tan**, once.

**it-toki**, one hour, once.

**iu**, to say, see pp. 185, 251 :  
to *itte*, see p. 83; to *iu*, see pp. 58, 69, 82; to *ka iu*, see p. 69; to *itte mo*, see p. 187; to *wa iedo(mo)*, see p. 187; *ii-dasu*, to say, to express, to enounce; *ii-kakeru*, to address (in speaking); *ii-kikaseru*, to tell; *ii-tsūkeru*, to order; *iu made mo nai*, needless to remark.

**iwa**, a rock.

**iwaba**, see p. 185.

**iwaku**, a Classical form of *iu*, to say; see p. 417, note 10.

**iwayuru**, see p. 411, note 20.

**iya!** nay! no! *iya na*, objectionable; *iya desū yo!* see p. 288, No. 31, and foot-note.

**iyagaru**, to dislike.

**iyashiku-mo**, see p. 438, note 10.

**iyo-iyo**, more and more.

**izumi**, a spring, a fountain.

**izure?** which? in any case; but often a mere expletive: *izure no*, some...or other.

## J

**ja**, a contraction of *de wa*; see pp. 64, 97: *ja nai ka*, see pp. 64, 189; at the beginning of a sentence, well then.

**ja**, to be; see p. 223.

**jama**, obstruction, impediment:  
*jama wo suru*, to be in the way;  
*o jama*, see pp. 247, 290 (No. 49).

**jano**, the Kyōto equivalent of *dano*.

**jari**, gravel.

**ji**, earth, ground.

**ji**, time, hour, as in *nan-ji?* what o'clock? *roku-ji han*, half-past six o'clock.

**ji**, a written character, specifically a Chinese ideograph.

**jibeta**, the ground.

**jibiki**, a dictionary.

**jibun**, a time, a season.

**jibun**, self: *jibun no*, one's own.

**jigi** (generally with *o*), a bow—of the head and body.

**jigoku**, hell.

**jihaku**, confession: *jihaku suru*, to confess, to own.

**jijitsu**, a fact.

**jikan**, a period of time, an hour.

**jika-dōchaku**, self-confutation.

**jiki (ni)**, immediately.

**jikisan**, a vassal of sufficiently high rank to be allowed personal access to the Shōgun.

**jikken-shitsu**, a laboratory.

**jikken-tetsūgaku**, the positive philosophy, Comtism.

**jikō**, temperature, the state of the weather.

**jikoku**, an hour, time, period.

**jimbutsu**, people, figures (as opposed to scenery), etc.

**jimen**, a plot of ground.

**jimmin**, the people (of a country).  
**jinmusho**, an office.  
**jin**, a person, a man.  
**jinja**, a Shintō temple.  
**jinka**, a human habitation, a house.  
**jinrikī(sha)**, a jinrikīsha, i.e., a species of bath-chair pulled by a man.  
**jinryoku suru** (irreg.), to endeavour, to do one's very best.  
**jinshu**, a race of men.  
**jiro-jiro**, furtively, by snatches.  
**Jirō**, a man's name; see p. 37.  
**jirōn**, an opinion, a contention.  
**jisan suru** (irreg.), to bring (respectful).  
**jisatsu**, suicide: *jisatsu suru*, to commit suicide.  
**jisetsu**, a season, a time.  
**jishin**, self.  
**jishin**, an earthquake.  
**jishimban**, a ward-office, a warden,—a kind of police-office and of policemen, under the Tokugawa régime.  
**jisho**, a dictionary.  
**jissai**, practice (as opposed to theory).  
**jisuru** (irreg.), to refuse.  
**jiten**, a dictionary.  
**jitensha**, a bicycle.  
**jitsu**, truth: *jitsu no*, true.  
**jitsu-getsu**, the sun and moon.  
**jiyū**, freedom, liberty: *jiyū na*, free: *jiyū-seido*, a free government; *jiyū-seido-ron*, radical opinions.

**jizai**, freedom,—rather in private than in political matters.  
**jō**, passion, tenderness.  
**jō**, a lock: *jō wo orosu*, to lock.  
**jō**, the auxiliary numeral for mats: *hachi-jō ni roku-jō*, one room of eight mats and another of six.  
**jō**, on, with regard to, in the matter of.  
**jōbu (na)**, sturdy, solid, strong.  
**jōbukuro**, an envelope.  
**jochū**, a maid-servant.  
**jōdan**, a joke: *jōdan wo iu*, to joke; *jōdan-majiri ni*, half-jokingly.  
**jogaku**, female education.  
**jōki**, steam.  
**jōkisen**, a steamer.  
**jōkisha**, a railway.  
**jokyōshi**, a school usher.  
**jōrei**, an official regulation or by-law.  
**jōriku suru**, to land (intrans.).  
**jiō** (commonly, but less correctly, *jōrō*), a courtesan.  
**jōsama** (generally with *o* prefixed), a young lady, Miss, a daughter (honorific).  
**jōsan**, short for *jōsama*.  
**Jōtei**, God (lit. the supreme Emperor).  
**jōtō**, first-class; *jōtō-shakwai*, aristocratic society.  
**jōyaku**, an agreement, a treaty.  
**jōzu (na)**, a good hand at, skilful.  
**jū**, the *nigori*'ed form of *chū*; see p. 146.

**jū**, ten : *jū-man*, a hundred thousand ; *jū ni hak-ku*, eight or nine out of ten.

**juban**, a shirt.

**jūbun**, plenty, ample, quite.

**jū-go**, fifteen : *jū-go-nichi*, fifteen days, the fifteenth day of the month ; *jū-go-roku*, fifteen or sixteen.

**jū-gwatsu**, October.

**jū-hachi**, eighteen ; *jū-hachi-nichi*, eighteen days, the eighteenth day of the month.

**jū-ichi**, eleven : *jū-ichi-nichi*, eleven days, the eleventh day of the month.

**jū-ichi-gwatsu**, November.

**jū-jū**, over and over again.

**jū-ku**, nineteen ; *jū-ku-nichi*, nineteen days, the nineteenth day of the month.

**jumoku**, a tree.

**jumpū**, a fair wind.

**jun**, the regular order or turn.

**jū-ni**, twelve : *jū-ni-nichi*, twelve days, the twelfth day of the month.

**jū-ni-gwatsu**, December.

**junjo**, order, sequence, turn.

**junsa**, a policeman.

**jūrai**, hitherto.

**jū-roku**, sixteen : *jū-roku-nichi*, sixteen days, the sixteenth day of the month.

**jū-san**, thirteen : *jū-san-nichi*, thirteen days, the thirteenth day of the month.

**jū-shi**, fourteen.

**jū-shichi**, seventeen : *jū-shichi-nichi*, seventeen days, the seventeenth day of the month.

**jū-yokka**, fourteen days, the fourteenth day of the month.

## K

**ka**, a mosquito.

**ka**, an auxil. numeral ; see p. 109.

**ka?** an interrogative postposition ; see pp. 68, 55 : *ka mo*, see p. 72 ; *ka mo shiranu*, perhaps.

**kabe**, a mud wall.

**kabe**, (with honorific prefix *o*), the Court word for *tōfu*, bean-curd.

**kabu**, a stump, used as the auxiliary numeral for shrubs.

**kabu**, capital, stock, shares : *ka-bu-nushi*, a shareholder.

**kabu**, a turnip.

**kabuseru** (2), to put on to another's head, to impute.

**kachi-ikūsa**, a victory.

**kachin**, the Court word for *mochi*, a rice-cake.

**kado**, a corner.

**kado**, a gate, sometimes an item.

**kaeri**, the way back ; *kaeri-gake ni*, on the way back.

**kaeru**, a frog.

**kaeru**, to return (intrans.), hence to go away.

**kaeru** (2), to change (trans.), to exchange.

**kaesu**, to give back, to send back, to return (trans.).

- kaesu-gaesu**, over and over again.
- kaette**, contrary to what one might have expected, rather: *kan-chū yori, yo-kan no hō ga kaette hiemasū*, you mightn't think so, but one feels the cold more in early spring than in mid-winter.
- kagami**, a mirror.
- kage**, shade, shadow, reflection, hence influence: *no kage ni*, in the shadow of, behind: *o kage sama*, see p. 293, No. 84—5.
- kagen**, amount, hence flavour, also the bodily feelings; conf. p. 288, No. 32, foot-note.
- kagi**, a key.
- kagiri**, a limit: *kagiri no nai*, boundless.
- kagiru**, to limit, to be limited: ... *ni kagirazu*, is not restricted to ..., not only.
- kago**, a kind of palanquin.
- kahe**, coffee (from the French).
- kai**, a shell.
- kai-ageru** (2), to buy up (said of the government); also to buy at a higher price.
- kaigun**, the navy.
- kaihen**, the sea-shore.
- kai-inu**, a pet dog.
- kaijō**, the surface of the sea: *kai-jō-hoken*, marine insurance.
- kaiko**, a silkworm.
- kaikwa**, civilisation: *kaikwa suru*, to become civilised.
- kaimono**, a purchase, shopping.
- kaisan**, dispersion, adjournment: *kaisan suru*, to disperse.
- kaisei**, amendment, revision: *kaisei suru*, to revise.
- kaishin**, reform: *kaishin suru*, to reform.
- kaji**, a rudder.
- kaji**, household affairs: *kaji-muki*, the state of a household.
- kakari-ai**, implication,—e. g. in a crime.
- kakaru**, to hang (intrans.), to be in place, e.g. a bridge; see also p. 218: *o me ni kakaru*, see p. 74. Sometimes *kakaru* means to cost, also to take time.
- kakato**, the heel.
- kake**, a broken fragment, a bit.
- kake-au**, to discuss, to bargain, to arrange about.
- kakemono**, a hanging scroll.
- kake(mono)**, a wager.
- kakene**, an overcharge: *kakene wo iu*, to make an overcharge.
- kakeru** (2), to run.
- kakeru** (2), to be flawed or nicked, to wane.
- kakeru** (2), to hang (trans.), to put; see also p. 219.
- kakeru** (2), to be able to write; conf. p. 206.
- kake-hiki**, bargaining.
- kaki**, an oyster.
- kaki**, a persimmon.
- kaki-tsūke**, a note, a memorandum, a bill.

- Kakka**, Your or His Excellency.
- kakkoku**, all countries, foreign countries in general: *kakkoku kōshi*, the corps diplomatique.
- kaku**, an angle: *kaku-zatō*, loaf-sugar.
- kaku**, each (in compounds).
- kaku**, thus: *kaku no gotoki*, such; *kaku made*, to such an extent.
- kaku**, to scratch, to write: *kaki-owaru*, to finish writing; *kaki-sokonau*, to make a mistake in writing; *kaki-tsūkeru*, to jot down.
- kakubetsu** (no or na), different, special.
- kakujitsu**, every other day.
- kakumei**, a revolution (in government, etc.).
- kakureru** (2), to hide (intrans.).
- kakūshaku**, see p. 414, Note 3.
- kakūshi**, pocket.
- kakūsu**, to hide (trans.).
- kamau**, to have to do with, to meddle with, to matter: *kamai-masen*, it doesn't matter.
- kamben**, forbearance, forgiveness: *kamben-zuyoi*, patient.
- kame**, a tortoise: *kame-no-ko*, ditto in Tōkyō colloquial (probably a corruption of *kame no kō*, a tortoise's carapace).
- kame**, a European dog; see p. 26.
- kami**, the hair of the head: *kami-hasami*, hair-cutting.
- kami**, above, upper: *o kami*, the government; *o kami san*, see *okamisan*.
- kami**, a Shintō god or goddess. Most of the Protestant missionaries use this term to denote the Christian God.
- kami** (no ke), the hair of the head: *kami-yui*, a hair-dresser.
- kami**, paper: *kami-ire*, a pocket-book; *kami-naki-tabako*, a cigarette.
- Kanigata**, a general designation for the old capital Kyōto and its neighbourhood.
- kami-hasami**, hair-cutting.
- kaminari**, thunder.
- kamo**, a wild-duck.
- kampan**, the deck of a vessel.
- kampeki**, the temper (of a person): *kampeki ni sarwaru*, to irritate one's temper.
- kampuku**, see *kanshin*.
- kamu**, to bite.
- kan**, interval; see p. 118.
- kan**, heating: *kan wo tsūkeru*, to heat sake.
- Kana**, the Japanese syllabic writing; see p. 9.
- kanagu**, metal work, metal fastenings.
- kanai**, inside a house, all the members of a household; hence a humble word for wife.
- kanarazu**, positively, certainly.
- kanau**, to correspond, to agree with, to eventuate, to succeed.



**kan-dan**, cold and heat, temperature.

**kandankei**, a thermometer.

**kane**, metal, money : *kane-ire*, a purse ; *kane-mochi*, a rich man.

**kane**, a bell.

**kanneru** (2), to be unable ; see p. 203.

**kanete**, beforehand, together.

**kangae**, consideration, reflection, a thought, an intention : *kangae ga tsūku*, to hit on an idea ; *kangae no ue*, on consideration.

**kangaeru** (2), to consider, to reflect.

**kani**, a crab.

**kanji**, a feeling : *kanji ga okoru*, to begin to feel.

**kanjiru** (3), to feel.

**kanjō**, an account, a bill : *kanjō wo suru*, to do accounts.

**kannin**, patience : *kannin suru*, to be patient.

**kannushi**, a Shintō priest.

**kano**, Classical for *ano*, that.

**Kan-on**, see p. 7.

**kanro**, lit. sweet dew, hence delicious,—said of liquor.

**kanshaku**, a quick temper : *kanshaku-mochi*, quick-tempered.

**kanshin**, admiration, astonishment : *kanshin suru*, to admire, to be astonished at.

**kanshu**, hot *sake*.

**kantei**, criticism : *kantei suru*, to judge critically.

**kanzuru**, see *kanjiru*.

**kanzashi**, a hair-pin.

**kanzume(-mono)**, tinned provisions.

**kao**, the face : *kao-zoroi*, everybody being present, the full troupe.

**Kara**, China.

**kara**, a postposition ; see pp. 70, 275 : *kara shite*, see p. 70 ; *kara to itte*, see p. 83.

**kara**, a collar, (from the English).

**kara (na)**, empty.

**karada**, the body (of any living creature).

**karakane**, bronze.

**karamu**, to twine (intrans.).

**karashi**, mustard.

**karasu**, a crow : *karasu-mugi*, oats.

**kare**, Classical for *are*, that : *kare kore*, this, that, and the other ; more or less, pretty well.

**kari**, the chase : *kari suru*, to hunt, to shoot.

**kari** (in compounds), temporary.

**kari-nushi**, a debtor.

**kariru** (3), to borrow, to hire ; conf. pp. 164, 251 : *kari-kiru*, to hire the whole of.

**karonjiru** (3), to think lightly of.

**karui**, light ; hence soft (in speaking of water).

**karuta**, a playing card (from the Spanish *carta*).

**kasa**, a broad sun-hat, a parasol, an umbrella.

**kasa**, quantity, amount.

**kasanaru**, to be piled up, to be repeated.

**kasaneru** (2), to pile up, to repeat.

**kasanete**, several times, again.

**kashikoi**, awe-inspiring; also clever.

**kashikomaru**, to receive orders respectfully: *kashikomarimashita*, all right, Sir!

**kashikomou**, to reverence.

**kashikosa**, sublimity, cleverness.

**kashi-nagaya**, a *nagaya* to let. (conf. p. 281, foot-note 3.)

**kashi-nushi**, a creditor.

**kashira**, the head, a chief, a superior.

**kashi(wa)**, an oak-tree.

**kassai**, applause.

**kasu**, to lend, to let (e.g. a house).

**kasūteira**, sponge-cake, conf. p. 26.

**kata**, the side of anything, a direction, hence one side, one: *kata-ashi*, one foot; *kata-te*, one hand: (c) *kata*, a gentleman, a lady. *Kono kata* sometimes means since.

**kata**, a shoulder: *kata-saki*, ditto.

**katachi**, shape, form.

**kata-gata**, at the same time as, on the occasion of.

**katai**, hard, stiff; hence strict, honest.

**kata-kage**, shade on one side of the road.

**Kata-kana**, the square form of the Japanese syllabary.

**kataki**, an enemy (private).

**katamaru**, to grow hard.

**katana**, a sword: *katana-ya*, a sword-shop, a dealer in swords.

**katazukeru** (2), to put away.

**katchiri**, a word expressive of the sound of clicking.

**katō**, low class, third class (on railways, etc.).

**katoku**, a patrimony.

**katsu**, to conquer, to win.

**katte**, will, choice, (hence) convenience, (hence) kitchen; *anata no go katte desū*, you can do as you like: *katte narite iru*, to know one's way about a house.

**katto**, an onomatopoe for suddenness.

**kau**, to buy: *kai-kiru*, to buy up the whole of; *kai-mono*, a purchase; *kai-toru*, to buy.

**kau**, to keep (domestic animals).

**kawa**, a river.

**kawa**, the skin, rind, or bark of anything; leather.

**kawai**, pet, dear little, poor little.

**kawaisō**, worthy of pity, in distress.

**kawaku**, to get dry: *kawaite iru*, to be dry; *nodo ga kawakimashita*, I am thirsty.

**kawari**, a change,—especially for the worse: *no kawari ni*, instead of; *sono kawari ni*, on the other

- hand, see also p. 99; *kawari no otoko*, another man (instead of the usual one).
- kawaru**, to change (intrans.).
- kawase-tegata**, a bill of exchange, a draft.
- kawazu**, a frog.
- kaya**, a mosquito-net.
- kayasu**, vulg. for *kaesu*.
- kayō**, (from *kono yō*), this kind, thus.
- kayou**, to go backwards and forwards, to attend (e.g. a school).
- kaza-kami**, (to) windward.
- kazari**, an ornament.
- kage**, the wind: *kaze wo hiku*, to catch cold.
- kazoeru** (2), to count.
- kazu**, a number.
- ke**, a hair, hairs on the human body, the wool of animals.
- ke!** an expletive; see p. 234.
- kedamono**, a quadruped.
- kega**, a wound: *kega suru*, to be wounded, to hurt oneself.
- kegasu**, to defile.
- keiba**, a horse-race.
- keiben** (na), easily to be used, convenient.
- keiko**, practice: *keiko wo suru*, to practise.
- keikwaku**, a design, an intention, a plan.
- keisatsūsho**, a police-station.
- keisatsūkwan**, a police officer.
- keishoku**, scenery.
- keizai-gaku**, political economy; *keizai-gakūsha*, a political economist.
- kekko** (na), splendid.
- kembutsu**, looking at, sight-seeing, sometimes spectators: *kembutsu suru*, to go to see (sights, etc.).
- kemmaku**, the countenance.
- kemono**, a quadruped.
- kemuri**, smoke.
- kemushi**, a caterpillar.
- ken**, the auxiliary numeral for houses.
- Kenchō**, see pp. 344—5.
- kenjutsu**, swordsmanship.
- kenkwa**, a quarrel: *kenkwa suru*, to quarrel.
- kenkyū**, investigation, research: *kenkyū suru*, to investigate.
- kennon**, danger: *kennon na*, dangerous.
- kenri**, a right, a privilege.
- kerai**, a retainer, a follower.
- keredo**(mo), though, but; see p. 187.
- keru** (2), to kick, rarely to outdo.
- kesa**, this morning.
- keshikaran**, outrageous, absurd.
- keshiki**, a view, scenery, appearance.
- kesshite**, positively, certainly; (with a neg.) never.
- kessuru** (irreg.), to decide.
- kesu**, to extinguish.

- ketchaku**, decision, final resolve : *ketchaku no*, positive, lowest (in price).
- ketsu**, decision, a vote : *ketsu wo toru*, to take a vote.
- kettei suru** (irreg.), to decide.
- ketto** (from Engl. *blanket*), a rug.
- ki**, the spirits (of a person), sometimes intention : *ki ga tsūku*, to have one's attention called to something ; *ki ni iru*, to be agreeable to one ; *ki no kiita*, quick-witted ; *ki wo kikaseru*, to show wit or tact ; *ki wo otosu*, to let one's spirits droop ; *ki wo tsūkeru*, to pay attention.
- ki**, a tree, wood (the material) : *ki no mi*, a fruit, a berry.
- ki**, an honorific prefix, see p. 143.
- ki**, the indef. form of *kuru*, to come.
- ki**, a termination of adjectives ; see p. 121.
- kibisho**, a tea-pot.
- kibō**, a desire : *kibō suru*, to desire, to request.
- kibun**, the bodily feelings : *kibun ga warui*, to feel unwell.
- kichigai (no)**, mad.
- kichi-nichi**, a lucky day.
- kido**, a small door, a wicket.
- kifū**, a disposition of the mind.
- ki-gae**, a change of clothes.
- kigen**, the bodily feelings : *go kigen yō*, I wish you good health ; see also p. 333, foot-note 32.
- ki-iroi**, yellow.
- kiji**, a pheasant.
- ki-jōbu**, of good cheer, not alarmed.
- kikai**, a machine.
- kikaseru** (2), to inform.
- kiki-gurushii**, unpleasant (to hear).
- kiki-me**, efficacy, acting (as a drug).
- kikō**, climate, temperature.
- kikoeru** (2), to be audible, to be able to hear.
- kikoku**, (your) august country.
- kiku**, a chrysanthemum.
- kiku**, to hear, to listen ; (conf. p. 251) ; hence to ask, to enquire, as *kiki ni yaru*, to send to enquire ; less often to have an effect, to act (e.g. as a drug) : *kiki-sokou-nau*, to hear wrong ; *kiki-tsūkeru*, to happen to hear, to notice.
- kikwanshi**, an engineer.
- kimari**, a fixed arrangement : *kimari ga nai*, there is no rule.
- kimeru** (2), to decide, to fix.
- kimi**, a prince, a sovereign ; hence you.
- kimi**, feelings : *kimi ga warui*, to feel unwell, to feel frightened.
- kimo**, the liver : *kimo wo tsubushimashita*, lit. burst the liver, i.e. I was astounded.
- kimono**, clothes, specifically the long upper robe worn by the Japanese : *kimono wo kiru*, to dress ; *kimono wo nugu*, undress.
- kimpen**, a neighbourhood.

**ki-musūme**, a virgin.  
**kin**, gold, money.  
**kin**, a pound (in weight).  
**kinchaku**, a purse: *kinchakū-kiri*, a pickpocket.  
**kingyo**, a goldfish.  
**kinjiru** (3), to forbid.  
**kinjitsu**, a few days hence.  
**kinjo**, neighbourhood.  
**kinjū**, birds and beasts.  
**kinki**, joy: *kinki ni tazzu*, to be overcome with joy.  
**kinkyū**, urgency: *kinkyū-dōgi*, an urgency motion.  
**kinō**, yesterday.  
**kinodoku** (lit. poison of the spirit), regret or concern felt for others: *o kinodoku sama*, see p. 247.  
**kinsatsu**, paper-money.  
**kinsen**, } money.  
**kinsu**, }  
**kinu**, silk.  
**kin-yōbi**, Friday.  
**kinzai**, a suburb.  
**ki-ō** (no), past, former.  
**kippu**, a ticket.  
**kirai**, averse to; see p. 65.  
**kirare-zon**, see end of pp. 384-5.  
**kirashīte**, see p. 216.  
**kirau**, to dislike.  
**kire**, stuff (for clothes, etc.), a bit.  
**kirei** (na), pretty, neat, clean.  
**kireru** (2), to cut (intrans.), to snap; see p. 206.

**kiri**, a suffix derived from *kiru*, to cut, and meaning only. It is also pronounced *kkiri* and *giri*: *fūtari-giri*, only two people, *tête-à-tête*.  
**kiri**, mist.  
**kirido**, a garden-gate.  
**kiri-doku**, see end of pp. 384-5.  
**kiritsu**, standing up.  
**kiriritto shīta**, sharp, well-defined.  
**kiru**, to cut, (hence) to kill, see also p. 219: *kiri-komu*, to cut into; *kiri-korosu*, to cut to death; *kiri-sūteru*, to kill and do for; *kiri-tsūkeru*, to cut at.  
**kiru** (3), to wear, to have on or put on (clothes): *ki-kaeru*, to change one's clothes.  
**kiryō**, countenance, looks.  
**kīsaki**, an empress or queen consort.  
**kīsama**, you; see p. 47.  
**kīseru**, a pipe (for smoking).  
**kisha**, an abbreviated form of *jōkisha*, a railway train.  
**kishō**, spirit, temper, *kishō na*, spirited.  
**kīsoku**, a law.  
**kissaki**, the point of a blade.  
**kita**, north,  
**kitai** (na), queer.  
**kitaku**, returning home: *suru*, to return home.  
**kitanai**, } dirty.  
**kitanarashii**, }  
**kitaru**, same as *kuru*, to come.

**kitsuen-jō**, a smoking-room.  
**kitsune**, a fox.  
**kitto**, positively, without fail.  
**kiwamaru**, to be settled, finished; to be carried to an extreme.  
**ki-yō (na)**, handy, clever.  
**kizetsu suru**, (irreg.) to faint.  
**kke**, an expletive, see p. 237.  
**kkiri**, see *kiri*.  
**ko**, an auxiliary numeral; see p. 109.  
**ko**, powder.  
**ko**, a child, the young of any animal; hence used as a prefix to form diminutives, as *kirci*, pretty; *ko-girci*, rather pretty; see also p. 143.  
**ko**, archaic for *ki*, a tree, still used in *ko no ha*, the leaves of trees.  
**kō**, merit, great deeds, a feat.  
**kō**, a duke.  
**kō**, a marquis. This word is written with a different Chinese character from the preceding.  
**kō**, thus, like this, in this way: *kō iu*, this kind of, such as this; *kō suru to*, if one does this.  
**kō** or **kōkō**, filial piety: *kō wo tsūkusu*, to be very filial.  
**koban**, an obsolete gold coin of an oval shape.  
**kōbansho**, a minor police-station, or rather police-box, such as are found in Japanese streets.  
**koboreru (2)**, to get spilt.  
**kobosu**, to spill (trans.).  
**kobune**, a boat.  
**kochi**, or **kochira**, here.

**kōdai (na)**, gigantic, immense.  
**kōdan**, a lecture.  
**kōdankwai**, a lecture society.  
**kodomo**, properly the plural children, but also used for the singular child; *kodomo ga dekiru*, children are born.  
**koe**, the voice: *koe wo kakeru*, to cry out.  
**kōenchi**, a public park.  
**ko-gatana**, a penknife.  
**kōgō**, an empress or queen consort.  
**kogoe**, a low voice.  
**kogoto**, scolding: *kogoto wo iu*, to scold.  
**kogu**, to row.  
**ko-gusuri**, powders (medicine).  
**kōhei (na)**, fair, just.  
**kōhi**, see *kake*.  
**kōhō**, public law.  
**koi**, (sexual) love: *koi no michi*, ditto.  
**koi**, strong, thick (said of liquids).  
**koi-guchi**, the joint where the sword-handle and scabbard of a sword meet: *koi-guchi wo kiru*, to loosen a sword for use.  
**kōin**, time.  
**ko-ishi**, a pebble.  
**koitsu**, a contraction of *kono yatsu*, this fellow, this rascal.  
**kojiki**, a beggar.  
**kokkwai**, a parliament.  
**koko**, here: *koko ni*, here, but sometimes thereupon, well.  
**kōkō**, filial piety.

**kokoera**, hereabouts.  
**kōkoku**, an advertisement (especially in a newspaper).  
**kokonoka**, nine days, the ninth day of the month.  
**kokono(tsu)**, nine.  
**kokoro**, the heart (metaph.): *kokoro-arige*, the appearance of a tender passion; *kokoro-gake*, interest taken in or attention paid to something; *kokoro-mochi*, the feelings (especially bodily ones); *kokoro yasui*, intimate, great friends; *kokoro-yoi*, comfortable, well; *kokoro-zuku*, to notice.  
**koku**, a country; used only in compounds, as *ki-koku*, (your) august country.  
**kokumin**, the people of a country.  
**kokuō**, a king.  
**kōkwai**, repentance, regret: *kō-kwai suru*, to repent.  
**kokyō**, lit. the old village, i.e., home, one's native place.  
**komakai** or **komaka** (na), minute, small: *komakani*, in detail.  
**kōman**, pride, conceit, *kōman na*, proud.  
**komaru**, to be in a quandary, to be in trouble; conf. p. 149.  
**komban**, to-night: *komban wa!* see p. 289, No. 42.  
**kome**, hulled rice.  
**komeru** (2), to stuff into.  
**komori**, a nurse, a governess.  
**kōmori**, a bat (animal): *kōmori-gasa*, a European umbrella.

**komoru**, to be inside something else, to be shut up.  
**komu**, to stuff into; see also p. 219.  
**komugi**, wheat.  
**kōmuru**, to receive from a superior.  
**kon**, dark blue.  
**kona**, fine powder, flour.  
**konaida**, a short while ago, recently.  
**konata**, hither.  
**konda**, a contraction of *kondo wa*, this time, now.  
**kondate**, a bill of fare.  
**kondo**, this time.  
**kongō**, the Court word for *zōri*, sandals.  
**kon-i**, intimacy; friendly feelings: *kon-i na*, intimate.  
**kon-in**, marriage.  
**konna**, this kind of, such as this.  
**konnichi**, to-day; *konnichi wa*, see p. 289, No. 44.  
**kono**, this (adj.): *kono nochi*, hereafter.  
**kōnō**, a good result, efficacy.  
**konomu**, to like.  
**konrei**, a wedding.  
**konzatsu**, confusion.  
**koppu**, a glass (from the Dutch *kop*, a cup).  
**koraeru** (2), to endure, to bear: *korae-kirenai*, cannot endure any longer.  
**kore**, this (subst.): *kore kara* or *kore yori*, henceforward; *kore made*, hitherto. For the interjectional use of *kore*, see p. 239.

- korera**(-byō), cholera (from the English word).
- kōri**, ice.
- koro**, a period, a time.
- korobasu**, to roll (trans.).
- korobu**, to roll (intrans.), to fall down.
- korosu**, to kill.
- kōru**, to freeze (intrans.): *kōri-tsūku*, to stick together through freezing, to freeze over.
- korya** ! see p. 239.
- kosaeru** (2), a vulgar contraction of *koshiraeru*.
- kosakunin**, a farm labourer.
- koseki**, old remains, ruins.
- kōseki**, efficiency, merit: *kōseki no aru*, efficient.
- kōsen**, brokerage, commission.
- kōshaku**, the title of duke.
- kōshaku**, the title of marquis.  
This *kō* is written with a different Chinese character from that of the preceding word.
- kōshaku**, a lecture.
- koshi** (with honorific prefix *mi*), the Court word for sleeping.
- koshi**, the loins: *koshi wo kakeru*, to sit down; *koshi ga nukeru*, lit. the loins getting put out of joint, hence to be crippled,—especially through fright; *haya-goshi ga nukeru*, to become unable to move through fright.
- Kōshi**, Confucius.
- kōshi**, a minister (plenipotentiary or resident).
- kōshīkwan**, an embassy, a legation.
- koshi-nuke**, lit. one whose loins are out of joint, hence a coward.
- koshiraeru** (2), to prepare.
- koshō**, pepper.
- kōshō** (na), exalted, sublime.
- kōshū**, the public.
- koso**, see p. 237.
- kosu**, to cross (a mountain).
- kosui**, a lake.
- kosuru**, to rub.
- kotae**, an answer.
- kotaeru** (2), to answer.
- kotchi**, vulgar for *kochi*, here.
- kōtei**, an emperor.
- koto**, a kind of harp or lyre with thirteen strings.
- koto**, an (abstract) thing,—not to be confounded with *mono*, a (concrete) thing; see pp. 38-9; 79, 178: *koto no hoka*, extraordinary, exceptional.
- kotoba**, a word, a language: *kotoba wo kaesu*, to retort.
- kotogotoku**, all, completely.
- ko-tori**, a small bird.
- kotoshi**, this year.
- kotowari**, a refusal, also an excuse.
- kotowaru**, to refuse, to excuse oneself; less often to explain, to mention.
- kotozuke**, a message.
- kotsu-kotsu shīta**, pig-headed.
- kotsun to**, with a thump or thud.
- kowagaru**, to be frightened.
- kowai**, afraid, also frightful.



**kowareru** (2), to break (intrans.).  
**kowasu**, to break (trans.).  
**koya**, a hut.  
**koyashi**, manure.  
**kōyō**, red (autumn) leaves: *kōyō suru*, to turn red (said of the leaves of trees).  
**koyōji**, a tooth-pick.  
**koyomi**, an almanac.  
**ko-zashiki**, a small room.  
**kozō**, originally a Buddhist acolyte, now applied to any little lad or urchin.  
**kōzoku**, a member of the Imperial family.  
**kozukai**, a low-class servant, a house-coolie; small expenses; *kozukai-zeni*, pocket-money.  
**ku**, nine.  
**ku**, the indefinite or adverbial termination of adjectives; see pp. 120, 122.  
**kubetsu**, a difference; *kubetsu suru*, to discriminate.  
**kubi**, the neck, the head.  
**kubiwa**, a dog collar.  
**kūchi**, the mouth, an opening: *kūchi-benkō* (*na*), glib; *kūchi-bue wo fuku*, to whistle; *kūchi-fūki*, a napkin; *kūchi-nuki*, a corkscrew; *kūchi-yakusoku*, a verbal promise; *kūchi-yusugi*, a finger-bowl; *kuchi ga kiku*, to be able to speak (e.g. a young child).  
**kuchibiru**, the lips.  
**kudakeru** (2), to break into pieces (intrans.).

**kudaru**, to descend.  
**kudasai**, or **kudasare**, imperative of *kudasaru*; see pp. 171, 242, 253.  
**kudasaru**, to condescend; conf. p. 171.  
**kudo**, verbose, tedious.  
**kūfū**, a contrivance, a dodge, a plan.  
**kugi**, a nail (to fasten things with).  
**ku-gwatsu**, September.  
**kujira**, a whale.  
**ku-jū**, ninety.  
**kūki**, the air, the atmosphere.  
**kukon**, the Court word for *sake*, rice-beer.  
**kuma**, a bear.  
**kumi**, a set, a clique; also an auxiliary numeral; see p. 112.  
**kumo**, a spider; *kumo no su*, a spider's web (lit. nest).  
**kumo**, a cloud.  
**kumoru**, to get cloudy; *kumotte iru*, to be cloudy.  
**kun**, a prince, a lord, also Mr.; see p. 258.—Used chiefly in composition, as *shokun*, gentlemen, lit. all (you) princes.  
**kun nasai**, see p. 254.  
**kuni**, a country, a province; *o kuni*, your (honourable) country.  
**kunjū**, a crowd; *kunjū suru*, to crowd (intrans.).  
**kuntō**, instruction; *kuntō suru*, to instruct.  
**kura**, a saddle.

- kura**, a godown ; see p. 13, footnote.
- kurabu**, a club (from English).
- kurai**, rank, hence quantity, about, such as *tò* ; *dono kurai* ? how much ?
- kurai**, dark.
- kurasa**, darkness.
- kurashi**, a livelihood ; *kurashi wo tateru* (or *tsūkeru*), to gain a livelihood.
- kurasu**, to spend time to live.
- kure-gata**, twilight (evening).
- kureru** (2), to give ; see pp. 171, 254.
- kureru** (2), to grow dark ; *hi ga kureru*, the daylight is waning, it is getting dark.
- kūri**, an empty fancy, a mere hypothesis.
- kurō**, trouble, pains ; *go kurō sama*, see p. 247.
- kuroi**, black.
- kurc-megane**, black goggles.
- kuru** (irreg.), to come ; see pp. 158, 193 ; 133, 198, 212 : *ki-kakaru*, to happen to come ; *motte kuru*, to bring ; *totte kuru*, to fetch ; *konaku naru*, to leave off coming.
- kuru**, to wind.
- kuruma**, a wheel, anything moved by a wheel, specifically a *jūrikisha* : *kuruma-ya*, a *jūrikishaman*.
- kurushii**, painful, in pain : *kuru-shi-magire*, distraction caused by pain, terrible throes ; .....*mo kurushiku nai*, there is no harm in, may.....
- kūsa**, a plant, a herb.
- kūsai**, stinking.
- kūsari**, a chain.
- kūsaru**, to rot.
- kūse**, a bad habit or trick.
- kūshami**, a sneeze : *kūshami wo suru*, to sneeze.
- kūshi**, a comb.
- kūsuri**, medicine : *kūsuri ni naru*, to be good for one's health.
- kūtabireru** (2), to get tired : *kūtabirete iru*, to be tired ; conf. p. 104.
- kutsu**, a boot, a shoe : *kutsu-bera*, a shoe-horn ; *kūtsu-tabi*, socks ; *kutsu-ya*, a bootmaker's shop, hence a bootmaker.
- kuttsuku**, to stick close to.
- kuu**, to eat : *kui-taosu*, to cause loss (e.g. to an innkeeper) by eating food and not paying for it ; *kui-tsūku*, to bite (as a dog, etc.).
- kuwaeru** (2), to add.
- kuwashii**, minute, exact.
- kuyashigarū**, to feel sorry.
- kuzureru** (2), to crumble, to break to pieces (intrans.).
- kwadan**, a flower-bed.
- kwai**, an association, a society, meeting, a church (metaph.).
- kwai**, a chapter.
- kwaichō**, a chairman, the president of a society.

**kwaidō**, a meeting-house, a church, a chapel.  
**kwaiin**, a member (of a society, etc.).  
**kwairaku**, joy, pleasure  
**kwaiwa**, conversation.  
**kwaji**, a conflagration, a fire.  
**Kwampō**, the "Official Gazette."  
**Kwampō**, see p. 366, Note 2.  
**kwain**, an official.  
**kwankei**, connection, relation, having to do with something else: *kwankei suru*, to depend; *kwankei wo tsūkeru*, to pay heed.  
**kwankōba**, a bazaar (properly one established for the encouragement of industry).  
**kwanzume**, tinned (provisions); conf. p. 22.  
**kwashi**, any sweetmeat, such as a bonbon, cake, or pudding.  
**kwayaku**, gunpowder.  
**kwayōbi**, Tuesday.  
**kwasai**, calamity caused by fire: *kwasai-hoken*, fire insurance.  
**kwazan**, a volcano.  
**kyaku**, a guest, a customer, a fare: *kyakurai*, the advent of guests, a visit, a party; *kyakuma*, a drawing-room.  
**kyaku**, the auxiliary numeral for chairs and tables.  
**kyan-kyan**, the sound which dogs make in yelping.  
**kyō**, to-day: *kyō-jū*, during to-day, by to-night.  
**kyō**, a sutra.

**kyōdai**, brothers; hence sometimes brothers and sisters: *kyōdai-naka*, the terms on which brothers stand.  
**kyōgen**, a play, a drama.  
**kyōgū**, environment, surrounding circumstances.  
**kyōhō**, a method of instruction, (hence often) religion.  
**kyōiku**, education.  
**kyōka**, a species of comic poem; conf. p. 450.  
**kyoku**, a bureau or subdivision of a government department, an office.  
**kyokūtan**, the acme, *ne plus ultra*.  
**kyōkwai**, a church (metaph.).  
**kyōkwaidō**, a church, a chapel, a meeting-house.  
**kyonen**, last year.  
**kyōshi**, a teacher, a missionary, a clergyman.  
**kyū**, rare for *ku*, nine.  
**kyū (na)**, sudden.  
**kyūji**, waiting at table, a waiter: *kyūji wo suru*, to wait at table.  
**kyūjitsu**, a holiday.  
**kyūkin**, wages.  
**kyūtō**, last year; see p. 327, foot-note.  
**Kyūyaku-zensho**, the Old Testament.  
**kyūyō**, urgent business.

## M

**ma**, quite; see p. 228.  
**ma**, in the first place; see p. 233.  
**ma**, space, interval, hence a room:

- ma ni au*, to be in time, to do well enough (although not precisely what is required); *ma ga warui*, to be a bad opportunity for doing something, to feel awkward.
- mā** ! see bottom of p. 237.
- mabushii**, dazzling,
- machi**, the mercantile quarter of a town, a street: *machi-naka*, the whole street (or town).
- machi-ai-jo**, a waiting room.
- machi-dōi**, long to wait, tediously long in coming: *o machidō sama*, see p. 247.
- machigai**, a mistake, misunderstanding: *machigai naku*, without fail; *machigai-rashii*, apparently a mistake.
- machigau**, to make a mistake, to mistake.
- machin**, *nux vomica*, strychnine.
- mada**, still; (with a negative) not yet.
- made**, a postposition, see p. 71: *made ni*, see p. 95; *sore made no koto*, see p. 95.
- mado**, a window: *mado-kake*, a window-curtain.
- mae**, in front, before: *mae kara* beforehand; *hitori-mae*, a portion for one; *san-nin-mae*, portions for three.
- mae-kake**, a bib, an apron.
- magaru**, to bend (intrans.): *magatte iru*, to be bent, crooked.
- mageru** (2), to bend (trans.).
- magirakasu**, to confuse, to mystify.
- mago**, a grandchild.
- mai**, an auxiliary numeral; see p. 109.
- mai**, a verbal termination (neg. future), see pp. 168-9, 81.
- mai**, each, every, as in *mai-do*, each time, always; *mai-nichi*, every day.
- maimai-tsuburu**, a snail.
- mainai**, a bribe.
- mairu**, to come, to go; conf. p. 251.
- maji**, **majiki**, **majiku**, see p. 169.
- majiri**, a suffix meaning partly, half.
- majiwaru**, to mix with, to associate.
- makaru**, to go, to come (humble): *makari-deru*, ditto, also to meet with.
- makaru**, to go down in price (intrans.).
- make-oshimi**, unwillingness to give way; see also p. 31.
- makeru** (2), to lose, to be beaten (in war or at a game), to yield: to lower a price: *o make ni*, into the bargain.
- maki**, fire-wood.
- maki-tabako**, a cigar, sometimes a cigarette.
- makka** (for *ma-aka*), very red.
- makoto**, truth: *makoto no*, true; *makoto ni*, really.

- maku**, to sow.  
**maku**, to wind.  
**makura**, a pillow.  
**makuwa-uri**, a musk-melon.  
**mama**, step, as in *mama-haha*, a step-mother.  
**mama**, way, manner : *sono mama ni shite oku*, to leave *in statu quo*.  
**mama-haha**, a step-mother.  
**mame**, beans.  
**mamma**, (generally with honorific *o*), rice, food.  
**mamoru**, to guard, to keep, to watch.  
**mamushi**, a viper.  
**man**, a myriad, ten thousand.  
**mana**, (with honorific prefix *o*), the Court word for *sakana*, fish.  
**manabu**, to practise, to study.  
**mana-ita**, a board for cleaning fish on.  
**mane**, imitation : *mane wo suru*, to imitate, hence sometimes to do (in a bad sense).  
**maneku**, to invite.  
**mannaka**, the middle.  
**manzoku**, contentment : *manzoku suru*, to be content.  
**mappira**, quite ; only used in such apologetic phrases as that in p. 291, No. 57.  
**mari**, a ball (for throwing, etc.).  
**maromeru** (2), to make round.  
**maru**, a word helping to form the names of merchant ships, as "*Tōkyō Maru*." Its origin and signification are obscure.
- maru de**, quite.  
**marui**, round.  
**masaka** (with a negative), hardly, surely not.  
**ma-seba**, insufficient space.  
**massao**, perfectly green, livid.  
**massugu** (na), straight.  
**masū** (irreg.), an honorific verbal suffix ; see pp. 160, 170, 249 ; also 19, 67, 198, 212.  
**masu**, to increase (trans.).  
**masu-masu**, more and more.  
**masuru**, see p. 160.  
**mata**, again ; (with a negative), no more.  
**matsu**, a pine-tree.  
**matsu**, to wait.  
**matsuri**, a festival.  
**matsu-take**, a species of mushroom.  
**mattaku**, quite.  
**mawaru**, to turn (intrans.).  
**mawasu**, to turn (trans.).  
**mayou**, to stray, to be in a quandary.  
**mazaru**, to be mixed.  
**mazeru** (2), to mix (trans.).  
**mazu**, in the first place, well, anyhow, at all events.  
**mazui**, nasty to eat.  
**me**, the eyes, a mesh, an open space : *me ga sameru*, to wake (intrans.) ; *o me ni kakaru*, to have the honour to meet you ; *o me ni kakeru*, to have the honour to show you ; *hidoi me ni au*, to be harshly treated ; *hidoi me ni*

**mi(tsu)**, three : *mitsu-go*, a three-year-old child ; *mitsu-ire-ko*, three boxes fitting into each other.

**mitsūke**, a castle-gate.

**mitsu-me nyūdō**, a hobgoblin with three eyes.

**miya**, a Shintō temple, but see p. 249.

**miyage**, a present, especially one brought by a person returning from a journey.

**miyako**, a capital city.

**mizu**, water ; specifically cold water as opposed to hot, and fresh water as opposed to salt : *mizu-gwashi*, fruit ; *mizu-nomi-goppu*, a tumbler ; *mizu-tsugi*, a water-jug ; *mizu-umi*, a fresh-water lake ; *mizu ga deru*, water overflowing, to inundate.

**mizukara**, of my (his, etc.) own accord ; oneself, personally.

**mo**, a postposition ; see pp. 72, 166, 196, 270 : *de mo*, see p. 55, 95.

**mo**, mourning.

**mō**, already, still, yet, more ; (with a negative verb) no more ; *mō hitotsu*, one more ; *mō sūkoshi de*, nearly ; *mō yoroshii*, see p. 292, No. 72.

**mochi**, a kind of rice-cake.

**mochiiru** (3), to employ.

**mochimashite**, polite for *motte*, both as gerund of *motsu* and as postposition.

**mochimono**, property, possessions.

**mochi-nushi**, an owner, possessor.

**mochiron**, of course, certainly.

**modosu**, to give or send back, to vomit.

**mcegi**, dark green.

**mohaya**, same as *mō*.

**moji**, or **monji**, a written character, specifically a Chinese ideograph.

**moji-moji suru** (irreg.), to be nervous.

**mōkaru**, to be earned or made, —said of money.

**mōke**, profit, gains.

**mōkeru** (2), to make (money).

**mokuroku**, a list.

**mokūteki**, an object, a motive.

**mokuyōbi**, Thursday.

**momen**, cotton.

**momiji**, the maple-tree,—celebrated for its red leaves in autumn.

**mommō** (na), ignorant.

**momo**, a peach : *mono-iro* (no), pink-coloured.

**momu**, to rub, to knead, to shampoo.

**mon**, a "cash" (a small copper coin).

**mon**, a gate.

**mon'**, short for *mono*, a thing.

**mondai**, a problem, a question.

**mono**, a (concrete) thing,—not to be confounded with *koto*, an (abstract) thing, see p. 39 : *mon(o) desū kara*, see p. 70 ; *mono-goto*,

each thing (in its turn); *mono iu*, to speak; *mono no*, see p. 39; *mono wo*, see p. 186.

**mono-oki**, an out-house.

**moppara**, chiefly.

**morau**, to have given one, to receive; see also p. 203.

**mori**, a wood, a forest.

**moshi**, if; also used as an initial exclamation answering to our phrase "excuse me". Perhaps it comes from *mōshimasū*, I say.

**Mōshi**, Mencius.

**mōshi-bun**, an objection.

**mōshi-wake**, an excuse, an apology.

**mōsu**, to say (see also pp. 249, 278); *mōshi-ageru*, to say to a superior; *mōshi-age-kaneru*, not to venture to say; *mōshi-awaseru*, to arrange beforehand (e.g. a meeting); *mōshi-kaneru*, not to venture to say; *mōshi-ukeru*, to receive, to take in charge; *mōshi-watasu*, to deliver judgment.

**moto**, origin, originally, cause; *...no moto to naru*, to cause; *moto yori*, of course.

**motode**, capital (a fund of money).

**motomeru** (2), to search for, to ask for, to get.

**motsu**, to hold, (hence) to have, also intransitively to last, to wear: *mochi-ageru*, to lift.

**motte**, a postposition: see p. 73: *motte iku*, to carry away; *motte kuru*, to bring (things).

**motto**, still, more; conf. p. 146.

**mottomo**, quite, very, (hence) quite right or reasonable, of course: *go mottomo de gozaimasū*, see p. 246.

**moya**, mist, fog.

**moyō**, a pattern.

**mu**, or **mū**, 'six; see p. 101.

**muchū**, (as) in a dream.

**muda** (na), useless.

**mugaku**, ignorance: *mugaku na* or *no*, ignorant.

**mugi**, a general name for wheat and barley.

**muhitsu** (no), illiterate.

**muhon**, a rebellion, a mutiny: *muhon-nin*, a rebel.

**muika**, six days, the sixth day of the month.

**mujin**, a money lottery.

**mukade**, a centipede.

**mukaeru** (2), to send for, to welcome, to marry (a wife).

**mukashi**, antiquity, old days.

**mukatte** (preceded by *ni*), turning to, towards, to.

**mukau**, to be opposite to; *ni mukatte*, confronting, towards, to.

**muko**, a bridegroom, a son-in-law.

**mukō**, the opposite side, opposite, the other party, he, she, they, there: *no mukō ni*, on the other side, opposite, beyond.

**muku**, pure, solid, unalloyed,—said of metals.

**mumei** (no), anonymous.  
**muna-moto**, same as the next.  
**mune**, the chest: *mune ga warii*, to feel sick at the stomach.  
**mune**, a roof-ridge; see also p. 112.  
**munintō**, an uninhabited island.  
**mura**, a village.  
**murasaki**, lilac, purple.  
**muri**, unreasonable: *go muri desū*, what you say is unreasonable.  
**muryō**, incalculable, infinite.  
**musai** (no), wifeless, a bachelor.  
**mushi**, an insect, any small creature that is neither bird, quadruped, nor fish.  
**mushi**, (with honorific prefix *o*), the Court word for *miso*, bean sauce.  
**musūko**, a boy, a son; but see p. 256.  
**musūme**, a girl, a daughter; but see p. 256.  
**mu(tsu)**, six.  
**mutsumashii**, friendly, on good terms.  
**muyami** (na), reckless, helter-skelter: *muyami ni*, recklessly.  
**muyō** (no), useless.  
**muzukashii**, difficult.  
**myaku**, the pulse: *myaku wo toru*, to feel the pulse.  
**myōchō**, to-morrow morning.  
**myō** (na), wonderful, strange.  
**myōgonichi**, the day after to-morrow.

**myōji**, a family name.  
**myōnichi**, to-morrow.

## N

**n'**, short for *no*, of; see p. 79.  
**na**, a name, specifically the personal name which corresponds to our "Christian name:" *na wo tsūkeru*, to give a name.  
**na**, termination of the positive imperative; see p. 167.  
**na**, termination of the negative imperative; see p. 168.  
**na**, a particle used to form quasi-adjectives; see pp. 135-8; 44, 142: *na no*, 78, 135, 142.  
**nā!** an interjection; see p. 238.  
**nabe**, a saucepan.  
**nada**, a reach or stretch of sea along a limited portion of the coast.  
**nadakai**, famous.  
**nadameru** (2), to pacify.  
**naderu** (2), to stroke.  
**nado**, properly etcetera, but often used at the end of an enumeration as a sort of expletive. Sometimes it may be rendered by such as, or like.  
**nafuda**, a visiting card.  
**nagai**, long.  
**naga-iki**, long life.  
**nagameru** (2), to gaze.  
**nagara**, while; see pp. 242, 39.  
**nagare**, a flow.  
**nagareru** (2), to flow.  
**nagasa**, length



**naga-ya**, see p. 281, foot-note.  
**nageru** (2), to throw.  
**nagi**, a calm.  
**naguru**, to beat, to thrash.  
**nagusameru** (2), to console, to cheer.  
**nai**, the "negative adjective;" see pp. 129, 137, 139, 140: *nai koto wa nai*, see p. 271.  
**nai-nai**, private, secret.  
**naikaku**, a ministry, the cabinet.  
**naisho** (no), secret, private.  
**naka**, inside; hence the relations (friendly or otherwise) existing between people: *no naka ni*, inside; *o naka*, a person's inside; *o nako ga sūkimashīta*, I feel hungry. Sometimes *naka* means all, whole, as *machi-naka*, the whole street.  
**nakagai**, a broker.  
**nakagoro**, a middle or intermediate time.  
**nakama**, a mate, a comrade.  
**naka-naka**, very, more than you might think: *naka-naka dōmo*, see p. 237.  
**nakanzuku**, more particularly, of all others.  
**nakare**, see bottom of p. 168.  
**naka-yashiki**, see p. 376, foot-note.  
**nakereba narimasen**, must; see N.B. at top of p. 175.  
**nakōdo**, a middleman, a match-maker.  
**naku**, to cry, to sing.

**naku naru**, to die (lit. to become non-existent).  
**nama**, raw, crude: *nama-byōhō*, see p. 313, No 23.  
**namae**, a (person's) name.  
**nama-iki** (na), conceited, vain.  
**namakeru** (2), to behave idly: *namakete iru*, to be idle.  
**namari**, lead (the metal).  
**nama-yoi**, half-tipsy.  
**namban-tetsu**, a particular kind of iron, so called because brought to Japan by the "southern barbarians" (*namban*), i.e., the Portuguese or Dutch.  
**nami**, a wave.  
**nami** (no), ordinary, average: *nami-taitei*, ditto.  
**namida**, tears: *namida wo kobosu*, to shed tears.  
**nan?** abbrev. of *nani?* what? *nan da ka*, somehow or other; *nan de mo*, anything; *nan de mo ka de mo*, anything and everything (see also p. 350, note 7); *nan-doki?* or *nan-ji?* what o'clock? *nan-nen?* *nan-ri?* see p. 113; *nan to ka*, something or other; *nan to naku*, without any assignable cause.  
**nan**, emphatic, see foot-note to p. 135.  
**nana**(tsu), seven.  
**nanda**, **nandari**, **nandarō**, neg. verbal suffixes, see p. 169.  
**nando**, same as *nado*.  
**nani?** what? *nani-bun*, somehow,

- please, indeed, but often a mere expletive; *nani-gashi*, such and such a person, so and so; *nan no nanigashi*, Mr. so and so; *nani-hodo?* what amount? *nani ka*, *nan(n)i mo*, *nan(i) de mo*, see p. 52; *nani-nani*, such and such, so and so, *nani shiro* or *nan ni itase*, see p. 189; *nani yori*, more than anything.
- Nankin**, China (vulg.).
- nanni**, popular for *nami*; *nanni mo nai*, there is nothing at all.
- nan-nyo**, men and women, sex.
- nanoka**, vulgar for *nanuka*.
- nansen**, a shipwreck: *nansen ni au*, to be shipwrecked.
- nanuka**, seven days, the seventh day of the month.
- nanzo**, something, how? what? also used for *nado* and for *naze*.
- nao**, still more; see p. 146.
- naoru**, to get well, to recover (intrans.): *naori-kakaru*, to be on the road to recovery.
- naoru**, to amend, to rectify, to cure, to change.
- nara**, short for *naraba*.
- nara**, an oak-tree.
- nara**, } if, but see p. 185.  
**naraba**, }
- naraberu** (2), to place in a row.
- narabu**, to be in a row, to be parallel.
- narai**, a habit, a usage.
- narasu**, to ring (trans.).
- narau**, to learn.
- nareru** (2), to get accustomed: *narete iru*, to be accustomed.
- nari**, or; see p. 224.
- nari** (with honorific prefix *o*), see p. 241.
- narimasen**, see p. 224.
- narō koto nara**, if possible.
- narū**, to ring (intrans.).
- narū**, to be, see pp. 224, 136, 175, 185: *...ni narū*, 249.
- narū**, to become, sometimes to ripen. For such phrases as *o tanomi ni narū*, see p. 249: *nari-kawaru*, to replace.
- naruhodo!** see p. 238.
- narutake**, as...as possible, if possible.
- nasai** or **nasare**, imperative of *nasaru*; see pp. 171, 242, 253.
- nasaru**, see pp. 160, 171, 249.
- nasareru** (2), see p. 171.
- nasasō na**, apparently non-existent.
- nashi**, (there) is not; see pp. 122, 129.
- nashi**, a pear.
- nasu**, to do.
- natsu**, summer.
- nawa**, a rope.
- naze?** why? *naze to iu to*, because, but see p. 351, foot-note 8.
- ne**, a root.
- ne**, price: *ne wo tsūkeru*, to price.
- ne** or **nē!** an important interjection; see p. 238.
- neba**, termination of the negative condit. present; see p. 169.

**nebeya**, a bedroom.  
**nedai**, a (European) bed.  
**nedan**, a price.  
**nedoko**, a bed.  
**nedo(mo)**, termination of the negative concessive present; see p. 169.  
**negai**, a request, a desire.  
**negau**, to request, to beg; sometimes (in the mouths of the lower classes) to have to do with, to sell to: *negawaku wa*, please.  
**negi**, an onion.  
**negiru**, to bargain.  
**neji**, a screw.  
**nejiru**, to twist (trans.).  
**neko**, a cat.  
**nema**, a bedroom.  
**nemaki**, night-clothes.  
**nembutsu**, a kind of Buddhist prayer or litany.  
**nemui**, sleepy.  
**nen**, a year;—used only in compounds, as *tōnen*, this year.  
**nen**, a thought, a wish, heed paid: *nen wo okosu*, to have a thought enter one's mind.  
**nengō**, a "year-name;" see p. 116.  
**nengu**, the taxes.  
**nennei**, a doll (in baby language).  
**nenrei**, age, years.  
**neru** (2), to go to bed, to lie down, to sleep: *nete iru*, to be asleep; *netsūkarenai*, cannot get to sleep.  
**nēsan**, lit. Miss elder sister (*ane san*), and hence used as a

half-polite half-familiar style of address in talking to girls.  
**nesshin**, zeal.  
**netsu**, fever.  
**ne-uchi**, value, price.  
**nezumi**, a rat: *nezumi-iro*, grey.  
**ni**, a postposition; see pp. 74; 45, 80, 94, 98, 99, 100, 169, 213: *ni itatte*, *ni taishite*, *ni yotte*, see p. 100; *ni suru*, see p. 227; *ni wa*, see pp. 88, 94; *ni oite*, in.  
**ni**, two: *ni-bai*, double; *ni-ban*, number two; *ni-banme*, the second; *ni-do*, twice; *ni-do-me*, the second time; *ni-wari*, twenty per cent; *ni-wari go-bu*, twenty-five per cent.  
**nichi**, a day (in compounds), as *nichi-nichi*, daily.  
**nichiyōbi**, Sunday.  
**nigai**, bitter.  
**nigeha wo ushinau**, to lose the power of flight.  
**nigeru** (2), to run away: *nigedasu*, to begin to run away.  
**nigiru**, to grasp.  
**nigiyaka (na)**, lively.  
**nigorī**, see pp. 20, 29, 32, 143, 163.  
**ni-gwatsu**, February.  
**Nihon**, (less elegantly **Nippon**), Japan: *Nihon-go*, the Japanese language; *Nihon-jin*, a Japanese; *Nihon-koku*, Japan; *Nihon no*, Japanese (adj.).  
**niji**, a rainbow.  
**ni-jū**, twenty.  
**ni-jū-yokka**, twenty-four days,

- the twenty-fourth day of the month.
- nikai**, a second storey, upstairs.
- nikawa**, glue.
- niku**, flesh, meat : *nikū-sashi*, a fork ; *nikūtai*, the flesh (religiously speaking, as opposed to the spirit) ; *niku-ya*, a butcher's shop, hence a butcher.
- ni(-motsu)**, luggage, cargo.
- nin**, a person ;—used only in compounds, as *go-nin*, five people.
- ningen**, a human being.
- ningyō**, a doll.
- ni-nim-biki**, pulled by two men.
- ni-nin-nori**, accommodating two persons ;—said of a jinrikīsha.
- ninjin**, a carrot.
- ninsoku**, a coolie.
- nioi**, a smell.
- Nippon**, see **Nihon**.
- niramu**, to glare at with the eyes.
- niru** (3), to boil (food, not water) : *ni-tatte iru*, to be at boiling point.
- nishi**, west ; *nishi-kita*, north-west ; *nishi-minami*, south-west.
- nishiki**, brocade.
- nite**, the Classical form of the postposition *de*, see p. 62.
- ni-tō-biki**, pulled by two horses.
- niwa**, a court-yard, a garden : *niwa-guchi*, the entrance to a garden.
- niwatori**, the barndoor fowl.
- ni-zukuri**, packing : *ni-zukuri wo suru*, to pack.
- no**, a moor : *no-hara*, ditto.
- no**, a postposition ; see pp. 76, 96, 97, 99, 102, 142, *cf. pass.* : *no ni*, pp. 96, 186 ; for *no* followed by other postpositions, see p. 96 ; *no nan no*, see p. 81.
- nō!** an interjection : see p. 238.
- nobasu**, to stretch (trans.), to put off.
- noberu** (2), to narrate, to express opinion.
- noboru**, to go up, to climb.
- noboseru** (2), to rush to the head (said of blood).
- nochi**, after, afterwards : *nochi-hodo*, afterwards, by and by ; *nochi-zoi*, a second wife.
- nodo**, the neck, the throat : *nodo ga kawaku*, to be thirsty.
- nokorazu**, without exception, all ; conf. pp. 230, 233.
- nokori**, a remainder.
- nokoru**, to remain over, to be left.
- nokosu**, to leave behind.
- nomi**, only : *nomi narazu*, not only.
- nomi**, a flea.
- nomu**, to drink : *nomi-taosu*, to cause loss to a wine-dealer by drinking his liquor and not paying for it ; *tabako wo nomu*, to smoke.
- nonoshiru**, to revile.
- norite**, one who rides (on a horse, in a carriage, etc.).
- norou**, to curse.
- noru**, to ride—on a horse, in a vehicle, in a boat, etc.: *nori-oku*

*reru*, to be too late (for the train, steamer, etc.). *Notte iru* sometimes means simply to be on.

**noshi-kakaru**, to spring upon.

**nozomi**, a wish: *nozomi-dōri*, according to one's wish.

**nozomu**, to look forward to, to expect.

**nugu**, to take off.

**nuguu**, to wipe.

**nuibari**, a needle.

**nuimono**, needlework.

**nukeru** (2), to slip out, to get pulled out, to get out of joint.

**nuku**, to pull out (e.g. a cork).

**nureru** (2), to get wet: *nurete iru*, to be wet; conf. p. 204.

**nurimono**, lacquer-ware.

**nuru**, to smear, to lacquer.

**nurui**, lukewarm.

**nusumu**, to steal.

**nuu**, to sew.

**nyōbō**, a wife.

**nyoshi**, a girl.

**nyotei**, an empress or queen-regnant.

**nozoku**, to peep.

**nyūhi**, or **nyūyō**, expenses: *nyūhi wo kakeru*, to spend money.

## O

**o**, a tail.

**o**, an honorific prefix; see pp. 143, 245-9, 259.

**o**, a masculine prefix; see p. 27.

**ō**, an augmentative prefix; see p. 143.

**ō**, a king.

**ō-atari**, a great hit.

**oba**, an aunt.

**obāsan**, an old lady, granny.

**Ō-Bei**, Europe and America.

**obi**, a sash, a belt.

**obiyakasu**, to frighten.

**oboeru** (2), to remember, to feel, to learn: *oboe-tsūkusu*, to learn thoroughly.

**ōchaku** (na), villainous, *ōchaku-mono*, a rascal.

**ochiru** (3), to fall; see pp. 157, 152.

**odayaka** (na), calm, quiet.

**odokasu**, to frighten.

**ō-doko**, a large place.

**odoroku**, to be astonished, to be afraid: *odoroki-awateru*, to rush into a panic.

**odoru**, to dance.

**ōfūku**, going and returning: *ōfūku-gippu*, a return ticket.

**ōgi**, a fan (of the opening and shutting kind).

**ōgyō suru** (irreg.), lit. to go through sideways, hence to stalk along through, to traverse insolently.

**o-ha uchi-karasu**, lit. to wither one's tail and wing, i.e., to come down in the world and have nothing left but rags, to be shabby.

**chayō** (better *o hayō*), good morning; conf. p. 293, No. 82 and foot-note.

- ō-hei**, insolence, arrogance.  
**oi**, a nephew.  
**ōi**, plentiful; see p. 275: *ōi ni*, very, chiefly.  
**oide** (properly *o ide*, i.e., honourable exit), conf. pp. 251, 223.  
**oi-oi**, gradually.  
**oira**, a very vulgar word for we.  
**oisen**, money spent on pursuing some one.  
**oishii**, nice to eat, tasty.  
**oite**, in (bookish word).  
**oi-yaru**, to drive away.  
**oji**, an uncle.  
**ojiisan**, an old gentleman, grand-papa.  
**ōjiru** (3), to correspond, to answer, to suit.  
**oka**, land (as opposed to water).  
**oka**, a mound.  
**ōkami**, a wolf.  
**okamisan**, a married woman of the lower or lower middle class, Mrs. It might also be written *o kami san*.  
**okashii** or **okashi na**, absurd, laughable.  
**ōkata**, for the most part, probably.  
**oki**, the offing, out at sea.  
**ōkii** or **ōki na**, large, conf. pp. 138, 142: *ōki ni*, very.  
**okiru** (3), to rise, to get up; *oki-agaru*, to rise up (e.g. from the ground).  
**ōkisa**, size.  
**ō-kizu**, a severe wound.  
**okkakeru** (2), to pursue.
- okkasan**, mamma, a mother; see pp. 256-7.  
**okonai**, conduct, behaviour.  
**okonau**, to practise (e.g. virtue).  
**okoru**, to arise, to take place.  
**okoru**, to get angry: *okori-dasu*, to begin to get angry.  
**okosu**, to rouse, to raise: *negai wo okosu*, to begin to feel a desire.  
**oku**, to put, sometimes to lay aside; conf. pp. 154, 152, 194.  
**oku**, a hundred thousand.  
**oku**, the inner part or recesses of anything,—e.g. of a mountain range.  
**okureru** (2), to be too late, not to be in time.  
**okuri-jō**, an invoice, a bill of lading.  
**okuri-mono**, a present (to an inferior).  
**okuru**, to send, to give, to accompany, to see off; also to spend (time).  
**okūsama**, **okūsan**, a married woman of the upper class, my lady, Lady, Mrs.; conf. p. 256.  
**omae**, you; see p. 47.  
**omba**, a wet-nurse.  
**omma**, a stallion.  
**omocha**, a toy.  
**omoi**, heavy, important.  
**omoi**, thought, (hence) affection: *omoi no hoka*, unexpectedly.  
**omoi-gake-nai**, unexpected.  
**omonjiru** (3), to esteem greatly.

**omoshiroi**, amusing, interesting.  
**omoshiromi**, (a certain amount of) fun, or interest.  
**omoshirosa**, amusement, fun, interest, the amount or degree of amusement.  
**omotai**, heavy.  
**omote**, the front, out-of-doors: *omote-mon*, a front gate; *omote-muki*, outwardly, official.  
**omou**, to think: *omoi-dasu*, to call to mind; *omoi-kiru*, to make up one's mind; *omoi-tatsu*, to resolve; *omoi-yaru*, to sympathize; *omoi-yoran*, unexpected.  
**omowareru** (2), to venture to think, conf. p. 201.  
**ō-mugi**, barley.  
**on**, kindness: *on wo shiranai*, to be ungrateful.  
**on**, the book language form of the honorific prefix *o*.  
**onaji**, the same; see p. 126.  
**ondori**, a cock bird.  
**ongaku**, classical music.  
**oni**, a devil, a goblin.  
**onna**, a woman: *onna no ko*, a little girl.  
**onore**, self; also you (insulting).  
**onsen**, a hot spring.  
**orā**, I, but see p. 46.  
**ōrai**, going and coming, a thoroughfare: *ōrai-dome*, no thoroughfare: conf. p. 22.  
**Oranda**, Holland.  
**ore**, see p. 46.  
**oreru** (2), to break (intrans.).

**ori**, an occasion, a time; *ori-ori*, from time to time.  
**ori-au**, to be in certain mutual relations, e.g. *ori-aimasen*, they do not get on well together.  
**orifushi**, on a certain occasion, sometimes, just then.  
**oriru** (3), to descend.  
**Orosha**, Russia.  
**orosoka** (na), remiss.  
**orosu**, to lower, hence to launch.  
**oru**, to be; see pp. 191, 223, 155: *...ni orarenai*, cannot do without.  
**oru**, to weave.  
**oru**, to break (trans.), to pluck.  
**osameru** (2), to pacify, hence to govern, to guide; also to put away.  
**ō-sawagi**, confusion, a hubbub.  
**ōse**, something said (honor.).  
**ōserareru** (irreg.), honorific for to say, see pp. 171, 251.  
**oshie**, instruction, doctrine, a religion.  
**oshieru** (2), to teach, to show how.  
**oshi-gami**, blotting-paper.  
**oshii**, regrettable: *oshii koto desū ne!* what a pity! *Oshii* is wrongly but frequently replaced by *hoshii*, as *kiru no mo hoshii gozaimasū*, it seems a pity to cut it.  
**oshimu**, to regret, to grudge.  
**oshō**, a Buddhist priest.  
**osoi**, late.  
**osoreru** (2), to fear: *osore-iru*, to be filled with dread, often used

as an almost meaningless polite phrase.

**osoroshii**, frightful.

**ossharu**, to say (honorific), see 171, 251.

**osu (no)**, male.

**osu**, to push.

**oto**, a sound, a noise : *oto ga suru*, there is a noise.

**otoko**, a man : *otoko-buri*, a manly air ; *otoko no ko*, a boy.

**otona**, a grown-up person.

**otonashii**, good (of a child), quiet in behaviour.

**ōtono**, the Mikado's palace, a feudal lord.

**otoroeru (2)**, to decline (intrans.), to grow feeble.

**otosu**, to let fall.

**ototoi**, the day before yesterday.

**ototoshi**, the year before last.

**otōto**, a younger brother.

**otottsān**, papa, a father ; conf. pp. 256-7.

**otto**, a husband ; but see p. 256.

**ou**, to pursue.

**ō-warai**, a good laugh.

**owari**, the end.

**owaru**, to end (intrans. and trans.).

**oya**, a parent : *oya-ko*, parents and children : *oya-ko-rashii*, like or suitable to parents and children.

**oyaji**, a father ; see p. 256.

**oya(-oya)**! an interjection ; see p. 239.

**oyobosu**, to cause to reach, to extend to (trans.).

**oyobu**, to reach (intrans.) : *sore ni wa oyobimasen*, there is no need to do that.

**oyogu**, to swim.

**ōyoso**, or **oyoso**, altogether, on the whole, in the main.

**ōzara**, a dish (large plate).

**ōzei**, a crowd.

## P

**pan**, bread, conf. N. B. to p. 236 : *pan-ya*, a bakery, hence a baker.

**patat(t)to**, flop, bang.

**penki**, paint ; conf. p. 26.

**penshiru**, a pencil (from the English word).

**pika-pika**, } with a flash, glit-  
**pikatto**, } teringly.

**pon-pon**, the stomach (in baby language).

## R

**ra**, a particle of vagueness or plurality ; see pp. 29, 52.

**rai**, thunder.

**rai**, next (in compounds), as *rainen*, next year.

**raida (na)**, lazy.

**rambō**, disorderly conduct : *rambō na*, wild, riotous ; *rambō-nin*, a turbulent fellow.

**rampu**, a lamp (from the English word) : *rampu wo tsūkeru*, to light a lamp.

**ramune**, lemonade (from the English word).

**rasha**, woollen cloth.



**rashii**, a suffix ; see p. 133.  
**rei**, ceremonies, politeness, thanks :  
*o rei wo iu*, to thank.  
**rei**, a precedent, an example.  
**reifuku**, full dress, dress clothes.  
**reishu**, cold *sake*.  
**rekishi**, history.  
**renga**, a brick.  
**renjū**, a company, associates.  
**ressha**, a railway train.  
**ri**, a Japanese league of nearly  
 2½ miles English.  
**rieki**, profit, advantage.  
**rigaku**, science.  
**rikiryō**, degree of strength, ability.  
**rikken-seiji**, constitutional government.  
**rikō (na)**, 'cute, intelligent.  
**riku**, rare for *roku*, six.  
**riku**, land ; *riku-age suru*, to land  
 (trans.).  
**rikugun**, an army.  
**rikutsu**, a reason ; arguing (often  
 in a bad sense) : *rikutsu wo iu*,  
 to quibble.  
**ringo**, an apple.  
**rinjin**, a neighbour.  
**rinshoku**, stinginess.  
**rippa (na)**, splendid.  
**rippō**, legislating ; *rippō-fu*, a hall  
 of legislature.  
**rippuku**, anger : *rippuku suru*,  
 to get angry.  
**risū**, the number of miles.  
**ro**, an imperative termination ; see  
 p. 167.

**rō**, an upper storey with a gallery,  
 a large hall.  
**rō**, trouble.  
**roji**, an alley.  
**rōjin**, an old man : *go rōjin*, your  
 father.  
**rōka**, a passage (in a house), a  
 corridor.  
**roku**, six.  
**roku-gwatsu**, June.  
**roku-jū**, sixty.  
**Rōmaji**, the Roman alphabet.  
**romei**, lit. dew life, hence a scanty  
 livelihood : *romei wo tsunagu*, to  
 eke out a subsistence.  
**ron**, argument, opinion.  
**Rongo**, the Confucian Analects.  
**rōnin**, a wandering *samurai* who  
 served no particular lord.  
**ronjiru (3)**, to argue : *ronji-tateru*,  
 to start an idea.  
**ronrigaku**, logic.  
**ronshū**, a collection of articles,  
 lectures, or addresses.  
**rōshi**, death in prison : *rōshi suru*,  
 to die in prison.  
**rōsoku**, a candle.  
**rō(ya)**, prison.  
**rusu**, absent : *rusu-ban*, a care-  
 taker ; *rusu-chū*, while absent.  
**ryō**, a dragon.  
**ryō**, both, as in *ryō-hō*, both  
 (sides) ; *ryō-nin*, both persons ;  
*ryō-te*, both hands.  
**ryōgae-ya**, an exchange shop,  
 a money-changer.

**ryōji**, a consul: *ryōji-kwan*, a consulate.  
**ryōken**, judgment, opinion, intention, sometimes excuse.  
**ryokō**, journey: (*ryokō-*)*menjō*, a passport; *ryokō suru*, to travel.  
**ryōri**, cooking: *ryōri-nin*, a cook; *ryōri-ya*, a restaurant; *ryōri wo suru*, to cook.  
**ryōshin**, conscience.  
**ryōshin**, both parents.  
**ryūkō**, prevalence, fashion: *ryūkō-hyō*, an epidemic disease; *ryūkō suru*, to be in fashion, to prevail.  
**Ryūkyū**, the Luchu Islands.

## S

**sa**, a suffix used to form abstract nouns; see p. 37.  
**sa!** or **sā!** an interjection; p. 239.  
**sabaki**, a judicial decision.  
**sabaku**, to manage, to decide the merits of.  
**sabi**, rust.  
**sabishii**, lonely, 'dull.  
**sadamaru**, to be fixed, settled.  
**sadameru** (2), to fix, to settle.  
**sadameshi**, or **sadamete**, positively, surely.  
**sae**, even (adverb), if only.  
**saeru** (2), to be clear and cold, hence calm and skilful.  
**sagaru**, to descend, hence to go away.  
**sagasu**, to seek, to look for.  
**sageru** (2), to lower, to hang down (trans.).

**sai**, a humble word for wife: *sai-shi*, wife and children.  
**sai-chi**, intelligence.  
**saiketsu**, decision, verdict: *saiketsu suru*, to take a vote.  
**saiku**, workmanship, a ware.  
**saikun**, an honorific word for wife, conf. p. 256.  
**sairei**, a religious festival.  
**saisho**, the beginning.  
**saisoku**, urging on: *saisoku suru*, to urge on, to hurry up (trans.).  
**saiwai**, good luck, happiness.  
**saizen**, the very beginning, before.  
**saji**, a spoon: *saji wo toru*, to practise as a physician, conf. p. 388, note 6.  
**saka**, the hilly part of a road, an ascent: *saka-michi*, ditto.  
**sakan (na)**, prosperous: *sakan ni*, greatly.  
**sakana**, anything taken with *sake*, hence more especially fish.  
**sakarau**, to resist.  
**sakasama**, upside down.  
**sakate**, a tip (to a servant, etc.).  
**saka-ya**, a grog-shop.  
**sakazuki**, a *sake*-cup.  
**sake**, rice-beer, also alcoholic liquors in general: *sake-zuki*, fondness for strong drink, a toper; *sake ni you*, to get tipsy.  
**sake**, a salmon.  
**sakebu**, to yell.  
**saki**, front, before, on ahead, further, a cape: *o saki*, see

- p. 248 ; *saki sama*, the gentleman at the other end.
- saki-hodo**, previously, a short while ago.
- sakki**, emph. for *saki*.
- sakkon**, yesterday and to-day.
- saku**, to blossom.
- saku**, to tear (trans.).
- saku**, last (in compounds), as *sakuban*, last night ; *sakujitsu*, yesterday ; *sakumen*, last year.
- sakura**, a cherry-tree.
- sama**, way, fashion ; also Mr., Mrs., Miss ; see pp. 246-7, 258 : *sama-zama*, all sorts.
- samasu**, to cool (trans.).
- samatage**, a hindrance : *samatage wo suru*, to hinder.
- samatageru** (2), to hinder.
- sam-bai**, treble.
- sam-bu(n) no ichi**, one-third.
- sameru** (2), to cool (intrans.), to fade : *me ga sameru*, to wake.
- samisen**, a sort of guitar with three strings.
- samui**, cold ;—said only of the weather or of one's own feelings.
- samurai**, a gentleman of the military caste under the feudal system, a warrior.
- samusa**, coldness, the degree of cold.
- samushii**, lonely, dull.
- san**, three : *sam-bu*, three per cent ; *san-do*, thrice ; *san-do-me*, the third time ; *san-ruin-mae*, portions for three ; *san-wari*, thirty per cent ; *san-wari go-bu*, thirty-five per cent.
- san**, short for *sama* ; see p. 258.
- san**, a mountain (in compounds), as *Fuji-san*, Mount Fuji.
- san-gwatsu**, March.
- san-jū**, thirty.
- sankaku**, a triangle.
- sankei suru** (irreg.), to go to a temple for worship.
- sansei**, approval, seconding (a motion) : *sansei suru*, to support, to second ; *sansei-sha*, a seconder, a supporter.
- sappari**, quite ; (with a negative) not at all.
- sara**, a plate.
- saru**, a monkey.
- saru**, to leave (a place), hence to be distant from.
- sasa**, bamboo-grass.
- sasai**, a trifle : *sasai na* (or *no*), trifling.
- sasayaku**, to whisper.
- saseru** (2), to cause to do, to let.
- sashitaru**, a word of the Written Language meaning special, particular.
- sashizu**, a command, dictates, information.
- sasou**, to take along with one, to invite : *sasoi-dasu*, ditto.
- sasshiru** (3), to guess.
- sassoku**, immediately.
- sasu**, to thrust, to sting ; to carry (e.g. a sword) : *sashi-ageru*, to present (to a superior) ; *sashi-*

- dasu*, to thrust forward ; *sashi-ire-guchi*, the opening (of a post-box, etc.).
- sasuga (ni)**, even so, even such, howsoever.
- sata**, an order, a decision, information.
- sate**, well ! (at the beginning of a sentence).
- sato**, a village.
- satō**, sugar.
- satori**, comprehension, discernment of (religious) truth : *satori wo hiraku*, to come to a knowledge of the truth (Buddh.).
- satsu**, a volume.
- satsu**, paper-money : *satsu-ire*, a pocket-book.
- Satsuma-imo**, a sweet potato, so-called because first introduced from Luchu into the province of Satsuma.
- sawagasu**, to disturb, to make turbulent.
- sawagi**, a fuss, a row.
- sawaru**, to strike or clash against, to touch.
- sayō** (a contraction of *sono yō*, that way), so : *sayō de gozaimasū* (p. 64), that is so, yes ; *sayō de gozaimasen*, no ; *sayō sa*, oh ! yes, of course.
- sayōnara**, goodbye ; conf. p. 230.
- sazo**, indeed, surely, doubtless.
- sebone**, the spine, backbone.
- segare**, a humble word for son ; conf. p. 256.
- sei**, a family name.
- sei**, cause, effect.
- sei**, stature : *sei no hikui*, short (of stature) ; *sei no takai*, tall.
- sei**, pure (used chiefly in compounds).
- sei**, make, manufacture : *seisuru*, to manufacture.
- seibansan**, the eucharist.
- seibutsu**, a living being.
- sei-daku**, surds and sonants ; see p. 20, second N.B.
- seido**, government, political forms or constitution.
- seifu**, a government.
- seigen**, a limit : *seigen suru*, to limit.
- seiji**, a government.
- seijin**, a sage, a philosopher.
- seiki**, a century.
- seinen**, the prime of life, youth.
- seireiten**, a sacrament.
- seiryoku**, strength.
- seishin**, the stars (and constellations).
- sei-shitsu**, character, disposition, nature.
- Seisho**, the Holy Scriptures.
- sei-sui**, see p. 34.
- sei-u-kei**, a barometer.
- Seiyō**, Western or European countries generally, Europe, America : *Seiyō-jin*, a European, an American ; *Seiyō-zukuri*, foreign-built.
- seizō**, manufacturing : *seizō suru*, to manufacture.

**seizon**, existence : *seizon suru*, to exist.

**seji**, flattery.

**sekai**, } the world : *seken narete*  
**seken**, } *iru*, to be used to the  
ways of the world.

**seki**, a cough : *seki ga deru*, to cough.

**seki**, a barrier : *seki-mori*, a guard at a barrier.

**sekitan**, coal.

**sekkaku**, special pains, signal kindness, on purpose.

**sekken**, thrift, economy : *sekken wo okonau*, to be thrifty.

**sekkyō**, a sermon : *sekkyō suru*, to preach.

**semai**, narrow, small.

**semete**, at any rate, at least, at most ; conf. p. 230.

**semeru** (2), to treat with rigour, to press upon.

**semmon**, a specialty (in learning).

**sempō**, the other party, they, he.

**sen**, a thousand.

**sen**, a cent.

**senaka**, the back (of the body).

**Sendai-bushi**, a kind of poem, see p. 452.

**sendō**, the master of a junk, hence a boatman.

**senjitsu**, the other day.

**senkoku**, a little while ago.

**senkyōshi**, a clergyman, a missionary.

**senrei**, baptism : *senrei wo ukeru*, to be baptised.

**senro**, a line of railway.

**sensaku**, research : *sensaku suru*, to make researches.

**sensei**, an elder, a teacher, hence you, he ; see p. 47.

**sensu**, a fan, see **ōgi**.

**sentaku**, the washing of clothes : *sentaku-ya*, a washerman ; *sentaku suru*, to wash (clothes).

**senzo**, an ancestor.

**seppō**, a sermon.

**seppuku**, the same as *hara-kiri*, see p. 35.

**seri-uri**, an auction.

**seshimeru** (2), to cause to do, see p. 212.

**sessha**, I, lit. the awkward person.

**setomono**, porcelain.

**setsu**, an occasion, a time.

**setsu**, an opinion.

**setsu**, awkward ; conf. 257.

**setsume**, an explanation : *setsume suru*, to explain.

**setta**, sandals soled with leather : *setta-baki*, wearing such sandals.

**settaku**, my house ; see p. 257.

**sewa**, help, trouble : *sewa ni naru*, to be helped by ; *sewa ga yakeru*, to be busy and anxious : *sewa wo suru*, (or *yaku*), to help ; *o sewa sama*, see p. 295, No. 96.

**sha**, a company, a society, a firm.

**shaberi**, chatter, a chatter-box.

**shaberu**, to chatter.

**shabon**, soap (from the Spanish *jabon*).

**shafu**, a jinrikisha-man.

- shain**, a partner in a firm, a member of a society.
- Shaka Sama**, the Buddha Sākya Muni.
- shake** (properly *sake*), a salmon.
- shakkin**, a debt.
- shaku**, a foot (measurement).
- shakwai**, a society; also used in such phrases as *gakūsha shakwai*, the learned world.
- shamisen**, see **samisen**.
- shampan**, champagne (from the French).
- shappo**, a hat, a cap (from the French *chapeau*).
- sharei**, a fee, a salary.
- shasetsu**, a leading article.
- shashin**, a photograph: *shashin-basami*, a photograph-holder or frame; *shashin-ya*, a photographer.
- shatsu**, a shirt (from the English).
- shi**, death: *shisuru*, die.
- shi**, four.
- shi**, a Chinese poem.
- shi**, Mr.
- shi**, a viscount.
- shi**, a postposition; see p. 81.
- shi**, a Classical termination of adjectives; see pp. 121-2.
- shi**, the indefinite form of *suru*, to do.
- shi-awase**, good fortune, lucky.
- shiba**, turf, grass.
- shibaraku**, some time (whether short or long): *makoto ni shibaraku*, see p. 269.
- shibaru**, to tie.
- shibashi**, a short while.
- shibomu**, to wither.
- shi-bu(n) no ichi**, a quarter (¼).
- shi-bu(n) no san**, three-quarters.
- shīchi**, seven.
- shīchi-gwatsu**, July.
- shīchi-jū**, seventy.
- shīchimen-chō**, a turkey.
- shīchimotsu**, something pawned, a mortgage.
- shichū**, (the middle of) the streets.
- shida**, a fern.
- shidai**, arrangements, state, (hence) according to: *shidai ni*, according to, gradually.
- shiga**, the teeth: *shiga ni kakennai*, to pass over as unimportant.
- shigai**, a corpse.
- shigei**, dense (see p. 124).
- shigi**, a snipe.
- shi-go**, four or five.
- shigoku**, extremely, very.
- shigoto**, work: *shigoto wo suru*, to do one's work.
- shi-gwatsu**, April.
- shihainin**, the manager of a commercial house.
- shi-hō hap-pō**, all (lit. four and eight) sides.
- shihon**, capital (a fund of money).
- shii (no ki)**, a species of live oak.
- shii**, an adjective suffix, see p. 128.
- shiiru** (3), to urge, to try, to force.
- shiitake**, a species of mushroom.
- shiite**, urgently, with violence.
- shijū**, constantly.

**shi-jū**, forty.  
**shīka** (with a neg.), nothing but, only. Some pronounce *shīkya*.  
**shīka**, a deer, a stag.  
**shī-kaku**, four sides: *shī-kaku na* or *no*, square.  
**shīkaraba**, if (or as) that is so, then.  
**shīkaru**, to scold.  
**shīkashi**, but (see pp. 242-3): *shīkashi-nagara*, but, nevertheless.  
**shīkata**, a way of doing: *shīkata ga nai*, there is nothing to be done, no help for it; conf. p. 147.  
**shīken**, an examination, an experiment: *shīken wo ukeru*, to pass an examination.  
**shīki**, a ceremony.  
**shīki-mono**, lit. a spread thing, hence a carpet, a table-cloth, etc.  
**shīkiri (ni)**, perpetually.  
**shī-kitari**, a custom that has been handed down.  
**shikkari**, firm, tight: *shikkari shita*, firm.  
**shikkei**, rudeness: *shikkei na*, rude, impolite.  
**shikken**, a regent (in mediæval times); see p. 344, note 3.  
**shī-komu**, to put into, to arrange inside.  
**shīkwan**, an officer.  
**shīkya**, see **shīka** (1).  
**shima**, an island.  
**shimai**, the end: *mō shimai*, see p. 292, No. 69.  
**shimatsu**, the beginning and end, the whole of any affair.

**shimau**, to finish; see p. 194.  
**shimbun**, news, a newspaper: *shimbun-shi*, a newspaper; *shimbun-ya*, a newspaper man.  
**shime-daka**, a sum total.  
**shimeppoi**, damp.  
**shimeru**, a causative suffix, see p. 212.  
**shimeru (2)**, to fasten, to close, hence to put or have on round the waist: *shime-kiru*, to close up, to shut up.  
**shimimitsu (na)**, intimate.  
**shimo**, (hoar-)frost; *shimo-doke*, thaw; *shimo ga furu*, to freeze.  
**shimo**, below.  
**shimpai**, anxiety, sorrow: *shimpai suru*, to be anxious or troubled; *shimpai ni naru*, to become anxious.  
**shimpo**, progress: *shimpo suru*, to progress.  
**shimpu**, a father,—by birth, not by adoption; *go shimpu (sama)*, your father.  
**shin**, new (in compounds), as *shinnen*, the new year.  
**shin**, the heart; hence the wick of a lamp.  
**shin (no)**, true, real: *shin ni*, really.  
**shina**, a kind, hence more frequently an article, goods: *shinamono*, ditto.  
**Shina**, China: *Shina-jin*, a Chinaman.  
**shin-ai**, family affection.

- shinchū**, brass : *shinchū-zukuri*, arranged or fastened with brass.
- shindai**, an estate, property : *shindai-kagiri ni naru*, to become bankrupt.
- shinja**, a believer.
- shinjiru** (3), to believe.
- shinjō suru** (irreg.), to present respectfully to a superior; see pp. 11, 251 : *shinjō-mono*, a present.
- shinki** (na), new.
- shinkō**, belief : *shinkō-shin*, a believing heart; *shinkō suru*, to believe.
- shinkwa**, evolution : *shinkwa-ron*, the doctrine of evolution.
- shinnen**, the new year.
- shinrei**, the soul.
- shinri**, truth.
- shinrui**, a relation, a kinsman.
- shinsei**, sacredness : *shinsei na*, sacred.
- shinsetsu**, kindness : *shinsetsu na*, kind.
- shinshi**, a gentleman.
- shintai**, a new shape.
- Shintō**, the name of the aboriginal religion of the Japanese prior to the introduction of Buddhism. It means "the way of the gods."
- shinuru** (irreg.), to die; see pp. 172, 198, 212 : *shini-sokonau*, barely to escape death.
- shin-yō suru** (irreg.), to believe in, to trust.
- shinzō**, properly a girl, but with honorific *go* prefixed now used in the sense of a married woman of the lower middle class, Mrs.
- shinzu-beki**, credible.
- shio**, salt, salt water, the tide.
- shira**, familiar for *shiran*, don't know.
- shiraberu** (2), to investigate, to examine.
- shira-ga**, white hair : conf. p. 25.
- shira-giku**, a white chrysanthemum.
- shirase**, an intimation, an announcement.
- shiraseru** (2), to inform.
- shireta**, self-evident.
- shirimochi wo tsūku**, to fall down in a sitting position.
- shirizoku**, to withdraw (intrans.).
- shiro**, a castle.
- shiro**, imper. of *suru*, to do : *nani shiro*, see p. 189.
- shiroi**, white.
- shiromi**, a tinge of whiteness.
- shiromono**, merchandise.
- shirosa**, whiteness, the degree of whiteness.
- shiru**, to know : *shirenai*, can't tell.
- shirushi**, a sign, a mark.
- shi-shaku**, the title of viscount
- Shi-sho**, see p. 408, note 10.
- shishō**, a teacher.
- shisō**, a thought.
- shisoku**, (with honorific prefix *go*) your son; conf. p. 256.
- shison**, a descendant.



- shīta**, the under or lower part of anything, downstairs: *no shīta ni*, below, underneath; *shīta no hō*, the bottom, beneath.
- shīta**, the tongue: *shīta-uchi suru*, to lick one's chops.
- shītagau**, to follow, to obey: *ni shītagatte*, according to.
- shītagi**, under-clothing.
- shītaku**, preparations: *shītaku wo suru*, to prepare.
- shītan**, sandal-wood.
- shītashii**, intimate, friendly.
- shītate-ya**, a tailor.
- shīta-zara**, a saucer.
- shīta-zubon**, drawers (under-clothing).
- shitsu**, a room, a cabin.
- shitsumon**, a question: *shitsu-mon-sho*, a written question.
- shitsurei**, rudeness, impertinence: *shitsurei na*, rude, impolite.
- shiyāgaru**, equivalent to *suru*, *yagaru* being a contemptuous and vulgar suffix, and *ā* (for *a*) adding to the lowness of the expression.
- shiyō**, a way of doing: *shiyō ga nai*, there is no help for it, nothing to be done; see also pp. 147, 182.
- shī-yū**, female and male: *shiyū-tōta*, sexual selection (Darwin).
- shizen**, spontaneity: *shizen no*, spontaneous, natural; *shizen-tōta*, natural selection.
- shizuka (na)**, quiet.
- shizumaru**, to quiet down (intrans.).
- shizumu**, to sink (intrans.).
- sho**, many, all;—in compounds, as *shokoku* or *shoshū* all countries; *shonin*, people in general.
- shōbai**, trade, business: *shōbaigara*, the nature of a trade, appropriate to a certain trade.
- shōben**, urine.
- shobun**, treatment, punishment.
- shōchi**, consent, assent, comprehension: *shōchi suru*, to consent, etc.
- shōgun**, the title (meaning literally generalissimo) of the *de facto* military rulers of Japan from the end of the twelfth century to A.D. 1868.
- shō-gwatsu**, January.
- shōji**, the wood and paper or glass slides which enclose a Japanese room.
- shoji suru** (irreg.), to possess.
- shōjiki**, honesty: *shōjiki na*, honest.
- shōjiru** (3), to produce, to be produced, to arise.
- shoken**, reading (books): *shoken suru*, to read.
- shoki**, a secretary.
- shōko**, a proof: *shōko-nin*, a witness.
- shokubutsu**, a plant.
- shokuma**, a dining-room.
- shokumotsu**, food.
- shokun**, gentlemen, Sirs, all of you.

- shokunin**, an artisan, a workman.
- shomben**, urine (vulg.).
- shomin**, all men, every one.
- shomotsu**, a book.
- shōnin**, a merchant, a dealer.
- shōnin**, a Buddhist saint.
- shōri**, a victory.
- shosei**, a student.
- shōsei**, I, lit. junior.
- shosen**, after all, at last.
- shōsetsu**, a novel.
- shōsho**, a certificate.
- shōshō**, a little.
- shōshō**, a major-general, a rear-admiral.
- shōsū**, a small number, minority.
- shote**, the beginning.
- shōyu**, soy (our word comes from the Japanese).
- shu**, a master: *Shu no bansan*, the Lord's supper.
- shu**, the auxiliary numeral for poems.
- shu**, Chin. for *sake*, strong liquor.
- shu**, rarely **shū**, also **shi**, a pluralising suffix; see p. 29.
- shū**, a province, a country.
- shubiki**, a boundary line on a map: *shubiki-gwai*, outside "treaty limits;" *shubiki-nai*, inside treaty limits.
- shūgaku**, giving oneself up to study: *shūgaku suru*, to pursue one's studies.
- shui**, intention, meaning, purport.
- shujin**, the master of a household.
- shūkan**, a week.
- shūki**, a stench: *shūki-dome*, a disinfectant.
- shukke**, a Buddhist priest.
- shukkin**, going to official work; *shukkin suru*, to go to office.
- shūku**, a post-town.
- shūkwai**, a meeting.
- shūkyō**, religion, a sect: *shūkyō-tetsūgaku*, religious philosophy.
- shūkyū**, conservative, a tory.
- shūmon**, a sect, a religion.
- shurui**, a sort.
- shūsen**, assistance: *shūsen wo suru*, to assist.
- shushi**, purport, intention, aim.
- shu-shoku**, wine and lust.
- shusseki**, attendance,—as at a party or a meeting: *shusseki suru*, to attend, to go.
- shusshō**, birth.
- shutchō**, going to business elsewhere: *shutchō suru*, to go to business elsewhere, etc.
- shūtō**, vaccination.
- shūto**, a father-in-law.
- shūtome**, a mother-in-law.
- shuttatsu**, starting, departure: *shuttatsu suru*, to start.
- so**, rough; see p. 257.
- sō** (a contraction of *sayō*, itself a contraction of *sono yō*), like that, in that way, so: *sō da* or *sō desū*, that is so, yes; *sō desū ka?* is that so? indeed! *sō ja nai* or *sō*

- ja gozaimasen*, that is not so, no;  
*sō iu*, that kind of, such as that:  
*sō ka mo*, *sō ka to*, see p. 296,  
 Nos. 109 and 110; *sō kō*, this,  
 that, and the other; *sō sa!* yes  
 indeed; *sō shite*, see p. 242; *sō*  
*wa ikan*, that won't do.
- sō**, the auxiliary numeral for boats  
 and ships.
- sō (na)**, a termination of quasi-  
 adjectives, see pp. 137 and 183;  
 also used separately, as "it would  
 seem that" (see pp. 183—4).
- soba**, alongside.
- sōba**, the market price, the current  
 rate.
- sobieru (2)**, to stretch up, to reach  
 up (intrans.).
- socha**, inferior tea.
- sochi**, or **sochira**, there.
- sōda-mizu**, soda-water (from Eng.)
- sōdan**, consultation: *sōdan suru*,  
 to hold a consultation.
- sodateru (2)**, to bring up.
- sodatsu**, to be brought up, to  
 grow up.
- sōdō**, a row, a tumult.
- sohan**, see p. 257.
- sōhō**, both sides.
- sōi**, difference, discordance: *sōi*  
*nai*, there is no doubt.
- sōji**, cleansing: *sōji wo suru*, to  
 cleanse.
- sōken (na)**, healthy, vigorous.
- soko**, there.
- soko**, the bottom (e.g. of a lake):  
*soko-bie*, an internal chill.
- sokoera**, thereabouts.
- sokonau**, to spoil, to fail.
- soku**, the auxiliary numeral for  
 all sorts of foot-gear.
- somatsu**, coarseness: *somatsu na*,  
 coarse, rude.
- someru (2)**, to dye.
- sommei**, (your) august name.
- sōmoku**, herbs and trees, vege-  
 tation.
- son**, loss, especially pecuniary loss.
- son**, lit. a village,—the auxiliary  
 numeral for *mura*, village.
- sonaeru (2)**, to provide; (some-  
 times) to be provided with.
- sonata**, you.
- sonjiru (3)**, to spoil (trans. and  
 intrans.).
- sonna**, that kind of, such as that:  
*sonna ni*, so (much).
- sonnara** (for *sō nara*), if that is  
 so, well then.
- sono**, that (adj.): *sono hō*, you (in  
 legal parlance).
- sonshitsu**, pecuniary loss.
- sōō**, suitability, a fair amount: *sōō*  
*na*, fit, proper.
- soppu**, soup (from English).
- sora**, the sky: *sora-iro*, sky-  
 blue.
- sore**, that (subst.). see pp. 51—3:  
*sore de wa*, that being so, then;  
*sore kara*, after that, and then,  
 next; *sore made no koto*, see p.  
 194. For the interjectional use  
 of *sore*, see p. 239.
- soroban**, an abacus.

**soroe**, a match, a set : see also p. 112.  
**soroeru** (2), to put in order, to arrange.  
**sorou**, to be in order, to be all in their places.  
**soro-soro**, leisurely, slowly.  
**soru**, to shave.  
**sorya** ! there now ! see p. 239.  
**sōryō**, an eldest son.  
**sōshi**, a magazine, a journal.  
**sōshiki**, a funeral.  
**soshiru**, to blame, to revile.  
**sō shite**, having done so, and (then); conf. pp. 242, 225.  
**sosō**, (also corruptly *sōsō*), coarseness: *o sosō sama*, excuse the coarseness of my poor entertainment.  
**sōtai** (no), whole.  
**sōtaka**, the total amount.  
**soto**, the exterior, out-of-doors: *no soto ni*, outside of.  
**sōtō** (na), suitable, proper.  
**sotsugyō**, graduation: *sotsugyō suru*, to graduate.  
**sotto**, gently; also used for *chotto*, a little.  
**sozei**, taxes, imposts.  
**sōzen**, clamour, uproar.  
**sōzō**, fancy, imagination: *sōzō-tetsūgaku*, metaphysics (but *keijijō-gaku* is a better rendering).  
**sōzōshii**, noisy.  
**su**, vinegar.  
**sū**, a number.  
**subarashii**, splendid, very.

**suberu**, to slide, to slip.  
**suberu** (2), to unite in one.  
**sube-sube shīta**, smooth.  
**subete**, altogether, all.  
**sude ni**, already.  
**sue**, the end or tip of a thing.  
**sueru** (2), to set, to place.  
**sugi**, past, after.  
**sugi**, the cryptomeria tree.  
**sugiru** (3), to exceed, ...*ni sugimasen*, it is no more than. Suffixed to an adjective or verb, *segiru*, may be rendered by too or too much, as *yo-sugiru*, to be too good; *nomi-sugiru*, to drink too much.  
**sugu** (ni or to), immediately.  
**suidō**, an aqueduct.  
**suifu**, a seaman, a common sailor.  
**suikwa**, a water-melon.  
**suikyō**, intoxication.  
**suimono**, a kind of soup.  
**suiryō**, a conjecture: *suiryō suru*, to suppose.  
**suishō**, a crystal.  
**suiyōbi**, Wednesday.  
**suji**, a line; see also p. 112.  
**sūki**, fond; see p. 65: *sūki-zuki*, various tastes.  
**sūkima**, a chink: *sūkima-kaze*, a draught (of air).  
**sukkari**, quite, completely; (with a negative) not at all.  
**sūkoburu**, very.  
**sūkoshi**, a little, a bit.  
**sūku**, to be empty.  
**sūkunai**, few, scarce; see p. 274.

**sumai**, a residence.  
**sumau**, to reside.  
**sumasu**, to conclude (trans.).  
**sumi**, charcoal, Indian ink.  
**sumi-jimen**, an open space.  
**sumō**, wrestling: *sumō wo toru*, to wrestle: *sumō-tori(-gusa)*, a violet.  
**sumomo**, a species of small red plum.  
**sumpō**, dimensions.  
**sumu**, to dwell.  
**sumu**, to finish. The negative *sumanu* sometimes means to be improper.  
**sumu**, to be clear.  
**sun**, an inch.  
**sūna**, sand.  
**sūnawachi**, namely, forthwith.  
**sunde-no-koto ni**, already.  
**sūnen** or **sunen**, many years.  
**suppa-nuki suru** (irreg.), to draw one's sword at random (as a swashbuckler does).  
**suppai**, sour.  
**sura**, even, if only.  
**surari to**, } smoothly, with-  
**sura-sura to**, } out more ado.  
**suribi**, a match (for striking).  
**suru** (irreg.), to do, to make; see especially pp. 158, 224; also pp. 92, 133, 151, 195, 198, 210, 211, 212, 251: *shī-kakeru*, to leave half done: *suru to*, at the beginning of a sentence, see p. 352, note 10; *shīte miru to*, see pp.

352—3, note 15: *to sureba*, see p. 412, note 22.  
**suru**, to rub; used also incorrectly for *soru*, to shave, as *hige wo soru* or *suru*, to shave.  
**surudoī**, sharp.  
**susugi-sentaku**, the washing of clothes.  
**susugu**, to rinse, to cleanse.  
**susūki**, the eulalia grass.  
**susumeru** (2), to urge, to offer, to recommend.  
**susumu**, to advance, to progress (intrans.).  
**sūtensho**, a railway station (from the English word).  
**sūteru** (2), to throw away.  
**suu**, to suck.  
**suwaru**, to squat (in Japanese fashion).  
**suzu**, tin.  
**suzume**, a sparrow.  
**suzuri-bako**, an ink-box.  
**suzushii**, cool, fresh.

## T

**ta**, a suffix denoting past time; see pp. 150, 166.  
**ta**, other: *sono ta*, besides that.  
**ta**, a rice-field.  
**tabako**, tobacco (from the European word): *tabako-ire*, a tobacco-pouch; *tabako wo nomu*, to smoke.  
**taberu** (2), to eat: conf. pp. 156, 251.  
**tabemono**, food, victuals.

- tabi**, a time (*une fois*): *tabi-tabi*, often: *iku tabi?* how many times? *iku tabi mo*, any number of times, however often.
- tabi**, a journey; *tabi ye deru*, to go on a journey.
- tabi-bito**, a traveller.
- tabun**, a good deal, most; hence probably.
- tachi**, a pluralising suffix; see p. 29.
- tachi-banashi**, a conversation in the street.
- tada**, only, simply.
- tadachi ni**, forthwith.
- tadaima**, immediately.
- tadashii**, correct, just.
- tadasu**, to rectify, to examine into, to warn.
- taeru** (2), to endure.
- tagai (ni)**, mutually: *o tagau (sama) ni*, see p. 405, foot-note 3.
- tagaru**, a verbal suffix; see p. 134.
- tai**, a termination of desiderative adjectives; see pp. 133, 165, 183.
- taiboku**, a large tree.
- taigai**, for the most part, probably.
- taihen**, lit. a great change, hence very, awfully, see p. 147.
- taihō**, a cannon.
- taika**, a famous man.
- taikō**, a title of honour,—rarely applied to any but the Taikō Hideyoshi, the military ruler of Japan at the end of the sixteenth century.
- taiko-isha**, a quack physician.
- taikutsu**, tedium, ennui: *taikutsu suru*, to feel bored.
- taimatsu**, a torch.
- taira (na)**, flat.
- taisa**, a colonel, a post-captain.
- taisetsu**, importance: *taisetsu na*, important.
- taishi**, a crown-prince.
- taishita**, important.
- taishite**, see *taisuru*.
- taishō**, a full general or admiral.
- taishō**, loud laughter.
- taisō**, greatly, much, very.
- tasshiru** (3), to reach.
- taisuru** (irreg.), to be opposite to: *ni taishite*, vis-à-vis, to.
- taitei**, for the most part, generally.
- taiyō**, the sun.
- taka**, a quantity.
- takai**, high; hence dear (in price), loud.
- takara**, a treasure: *takara-mono*, something very precious.
- takaru**, to collect (intrans.), to breed,—as flies or maggots.
- take**, a bamboo.
- take**, a mountain peak.
- take**, length, stature.
- taki**, a waterfall.
- tako**, a kite (toy).
- tako**, a corn (callosity).
- taku**, a house, hence a humble term for husband (see p. 256): *o taku de*, at home.
- taku**, to light (the fire), to cook (rice).

- takūsan**, much, many, plenty : *mō takūsan*, that is plenty, I don't want any more ; conf. p. 65.
- tama**, a ball, a bead, a jewel.
- tamago**, an egg : *tamago-yaki*, an omelet.
- tamaru** (intrans.), to collect (as water in a puddle).
- tamaru** (trans.), to endure : *tamaranai* sometimes means to, conf. p. 295, No. 95.
- tamashii**, the soul.
- tamau**, to deign ; conf. p. 253.
- tame**, sake : *no tame ni*, for the sake of, because of, in order to : *tame ni naru*, to be profitable.
- tamesu**, to try, to taste.
- tamochi-kata**, the degree of wear or lasting power in an article.
- tamotsu**, to keep (trans.).
- tan**, saliva, phlegm : *tan wo haku*, to spit.
- tana**, a shelf.
- tane**, a seed, the material for the formation of anything projected, a subject, the wherewithal.
- tan-haki**, a spittoon.
- tani**, a valley.
- tanin**, another person, a stranger.
- tanjun (na)**, simple.
- tanomu**, to rely on, to apply to, to ask, hence sometimes to hire, to engage. See also p. 249 : *o tanomi mōshimasū*, see p. 309, No 14.
- tanoshimi**, joy, pleasure.
- tansu**, a cabinet, a chest of drawers.
- taoreru (2)**, to fall over.
- tara**, a cod-fish.
- tara(ba)**, termination of the conditional past, see pp. 166, 184.
- taredo(mo)**, termination of the concessive past, see pp. 166, 187.
- tari**, termination of the frequentative form, see pp. 167, 189.
- tariru (3)**, to suffice, to be enough, conf. p. 164 : *...ni taran*, is not worth.
- tarō**, termination of the probable past, see p. 166.
- Tarō**, a man's name, see p. 36.
- taru**, a cask.
- taru**, a Classical particle contracted from *to aru*, = is (that), as : *bushi taru mono*, one who is a warrior.
- tashika (na)**, certain, sure : *tashika ni*, certainly.
- tashikameru (2)**, to ascertain, to verify.
- tashō**, more or less, hence amount, degree.
- tasshi**, a notification.
- tasshiru (3)**, to attain to, to reach.
- tasūkaru**, to be saved ; but conf. p. 204.
- tasūkeru (2)**, to save, to help.
- tataku**, to knock : *tataki-tsūkeru*, to knock on.
- tatami**, a mat.
- tatamu**, to pile up.

- tate-fuda**, a notice-board.  
**tateru** (2), to set up, to build.  
**tateru** (2), to be able to stand (intrans.).  
**tatōe**, a comparison, a metaphor.  
**tatōeba**, for instance.  
**tatoeru** (2), to compare.  
**tatsu**, a dragon.  
**tatsu**, to stand up, to rise, to sit up (of a dog), to depart: *tachi-kaeru*, to go back; *tachi-yoru*, to look in at.  
**tatta**, vulgar and emphatic for *tada*.  
**tattōbu**, to honour, to venerate.  
**tattoi**, venerable, worshipful.  
**tattosa**, venerableness.  
**tayori**, something to rely on: *tayori ni suru*, to rely on.  
**tazuna**, a bridle.  
**tazuneru** (2), to ask, to enquire, to visit.  
**te**, the termination of the gerund, see p. 165: *te iru*, see pp. 155, 192, 141; *te mo*, see p. 187.  
**te**, the hand, the arm, hence handwriting. Sometimes in compounds it means person, as in *nori-te*, lit. riders, i.e., the passengers in an omnibus, railway carriage, etc.; see also p. 340, foot-note.  
**te-arai**, violent, rough.  
**tebukuro**, a glove.  
**techō**, a note-book.  
**tefuda**, a visiting card.  
**tēfuru**, a table (from Dutch *tafel* and Engl. *table*).  
**tegami**, a letter.  
**tegarui**, easy, slight.  
**tei**, a state (of things).  
**teikoku**, an empire, specifically Japan.  
**teinei** (na), polite.  
**teishi**, incorrect for *teishu*.  
**teishu**, the master of a house, a husband; conf. p. 256.  
**teishutsu suru** (irreg.), to bring in,—as a motion at a meeting.  
**teki**, an enemy (public).  
**teki**, a drop.  
**tekī suru** (irreg.), to be appropriate.  
**tekīshu-seizon**, the survival of the fittest.  
**teki**, of; see p. 81.  
**tekitō** (na), fit, suitable.  
**tema**, trouble: *tema ga toreru*, to take time and trouble (intrans.).  
**temadoru**, to take time and trouble (intrans.).  
**temba** (with honor. *o*), a hoyden.  
**temae**, front; hence you, also I, conf. p. 47.  
**temmon-gaku**, astronomy.  
**tempen**, a sign in the heavens.  
**Tempō**, a *nengō* or "year-name," which lasted from A. D. 1830 to 1844; hence an oval copper coin with a hole in the middle, struck during that period.  
**ten**, a point.  
**ten**, the sky, heaven.



**ten-chi**, heaven and earth.

**tengu**, a kind of goblin with a long nose.

**Tenjiku**, India.

**tenjō**, a ceiling.

**tenka**, the world, the empire (of Japan).

**tenki**, the weather: *o tenki*, ditto, also specifically fine weather; *tenki-tsugō*, the state of the weather.

**tenkoku**, the kingdom of heaven.

**tennentō**, small-pox.

**tennō**, the Mikado.

**Tenshi**, the Mikado; see p. 258.

**Tenshō**, see p. 369, foot-note.

**Tenshu**, God (of Roman Catholics): *Tenshudō*, a Catholic church; *Tenshukyō*, Roman Catholicism; *Tenshu-kyōshi*, a Catholic missionary or priest.

**tensui-oke**, a rain-tub.

**tentaku**, changing houses: *tentaku suru*, to change houses.

**tentō** (*o tentō sama*), the sun (vulg.).

**tenugui**, a towel.

**teppō**, a gun: *teppō wo utsu*, to fire a gun; *teppō-mizu*, soda-water (vulg.).

**tera**, a Buddhist temple.

**teru**, to shine.

**teru**, a contraction of the termin. *te iru*, see p. 192.

**tesūki**, leisure, nothing to do.

**tete**, the hands (in baby language).

**tetsu**, iron: *tetsubin*, a kettle; *tetsudō*, a railway; *tetsudō-basha*, a street-car, a tram.

**tetsūgaku**, philosophy; *tetsūgākūsha*, a philosopher.

**te-tsūke-kin**, bargain-money.

**te-tsuzuki**, a process, a way of arranging matters.

**tezema**, the state of being crowded.

**tezuma**, jugglery, a trick: *tezuma-tsūkai*, a conjuror.

**to**, a door.

**to**, ten (in compounds).

**to**, a postposition: see pp. 82, 166, 275: *to iu*, see pp. 58, 82, 97; *to iu mono wa*, see p. 58; ditto at beginning of sentence = what I mean is...; *to ka*, see p. 69; *to itte*, see p. 83; *to mo*, see pp. 85, 187; *to itte mo*, see p. 187; *to mo kaku mo*, see p. 298; *to suru*, see pp. 227, 421 (note 9); *to wa iedo*, see p. 187.

**tō**, a pagoda.

**tō**, ten.

**tō**, that, the; see p. 54, ¶ 78.

**tō**, an auxiliary numeral for horses and cattle.

**tō**, etcetera.

**tōben**, a reply, a rejoinder.

**tobu**, to jump, to fly: *tobi-agaru*, to fly up; *tobi-komu*, to jump or fly in; *tobi-kosu*, to jump across.

**tōbutsu-ya**, a general shop for foreign goods.

- tōchaku**, arrival: *tōchaku suru*, to arrive.
- tochi**, a locality, a place, soil.
- tochū**, on the road, by the way.
- tōdai**, a lamp-stand, a light house.
- todana**, a cupboard.
- todoke**, a report.
- todokeru** (2), to send to destination, to give notice, to report.
- todoku**, to reach (intrans.).
- todomaru**, to stop, to stay (intrans.).
- todome**, a stop, a pause, the coup de grâce: *todome wo sasu*, to give the coup de grâce.
- todomeru** (2), to stop (trans.).
- tofu**, a city.
- tōfu**, bean-curd: *tōfu-ya*, a shop for or seller of bean-curd.
- toga**, fault, blame.
- togame**, blame.
- togameru** (2), to blame.
- tōgarashi**, cayenne pepper.
- tōge**, a mountain pass.
- tōgetsu**, this month.
- togire**, temporary cessation.
- tohōmonai**, outrageous, extortionate.
- tōi**, far, distant.
- toji**, the binding of a book.
- tōji**, the present time.
- tojiru** (3), to close (trans.), to bind (a book).
- tōka**, ten days, the tenth day of the month.
- tokaku**, see *tomokakumo*.
- tokei**, a clock, a watch.
- tokeru** (2), to melt (intrans.).
- toki**, time, hence when (conjunction), see pp. 41, 184, 275: *toki-doki*, often; *toki-ori*, occasionally; *toki ni*, see p. 42; *toki to shite*, sometimes.
- tōki**, porcelain.
- to(k)kuri**, a bottle.
- toko**, an abbreviation of *tokoro*, place.
- tokonoma**, an alcove.
- tokoro**, a place, but see pp. 42—3, 179; *tokoro de*, see p. 43; *tokoro ga*, *tokoro ye*, see p. 42; for *tokoro no* used as a kind of relative pronoun, see p. 61: *tokoro-dokoro*, here and there, in many places.
- tokoro-gaki**, an address (written).
- toku**, to loosen, to unfasten, to explain: *toki-akasu*, to explain.
- toku**, profit, advantage, efficacy.
- toku**, to melt (trans.).
- tokui**, a customer.
- tokuiku**, moral culture.
- tokuhon**, a reading book.
- tomai**, an auxil. numeral see p. 112.
- tomaru**, to stop, to stay (intrans.).
- tombi**, a kite (bird).
- tombo**, a dragon-fly.
- tome-bari**, a pin.
- tō-megane**, a telescope.
- tomeru** (2), to stop (trans.).
- tomo**, a companion, a follower: *o tomo suru*, to accompany.

**tomodachi**, a companion, a friend.  
**tomokaku(mo)**, in any case, be that as it may, somehow or other.  
**tōmorokoshi**, Indian corn.  
**tomurai**, a funeral.  
**tonaeru** (2), to recite, to proclaim (e.g. opinions).  
**tonari**, next door.  
**tonda**, { absurd, awful,  
**tondemonai**, { excessive.  
**tōnen**, this year.  
**tōnin**, the person in question.  
**tonogo**, a [man, a gentleman, a husband.  
**tonto (mo)**, altogether; (with a negative) not at all. *Ton to* sometimes means with a thud.  
**tora**, a tiger.  
**toraeru** (2), to seize, to arrest.  
**toreru** (2), to take (intrans.), to be able to take.  
**tori**, a bird, especially the barn-door fowl.  
**tōri**, a thoroughfare, a street, a way, as; see p. 243.  
**tori-atsūkai**, management, treatment.  
**tori-atsūkau**, to manage.  
**tori-aezu**, forthwith.  
**tori-ire**, ingathering, harvest.  
**tori mo naosazu**, neither more nor less than, just, exactly.  
**tori-maki wo suru** (irreg.), to keep the ball of conversation rolling, to entertain skilfully.

**tōrō**, a stationary (e.g. a stone) lantern.  
**toru**, to take, but sometimes merely expletive in compounds: *tori ni iku*, to go for; *tori ni kuru*, to come for; *tori ni yaru*, to send for; *tori-atsūkau*, to undertake, to manage; *tori-chigae-ru*, to confuse; *tori-ireru*, to gather in; *tori-isogu*, to be in a hurry; *tori-kaeru*, to exchange; *tori-kakomu*, to surround, to besiege; *tori-motsu*, to arrange; *tori-shiraberu*, to investigate;... *ni totte*, with regard to.  
**tōru**, to pass through, to pass by: *tōri-kakaru*, to happen to pass by.  
**tosan**, the ascent of a mountain: *tosan suru*, to ascend a mountain.  
**toshi**, a year, hence age: *toshi wo toru*, to grow old; *toshi no yotta*, elderly, aged.  
**tōshi**, the act of doing something right through.  
**toshiyori (no)**, old (said only of people).  
**tōsu**, to put or let through, to admit (e.g. a guest): *o tōshi mōse*, see bottom of p. 294.  
**totan**, zinc.  
**tote**, a postposition; see p. 83.  
**totemo**, anyhow, in any case; (with a neg.) not at all, by no means.  
**tōtō**, at last.

- tou**, to ask.  
**tōzen**, right, proper.  
**tsuba**, the guard of a sword.  
**tsubaki**, a camellia-tree.  
**tsūben**, interpretation, an interpreter: *tsūben wo suru*, to interpret.  
**tsubo**, a jar.  
**tsubu**, a grain,—e.g. of rice; a seed.  
**tsūchi**, earth: *tsūchi-yaki*, earthenware.  
**tsue**, a stick, a staff: *tsue wo tsūku*, to lean on a staff.  
**tsugai**, a pair (of fowls, etc.).  
**tsugi (no)**, the next: *sono tsugi ni*, next (adverb).  
**tsugō**, the sum total, altogether; also convenience, certain reasons: *tsugō no yoi*, convenient; *tsugō no warui*, inconvenient; *go tsugō shidai*, according to your convenience; *tsugō ga dekimasū*, see p. 301, No. 7.  
**tsugu**, to join (trans.), to follow, to succeed to (a patrimony); also to pour into: *tsugi-dasu*, to pour out.  
**tsui (ni)**, at last.  
**tsuide**, occasion, apropos: *no tsuide ni*, apropos of.  
**tsuitachi**, the first day of the month.  
**tsuite** (preceded by *ni*), according to, owing to, about: *tsuite iku*, to follow.  
**tsuiyasu**, to spend, to squander.
- tsuji**, a cross-road.  
**tsūji**, an interpreter, interpreting.  
**tsūjiru (3)**, to understand, to speak (a language).  
**tsūka**, a hilt.  
**tsūkaeru (2)**, to serve.  
**tsūkai**, a message, a messenger: *tsūkai no mono*, a messenger.  
**tsūkai-michi**, a means of employing.  
**tsūkamaeru (2)**, to catch.  
**tsūkamatsuru**, to do (a self-depreciatory word); conf. p. 285, foot-note 3.  
**tsūkasadoru**, to control, to direct.  
**tsūkau**, to use, to employ.  
**tsūkawasu**, to give, to send.  
**tsūkegi**, a lucifer match.  
**tsūkeru (2)**, to fix, to affix, (hence) to set down in writing, to add: *tsūke-agaru*, to be puffed up with pride.  
**tsūki**, the moon, a month: *tsūki hi*, the sun and moon, a date; *tsūki-zue*, the end of the month; *tsūki ga agaru*, the moon rises.  
**tsūki-ai**, intercourse.  
**tsūki-atari**, the end of a road where one must turn either to the right or to the left.  
**tsūki-ataru**, see **tsūku**.  
**tsūkiru (3)**, to come to an end, to be exhausted.  
**tsūkō**, passing through, a thoroughfare: *tsūkō suru*, to pass through or along.

**tsūku**, to push, to shove: *tsūki-ataru*, to collide, to come to the end (of a street).  
**tsūku**, to stick (intrans.), sometimes to result: *tsūki-sou*, to accompany.  
**tsūkue**, a table, specifically a very low Japanese writing-table.  
**tsūkunen**, listlessness, gaping.  
**tsūkuru**, to make, to compose; to grow (trans.): *tsūkuri-dasu*, to produce.  
**tsūkusu**, to exhaust, to do to the utmost.  
**tsūku-zūku**, attentively.  
**tsuma**, a wife; but see p. 256.  
**tsumaran(ai)**, worthless, trifling.  
**tsumari**, at last, in the long run.  
**tsumazuku**, to stumble.  
**tsumbō (no)**, deaf.  
**tsume**, a finger or the nail, a claw.  
**tsumeru (2)**, to stuff, pack, or squeeze into: *tsume-yoru*, to draw near.  
**tsumetai**, cold (to the touch).  
**tsumi**, a sin, a crime; *tsumi no nai*, innocent; *tsumi suru*, to punish.  
**tsumi-ni**, cargo.  
**tsumori**, an intention: *tsumorigaki*, a written estimate.  
**tsumoru**, to be heaped up.  
**tsumu**, to pick.  
**tsumuri**, the head.  
**tsunagu**, to fasten, to tie up.  
**tsune (ni)**, generally: *tsune no*, usual, ordinary.

**tsuno**, a horn.  
**tsunoru**, to collect (trans.), to levy, to increase or grow violent.  
**tsurai**, disagreeable, unsympathetic.  
**tsure**, a companion. *Nigori'ed* and used as a suffix, it means together, as *fūfu-zure*, a husband and wife together.  
**tsureru (2)**, to take with one: *tsurete kuru*, to bring (a person).  
**tsure-datsu**, to go together.  
**tsūrei**, the general precedent, the usual plan.  
**tsuri** (often with honorific *o*), change, small money.  
**tsuru**, a stork.  
**tsuru**, to hang (e. g. a mosquito-net); *tsuri-ageru*, to hang up.  
**tsuru**, to angle, to catch fish with a line and hook.  
**tsurube**, a well-bucket.  
**tsutsuji**, a kind of azalea.  
**tsutsumi(-mono)**, a parcel.  
**tsutsumu**, to wrap up.  
**tsūyō**, circulation: *tsūyō suru*, to circulate (as money).  
**tsuyoi**, strong.  
**tsuyu**, dew: *o tsuyu*, soup.  
**tsūzoku**, colloquial, common.  
**tte**, see pp. 83—4.  
**tto**, see bottom of p. 82.

## U

**uba**, a wet-nurse.  
**ubau**, to take by force, to rob.  
**uchi**, the inside, hence a house,

- home, hence a humble term for husband (see p. 256), taken from, an extract: *no uchi ni*, inside, in; *sono uchi*, meanwhile, soon; *o uchi de*, at home. *Uchi ni*, sometimes means while. For *uchi* helping to form superlatives, see p. 146.
- uchiki**, retiring, bashful.
- uchiwa**, a fan of the kind that does not open and shut.
- ude**, the arm.
- uderu** (2), to boil,—e.g. an egg.
- udonko**, flour, meal.
- ue**, the top of anything; conf. p. 260: *no ue ni*, above, on, after. Sometimes *ue* means circumstances or nature, as *kami no mi ue*, the nature of the gods; also a point of view, with regard to.
- ue-bōsō**, vaccination.
- ueki**, a garden plant: *ueki-ya*, a gardener.
- ueru** (2), to plant.
- ugokasu**, to move (trans.).
- ugoku**, to move (intrans.).
- uguisu**, a nightingale.
- uji**, a surname, hence Mr.
- ukagau**, to enquire, to ask, to listen to, to visit,
- uke-oi-nin**, an underwriter.
- ukeru** (2), to receive: conf. p. 251: *uke-au*, to guarantee; *uke-toru*, to take delivery, to receive.
- uketamawaru**, a humble word for to hear; conf. p. 251.
- uketori**, a receipt.
- uke-tsūke**, a sort of enquiry office superior in dignity to a mere porter's lodge, where cards are received, information given, etc. There is one at the entrance to every public department and other large establishments in Japan.
- ūma**, a horse.
- ūmai**, nice to eat, tasty.
- ūmamma**, food (in baby language); conf. p. 240, footnote.
- ūmareru** (2), to be born.
- ūmare-tsūki**, by birth; hence the character or disposition.
- ūmaya**, a stable.
- ūme**, a plum-tree: *ūme-mi*, going to see the plum-blossoms.
- ūmeru** (2), to fill up with earth, to bury: *ūme-awaseru*, to make up (metaph.), see pp. 342—3.
- umi**, the sea: *umi-be*, the sea-shore.
- umu**, to give birth to, to bear: *umi-dasu*, ditto.
- un**, luck: *un no yoi*, lucky; *un no warui*, unlucky.
- unagi**, an eel.
- unasareru** (2), to be troubled with nightmare. This verb is only used in this, the passive, form.
- unazuku**, to nod.
- unchin**, freight(-money).
- undō**, bodily exercise; *undō-dama*, cup-and-ball: *undō suru*, to take exercise.
- unjō**, a tax, a tariff.

**ura**, the back or reverse side of anything.

**urayamu**, } to envy (not  
**urayamashigaru**, } in a bad sense); also to wish to be like.

**urayamashii**, enviable.

**ureru** (2), to sell (intrans.), to be able to sell; conf. p. 206.

**ureshii**, joyful.

**ureshigaru**, to feel joyful.

**uri**, a melon.

**uru**, to sell (trans.): *uri-sabaku*, to sell off.

**urusai**, troublesome, a bother.

**urusagaru**, to find troublesome.

**urushi**, lacquer, varnish.

**uruwashii**, beautiful, lovely.

**usagi**, a hare.

**ushi**, a cow, a bull, an ox, beef.

**ushinau**, to lose.

**ushiro**, the back or hinder part of anything: *no ushiro ni*, at the back of, behind.

**uso**, a lie, a falsehood: *uso wo iu*, to lie: *uso-tsūki*, a liar.

**usuberi**, rush matting bound with a hemp edging.

**usui**, light, thin (in colour or consistence), insufficient: *usu-akai*, pink; *usu-gurai*, dusk.

**uta**, a Japanese (as opposed to a Chinese) poem, a song.

**utagai**, a doubt: *utagai wo okosu*, to raise a question.

**utau**, to sing.

**utcharu**, to throw away, to disregard: *utchatte oku*, ditto.

**utsu**, to strike, to hit: *teppō wo utsu*, to fire a gun. It is sometimes used as a meaningless and omittable prefix in compound verbs, as (*uchi-*)*tsure-datsu*, to go along together.

**utsūkushii**, beautiful.

**utsusu**, to remove (trans.), to copy.

**uttaeru** (2), to go to law about, to appeal.

**uttōshii**, cloudy, dull.

**uwa-gaki**, an address (on an envelope, etc.).

**uwagi**, an overcoat, a coat.

**uwagutsu**, a slipper.

**uwasa**, talk about a person, gossip, rumour: *uwasa wo suru*, to talk about.

**uwo**, a fish; *uwo wo tsuru*, to fish with a rod and line.

**uyamau**, to reverence.

**uya-uyashii**, awe-inspiring.

**uzura**, a quail.

## W

**wa**, a separative particle; see p. 85; also pp. 94, 166, 193, 195, 238, 260, 261, 274. For its use as an interjection, see p. 87.

**wa**, an irregular auxiliary numeral, see p. 110.

**wa**, a wheel.

**wabi**, an apology.

**wabiru** (3), to lament, to apologise.

**waboku**, peace.

**waga**, my own, one's own, see p. 51: *waga mi*, myself; *waga hai*, we.

**wairo**, a bribe: *wairo wo tsūkau*, to bribe; *wairo wo ukeru*, to be bribed.

**waka-danna**, the son of the master of the house.

**wakai**, young.

**wakareru** (2), to part with, to be separated.

**wakari**, understanding: *o wakari ni naru*, to understand (honorific); *wakari no hayai*, quick-witted, sharp; *wakari-nikui*, hard to understand; *wakari-yasui*, easy to understand.

**wakaru**, to understand: *wakari-kitte iru*, to come to a clear understanding.

**wakasu**, to boil (trans.); said of water.

**wakatsu**, to discern.

**wake**, a reason, a cause: *dō iu wake de?* why? *so no wake ni wa ikimasen*, it can't be managed in that way.

**wakeru** (2), to divide, to share: *wake-ataeru*, to distribute in appropriate shares.

**wakete**, specially.

**waki**, the side of anything, sometimes elsewhere: *no waki ni*, at the side of, beside; *waki ye*, elsewhere.

**wakimaeru** (2), to discriminate, to comprehend.

**waki-mizu**, a spring of water.

**waku**, to boil (intrans.).

**wakūsei**, a planet.

**wampaku** (na), naughty.

**wan**, a bowl.

**wan**, a gulf, a bay.

**wanishi**, varnish (from the English word).

**wan-wan**, bow-wow. Children call dogs so.

**wara**, straw.

**warai**, laughter.

**waraji**, a kind of straw sandals used only out-of-doors.

**warau**, to laugh.

**ware**, I (in book language): *ware-ware*, people like me, we.

**wari-ai**, proportion.

**wari-bike**, discount.

**wari-mae**, a share.

**warui**, bad, (hence sometimes) ugly, see also pp. 128, 139: *waruku iu*, to blame.

**waru-kūchi**, bad language.

**waru-mono**, a worthless fellow, a ruffian.

**waru-kūsa**, a weed.

**Wasei**, made in Japan.

**washi**, a vulgar contraction of *watakūshi*, I.

**wasure-mono**, something forgotten.

**wasureru** (2), to forget.

**wata**, wadding.

**watakūshi**, selfishness, (hence) I: *watakūshi-domo*, we, people like me, I; conf. pp. 48—9.



**wataru**, to cross (a river).  
**watashi**, a somewhat vulgar contraction of *watakūshi*, I.  
**watasu**, to hand over.  
**waza to**, on purpose.  
**wazawai**, a calamity.  
**waza-waza**, on purpose.  
**wazuka**, a trifle: *wazuka ni*, only, nothing but.  
**wo**, a postposition; see p. 91; also pp. 201, 203, 224, 261.  
**woba**, see pp. 96, 213.

## Y

**ya**, a termination signifying house, see p. 40.  
**ya**, a postposition; see pp. 93, 88 (N.B.), 195: *ya nani ka*, p. 55.  
**ya** and **yā**, eight; see p. 101.  
**yaban**, a barbarian: *yaban no* or *na*, barbarous.  
**yabo**, a clown, a dolt.  
**yabuku**, to tear (trans.).  
**yachin**, house-rent.  
**yado**, a dwelling-place, a hotel; hence a humble word for husband (see p. 256): *yado-ya*, a hotel.  
**yagate**, forthwith, by and bye.  
**yagu**, bed-clothes.  
**yagura**, a turret.  
**yahari**, also.  
**yai!** halloa!  
**yakamashii**, noisy, hence given to fault-finding.  
**yakedo**, a burn.  
**yakeru** (2), to burn (intrans.).

**yaki**, burning, roasting, annealing.  
**yakimochi**, jealousy.  
**yakkai**, assistance; see also p. 290, No. 54.  
**yaku**, to burn (trans.), to roast, to toast, to bake.  
**yaku**, usefulness, service; *yaku ni tatsu*, to be of use.  
**yakunin**, an official.  
**yakūsha**, an actor.  
**yakūsho**, a public office.  
**yakūsoku**, an agreement, a promise, *yakūsoku suru*, to promise.  
**yakwai**, an evening party.  
**yama**, a mountain, a hill, sometimes dishonest speculation: *yama-michi*, a mountain path.  
**yamai**, a disease.  
**yamame**, a kind of trout.  
**yamashi**, a dishonest speculator, a charlatan.  
**Yamato**, the name of one of the central provinces of Japan, hence by extension Japan itself.  
**yameru** (2), to put a stop to.  
**yami**, total darkness.  
**yamome**, a widow.  
**yamu wo ezu**, unavoidably.  
**yanagi**, a willow-tree.  
**yane**, a roof (see p. 36): *yane-bune*, a house-boat.  
**yaoya**, a green-grocer.  
**yappari**, emphatic for *yahari*.  
**yara**, see p. 452, foot-note 8.  
**yarakasu** (vulg.), to do; hence to perform almost any action, e.g. drinking, eating, working.

- yare!** (an exclamation of encouragement derived from *yaru*, to give), go on! halloa!
- yaru**, to send, to give, conf. pp. 196, 251: *yatte miru*, to try (one's hand at); *yatte shimau*, to give away; *yaru* is sometimes used instead of *suru*, to do.
- yasai(-mono)**, vegetables.
- yasashii**, easy, gentle.
- yaseru** (2), to grow thin; *yasete iru*, to be thin; *yaseta*, thin.
- yashiki**, a nobleman's mansion, also a "compound."
- yashiro**, a Shintō temple.
- yashoku**, supper, (late) dinner.
- Yaso**, Jesus: *Yaso-kyō* or *Yaso-shū*, (Protestant) Christianity; *Yaso-kyōshi*, a (Protestant) missionary or clergyman.
- yasui**, cheap, easy.
- yasumi-bi**, a holiday.
- yasumu**, to rest, to go to bed: *o yasumi nasai*, good-night.
- yatou**, to hire, to engage.
- yatsu**, a (low) fellow; rarely a thing.
- ya(tsu)**, eight.
- yawarakai** or **yawaraka na**, soft.
- yaya**, more or less, somewhat: *yaya mo sureba*, apt to, liable to.
- ye**, a postposition; see p. 93.
- yo!** an interjection, see pp. 239, 167.
- yo**, the night: *yo-naka*, midnight; *yo ni iru*, to become dark.
- yo**, the world: *yo no naka*, ditto: *yo wo okuru*, to spend one's life, to make a living.
- yo** and **yō**, four; see p. 101.
- yō**, business, use: *yō wo nasu*, to be of use.
- yō**, appearance, way, kind: *yō ni*, to, so that; see p. 276.
- yo-ake**, dawn.
- yobō**, a precaution.
- yobu**, to call: *yobi-dasu*, to summon; *yobi-kaesu*, to call back.
- yōfuku**, European clothes.
- yohodo**, plenty, a lot, very.
- yoi**, good, (hence) handsome; see also pp. 137, 139.
- yō-i (na)**, easy.
- yōji**, a tooth-brush, less correctly a tooth-pick (*ko-yōji*): *yōji-ire*, a tooth-pick holder.
- yo-jō-han**, (a room) four mats and a half (in size).
- yōka**, eight days, the eighth day of the month.
- yōkan**, a kind of sweetmeat made of beans and sugar.
- yokei**, superfluity; (with a negative) not very, not much; see p. 148.
- yōki**, the weather.
- yokka**, four days, the fourth day of the month.
- yoko**, cross, athwart: *yoko-chō*, a side street (whether cross or parallel).
- yokogiru**, to cross.
- yokome**, a side glance.

- yokomoji**, European written characters, Roman letters.
- yokosu**, to send hither.
- yoku**, well, hence often.
- yome**, a bride, a daughter-in-law : *yome ni yaru*, to give (a girl) in marriage ; *yome wo morau*, to marry (a wife).
- yomeru** (2), to read (intrans.), can read ; conf. p. 206.
- yomu**, to read (trans.) : *uta wo yomu*, to compose (Jap.) poetry.
- yōmuki**, business, affairs.
- yondokoronai**, inevitable.
- yo-naka**, midnight.
- yone**, hulled rice.
- yo (no naka)**, the world.
- yopparai**, a drunkard.
- yopparatte iru**, to be intoxicated.
- yoppodo**, emphatic for *yohodo*.
- yoppite**, all night long.
- yori**, a postposition ; see pp. 94, 145, 260.
- yoroi**, armour.
- yorokeru** (2), to reel.
- yorokobi**, joy.
- yorokobu**, to rejoice.
- Yōroppa**, Europe.
- yoroshii**, good, conf. pp. 128, 255 : *mō yoroshii*, all right, no more required ; ... *de yoroshii*, ... will do well enough ; *yoroshiku nōshimasū*, see p. 309 ; *yoroshiku negaimasū*, see pp. 324—5, No. 21.
- yoru**, the night.
- yoru**, to lean on, to rely, to depend ; hence to look in at, to stop at for a short time : *ni yotte*, owing to ; *toshi no yotta*, aged.
- yoru**, to select : *yoridasu*, ditto.
- yoru**, to assemble.
- yosasō (na)**, having a good appearance, conf. p. 137.
- yōsei suru** (irreg.), to foster, to nourish.
- yoseru** (2), to collect (trans.).
- yoshi**, good, all right ; conf. p. 122 : *yoshi-ashi*, see p. 34.
- yōshi**, an adopted son : *yōshi ni iku*, to be adopted.
- yoso**, elsewhere.
- yosooi**, adornment, fine array.
- yosu**, to leave off, to abstain from, to put an end to, to omit.
- yōsu**, appearance, circumstances.
- yo-sugiru** (3), to be too good.
- yo(tsu)**, four.
- yottari**, four persons.
- yotte**, for that reason : *ni yotte*, owing to.
- yowai**, weak.
- yōyaku**, } barely, at last, with  
**yōyō**, } difficulty.
- yu**, hot water, a hot bath : *yu wo sasu*, to pour in hot water.
- yūbe**, yesterday evening.
- yubi**, a finger, a toe : *yubi-nuki*, a thimble.
- yūbin**, the post : *yūbin-kyoku*, a post-office ; *yūbin-zei*, postage.
- yūdachi**, a (thunder-) shower.
- yue ni**, therefore.

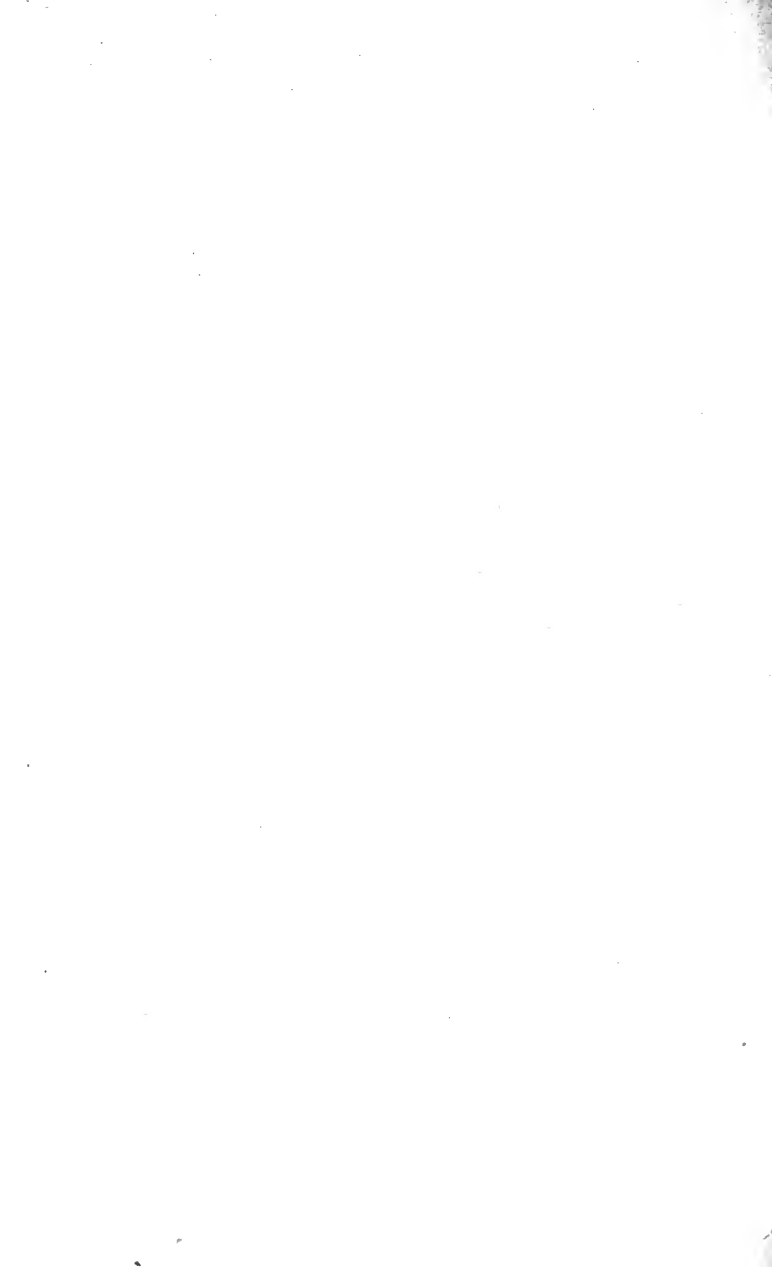
**yuen**, cause, rationale.  
**yūgata**, twilight, evening.  
**yuge**, steam.  
**yuigon**, a last will and testament (spoken).  
**yuinō**, gifts exchanged on betrothal.  
**yuisho**, a last will and testament (written).  
**yuka**, the floor.  
**yūkata**, see *yūgata*.  
**yūkei**, the evening landscape, twilight.  
**yuki**, snow.  
**yukkuri**, leisurely, slowly.  
**yūkyō**, pleasure.  
**yume**, a dream; *yume wo miru*, to dream.  
**yūmeshi**, supper, (late) dinner.  
**yumi**, a bow (for shooting): *yumi-ya*, a bow and arrows.  
**yūrei**, a ghost.  
**yureru** (2), to shake (intrans.).  
**yuri**, a lily.  
**yurui**, loose.  
**yururi** (to), leisurely: *go yururi to*, see p. 143.  
**yurusu**, to allow, to grant.  
**yusan**, a picnic.  
**yūsei**, a planet.  
**yūshi**, a brave warrior.  
**yūshoku**, supper, (late) dinner.  
**yūshō-reppai**, the survival of the fittest (in the struggle for existence).  
**yu-tampo**, a foot-warmer.  
**yuu**, to bind up or do (the hair).

**yūyū to**, nonchalantly.  
**yuzu**, a lemon.

## Z

**za**, a seat, in compounds sometimes a theatre: *za ni tsūku*, to take a seat; *za wo tatsu*, to rise from one's seat.  
**zaisan**, property: *zaisan-kagiri*, bankruptcy.  
**zampatsu**, hair-cutting.  
**zannen**, regret (for one's own sake): *zannen-garu*, to regret.  
**zashiki**, a room.  
**zasshi**, a magazine, a review.  
**ze**, same as *zo*.  
**zeshi**, right { <sup>and</sup> wrong; (hence) <sub>or</sub> positively: *zeshi mo nai*, nothing more to be said, unavoidable, useless.  
**zei**, a tariff, an impost.  
**zeikwan**, a custom-house.  
**zen**, (generally with honorific *o*), a kind of tray; see p. 248.  
**zen**, before (in compounds), as *shi-go-nen-zen*, four or five years ago.  
**zen**, virtue.  
**zen-aku**, good { <sup>and</sup> evil. <sub>or</sub>  
**zeni**, coin, coppers.  
**zennin**, a virtuous person.  
**zenryō** (na), virtuous, good.  
**zentai**, properly the whole body; more often usually, generally.  
**zentorumen**, a corruption of the word "gentleman."

- zetchō**, the summit of a mountain.
- zo**, an interjection : see pp. 239 and 55.
- zōhei-kyoku**, a mint.
- zōkin**, a duster.
- zoku**, commonplace, vulgarity : *zoku na*, vulgar.
- zoku**, a brigand, a rebel.
- zokugo**, a colloquial word, the spoken dialect.
- zombun**, a sentiment : *zombun ni suru*, to do as one likes (with a thing).
- zonji**, knowledge ; used in such phrases as *go zonji desū ka ?* do you know ? *zonji-nagara*, I must own that...
- zonji-yori**, an opinion.
- zonjiru** (3), to know.
- zōri**, a kind of straw sandals worn indoors.
- zōsa**, difficulty : always with a negative, as *zōsa mo nai*, there is no difficulty.
- zotto suru**, to start with surprise ; also to be natural or pleasant.
- zu**, termination of the negative gerund, see p. 169.
- zubon**, trowsers.
- zuibun**, a good deal, pretty (adverb), very.
- zure**, see *tsure*.
- zuru**, a verbal termin., see p. 226.
- zutsu**, (one, etc.) at a time, apiece, each, as *mitsu-zutsu*, three at a time.
- zutsū**, a headache : *zutsū ga suru*, to have a headache.
- zutto**, straight, quite, a great deal.



OF

## SUBJECTS TREATED.

(When several references are given, the most important reference is placed first.

Subjects having only Japanese names, such as the *Kana*, the *Nigori*, and the various Postpositions, are not inserted here. They must be looked up in the Japanese-English Vocabulary, p. 474 *et seq.*)

|                                                                     |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Accent, 19.                                                         | Adjectives (form in <i>shi</i> ), 121             |
| Accusative, 91, 201, 224.                                           | 122.                                              |
| Active Constructions (preference for), 205, 216, 266, 278 ; 57, 58. | „ (gerund of), 128, 181.                          |
| Adjectives, 120 ; 44, 78, 225, 260, 261.                            | „ (in <i>beki</i> ), 121, 122 ; 41.               |
| „ (adverbial form), 123 ; 120, 124, 126, 129.                       | „ (in <i>nai</i> ), 129, 130, 139, 168, 170, 171. |
| „ (attributive form), 117, 121, 126, 138, 140.                      | „ (in <i>rashii</i> ), 133.                       |
| „ (comparison of), 144 ; 121.                                       | „ (in <i>shii</i> ), 128, 134.                    |
| „ (compound), 131.                                                  | „ (in <i>tai</i> ), 165, 183 ; 133, 134.          |
| „ (conclusive form), 121, 122, 126.                                 | „ (indefinite form), see adverbial form.          |
| „ (derivative), 131.                                                | „ (inflections), 120, 128.                        |
| „ (desiderative), 165, 183 ; 133, 134, 204.                         | „ (irregular), 126.                               |
| „ (form in <i>i</i> ), 120, 123, 124, 126.                          | „ (negative), 129, 130, 168, 170.                 |
| „ (form in <i>ki</i> ), 121, 179.                                   | „ (of probability), 137, 165, 183.                |
| „ (form in <i>ku</i> ), 122 ; 91, 123, 126, 138, 231.               | „ (paradigms of), 126, 128, 129, 130.             |
| „ (form in <i>kuba</i> ), 91.                                       | „ (predicative form), 120, 121, 126, 138, 140.    |
| „ (form in <i>ō</i> or <i>ū</i> ), 120, 126, 128, 222.              | „ (primary inflections), 120, 126, 127.           |
|                                                                     | „ (quasi-), 135.                                  |
|                                                                     | „ (reduplicated), 134.                            |

- Adjectives (secondary inflections),  
128.  
„ (stems), 125 ; 124, 126,  
127, 134, 226.  
„ (tense and mood in),  
128.  
„ (verbs formed from), 134.  
Adverbial Phrases, 236 ; 84, 220,  
230, 233.  
Adverbs, 231, 52 ; 45, 75, 82, 99,  
120, 225, 230, 260, 271.  
Adversative Constructions, 67, 83,  
88, 93.  
Affirmation, 234 ; 85.  
Agglutination, 5, 29, 129, 134, 149—  
151, 153, 161, 165—170, 193, 210,  
222, 226.  
Aino Language, 5.  
Altaic Languages, 5.  
“ Although ” (how rendered), 243.  
Ambiguous Constructions, 58, 60,  
73.  
“ And ” (how rendered), 242.  
Animals (how addressed), 240.  
„ (names of young), 32, 33.  
Antithesis, 85, 91.  
Aphæresis, 192.  
Apposition, 77.  
Article, 11.  
“ As ” (how rendered), 70, 184, 243.  
Aston (Mr. W. G.), *Pref.*, 66, 153,  
167, 168.  
Attraction, 5.  
Attributive Constructions, 56, 57,  
76, 99, 120, 121, 132, 138, 140,  
141, 275.  
Augmentatives, 32, 143.  
Auxiliary Numerals, 107, 113, 114,  
115, 116.  
„ (verbs), see Verbs.  
B (letter), 21, 25, 162, 163.  
Baby Language, 240.  
Bad Language, 239.  
Bases of Verbs, 151 ; 149—152, 154  
—160, 161, 165, 167.  
“ Because ” (how rendered), 70.  
“ Become ” (how rendered), 136,  
185, 204.  
Book Language, see Written Lan-  
guage.  
Brinkley's Dictionary, 12, 93.  
“ But ” (how rendered), 186, 242.  
“ Can ” (how rendered), 202, 206,  
207.  
“ Cannot ” (how rendered), 202—3.  
Causatives, 212.  
Certain Past, 166, 175 ; 57.  
„ (of negative), 169, 204.  
Certain Present or Future, 165,  
172 ; 152, 154—160 ; also 57, 75,  
132, 153, 222, 230.  
Certain Present or Future (of nega-  
tive), 169, 176, 195.  
Ch (letter), 21, 25, 163, 164.  
Changes in the Language, 6, 22, 23,  
24, 25, 35, 101, 103, 117, 118, 121,  
122, 124, 135, 151, 161, 163—5,  
172, 180, 184, 231, 260.  
Chinese (characters), 7, 225, 245.  
„ (influence), 6—9, 34, 36,  
61, 101, 170, 242, 271.  
„ (pronunciation of), 7.  
„ (terseness), 8, 33.  
„ (words), 6—8, 21, 22, 03,



|                                                                                             |                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 33, 34, 35, 37, 54, 103—<br>106, 111, 112, 113, 117,<br>142, 170, 225, 226, 246,<br>258.    | Conjugations (interchanged), 164,<br>214.                                                  |
| Classical Japanese, see Written Lan-<br>guage.                                              | „ (of adjectives), 128<br>—130.                                                            |
| Classifiers, 107.                                                                           | „ (of verbs), 152—160.                                                                     |
| Comparison, 144; 90, 121.                                                                   | „ (second), 156, 152,<br>153; also 132, 198,<br>199, 206, 207, 212,<br>213, 214, 228, 229. |
| Compound (adjectives), 131.                                                                 | „ (third), 157, 152, 153;<br>also 132, 164, 198,<br>207, 212, 228, 229.                    |
| „ (nouns), 31.                                                                              | Conjunctions, 242; 41, 42, 99, 230.                                                        |
| „ (tenses), 155, 191.                                                                       | Consonants, 16, 25.                                                                        |
| „ (verbs), 217.                                                                             | „ (double), 18.                                                                            |
| Compounds, 31, 131, 217; also 17,<br>21, 22, 44, 101, 102,<br>108, 125, 137, 143.           | „ (peculiarities of certain),<br>25, 164.                                                  |
| „ (Chinese), 21, 22, 33,<br>34, 35, 37.                                                     | Construction, 260; 34, 35.                                                                 |
| „ (co-ordinated), 33, 34,<br>220.                                                           | „ (synthetic tendency<br>of), 280—2.                                                       |
| „ (hybrid), 35, 106.                                                                        | Continuative Tenses (in <i>te iru</i> , etc.),<br>155; 141.                                |
| „ (in word-building), 35.                                                                   | Contractions, 26, 104, 155.                                                                |
| Concessive (idioms), 187.                                                                   | Correlation of Clauses, 178—181,<br>261, 264—6; also 123, 196.                             |
| „ (mood), 166, 167, 186,<br>269.                                                            | “Could” (how rendered), 186.                                                               |
| „ (mood negative), 169.                                                                     | Court Language, 241.                                                                       |
| Conclusive Forms, 121, 122, 132.                                                            | D (letter), 21, 25, 163.                                                                   |
| Conditional Base, 152, 167, also<br>154—160, 153, 166.                                      | Days of Month (how counted), 117.                                                          |
| „ (base negative), 169.                                                                     | Dependent Clauses (how placed),<br>260.                                                    |
| „ (mood), 166, 167, 184;<br>123, 175.                                                       | Desiderative Adjective, 165, 183;<br>133, 134, 204.                                        |
| „ (negative), 169.                                                                          | Dialects, 8.                                                                               |
| Conjugations, 152—160; 128.                                                                 | Dictionaries, 12, 18, 153, 243.                                                            |
| „ (first), 154, 161—5,<br>152; also 132, 164,<br>198, 206, 210, 212,<br>214, 226, 228, 229. | Diminutives, 32, 143.                                                                      |
|                                                                                             | Diphthongs, 15.                                                                            |

- Dutch Influence, 26.
- “Either...or” (how rendered), 69, 93, 224.
- Elision, 14, 104, 154, 155, 185, 194.
- Ellipsis, 268, 186; also 68, 83, 87, 97.
- Emphasis, 18, 19, 43, 85, 86, 87, 88, 90, 91, 97, 118, 122, 169, 195, 237—9, 268.
- Emphatic Particles, 73, 79, 136.
- English Influence, 5, 6, 22, 26, 60.
- Enumeration, 75, 80, 81, 101, 102, 224.
- Epenthetic Letters, 18, 24, 106, 199.
- Equals (how addressed), 244—257.
- Errors (common), 11, 50, 125, 142.
- Euphony, 23, 26, 105, 129, 152.
- Europeanisms, 5, 26, 280.
- Exclamatory Particles, 85, 87, 93, 237, 239.
- Expletives, 237—240.
- F (letter), 16, 25, 164—5.
- Feminine, 27, 28.
- Frequentative Form, 167, 188; 128, 154—160.  
 „ (of negative), 169.
- Future Tense, 165, 168, 172, 190.  
 „ (compound), 191.
- G (letter), 16, 21, 162—3.
- Gender, 27, 28, 30, 32, 121.
- Genitive, 66, 76, 260.
- Gerund, 165, 178, 180, 265; also 60, 70, 100, 147, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 196, 203, 214, 230, 233, 261, 269.  
 „ (emphatic), 166, 182; 154—160.
- Gerund (of adjectives), 128, 181.  
 „ (negative), 169, 179.
- “Get” (how rendered), 198—200.
- H (letter), 16, 25.
- “Had better” (how rendered), 177.
- Hepburn (Dr. J. C.), 12, 93.
- Hoffmann’s Japanese Grammar, 150.
- Honorifics, 244; 11, 37, 47, 143, 165, 189, 275, 276.  
 „ (meaningless), 245, 248.  
 „ (used objectively), 247.
- Hours (counting of), 118.
- Humble Phraseology, 46, 249—257.
- Hyphens, 35, 106.
- Hypothetical Mood, 184; 166.
- “If” (how rendered), 84, 91, 184—6.
- Illative Tenses, 193.
- Imperative Mood, 167, 189, 252—4, 277; also 129, 151, 152.  
 „ (honorific), 252—4.  
 „ (negative), 168.
- Impersonality, 50.
- Impossibility (how expressed), 202—3.
- Improbable Past, 169.  
 „ (Present or Future), 168; 81.
- “In order to” (how rendered), 75.
- Indefinite Form, 165, 178, 264—6; also 31, 43, 60, 75, 88, 93, 110, 122, 132, 137, 150, 152, 153, 154—160, 195, 203, 220, 249, 261.
- Indicative Mood, 154—160, 172; also 57.

- Infinitive Mood, 178 ; 153, 179.  
 Inflections (of adjectives), 120.  
     " (of verbs), 149.  
 Integration of Sentences, 280—2.  
 Interjections, 236 ; 87, 92, 234.  
 Interrogation, 278 ; 51, 52, 68, 87,  
     93, 113.  
     " (negative), 235.  
 Inversion, 270 ; 118.  
 Irregular Verbs, 158-160, etc. (see  
     Verbs).  
 Isolating Particle, 85.  
 "It would seem that" (how render-  
     ed), 183.  
 J (letter), 21, 25, 163.  
 Jesuit Grammars, 164.  
 "Just as" (how rendered), 42.  
 K (letter), 21, 162.  
 Korean Language, 5, 169.  
 Kyōto Dialect, 8, 125, 163, 164, 223,  
     241.  
 "Let" (how rendered), 213, 215.  
 Letter-changes, 20, 104, 161—5,  
     168, 171.  
 "Let us" (how rendered), 189.  
 Literature, 6, 9, 10, 448.  
 Long Sentences, 280 ; 3, 269.  
 Luchuan Language, *Pref.*, 5, 36,  
     169, 172.  
 M (letter), 24, 162—3.  
 Masculine, 27, 28.  
 "May" (how rendered), 69, 174,  
     188, 207.  
 Memorising (necessity for), 4, 5.  
 "Might" (how rendered), 69.  
 Military Words of Command, 189,  
     253.  
 Months (names of the), 116, 117.  
 Mood (in adjectives), 128, 130, 178.  
     " (in verbs), 154—160, 165,  
         172, 178.  
 Mr., Mrs., Miss, 258—9.  
 "Must" (how rendered), 174—5 ;  
     122, 132, 183.  
 "Must not" (how rendered), 183.  
 N (letter), 17, 18, 23, 24, 25, 162,  
     168, 169.  
 Names (family), 36, 259.  
     " (men's), 36, 259.  
     " (of dogs), 125.  
     " (of places), 36, 40, 41, 126.  
     " (of shops), 40.  
     " (of trees), 40.  
     " (personal), 36, 256, 259.  
     " (women's), 259.  
 "Need not" (how rendered), 188.  
 Negative (syntax of), 271—4.  
     " (adjective *Nai*), 129, 130,  
         168, 171.  
     " (base), 152, 154—160, 167 ;  
         also 153, 198, 212.  
     " (conjugations), 129, 130,  
         155—160.  
     " (question how answered),  
         235.  
     " (tenses how formed), 167  
         —170 ; 153.  
     " (voice), 153, 155—160,  
         168, 179, 219, 272.  
 "Neither...nor" (how rendered), 72.  
 Ng (sound of), 16.  
 Nominative, 66, 89 ; 76, 86, 91, 201.  
 Nouns, 27 ; also 97, 101, 260, 269.  
     " (abstract), 37, 38, 136.

- Nouns (collective), 27.  
 „ (compound), 31, 137.  
 „ (how verbalised), 225.  
 „ (humble), 256.  
 „ (in *ki* and *gi*), 40.  
 „ (in *mi*), 38.  
 „ (in *sa*), 37, 38, 179.  
 „ (in *ya*), 40.  
 „ (plain and honorific), 256  
 —7.  
 „ (used as adjectives), 44, 135  
 —140, 142.  
 „ (used as adverbs), 45, 231  
 —3.  
 „ (used as postpositions), 97.  
 „ (verbal), 43 ; 31.  
 Number, 27, 29, 30, 32, 121, 149.  
 Numerals, 101.  
 „ (auxiliary), 107.  
 „ (cardinal), 101, 115, 116.  
 „ (Chinese), 103—7; 111,  
 112, 113, 115, 116.  
 „ (fractional), 118; 115.  
 „ (multiplicative), 118.  
 „ (ordinal), 115, 116.  
 Object (of verb), 260, 268.  
 “One” or “ones” (how rendered),  
 78, 96, 135, 144.  
 Onomatopes, 236 ; 82, 240.  
 „ Or ” (how rendered), 69, 93, 224.  
 „ Ought ” (how rendered), 41, 57,  
 177.  
 P (letter), 21, 22, 23, 25, 236.  
 “Pair” (various words for), 114.  
 Paradigms, 52, 126, 128—130, 154—  
 160, 162, 229.  
 Particip'le, 165.  
 Particles, see Postpositions.  
 Parts of Speech, 10, 230, 231  
 242.  
 Passive, 198, etc ; see Verbs.  
 Past Participle, 165.  
 „ (tenses), 166, 175, 184, 186 ;  
 also 141.  
 Person, 46, 149, 244—6, 249.  
 Personification, 279.  
 Phonetic Decay, 22, 151, 161, 166,  
 168, 202, 233.  
 Place-names, 36, 143.  
 Pleonastic Constructions, 278.  
 Plural, 27, 29, 30, 48, 49.  
 Politeness (influence on grammar),  
 244 ; 46—7, 160.  
 Portuguese Influence, 236.  
 Positive Voice, 153, 154, 156—160.  
 Possessive, 76.  
 Postpositions, 62 ; 10, 27, 49, 230,  
 232, 260, 269, 270.  
 „ (combined), 94 ; 76, 77.  
 Potential Verbs, see Verbs.  
 Predicative Constructions, 66, 77,  
 89, 90, 91, 121, 122, 138, 140, 141,  
 142, 143, 260, 274.  
 Prefixes, 27, 30, 37, 170.  
 Present Tense, see Certain Present.  
 Probable Past, 166, 175.  
 „ (of negative), 169.  
 „ present or future, 168.  
 „ „ (of negative), 168.  
 Pronouns, 46, 257.  
 „ (demonstrative), 51, 82.  
 „ (indefinite), 51, 52, 55,  
 142.  
 „ (interrogative), 51.

- Pronouns (personal), 46, 245, 257, 267.  
 „ (possessive), 49.  
 „ (reflective), 51.  
 „ (relative), 56.  
 „ (substantive and adjective forms), 53.  
 Pronunciation, 12; 7.  
 Prosody, 448.  
 “Provided” (how rendered), 242.  
 Quantity (vowel), 12—13, 448.  
 Quasi-adjectives, 135.  
 „ (in *shīta*), 142; 141.  
 „ (in *sō na*), 137.  
 Quasi-postpositions, 97.  
 Question and Answer, 235.  
 Quotation, 275.  
 R (letter), 17, 152, 162, 163.  
 Reduplication of Consonants, 18, 23, 24.  
 „ (of stems), 134.  
 „ (of words), 29, 230, 232, 240.  
 Reflective (pronouns), 51.  
 „ (verbs), 211.  
 Relation (ideas of), 27, 62, 77.  
 Relation to Other Languages, 5.  
 Relationship (degrees of), 28, 256—7.  
 Relative Constructions, 56.  
 Rodriguez' Japanese Grammar, 150.  
 Romanisation, 12.  
 Roots of Verbs, 149—151, 209, 210.  
 S (letter), 17, 21, 25, 162, 164.  
 Satow and Ishibashi's English-Japanese Dictionary, 153, 243.  
 Satow (Sir Ernest), 22, 35.  
 “Self” (how rendered), 51, 211.  
 Self-depreciatory Terms, 46, 244, 250—1, 255—7.  
 Semi-colloquial, 124, 125.  
 Sentence (structure of), 260.  
 Servants (how addressed), 47, 252—4.  
 Sh (letter), 25; 21, 162, 164.  
 “Should” (how rendered), 41, 132, 177, 186.  
 Silent Vowels, 14.  
 “Since” (how rendered), 70, 94.  
 Singular, 27, 29, 49.  
 “Sir” (no equivalent for), 258.  
 Slang, 8.  
 “So” (how rendered), 148.  
 Spanish Influence, 26, 236.  
 Special Phraseology, 240—2.  
 Stems (of adjectives), 124—7, 134, 226.  
 „ (of verbs), 149—152, 190, 210, 214, 228.  
 „ (reduplicated), 134.  
 “Still more” (how rendered), 146.  
 Subject (of sentence), 261, 266; 89, 90, 91, 201, 279.  
 Suffixes, 5, 10, 29, 30, 38, 48, 120—2, 133, 134, 149, 150, 153, 161, 165—170, 190, 193, 210, 219, 222, 225, 226, 261.  
 Superiors (how addressed), 244—257.  
 Superlatives, 145, 146.  
 Supposition (how expressed), 184—8.  
 Surds and Sonants, 20.  
 Surnames, 36, 259.

- Syntax, 260.
- Synthesis of Contradictories, 34.
- T (letter), 25, 162, 163, 164.
- Tense (anomalous use of), 176.
- „ (compound continuative),  
155, 191; 141.
- „ (illative), 193.
- „ (in adjectives), 128, 130, 177,  
178.
- „ (in verbs), 154—160, 165,  
172; also 57, 149, 178, 191.
- „ (negative), 167—170, 191, 195.
- “Than” (how rendered), 94, 145.
- “That” (conjunction), 82.
- “There is,” etc. (how rendered),  
221, 222; 98.
- “They say that” (how rendered),  
58, 183.
- “Though” (how rendered), 186.
- Titles, 258.
- Tōkyō Dialect, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18,  
20, 21, 23, 128, 163, 164, 168, 223.
- Tones, 19.
- “Too” (how rendered), 148.
- Transitive and Intransitive Pairs of  
Verbs, 208, 228.
- Transliteration, 12, 225.
- Ts (letter), 25; 21, 164.
- Unfinished Sentences, 268; 82, 83,  
237, 253.
- Verbalisation of Nouns, 225.
- Verbs, 149; 260, 261.
- „ (auxiliary), 190; 155, 223.
- „ (bases of), 151; 149—152,  
154—160, 161, 165, 167.
- „ (cannot be omitted), 71.
- „ (causative), 212; 75, 134, 219.
- Verbs (compound), 217.
- „ (conclusive form), 132.
- „ (final omitted), 268.
- „ (formed from adjectives), 134,  
226—7.
- „ (honorific), 249—254; 160,  
171, 189.
- „ (humble), 251; 249, 250.
- „ (in *aru*), 190, 210.
- „ (in *eru*), 190, 210.
- „ (in *garu*), 134.
- „ (in *jiru*), 226.
- „ (in *suru*), 225.
- „ (in *tagaru*), 134.
- „ (inchoative), 204, 218.
- „ (inflections of), 149—152.
- „ (intransitive), 205, 208; 191,  
199, 204, 211, 227, 278.
- „ (irregular), 158—160, 170;  
also 133, 198, 212.
- „ (liable to be confounded),  
228.
- „ (may take postpositions),  
66.
- „ (nature of Japanese), 149.
- „ (passive), 198, 203—5, 278;  
also 57, 58, 75, 133, 134,  
190, 191, 207, 208, 213,  
216, 219, 227, 266.
- „ (periphrasis with), 191—7.
- „ (plain and honorific), 249,  
251.
- „ (potential), 201, 207, 219,  
250.
- „ (prepositional), how rendered,  
217.
- „ (reflective), 211.

- Verbs (stems of), 149—152, 190.  
 „ (substantive), see Verb “to Be.”  
 „ (“to Be”), 221; also 62—5, 71, 98, 120, 124, 126, 128, 129, 136, 138, 190, 191, 197.  
 „ (“to Do”), 224; 195.  
 „ (“to Have”), 221; 203, 216.  
 „ (transitive), 206, 208, 214, 215, 227, 279.  
 „ (used as adjectives), 135, 140, 149.  
 „ (used as nouns), 31, 43, 149.  
 „ (used as other parts of speech), 230.  
 „ (with *sō* suffixed), 137, 183.  
 „ (with stems in *s*), 210, 214.  
 “Very” (how rendered), 147, 148.  
 Vowels, 12, 25.  
 „ (crasis of), 15, 124.  
 „ (harmony of), 5.  
 „ (long and short), 13, 168.  
 „ (quiescent), 14, 18, 19.  
 „ (stems), 124, 162, 163, 164.  
 „ (strengthening of), 24, 102.  
 Vulgarisms, 8, 15, 18, 19, 46, 48, 64, 83, 107, 122, 124, 161.  
 W (letter), 17, 25, 164—5,  
 Western Peculiarities, 15, 17, 21, 163, 168.  
 “When” (how rendered), 41, 42, 84—184.  
 “Whether” (how rendered), 69.  
 “While” (how rendered), 41, 42, 242—3,  
 “Without” (how rendered), 129, 188.  
 Women (words peculiar to), 47, 238—241.  
 Women’s names, 259.  
 “Wonder” (how rendered), 175.  
 Word-building, 35.  
 “Would” (how rendered), 186.  
 Writing (system of), 9.  
 Written Language, 9, 10; also 46, 51, 52, 57, 60, 73, 76, 91, 93, 112, 118, 121, 122, 124, 132, 135, 136, 161, 164, 165, 166, 168, 169, 178, 180, 184, 185, 202, 203, 212, 224, 226, 239, 241, 257.  
 Y (letter), 17, 25,  
 Year-names, 116.  
 “Yes” and “no,” 234.  
 Z (letter), 18, 21, 25.





---

Page 104, line 10, and Vocab. s. v.—Some modern authorities take *oku* in the sense of “one hundred millions,” and *chō* in the sense of “one *oku* of *oku*,” i.e. apparently 10,000,000,000,000,000.

Page 142, line 18.—For *sumori*, read *tsumori*.

Page 188, line 7.—For *Iwanakūe* read *Iwanakūte*.

Page 194, line 7.—For “¶ 289,” read “¶ 298.”

Page 198, bottom. *Serareru* is often contracted to *sareru*.

Page 202, fourth example.—For *gozaimasu*, read *gozaimasen*.

Page 242, line 18.—For *shite*, read *shite*.

Page 326, line 6 from end.—For *sug*, read *sugi*.

Page 330, line 6 from end.—For *tatte*, read *tatete*. In last line of ditto, the sense would be still clearer were the word *sakan* inserted after *naka-naka*.

Page 332, line 3.—For *attate*, read *atatte*.

Page 384, line 3 from bottom.—For *Gondaiyū*, read *Gondayū*.

Page 461, s. v. "I."—For *watakūshi*, read *watakūshi*.

Ditto, s. v. "June," for *roku-gatsu* read *roku-gwatsu*.

Page 474.—The first word of the Vocabulary should be, not *a*, but *ā*.

On ditto, for *ai-nikui* read *ai-niku*.

Page 540, s. v. *Sugiru*.—Correct *segiru* to *sugiru*.

To the Japanese—English Vocabulary (pp. 474 *et seq.*) add the following:—

**asai**, shallow.

**bessō**, a villa.

**hīto-tsubu-dane**, an only child.

**hon**, sometimes equiv. to *hontō*,  
true: *hon no*, true, quite, mere.

**kimaru**, to be fixed.

**kitte**, a ticket, a stamp.

**kizukai**, anxiety.

**kōbe**, the head.

**kochō**, a mayor.

**kokoro-zashi**, intention.

**komi-ageru** (2), to retch, also to  
have a sudden impulse, e. g. of  
anger.

**ku**, a stanza of poetry.

**mirai**, the future.

**nazo**, or **nanzo**, same as *nado*.

## BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

---

*Things Japanese*, 1 Vol., 3rd Edit.

*The Classical Poetry of the Japanese*, 1 Vol.

*A Romanized Japanese Reader* (Modern Written Style), 3 Vols., viz. Vol. I, Japanese Text; Vol. II, English Translation; Vol. III, Notes.

*Essay in Aid of a Grammar and Dictionary of the Luchuan Language.* (Published as Supplement to Vol. XXIII of the "Transactions of the Asiatic Society of Japan.")

*The Language, Mythology, and Geographical Nomenclature of Japan, Viewed in the Light of Aino Studies*, 1 Vol. (Published as a Memoir of the Literature College of the Imperial University of Japan.)

*A Translation of the "Kojiki," or "Records of Ancient Matters," with Introduction and Commentary*, 1 Vol. (Published as Supplement to Vol. X of the "Transactions of the Asiatic Society of Japan.")

### IN JAPANESE.

"*Ei Buntten*" (an elementary English Grammar), 1 Vol, 5th Edit.

"*Nihon Shōbuntten*" (an elementary Japanese Grammar), 1 Vol.

In Collaboration with W. B. Mason, Esq.

*Murray's Handbook for Japan*, 1 Vol., 4th Edit.

PRINTED BY THE SHŪYEISHA, TŌKYŌ.

明治二十一年十月廿二日 初版印刷并發行  
明治二十二年五月二十日 再版印刷并發行  
明治三十年十二月十八日 三版印刷  
明治三十一年一月一日 三版發行



著 者

英國人

東京帝國大學名譽教師

ビー、エツチ、チャムブレ

發 行 者

東京麻布區材木町五十五番地

增 島 六 一 郎

印 刷 者

東京牛込區市ヶ谷加賀町一丁目十二番地

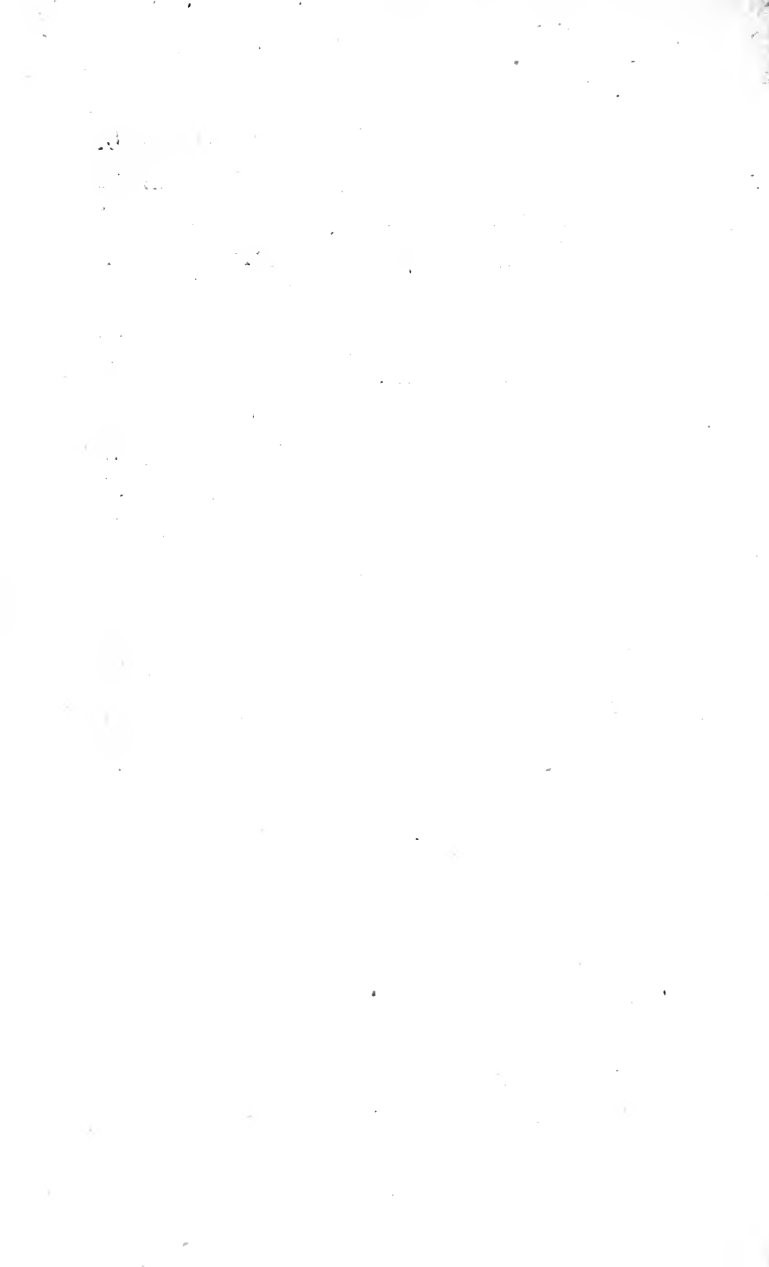
吉 岡 嚴 八

印 刷 所

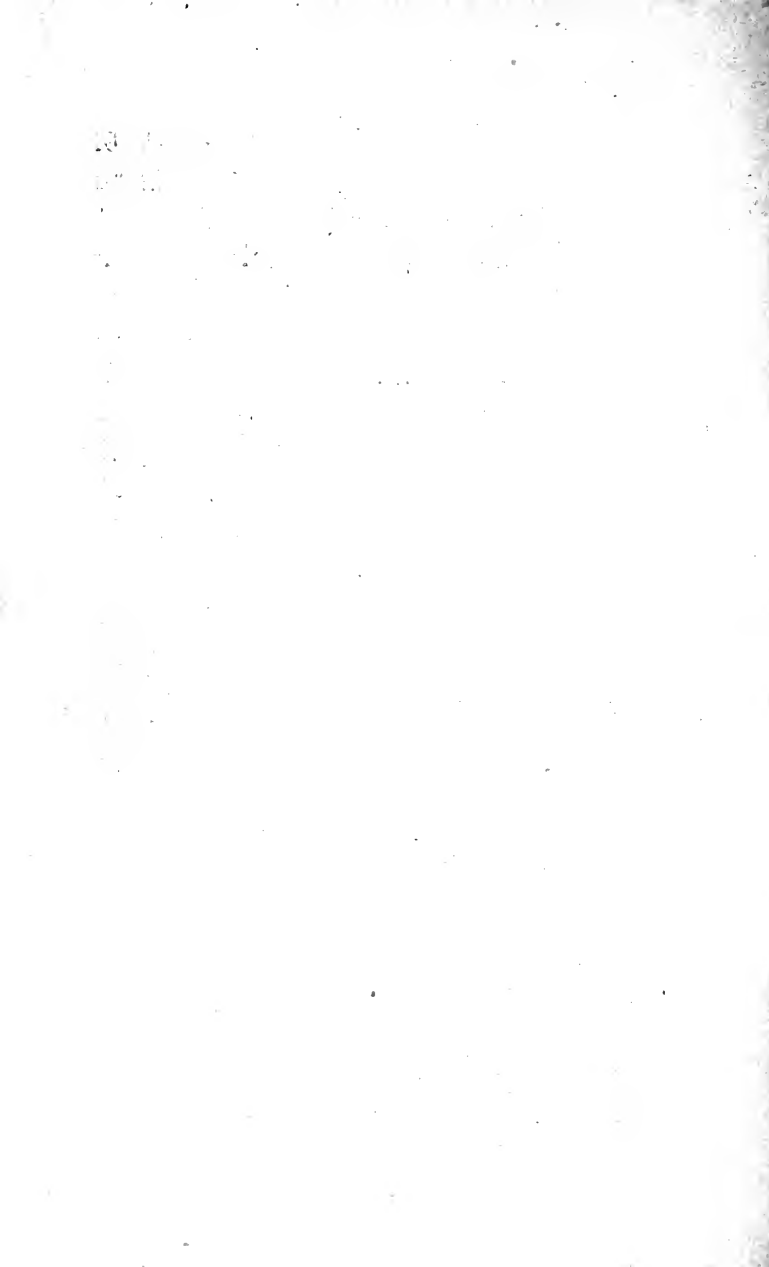
東京牛込區市ヶ谷加賀町一丁目十二番地

秀 英 舍 第 一 工 場



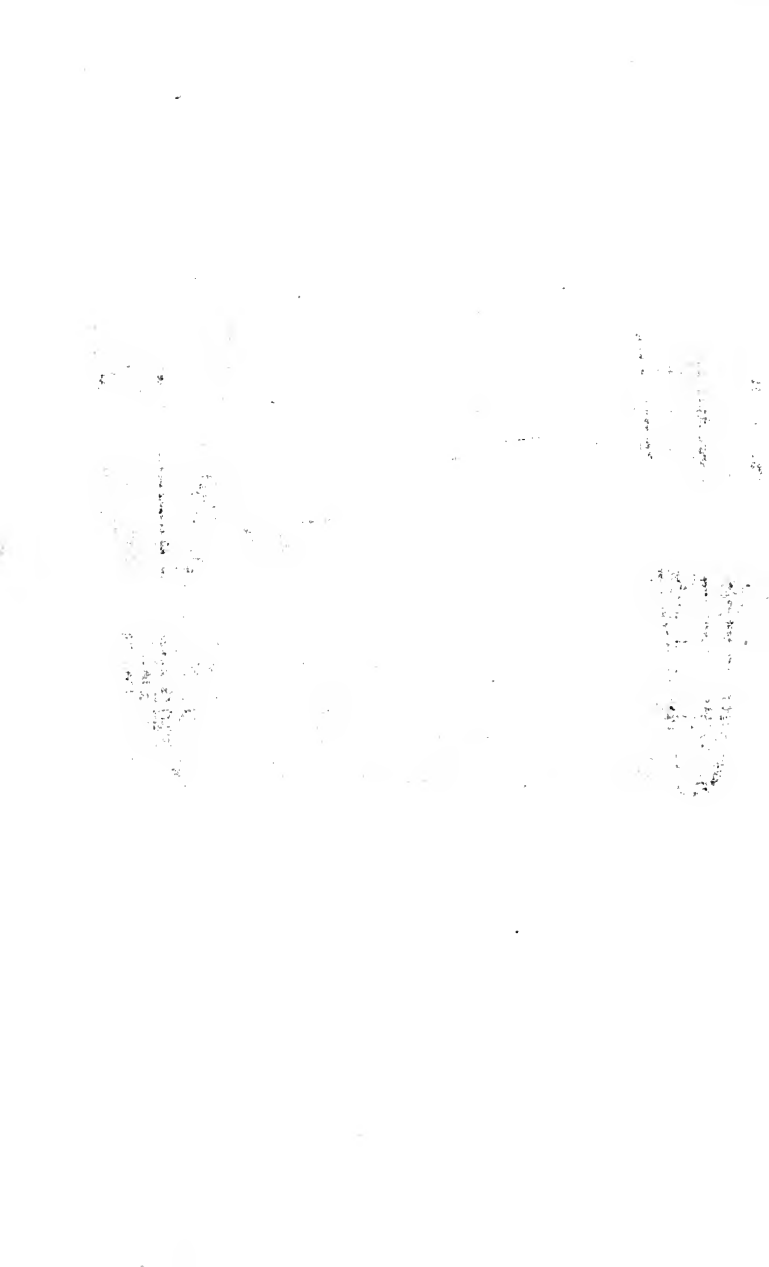












PL  
535  
C55  
1898

Chamberlain, Basil Hall  
A handbook of colloquial  
Japanese 3d ed.

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

